

Using Visual Basic Predefined Forms, Menus, And Projects

Setting A Project's Version Information

Setting An EXE File's Name And Icon

Displaying The Debug, Edit, And Form Editor Toolbars

Turning Bounds Checking On Or Off

Checking For Pentium Errors

Managing Add-Ins

Adding ActiveX Controls And Insertable Objects To Projects

Customizing Menus And Toolbars

Setting Forms' Initial Positions

Enabling Or Disabling Quick Info, Auto List Members, Data Tips, And Syntax Checking

Displaying Or Hiding IDE Windows

Searching An Entire Project For Specific Text Or A Variable's Definition

Optimizing For Fast Code, Small Code, Or A Particular Processor

Adding And Removing Forms, Modules, And Class Modules

Using Bookmarks

Using The Object Browser

Chapter 3 The Visual Basic Language

In Depth

How Does Visual Basic Code Look?

Immediate Solutions

Declaring Constants

Declaring Variables

Selecting Variable Types

Converting Between Data Types

Setting Variable Scope

Verifying Data Types

Declaring Arrays And Dynamic Arrays

Declaring Subroutines

Declaring Functions

Preserving Variables Values Between Calls To Their Procedures

Handling Strings

Converting Strings To Numbers And Back Again

Handling Operators And Operator Precedence

Using If&Else Statements

Using Select Case

Making Selections With Switch() And Choose()

Looping

Using Collections

Sending Keystrokes To Other Programs

Handling Higher Math

Handling Dates And Times

Handling Financial Data

Ending A Program At Any Time

Chapter 4 Managing Forms In Visual Basic

In Depth

The Parts Of A Form

The Parts Of An MDI Form

Immediate Solutions

Setting Title Bar Text

[Adding/Removing Min/Max Buttons And Setting A Window's Border](#)

[Adding Toolbars To Forms](#)

[Adding Status Bars To Forms](#)

[Referring To The Current Form](#)

[Redrawing Form Contents](#)

[Setting Control Tab Order](#)

[Moving And Sizing Controls From Code](#)

[Showing And Hiding Controls In A Form](#)

[Measurements In Forms](#)

[Working With Multiple Forms](#)

[Loading, Showing, And Hiding Forms](#)

[Setting The Startup Form](#)

[Creating Forms In Code](#)

[Using The Multiple Document Interface](#)

[Arranging MDI Child Windows](#)

[Opening New MDI Child Windows](#)

[Arrays Of Forms](#)

[Coordinating Data Between MDI Child Forms \(Document Views\)](#)

[Creating Dialog Boxes](#)

[All About Message Boxes And Input Boxes](#)

[Passing Forms To Procedures](#)

[Minimizing/Maximizing And Enabling/Disabling Forms From Code](#)

[Chapter 5 Visual Basic Menus](#)

[In Depth](#)

[Menu Design Considerations](#)

Immediate Solutions

Using The Visual Basic Application Wizard To Set Up Your Menus

What Item Goes In What Menu?

Adding A Menu To A Form

Modifying And Deleting Menu Items

Adding A Menu Separator

Adding Access Characters

Adding Shortcut Keys

Creating Submenus

Creating Immediate (Bang) Menus

Using The Visual Basic Predefined Menus

Adding A Checkmark To A Menu Item

Disabling (Graying Out) Menu Items

Handling MDI Form And MDI Child Menus

Adding A List Of Open Windows To An MDI Form's Window Menu

Making Menus And Menu Items Visible Or Invisible

Creating And Displaying Pop-Up Menus

Adding And Deleting Menu Items At Runtime

Adding Bitmaps To Menus

Using The Registry To Store A Most Recently Used (MRU) Files List

Chapter 6 Text Boxes And Rich Text Boxes

In Depth

Use Of Text Boxes And RTF Boxes In Windows Programs

Immediate Solutions

Creating Multiline, Word-Wrap Text Boxes

[Aligning Text In Text Boxes](#)

[Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes](#)

[Making A Text Box Read-Only](#)

[Accessing Text In A Text Box](#)

[Selecting And Replacing Text In A Text Box](#)

[Copying Or Getting Selected Text To Or From The Clipboard](#)

[Creating A Password Control](#)

[Controlling Input In A Text Box](#)

[Adding An RTF Box To A Form](#)

[Accessing Text In A Rich Text Box](#)

[Selecting Text In Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Using Bold, Italic, Underline, And Strikethru](#)

[Indenting Text In Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Setting Fonts And Font Sizes In Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Using Bullets In Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Aligning Text In A Rich Text Box](#)

[Setting Text Color In RTF Boxes](#)

[Moving The Insertion Point In RTF Boxes](#)

[Adding Superscripts And Subscripts In Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Setting The Mouse Pointer In Text Boxes And Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Searching For \(And Replacing\) Text In RTF Boxes](#)

[Saving RTF Files From Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Reading RTF Files Into A Rich Text Box](#)

[Printing From A Rich Text Box](#)

[Chapter 7 Command Buttons, Checkboxes, And Option Buttons](#)

In Depth

How This Chapter Works

Immediate Solutions

Setting A Button's Caption

Setting A Button's Background Color

Setting Button Text Color

Setting Button Fonts

Reacting To Button Clicks

Creating Button Control Arrays

Resetting The Focus After A Button Click

Giving Buttons Access Characters

Setting Button Tab Order

Disabling Buttons

Showing And Hiding Buttons

Adding Tool Tips To Buttons

Resizing And Moving Buttons From Code

Adding A Picture To A Button

Adding A Down Picture To A Button

Adding Buttons At Runtime

Passing Buttons To Procedures

Handling Button Releases

Making A Command Button Into A Cancel Button

Getting A Checkbox's State

Setting A Checkbox's State

Grouping Option Buttons Together

Getting An Option Button's State

Setting An Option Button's State

Using Graphical Checkboxes And Radio Buttons

Using Checkboxes And Option Buttons Together

Chapter 8 List Boxes And Combo Boxes

In Depth

Immediate Solutions

Adding Items To A List Box

Referring To Items In A List Box By Index

Responding To List Box Events

Removing Items From A List Box

Sorting A List Box

Determining How Many Items Are In A List Box

Determining If A List Box Item Is Selected

Using Multiselect List Boxes

Making List Boxes Scroll Horizontally

Using Checkmarks In A List Box

Clearing A List Box

Creating Simple Combo Boxes, Drop-Down Combo Boxes, And Drop-Down List Combo Boxes

Adding Items To A Combo Box

Responding To Combo Box Selections

Removing Items From A Combo Box

Getting The Current Selection In A Combo Box

Sorting A Combo Box

Clearing A Combo Box

Locking A Combo Box

[Getting The Number Of Items In A Combo Box](#)

[Setting The Topmost Item In A List Box Or Combo Box](#)

[Adding Numeric Data To Items In A List Box Or Combo Box](#)

[Determining Where An Item Was Added In A Sorted List Box Or Combo Box](#)

[Using Images In Combo Boxes](#)

[Chapter 9 Scroll Bars And Sliders](#)

[In Depth](#)

[Adding Scroll Bars And Sliders To A Program](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Adding Horizontal Or Vertical Scroll Bars To A Form](#)

[Setting Scroll Bars Minimum And Maximum Values](#)

[Setting Up Scroll Bar Clicks \(Large Changes\)](#)

[Setting Up Scroll Bar Arrow Clicks \(Small Changes\)](#)

[Getting A Scroll Bar's Current Value](#)

[Handling Scroll Bar Events](#)

[Handling Continuous Scroll Bar Events](#)

[Showing And Hiding Scroll Bars](#)

[Coordinating Scroll Bar Pairs](#)

[Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes](#)

[Creating And Using Flat Scroll Bars](#)

[Customizing Flat Scroll Bar Arrows](#)

[Creating Slider Controls](#)

[Setting A Slider's Orientation](#)

[Setting A Slider's Range](#)

[Setting Up Slider Groove Clicks](#)

[Adding Ticks To A Slider](#)

[Setting A Slider's Tick Style](#)

[Getting A Slider's Current Value](#)

[Handling Slider Events](#)

[Handling Continuous Slider Events](#)

[Handling Slider Selections](#)

[Clearing A Selection In A Slider](#)

[Creating An Updown Control](#)

[Setting An Updown Control's Minimum And Maximum](#)

[Handling Updown Events](#)

[Chapter 10 Picture Boxes And Image Controls](#)

[In Depth](#)

[Image Controls](#)

[Picture Boxes](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Adding A Picture Box To A Form](#)

[Setting Or Getting The Picture In A Picture Box](#)

[Adjusting Picture Box Size To Contents](#)

[Aligning A Picture Box In A Form](#)

[Handling Picture Box Events \(And Creating Image Maps\)](#)

[Picture Box Animation](#)

[Grouping Other Controls In A Picture Box](#)

[Using A Picture Box In An MDI Form](#)

[Drawing Lines And Circles In A Picture Box](#)

[Using Image Lists With Picture Boxes](#)

[Adding Text To A Picture Box](#)

[Formatting Text In A Picture Box](#)

[Clearing A Picture Box](#)

[Accessing Individual Pixels In A Picture Box](#)

[Copying Pictures To And Pasting Pictures From The Clipboard](#)

[Stretching And Flipping Images In A Picture Box](#)

[Printing A Picture](#)

[Using Picture Box Handles](#)

[Setting Measurement Scales In A Picture Box](#)

[Saving Pictures To Disk](#)

[Adding An Image Control To A Form](#)

[Stretching An Image In An Image Control](#)

[Chapter 11 Windows Common Dialogs](#)

[In Depth](#)

[The Common Dialog Control](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Creating And Displaying A Windows Common Dialog](#)

[Setting A Common Dialog's Title](#)

[Did The User Click OK Or Cancel?](#)

[Using A Color Dialog Box](#)

[Setting Color Dialog Flags](#)

[Using The Open And Save As Dialogs](#)

[Setting Open And Save As Flags](#)

[Getting The File Name In Open, Save As Dialogs](#)

[Setting Maximum File Name Size In Open And Save As Dialog Boxes](#)

Setting Default File Extensions

Set Or Get The Initial Directory

Setting File Types (Filters) In Open, Save As Dialogs

Using A Font Dialog Box

Setting Font Dialog Flags

Setting Max And Min Font Sizes

Using The Print Dialog Box

Setting Print Dialog Flags

Setting The Minimum And Maximum Pages To Print

Setting Page Orientation

Showing Windows Help From A Visual Basic Program

Chapter 12 The Chart And Grid Controls

In Depth

The Chart Control

Grid Controls

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Chart Control To A Program

Adding Data To A Chart Control

Working With A Multiple Data Series

Setting Chart And Axis Titles And Chart Colors

Creating Pie Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Line Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Area Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Bar Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Step Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Combination Charts

Adding A Flex Grid Control To A Program

Working With Data In A Flex Grid Control

Typing Data Into A Flex Grid

Setting Flex Grid Grid Lines And Border Styles

Labeling Rows And Columns In A Flex Grid

Formatting Flex Grid Cells

Sorting A Flex Grid Control

Dragging Columns In A Flex Grid Control

Connecting A Flex Grid To A Database

Chapter 13 The Timer And Serial Communications Controls

In Depth

The Timer Control

The Communications Control

The MonthView And DateTimePicker Controls

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Timer Control To A Program

Initializing A Timer Control

Handling Timer Events

Formatting Times And Dates

Creating A Clock Program

Creating A Stopwatch

Creating An Alarm Clock

Creating Animation Using The Timer Control

Adding A Communications Control To A Program

Setting Up The Receive And Transmit Buffers

Opening The Serial Port

Working With A Modem

Reading Data With The Communications Control

Sending Data With The Communications Control

Setting Up Communications Handshaking

Handling Communications Events

Closing The Serial Port

Adding A MonthView Control To Your Program

Getting Dates From A MonthView Control

Adding A DateTimePicker Control To Your Program

Using A DateTimePicker Control

Chapter 14 The Frame, Label, Shape, And Line Controls

In Depth

The Frame Control

The Label Control

The Shape Control

The Line Control

Form Drawing Methods

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Frame To A Program

Setting Frame Size And Location

Dragging And Dropping Controls

Grouping Controls In A Frame

Adding A Label To A Program

Using Labels Instead Of Text Boxes

Formatting Text In Labels

Aligning Text In Labels

Handling Label Control Events

Using Labels To Give Access Keys To Controls Without Captions

Adding A Shape Control To A Program

Drawing Rectangles

Drawing Squares

Drawing Ovals

Drawing Circles

Drawing Rounded Rectangles

Drawing Rounded Squares

Setting Shape Borders: Drawing Width, Dashes, And Dots

Filling Shapes

Drawing A Shape Without The IDE Grid

Moving Shapes At Runtime

Adding A Line Control To A Program

Drawing Thicker, Dotted, And Dashed Lines

Drawing A Line Without The IDE Grid

Changing A Line Control At Runtime

Using Form Methods To Draw Lines

Using Form Methods To Draw Circles

Chapter 15 Toolbars, Status Bars, Progress Bars, And Coolbars

In Depth

Toolbars

[Status Bars](#)

[Progress Bars](#)

[Coolbars](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Adding A Toolbar To A Form](#)

[Aligning Toolbars In A Form](#)

[Adding Buttons To A Toolbar](#)

[Handling Toolbar Buttons Clicks](#)

[Connecting Toolbar Buttons To Menu Items](#)

[Adding Separators To A Toolbar](#)

[Adding Images To Toolbar Buttons](#)

[Adding Check \(Toggle\) Buttons To A Toolbar](#)

[Creating Button Groups In A Toolbar](#)

[Adding Combo Boxes And Other Controls To A Toolbar](#)

[Setting Toolbar Button Tool Tips](#)

[Letting The User Customize The Toolbar](#)

[Adding Toolbar Buttons At Runtime](#)

[Adding A Status Bar To A Program](#)

[Aligning Status Bars In A Form](#)

[Adding Panels To A Status Bar](#)

[Displaying Text In A Status Bar](#)

[Displaying Time, Dates, And Key States In A Status Bar](#)

[Customizing A Status Bar Panel's Appearance](#)

[Displaying Images In A Status Bar](#)

[Handling Panel Clicks](#)

[Adding New Panels To A Status Bar At Runtime](#)

Creating Simple Status Bars

Adding A Progress Bar To A Form

Using A Progress Bar

Adding A Coolbar To A Form

Aligning Coolbars In A Form

Adding Bands To A Coolbar

Adding Controls To Coolbar Bands

Handling Coolbar Control Events

Chapter 16 Image Lists, Tree Views, List Views, And Tab Strips

In Depth

Image Lists

Tree Views

List Views

Tab Strips

Immediate Solutions

Adding An Image List To A Form

Adding Images To Image Lists

Using The Images In Image Lists

Setting Image Keys In An Image List

Adding A Tree View To A Form

Selecting Tree View Styles

Adding Nodes To A Tree View

Adding Subnodes To A Tree View

Adding Images To A Tree View

Expanding And Collapsing Nodes (And Setting Node Images To Match)

Handling Tree View Node Clicks

Adding A List View To A Form

Adding Items To A List View

Adding Icons To List View Items

Adding Small Icons To List View Items

Selecting The View Type In List Views

Adding Column Headers To A List View

Adding Column Fields To A List View

Handling List View Item Clicks

Handling List View Column Header Clicks

Adding A Tab Strip To A Form

Inserting Tabs Into A Tab Strip Control

Setting Tab Captions

Setting Tab Images

Using A Tab Strip To Display Other Controls

Handling Tab Clicks

Chapter 17 File Handling And File Controls

In Depth

Sequential Access Files

Binary Files

The FileSystemObject

Immediate Solutions

Using The Common Dialogs File Open And File Save As

Creating A File

Getting A File's Length

[Opening A File](#)

[Writing To A Sequential File](#)

[Writing To A Random Access File](#)

[Writing To A Binary File](#)

[Reading From Sequential Files](#)

[Reading From Random Access Files](#)

[Reading From Binary Files](#)

[Accessing Any Record In A Random Access File](#)

[Closing A File](#)

[Saving Files From Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Opening Files In Rich Text Boxes](#)

[Saving Files From Picture Boxes](#)

[Opening Files In Picture Boxes](#)

[Using The Drive List Box Control](#)

[Using The Directory List Box Control](#)

[Using The File List Box Control](#)

[Creating And Deleting Directories](#)

[Changing Directories](#)

[Copying A File](#)

[Moving A File](#)

[Deleting A File](#)

[When Was A File Created? Last Modified? Last Accessed?](#)

[Creating A TextStream](#)

[Opening A TextStream](#)

[Writing To A TextStream](#)

[Reading From A TextStream](#)

Closing A TextStream

Chapter 18 Working With Graphics

In Depth

Graphics Methods Vs. Graphics Controls

About Visual Basic Coordinates

Immediate Solutions

Redrawing Graphics In Windows: AutoRedraw And Paint

Clearing The Drawing Area

Setting Colors

Drawing Text

Working With Fonts

Drawing Lines

Drawing Boxes

Drawing Circles

Drawing Ellipses

Drawing Arcs

Drawing Freehand With The Mouse

Filling Figures With Color

Filling Figures With Patterns

Setting Figure Drawing Style And Drawing Width

Drawing Points

Setting The Drawing Mode

Setting Drawing Scales

Using The Screen Object

Resizing Graphics When The Window Is Resized

Copying Pictures To And Pasting Pictures From The Clipboard

Printing Graphics

Layering Graphics With The AutoRedraw And ClipControls Properties

Chapter 19 Working With Images

In Depth

Picture Boxes Vs. Image Controls

Image Effects: Working With Images Bit By Bit

Immediate Solutions

Adding Images To Controls

Adding Images To Forms

Using Image Controls

Using Picture Boxes

AutoSizing Picture Boxes

Loading Images In At Runtime

Clearing (Erasing) Images

Storing Images In Memory Using The Picture Object

Using Arrays Of Picture Objects

Adding Picture Clip Controls To A Program

Selecting Images In A Picture Clip Control Using Coordinates

Selecting Images In A Picture Clip Control Using Rows And Columns

Flipping Images

Stretching Images

Creating Image Animation

Handling Images Bit By Bit

Creating Grayscale Images

Lightening Images

Creating Embossed Images

Creating Engraved Images

Sweeping Images

Blurring Images

Freeing Memory Used By Graphics

Chapter 20 Creating ActiveX Controls And Documents

In Depth

All About ActiveX Components

In-Process Vs. Out-Of-Process Components

Which ActiveX Component Do I Want To Build?

Immediate Solutions

Creating An ActiveX Control

Designing An ActiveX Control From Scratch

Giving ActiveX Controls Persistent Graphics

Basing An ActiveX Control On An Existing Visual Basic Control

Handling Constituent Control Events In An ActiveX Control

Adding Controls To An ActiveX Control (A Calculator ActiveX Control)

Testing An ActiveX Control

Creating A Visual Basic Project Group To Test An ActiveX Control

Registering An ActiveX Control

Using A Custom ActiveX Control In A Visual Basic Program

Adding A Property To An ActiveX Control

Making ActiveX Control Properties Persistent (PropertyBag Object)

Adding A Method To An ActiveX Control

[Adding An Event To An ActiveX Control](#)

[Adding Design Time Property Pages](#)

[Creating An ActiveX Document](#)

[ActiveX Document DLLs Vs. EXEs](#)

[Adding Controls To An ActiveX Document \(A Tic-Tac-Toe Example\)](#)

[Handling Constituent Control Events In An ActiveX Document](#)

[Testing An ActiveX Document](#)

[Creating ActiveX Documents That Run Outside Visual Basic](#)

[Distributed Computing: ActiveX Documents And Integrated Browsers](#)

[Making ActiveX Document Properties Persistent \(PropertyBag Object\)](#)

[Chapter 21 Visual Basic And The Internet: Web Browsing, Email, HTTP, FTP, And DHTML](#)

[In Depth](#)

[Creating A Web Browser](#)

[Creating A Dynamic HTML Page](#)

[Working With Email](#)

[Using FTP](#)

[Using HTTP](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Creating A Web Browser](#)

[Specifying URLs In A Web Browser](#)

[Adding Back And Forward Buttons To A Web Browser](#)

[Adding Refresh, Home, And Stop Buttons To A Web Browser](#)

[Creating DHTML Pages](#)

[Adding Text To DHTML Pages](#)

[Adding Images To DHTML Pages](#)

[Adding HTML Controls To DHTML Pages](#)

[Adding ActiveX Controls To DHTML Pages](#)

[Adding Tables To DHTML Pages](#)

[Adding Hyperlinks To DHTML Pages](#)

[Using MAPI Controls To Support Email](#)

[Sending Email From Visual Basic](#)

[Reading Email In Visual Basic](#)

[Using The Internet Transfer Control For FTP And HTTP Operations](#)

[Handling FTP Operations In Visual Basic](#)

[Handling HTTP Operations In Visual Basic](#)

[Chapter 22 Multimedia](#)

[In Depth](#)

[The Multimedia MCI Control](#)

[Using The Multimedia Control From Code](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Using The Animation Control](#)

[Adding A Multimedia Control To A Program](#)

[Setting The Device Type And Opening The Device](#)

[Setting File Information And Opening Files](#)

[Setting A Multimedia Control's Time Format](#)

[Controlling The Multimedia Control From Code](#)

[Stopping And Pausing The Multimedia Control](#)

[Displaying The Multimedia Control's Status](#)

[Closing The Multimedia Control](#)

[Playing CDs From Your CD-ROM Drive](#)

Playing WAV Files

Playing MID Files

Playing AVI Files

Playing MPG Files

Keeping Track Of Multimedia Command Execution Using Notification

Handling Multimedia Errors

Stepping A Multimedia Control Forward Or Backward Frame By Frame

Starting From And To In A Multimedia Control

Making The Multimedia Control Wait

Multimedia Without Multimedia Controls

Chapter 23 Connecting To The Windows API And Visual C++

In Depth

Declaring And Using DLL Procedures In Visual Basic

Handling C/C++ And Windows Data Types

What's Available In The Windows API?

Immediate Solutions

Getting Or Creating A Device Context (Including The Whole Screen)

Drawing Lines In A Device Context

Drawing Ellipses In A Device Context

Drawing Rectangles In A Device Context

Setting Drawing Colors And Styles (Using Pens)

Setting Drawing Modes (ROP2)

Handling The Mouse Outside Your Program's Window

Copying Bitmaps Between Device Contexts Quickly

Capturing Images From The Screen

Getting A Window Handle For Any Window On The Screen

Getting A Window's Text

Playing Sounds With API Functions

Allocating Memory And Storing Data

Reading Data From Memory And Deallocating Memory

Making A Window Topmost

Determining Free And Total Disk Space

Determining The Windows Directory

Connecting To Visual C++

Chapter 24 Databases: Using DAO, RDO, And ADO

In Depth

What Are Databases?

DAO

RDO

ADO

The Data-Bound Controls

Immediate Solutions

Creating And Managing Databases With The Visual Data Manager

Creating A Table With The Visual Data Manager

Creating A Field With The Visual Data Manager

Entering Data In A Database With The Visual Data Manager

Adding A Data Control To A Program

Opening A Database With The Data Control

Connecting A Data Control To A Bound Control

Registering An ODBC Source

Opening A Database With A Remote Data Control

Connecting A Remote Data Control To A Bound Control

Opening A Database With An ADO Data Control

Connecting An ADO Data Control To A Bound Control

The Data Form Wizard: Creating A Data Form

Using Database Control Methods: Adding, Deleting, And Modifying Records

Adding Records To Databases

Deleting Records In Databases

Refreshing A Data Control

Updating A Database With Changes

Moving To The Next Record

Moving To The Previous Record

Moving To The First Record

Moving To The Last Record

The Data-Bound Controls: From Text Boxes To Flex Grids

The ADO Data-Bound Controls

Chapter 25 Working With Database Objects In Code

In Depth

DAO

RDO

ADO

Immediate Solutions

A Full-Scale DAO Example

Using The Daocode Example To Create And Edit A Database

DAO: Creating A Database

[DAO: Creating A Table With A TableDef Object](#)

[DAO: Adding Fields To A TableDef Object](#)

[DAO: Adding An Index To A TableDef Object](#)

[DAO: Creating A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Opening A Database](#)

[DAO: Adding A Record To A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Editing A Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Updating A Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Moving To The First Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Moving To The Last Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Moving To The Next Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Deleting A Record In A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Sorting A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Searching A Record Set](#)

[DAO: Executing SQL](#)

[A Full-Scale RDO Example](#)

[RDO: Opening A Connection](#)

[RDO: Creating A Result Set](#)

[RDO: Moving To The First Record In A Result Set](#)

[RDO: Moving To The Last Record In A Result Set](#)

[RDO: Moving To The Next Record In A Result Set](#)

[RDO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Result Set](#)

[RDO: Executing SQL](#)

[A Full-Scale ADO Example](#)

[ADO: Opening A Connection](#)

[ADO: Creating A Record Set From A Connection](#)

[ADO: Binding Controls To Record Sets](#)

[ADO: Adding A Record To A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Refreshing The Record Set](#)

[ADO: Updating A Record In A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Moving To The First Record In A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Moving To The Last Record In A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Moving To The Next Record In A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Deleting A Record In A Record Set](#)

[ADO: Executing SQL In A Record Set](#)

[Chapter 26 OLE](#)

[In Depth](#)

[Linking Vs. Embedding](#)

[Immediate Solutions](#)

[Adding An OLE Control To A Form](#)

[Creating And Embedding An OLE Object At Design Time](#)

[Linking Or Embedding An Existing Document At Design Time](#)

[Autosizing An OLE Control](#)

[Determining How An Object Is Displayed In An OLE Container Control](#)

[Using The OLE Control's Pop-Up Menus At Design Time](#)

[Inserting An OLE Object Into An OLE Control At Runtime](#)

[Deactivating OLE Objects](#)

[Using Paste Special To Insert A Selected Part Of A Document Into An OLE Control](#)

[How To Activate The OLE Objects In Your Program](#)

Activating OLE Objects With A Pop-Up Menu That Lists All OLE Verbs

Activating OLE Objects From Code

Is An Object Linked Or Embedded?

Handling Multiple OLE Objects

Using OLE Control Arrays To Handle Multiple OLE Objects

Loading New OLE Controls At Runtime

Dragging OLE Objects In A Form

Deleting OLE Objects

Copying And Pasting OLE Objects With The Clipboard

Zooming OLE Objects

Saving And Retrieving Embedded Object s Data

Handling OLE Object Updated Events

Disabling In-Place Editing

Chapter 27 Creating Code Components (OLE Automation)

In Depth

Code Components: Classes And Objects

Code Components And Threads

Immediate Solutions

Using A Code Component From A Client Application

Creating An Object From A Class

Using A Code Component s Properties And Methods

Creating A Code Component

Setting A Code Component s Project Type: In-Process Or Out-Of-Process

Adding A Property To A Code Component

Adding A Get/Let Property To A Code Component

Adding A Method To A Code Component

Passing Arguments To A Code Component Method

Passing Optional Arguments To A Code Component Method

Testing A Code Component With A Second Instance Of Visual Basic

Creating And Registering An In-Process Code Component

Creating And Registering An Out-Of-Process Code Component

Using The Class Initialize Event

Using The Class Terminate Event

Global Objects: Using Code Components Without Creating An Object

Destroying A Code Component Object

Using Forms From Code Components

Creating Dialog Box Libraries In Code Components

Designing Multithreaded In-Process Components

Designing Multithreaded Out-Of-Process Components

Chapter 28 Advanced Form, Control, And Windows Registry Handling

In Depth

Drag And Drop And OLE Drag And Drop

The Windows Registry

Immediate Solutions

Passing Controls To Procedures

Passing Control Arrays To Procedures

Determining The Active Control

Determining Control Type At Runtime

Creating/Loading New Controls At Runtime

Changing Control Tab Order

Changing Control Stacking Position With Z-Order

Drag/Drop: Dragging Controls

Drag/Drop: Dropping Controls

Handling Self-Drops When Dragging And Dropping

Drag/Drop: Handling DragOver Events

OLE Drag/Drop: Dragging Data

OLE Drag/Drop: Dropping Data

OLE Drag/Drop: Reporting The Drag/Drop Outcome

Using The Lightweight Controls

Passing Forms To Procedures

Determining The Active Form

Using The Form Object's Controls Collection

Using the Forms Collection

Setting A Form's Startup Position

Keeping A Form's Icon Out Of The Windows 95 Taskbar

Handling Keystrokes In A Form Before Controls Read Them

Making A Form Immovable

Showing Modal Forms

Saving Values In The Windows Registry

Getting Values From The Windows Registry

Getting All Registry Settings

Deleting A Registry Setting

Chapter 29 Error Handling And Debugging

In Depth

Testing Your Programs

Immediate Solutions

Writing Error Handlers

Using On Error GoTo *Label*

Using On Error GoTo *line#*

Using On Error Resume Next

Using On Error GoTo 0

Using Resume In Error Handlers

Using Resume*Label* In Error Handlers

Using Resume*line#* In Error Handlers

Using Resume Next In Error Handlers

Getting An Error's Error Code

Getting An Error's Description

Determining An Error's Source Object

Handling Errors In DLLs: The LastDLLError Property

Creating An Intentional (User-Defined) Error

Nested Error Handling

Creating An Error Object Directly In Visual Basic

Trappable Cancel Errors In Common Dialogs

Debugging In Visual Basic

Setting Debugging Breakpoints

Single-Stepping While Debugging

Examining Variables And Expressions

Adding Debug Watch Windows

Using The Immediate Window While Debugging

Clearing All Debugging Breakpoints

Executing Code Up To The Cursor While Debugging

Skipping Over Statements While Debugging

Chapter 30 Deploying Your Program: Creating Setup Programs, Help Files, And Online Registration

In Depth

Setup Programs

Help Files

Online Registration

The Designed For Microsoft Windows Logo

Immediate Solutions

Creating Your Application's EXE File

Using The Package And Deployment Wizard

Step 1: Package Type

Step 2: Build Folder

Step 3: Files

Step 4: Distribution Type

Step 5: Installation Title

Step 6: Icons

Step 7: Install Locations

Step 8: Shared Files

Step 9: Finished!

Creating Help Files With The Microsoft Help Workshop

Creating A Help Project's RTF File

Entering Text In A Help File

Creating A Help Hotspot

Creating A Help Hotspot Target

Titling A Help Page

Adding Help Topics To The Help Index

Creating Help Pop-Up Links

Creating Help Tool Tips Targets

Compiling Help Files With The Help Workshop

Displaying A Help File From Visual Basic

Building Online Help Into Your Application

Creating Online User Registration

Uploading Online Registration Information To An FTP Server

Concluding The FTP Transfer Of The Online Registration Information

Index

Introduction

Welcome to your Visual Basic support package. That's what this book has been designed to be: your complete VB support package. Have we reached that goal yet? It's up to you to decide. If what you're looking for is not in this edition, we'll work hard to make sure it's in the next. I encourage your suggestions. Please feel free to write. We'll put in the time to make sure this book is the most complete one available on Visual Basic, edition after edition. This is the book we want you to come back to again and again.

I've used Visual Basic back before version 1 even came out publicly and have written many books on the program. I put Visual Basic to work for a very wide range of uses day after day; in fact, it's my favorite programming package of all, and it comes close to being my favorite program period. But I've never written a book on Visual Basic as complete as this one and never included as many features, documented or undocumented, examples, and tips in one volume.

This book has been designed to give you the coverage you just won't find in any other book. Other books often omit not only the larger topics, like deploying your program after you've created it and creating Help files, but also the smaller ones, like covering in depth just about every control that comes with Visual Basic, including the ActiveX controls from the MS chart control to flat scroll bars, from the serial port comm control to the Internet transfer control.

Reluctantly, I must admit that it's impossible for one volume to be utterly comprehensive on the subject of Visual Basic (impossible because it's not physically possible to bind a book that big yet), but we're trying our best. It's true that some specialty books might have more coverage on a few topics, but if you want to see more on a particular topic, write in and we'll work seriously on adding more of that topic to the next edition.

How This Book Works

The task-based format we use in this book is the one most programmers appreciate because programming is a task-based business. Rather than reading about subjects in the order the author thinks best, you can go directly to your topic of interest and find the bite-sized nugget of information you need, such as opening an FTP connection, adding a Web browser to your program, supporting online user registration from Visual Basic, adding a method to an ActiveX control, creating an error handler, flipping or stretching an image, opening an RDO database connection, playing CDs from the computer's CD-ROM drive, and literally hundreds of other topics.

And best of all, there's a working example in code for almost every programming topic in the book. The actual process of programming is not abstract; it's very applied.

So instead of vague generalities, we get down to the specifics all the specifics that give you everything you need to understand and use Visual Basic.

In the old days, programming books used to be very top-down, with chapters on subjects like conditional branching, loop structures, variable declarations, and so forth. But who sits down to program by saying, I'm about to create a conditional program flow branch? Instead, programmers are more interested in performing useful tasks, like adding buttons, menus, list boxes, or toolbars to a window; creating graphics animation; creating dialog boxes; creating setup programs; working with files; supporting online Help; and so on. And this book is written for programmers.

Because this book is written for programmers, each chapter is broken up into dozens of practical programming tasks. After selecting the chapter you want, you can turn to the table of contents, or to the first page in that chapter, to find the task you're interested in. Hundreds of tasks are covered in this book, chosen as those that programmers most want to see. In addition, this book is filled with nearly 800 examples, covering just about every Visual Basic programming area there is. These examples are bite-sized and to the point, so you don't have to wade through a dozen files trying to understand one simple topic. And they're as comprehensive as we could make them, covering every programming area in the book.

Besides programming tasks and examples, the book also has overviews designed to bring all the pieces together into a coherent whole, giving you the entire picture. The first chapter is designed specifically to give you an overview of Visual Basic itself, along with some of the best programming practices to use, including those recommended by Microsoft. Every subsequent chapter starts with an overview of the subject it covers before digging into the specifics, making sure we never get lost in details. We'll also see discussions on best programming practices, program design, program testing, what makes a professional Windows application professional, and much more, as befits a book that wants to be your complete Visual Basic support package. In addition, the CD that accompanies this book holds the code for all the major projects we develop. To open and use a project, look for the Visual Basic project file (for example, browser.vbp for the browser project) and open that project file with Visual Basic.

Besides the code from the book, note that the CD has hundreds of megabytes of tools and software, ready for you to use.

What's In This Book

Just about everything we could write about Visual Basic is in this book, and that's a lot of ground to cover. From language reference to ADO database handling, from creating Web browsers to dragging and dropping data across applications, from email applications to multimedia players, from creating ActiveX controls and ActiveX documents to setup programs, it's all here.

Here's some of what we'll see how to create in this book:

- " ActiveX controls

- " ActiveX documents
- " ADO, DAO, and RDO database applications
- " Multimedia AVI, MPG, WAV, and MID players
- " CD players that play CDs from the computer's CD-ROM drive
- " Bitmapped menu items
- " Full Web browsers
- " Pie charts, line charts, bar charts, and others
- " Code clients that call methods in programs like Microsoft Excel
- " Code components (OLE automation servers)
- " Graphics animation
- " Applications that use the Windows Common Dialogs
- " Customized toolbars with embedded controls like combo boxes
- " Data entry forms
- " Database editing applications
- " Direct connections to the Windows API
- " Direct connections to code written in Visual C++
- " Drag/drop operations
- " Graphics applications that draw arcs, circles, rectangles, lines, and more
- " Email applications
- " Error handlers
- " Applications that use the printer
- " Word processor applications
- " File handlers for text and binary data
- " FTP applications
- " Dialog boxes
- " Windows Help files
- " MDI applications
- " Pop-up menus activated with right mouse clicks

- " Application deployment
- " HTTP applications
- " Image handling: blur, emboss, engrave, flip, sweep, stretch images, and more
- " OLE applications
- " Applications that use the Windows Registry
- " List views and tree views
- " Applications that create controls at runtime
- " Mouse capture
- " OLE drags (dragging data between applications)
- " Online user registration
- " Picture clip applications
- " Setup programs
- " Screen capture
- " Spreadsheets
- " Status bars and toolbars
- " Tab strips, progress bars, and others

That's just some of what's coming up. Visual Basic is a very large topic, and the topics we'll cover number in the hundreds. And if you have suggestions for more, please send them in.

What You'll Need

To use this book profitably, you should have some experience with Visual Basic not necessarily a lot, but enough to get through Chapter 1 without trouble. We assume you have some familiarity with the essentials of Visual Basic in this book, although those essentials are not very hard to pick up. If you do have trouble with Chapter 1, you might take a look at an introductory book before proceeding.

As far as software goes, just about all you need to use this book is already in Microsoft Visual Basic (we'll use version 6 in this book). Visual Basic comes with an enormous set of tools and resources, and we'll have our hands full putting them to work.

We try to be as self-contained in this book as possible even creating the database files we'll use in examples with Visual Basic itself, not with a database application. The graphics files we use in various examples are on the CD, and the multimedia files we'll play in our multimedia examples come with Windows. Some of our OLE and OLE

automation examples use Microsoft Excel, but Excel is not essential to those examples any OLE server and OLE automation server program will do. Note that to use email from Visual Basic, you must have the Windows MAPI system installed (as represented by the Inbox icon on the Windows desktop).

Where can you go for additional Visual Basic support? You can find Visual Basic user groups all over, and more are appearing every day. You can also find Visual Basic information (and advertising) at the Microsoft Visual Basic home page at www.microsoft.com/vbasic/, free Visual Basic downloads at <http://www.microsoft.com/vbasic/download/> and technical documents (white papers) at <http://www.microsoft.com/vbasic/techmat/>

Although the content varies in accuracy, there are many Usenet groups dedicated to Visual Basic as well, but be careful what you read there there s no guarantee it s accurate. About two dozen of those groups are hosted by Microsoft, including:

- " microsoft.public.vb.bugs
- " microsoft.public.vb.addins
- " microsoft.public.vb.controls
- " microsoft.public.vb.database
- " microsoft.public.vb.installation
- " microsoft.public.vb.ole
- " microsoft.public.vb.automation
- " microsoft.public.vb.syntax

Other, non-Microsoft groups include some of these popular Usenet forums:

- " comp.lang.basic.visual
- " comp.lang.basic.visual.3rdparty
- " comp.lang.basic.visual.announce
- " comp.lang.basic.visual.database
- " comp.lang.basic.visual.misc

And that all the introduction we need it s time to start digging into Visual Basic. As we ve said, we intend this book to be your complete support package for Visual Basic, so, again, if you see something that should be covered and isn t, let us know. In the meantime, happy reading!

What's On The CD-ROM

The companion CD-ROM contains the source code and project files used in Visual Basic 6 Black Book

Also included are demo copies of the following programs:

- " CoffeeCup HTML Editor++ 98 An HTML editor with built in Java and animated GIFs.
- " CoffeeCup ImageMapper++ A fully functional image mapper.
- " Site Sweeper Program that provides an automatic, comprehensive analysis of your Web site.
- " QuickSite
- " SQL-Station
- " Setup Factory
- " AutoPlay Menu Studio
- " VBAAdvantage
- " Olectra Resizer
- " Q-Diagnostic Software

Requirements

To run all the projects discussed in the book, you will need to have Visual Basic 6 installed.

Platform

486 or higher processor

Operating System

Windows 95, 95, or NT

RAM

16MB

About The Author

Steven Holzner wrote the book on Visual Basic & a number of times. He co-authored with Peter Norton the bestsellPeter Norton's Visual Basic for Windows and Peter Norton's Guide to Visual Basic 4 for Windows 95 also wrote Advanced Visual Basic 4.0 Programming a 650-pager that came out in three editions, Internet Programming With Visual Basic as well as several other Visual Basic books. All in all, this former contributing editor for PC Magazine has authored 43 books ranging in subjects from assembly language to Visual C++, but Visual Basic is his favorite topic. Steven's books have sold over a million copies and have been translated into 15 languages around the world.

Steven was on the faculty of Cornell University for 10 years, where he earned his Ph.D. He's also been on the faculty at his undergraduate school, Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Steven loves to travel, and has been to over 30 countries, from Afghanistan to India, from Borneo to Iran, from Sweden to Thailand, with more to come. He and Nancy live in a small, picturesque town on the New England coast and spend summers in their house in the Austrian Alps.

Acknowledgments

The book you are holding is the result of many people's dedication. I would especially like to thank Stephanie Wall, Acquisitions Editor, for her hard work; Jeff Kellum, the Project Editor who did such a great job of bringing this project together and shepherding it along, as well as Wendy Littley, the Production Coordinator who kept things on track; Joanne Slike, the copyeditor who waded through everything and got it into such good shape; and April Nielsen, who did the interior design. Special thanks to Harry Henderson for the terrific tech edit. Thanks to all: great job!

Dedication

To my Sweetie, Nancy, the best editor in the world,
with more kisses than there are pages in this book
(and every one of those kisses is well deserved).

Chapter 1

Visual Basic Overview

Welcome to our big book on Visual Basic. It's no secret that Visual Basic is the favorite programming environment of many programmers. (In fact, you're reading a book written by one of those programmers right now.) When Visual Basic first appeared, it created a revolution in Windows programming, and that revolution continues to this day. Never before had Windows programming been so easy just build the program you want, right before your eyes, and then run it. Visual Basic introduced unheard-of ease to Windows programming and changed programming from a chore to something very fun.

In time, Visual Basic has gotten more complex, as well as more powerful. In this book, we're going to see how to use Visual Basic in a task-oriented way, which is the best way to write about programming. Instead of superimposing some abstract structure on the material in this book, we'll organize it the way programmers want it task by task.

This book assumes you have some familiarity with Visual Basic; when you use this book, you'll usually have some task in mind setting a program's startup form, for example, or optimizing for a specific processor and this book will provide the answer. We'll try to be as complete as possible like the frustrating recordings of frequently asked questions which never seem to address your particular problem you can access while on hold for tech support). This book is designed to be the one you come back to time and time again. It's not just to learn new techniques, but it is also to reacquaint yourself with the forgotten details of familiar methods.

We'll start with an overview of Visual Basic, taking a look at topics common to the material in the rest of the text. In this chapter, we'll create the foundation we'll rely on later as we take a look at the basics of Visual Basic, including how to create Visual Basic projects and seeing what's in such projects. We'll also get an overview of essential Visual Basic concepts like forms, controls, events, properties, methods, and so on. And we'll examine the structure of a Visual Basic program, taking a look at variables, variable scope, and modules. In other words, we're going to lay bare the anatomy of a Visual Basic program here.

We'll also take a look at programming practices common to all Visual Basic programs. This overview chapter is the place to take a look at those practices because they involve the rest of the book.

Most Visual Basic programmers do not have formal programming training and have to learn a lot of this material the hard way. As programming has matured, programmers have learned more and more about what are called best practices the

programming techniques that make robust, easily debugged programs. We'll take a look at those practices in this chapter, because they are becoming more and more essential for programmers in commercial environments these days, especially those programmers that work in teams. And we'll look at those practices from the viewpoint of programmers who program for a living; frequently there's a gap between the way best practices are taught by academics and how they are actually needed by programmers facing the prospect of writing a 20,000-line program as part of a team of programmers.

We'll start our overview chapter by creating and dissecting a Visual Basic project, jumping right into the code.

Creating A Project In Visual Basic

There are three different editions of Visual Basic:

- " The Learning Edition which is the most basic edition. This edition allows you to write many different types of programs, but lacks a number of tools that the other editions have.
- " The Professional Edition designed for professionals. This edition contains all that the Learning Edition contains and more, such as the capability to write ActiveX controls and documents.
- " The Enterprise Edition which is the most complete Visual Basic edition. This edition is targeted towards professional programmers who may work in a team and includes additional tools such as Visual SourceSafe, a version-control system that coordinates team programming.

We'll use the Enterprise Edition in this book, so if you have either of the other two editions, we might occasionally use something not supported in your Visual Basic edition. We'll try to keep such occurrences to a minimum.

Start Visual Basic now, bringing up the New Project dialog box, as shown in Figure 1.1.



Figure 1.1 Creating a new Visual Basic project.

In Figure 1.1 you see some of the project types that Visual Basic supports:

- " Standard Windows EXE programs
- " ActiveX EXE files
- " ActiveX DLLs
- " ActiveX controls
- " Programs written by the Visual Basic Application Wizard

- " Data projects
- " IIS (the Microsoft Internet Information Server) applications
- " Visual Basic add-ins
- " ActiveX document DLLs
- " ActiveX document EXE files
- " DHTML applications
- " VB Enterprise Edition controls

This list of project types indicates some of the ways Visual Basic has grown over the years. As you can see, there's a whole galaxy of power here (and we'll cover that galaxy in this book). In this case, we just want to take a look at the basics of a standard Visual Basic project, so double-click the Standard EXE item in the New Project dialog box, opening Visual Basic itself. Figure 1.2 shows the Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment (IDE). (We're going to cover all parts of the Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment in the next chapter here, we'll just use it to create our first project.)



Figure 1.2 A new Visual Basic project.

For our first example, we might create a small tic-tac-toe program using nine buttons in a form, as shown in Figure 1.3.



Figure 1.3 Designing our first project.

When the user clicks a button, we can display an `x` in the button's caption, as shown in Figure 1.4.



Figure 1.4 Clicking a button in the tic-tac-toe program to display an `x`.

If the user clicks another button, we can display an `o`, and so forth.

This example will create a program that lets us take a look at Visual Basic projects, controls, control arrays, events, properties, coding, variables, and variable scope.

To access the contents, click the chapter and section titles.

Visual Basic 6 Black Book
(Publisher: The Coriolis Group)
Author(s): Steven Holzner
ISBN: 1576102831
Publication Date: 08/01/98

[Bookmark It](#)

Search this book:

[Previous](#)[Table of Contents](#)[Next](#)

Designing The Tic-Tac-Toe Program

Using the Command Button tool in the Visual Basic toolbox, add a new command button to the main form in our program now, as shown earlier in Figure 1.2. Next, in the Properties window, change ~~Name~~ property of this button from Command1 to Command in preparation for setting up a control array, and clear its Caption property so the button appears blank.

Next, add a second button to the form, and ~~Name~~ property toCommand as well. When you do, Visual Basic opens a dialog box that states: You already have a control named Command . Do you want to set up a control array? Click Yes to create a control array, which means we will be able to refer to our controls using an index instead of simply by name.

Add a total of nine buttons to the main form in our program, arranged in a 3x3 grid similar to a standard tic-tac-toe game, give each of the buttons the ~~Command~~, and clear their captions. That completes the preliminary design now we're ready to write some code.

Coding The Tic-Tac-Toe Program

In this program, we'll toggle button captions between x and o . To start coding, double-click any button, opening the code window, as shown in Figure 1.5.

 [Figure 1.5](#) Using the Visual Basic code window.

Double-clicking a button creates an event handler subroutine named

`Command_Click()` and opens that subroutine in the code window:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)

End Sub
```

Visual Basic programs like this one are centered around events and most events occur when the user triggers them. In this case, the `Click` event is triggered when the user clicks a button, and we're passed the button's index in the control array of buttons as the `Index` parameter in `Command_Click()`, as with this line of code from the earlier snippet:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
```

When the user clicks a button, we need to know which character to display, and we'll keep track of that in a form-wide variable named `xNow`; if `xNow` is True, we should display an x, if False, an o.

To add that form-wide variable, click the (General) entry in the left drop-down list box in the code window, and add this code to the general section of our form:

```
Dim xNow
```

You can indicate the type of a variable when declaring it `With` to indicate that `xNow` is a Boolean variable, we could declare it this way:

```
Dim xNow As Boolean
```

(Declaring it without a type makes it a variant, which means it can operate as any type of variable.) The possible variable types and their ranges appear in Table 1.1.

Table 1.1

Variable types.	Bytes Of Storage
Variable	Of
Type	Storage

Range

Boolean	2	True or False
Byte	1	0 to 255
Currency	8	-922,337,203,685,477.5808 to 922,337,203,685,477.5807
Date	8	1 January 100 to 31 December 9999 and times from 0:00:00 to 23:59:59
Decimal	12	-79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335 to 79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335

Double	8	-1.79769313486232E308 to 4.94065645841247E-324 for negative values and from 4.94065645841247E-324 to 1.79769313486232E308 for positive values
Integer	2	-32,768 to 32,767
Long	4	-2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647
Object	4	N/A
Single	4	-3.402823E38 to -1.401298E-45 for negative values and from 1.401298E-45 to 3.402823E38 for positive values
String	N/A	A variable-length string can contain up to approximately 2 billion characters; a fixed-length string can contain 1 to approximately 64K characters
User-defined data type	N/A	N/A
Variant	N/A	N/A

We need to initialize that form-wide variable `xNow`, and we do that when the form first loads in the `Form_Load()` procedure, which is run when the form is first loaded. Open that procedure now by selecting the Form item in the code window's left drop-down list box, or by double-clicking the form itself; here, we just initialize `xNow` to True:

```
Private Sub Form_Load( )
```

```
If xNow Then  
    Command(Index).Caption = "x"  
Else  
    Command(Index).Caption = "o"  
End If
```

```
xNow = Not xNow
```

```
End Sub
```

And that's all we need the tic-tac-toe program is complete. Run it now, as shown in Figure 1.6, and click a few buttons. The captions toggle between x and o as they should.



Figure 1.6 Running the tic-tac-toe program.

It's not a very exciting program as it stands, of course, because it was just designed to give us a look into how Visual Basic projects work. Now we'll take a closer look at the parts of a project, starting with the one we've just created.

The Parts Of A Visual Basic Project

Projects can become quite advanced in Visual Basic, even containing subprojects of different types. From a programming point of view, however, standard Visual Basic projects usually contain just three types of items: global items, forms, and modules, as outlined in Figure 1.7.



Figure 1.7 The parts of a Visual Basic project.

Forms

Forms are familiar to all Visual Basic programmers, of course they're the templates you base windows on. Besides standard forms, Visual Basic also supports Multiple Document Interface (MDI) forms, as well as a whole number of predefined forms that we'll see in the next chapter.

Modules

Modules are collections of code and data that function something like objects in object-oriented programming (OOP), but without defining OOP characteristics like inheritance, polymorphism, and so on. The point behind modules is to enclose procedures and data in a way that hides them from the rest of the program. We'll discuss the importance of doing this later in this chapter when we cover Visual Basic programming techniques and style; breaking a large program into smaller, self-contained modules can be invaluable for creating and maintaining code.

You can think of well-designed modules conceptually as programming objects; for example, you might have a module that handles screen display that includes a dozen internal (unseen by the rest of the program) procedures and one or two procedures accessible to the rest of the program. In this way, the rest of the program only has to deal with one or two procedures, not a dozen.

Besides modules, Visual Basic also supports class modules which we'll see later in this book when we discuss how to create ActiveX components in Chapter 20. Programming with class modules will bring us much closer to true OOP programming.

Global Items

Global items are accessible to all modules and forms in a project, and you declare them with the `Public` keyword. However, Microsoft recommends that you keep the number of global items to an absolute minimum and, in fact, suggests their use only when you need to communicate between forms. One reason to avoid global variables is their accessibility from anywhere in the program; while you're working with a global variable in one part of a program, another part of the program might be busy changing that variable, giving you unpredictable results.

Now that we've gotten an overview of the major parts of a project, we'll take a look at how the parts of a project interact, which brings up the idea of scope or visibility in a project.

Project Scope

An object's scope indicates how much visibility it has throughout the project in the procedure where it's declared, throughout a form or module, or global scope (which means it's accessible everywhere). There are two types of scope in Visual Basic projects: variable scope (including object variables) and procedure scope. We'll take a look at both of them here as we continue our overview of Visual Basic projects and how the parts of those projects interact.

Variable Scope

You declare variables in a number of ways. Most often, you use the **Dim** statement to declare a variable. If you do not specify the variable type when you use **Dim**, it creates a variant, which can operate as any variable type. You can specify the variable type using the **As** keyword like this:

```
Dim IntegerValue As Integer
```

Besides **Dim**, you can also use **ReDim** to redimension space for dynamic arrays, **Private** to restrict it to a module or form, **Public** to make it global (that is, accessible to all modules or forms), and **Static** to make sure its value doesn't change between procedure calls. These ways of declaring variables are summarized in Table 1.2.

Table 1.2

Visual
Basic
declaring Does This
statements.
Keyword

Dim	Using Dim alone creates variants. Use the As keyword to specify variable type.
Private	Makes variable available only in the current form/module.
Public	Makes variable global (variable is available to the rest of program).
ReDim	Reallocates storage space for dynamic array variables.
Static	Variable preserves its value between procedure calls.
Type	Declares a user type.

There are three levels of variable scope in Visual Basic: at the procedure level, at the form or module level, and at the global level. Schematically, Figure 1.8 shows how project scope works.



Figure 1.8 Schematic of Visual Basic project scope.

When you're designing your program, Microsoft suggests you limit your variables to the minimum possible scope in order to make things simpler and to avoid conflicts. Next, we'll take a look at the other type of scope: procedure scope.

Procedure Scope

As with variables, you can restrict the scope of procedures, and you do that with the **Private**, **Public**, **Friend**, and **Static** keywords. The **Private** and **Public** keywords are the main keywords here; using them, you can specify if a subroutine or function is private to the module or form in which it is declared or public (that is, global) to all forms and modules. You use these keywords before the **Sub** or **Function** keyword.

keywords like this:

```
Private Function Returns7()
    Dim Retval
    Retval = 7
    Returns7 = Retval
End Function
```

You can also declare procedures and procedures with the friend keyword.

Friend procedures are usually used in class modules (they are not available in standard modules, although you can declare them in forms) to declare that the procedure is available outside the class, but not outside the current project. This restricts those functions from being called if the current project serves as an OLE automation server, for example.

Besides the earlier declarations, you can also declare procedures ~~Statics~~, which means that the variables in the procedure do not change between procedure calls, and that can be very useful in cases like this, where we support a counter variable that is incremented each time a function is called:

```
Static Function Counter()
    Dim CounterValue as Integer
    CounterValue = CounterValue + 1
    Counter = CounterValue
End Sub
```

That completes our overview of projects in memory now we've seen how such projects are organized, what parts they have, and what scope their parts have. We'll take a look at storing projects on disk next.

Projects On Disk

Now that we've created our first project the tic-tac-toe project we'll save it to disk. Turn to Visual Basic now and select the Save Project As item in the Visual Basic File menu to save our new project to disk.

Visual Basic first saves the files associated with the project, and places a Save File As dialog box on the screen to save the program's form, which Visual Basic gives the default name of Form1.frm. Change that name to tictactoe.frm now, and save it to disk (in this book, we'll save projects in the C:\vbbb directory, so this project will go into the C:\vbbb\tictactoe directory).

This completes our overview of the standard parts of a standard Visual Basic project. We've seen simple projects work in Visual Basic now. Besides this simple kind of project, you can design quite advanced projects using a tool like the Visual Basic Application Wizard, and we'll take a look at that.

Using The Visual Basic Application Wizard

The Visual Basic Application Wizard is a Visual Basic add-in that lets you use some advanced project features when you first create a project. The Application Wizard is usually used by beginning programmers, but we'll take a look at it here to get an idea of what more involved projects can look like.

You start the Application Wizard from the New Project box, opened either from the New item in the File menu or when Visual Basic first starts. The Application Wizard appears in Figure 1.10.



Figure 1.10 The Visual Basic Application Wizard.

TIP: In Figure 1.10, the Application Wizard is asking for a profile. You can save Application Wizard profiles (something like project templates) in the last step of the Application Wizard, which lets you load all the options you've specified. Loading them in later can save you some time if you just want to change a few settings.

Click the Next button in the Application Wizard now, opening the next screen, shown in Figure 1.11. The Multiple Document Interface (MDI) option is already selected, and we'll leave it selected. Click the Next button to move to the next screen.



Figure 1.11 Selecting MDI support in the Visual Basic Application Wizard.

The next screen lets you select menu options, the next screen toolbar options, and the one after resource options. Keep clicking Next to accept all the defaults. The Internet Connectivity screen, which opens next, lets you add a Web browser window to your project if you like. This can be very useful; click Yes as shown in Figure 1.12, then click Next again to move on.



Figure 1.12 Adding a Web browser with the Visual Basic Application Wizard.

The next step in the Application Wizard, as shown in Figure 1.13, lets you add a splash screen. A splash screen comes up while the program is loading and can give the impression that something is really happening while the program is loaded. We add a splash screen to our program by selecting the Screen At Application Start Up option.

Figure 1.13 Adding a splash screen with the Visual Basic Application Wizard.

TIP: Originally, splash screens were very popular in fact, virtually every piece of Microsoft software used one these days but users are catching on that they are just razzle-dazzle.

The next screen asks about database connectivity; click Next to open the last Application Wizard screen shown in Figure 1.14.

Figure 1.14 Finishing a Visual Basic Application Wizard project.

Click Finish in the last Application Wizard screen now to create the project, and run that project, as shown in Figure 1.15.

Figure 1.15 Running our Visual Basic Application Wizard program.

This new program has a great deal of programming power. As you can see in Figure 1.15, this program is an MDI program, capable of opening multiple documents and even displaying a Web browser in its own window. In fact, you can even use the File menu's Open, Save, and Save As items to open and close files.

There's a lot of power here, and we'll see how to do all these things ourselves in this book. It's important to take a look at the project file for this project, where we see that this project makes use of these controls:

- " Common dialogs (COMDLG32.OCX)
- " Common windows controls (COMCTL32.OCX)
- " Rich text control (RICHTEX32.OCX)
- " Web browser DLL (SHDOCVW.DLL)

Here is the code snippet:

```
Type=Exe
```

```
Reference=*\\G{00020430-0000-0000-C000-
```

```
00000000046}#2.0#0#...\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM\\STDOLE2.TLB#OLE Automation
```

```
Module=Module1; Module1.bas
```

```
Form=frmMain.frm
```

```
Object={F9043C88-F6F2-101A-A3C9-08002B2F49FB}#1.2#0; COMDLG32.OCX
```

```
Object={6B7E6392-850A-101B-AFC0-4210102A8DA7}#1.3#0; COMCTL32.OCX
Form=frmSplash.frm
Object={3B7C8863-D78F-101B-B9B5-04021C009402}#1.1#0; RICHTX32.OCX
Form=frmDocument.frm
Object={EAB22AC0-30C1-11CF-A7EB-0000C05BAE0B}#1.1#0; SHDOCVW.DLL
Form=frmBrowser.frm
Startup="Sub Main"
...

```

Note the last of the statements `Startup= Sub Main`. This indicates that this program starts with `Main()` procedure, not a startup form (we'll see more about this in the next chapter). `Main()` procedure, the program first loads the splash screen, then the MDI frame window. The MDI frame window in turn loads the first child window, based on the `frmDocument` form. Taking a look at `frmDocument.frm`, which appears in Listing 1.3, indicates that this child window displays a rich text control (as you can see by the inclusion of the rich text control), which in fact handles all the text. As you can see, taking apart projects file by file this removes all the mystery, and it's a good skill for the Visual Basic programmer to have.

Listing 1.3 frmDocument.frm

```

VERSION 6.00
Object = "3B7C8863-D78F-101B-B9B5-04021C009402">#1.1#0"; "RICHTEX32.OCX"
Begin VB.Form frmDocument
    Caption = "frmDocument"
    ClientHeight = 3195
    ClientLeft = 60
    ClientTop = 345
    ClientWidth = 4680
    LinkTopic = "Form1"
    MDIChild = -1 'True
    ScaleHeight = 3195
    ScaleWidth = 4680
    Begin RichTextLib.RichTextBox rtfText
        Height = 2000
        Left = 100
        TabIndex = 0
        Top = 100
        Width = 3000
        _ExtentX = 5292
        _ExtentY = 3519
        _Version = 393216
        Enabled = -1 'True
        ScrollBars = 3
        RightMargin = 8e6
        TextRTF = $"frmDocument.frx":0000
    End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "frmDocument"

```

```

Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Private Sub rtfText_SelChange()
    fMainForm.tbToolBar.Buttons("Bold").Value = IIf(rtfText.SelBold, _
        tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)
    fMainForm.tbToolBar.Buttons("Italic").Value = IIf(rtfText.SelItalic, _
        tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)
    fMainForm.tbToolBar.Buttons("Underline").Value = _
        IIf(rtfText.SelUnderline, tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)
    fMainForm.tbToolBar.Buttons("Align Left").Value = _
        IIf(rtfText.SelAlignment = rtfLeft, tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)
    fMainForm.tbToolBar.Buttons("Align Right").Value = _
        IIf(rtfText.SelAlignment = rtfRight, tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)
    fMainForm.tbToolBar.Buttons("Center").Value = _
        IIf(rtfText.SelAlignment = rtfCenter, tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)
End Sub

```

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Form_Resize
End Sub

```

```

Private Sub Form_Resize()
    On Error Resume Next
    rtfText.Move 100, 100, Me.ScaleWidth - 200, Me.ScaleHeight - 200
    rtfText.RightMargin = rtfText.Width - 400
End Sub

```

That completes our overview of Visual Basic projects for now, although there will be more about projects throughout the book. We'll turn to an overview of another kind now: discussing topics that impact every chapter in the book. In this overview, we're going to cover general Visual Basic programming issues, including Visual Basic conventions, best coding practices, and code optimization. This discussion touches practically every aspect of our book, so it's best to consider it first.

Visual Basic Programming Conventions

Microsoft has set up a number of conventions for programming Visual Basic, including naming conventions. These conventions are not necessary if you program alone, but they can still be helpful. If you program as part of a team, these conventions can be very valuable, because they provide clues to a variable's scope for someone reading your code. Because many Visual Basic programmers work in teams these days, we'll look at the Microsoft programming conventions here, beginning with variable scope prefixes.

Variable Scope Prefixes

You use a variable prefix in front of its name to indicate something about that variable. For example, have a global variable named `ErrorCount`, you can use the `g` prefix to indicate that that variable is global to the way: `gErrorCount`. Microsoft has established scope prefixes for variables as shown in Table 1.3.

Table 1.3 Variable scope prefix conventions

Global	g
Module-level or form-level	m
Local to procedure	None

The scope prefixes come before all other prefixes and there are many other types, such as variable control prefixes, and so on. We'll continue with variable prefixes.

Variable Prefixes

Ideally, variable names should be prefixed to indicate their data type. Table 1.4 lists the prefixes that Microsoft recommends for all the Visual Basic data types.

Table 1.4 Variable prefixes

Type	Prefix
Boolean	bln
Byte	byt
Collection object	col
Currency	cur
Date (Time)	dtm
Double	dbl
Error	err
Integer	int
Long	lng
Object	obj
Single	sng
String	str
User-defined type	udt
Variant	vnt

Here are some prefixed variable names using the recommended variable prefixes:

`blnTrueFalse` ' Boolean

```
intCounter      ' Integer  
sngDividend    ' Single
```

Using variable prefixes this way provides some clue as to the variable's type, and that can be extra helpful if someone else will be reading your code. Note that it's also a good idea to prefix function names using the above prefixes to indicate the return type of the function.

Besides variable prefixes, Microsoft also has a set of prefixes for the standard control types.

Control Prefixes

The suggested Microsoft control prefixes appear in Table 1.5. As you can see, there is a suggested prefix for every standard type of control.

Table 1.5 Control

prefixes.

Type Prefix

3D panel	pnl
ADO data	ado
Animated button	ani
Checkbox	chk
Combo box, drop-down list box	cbo
Command button	cmd
Common dialog	dlg
Communications	com
Control (used within procedures when the specific type is unknown)	ctr
Data	dat
Data-bound combo box	dbcbo
Data-bound grid	dbgrd
Data-bound list box	dblst
Data combo	dbc
Data grid	dgd
Data list	dbl
Data repeater	drp
Date picker	dtp
Directory list box	dir
Drive list box	drv
File list box	fil
Flat scroll bar	fsb
Form	frm
Frame	fra
Gauge	gau
Graph	gra
Grid	grd

Header	hdr
Hierarchical flex grid	flex
Horizontal scroll bar	hsb
Image	img
Image combo	imgcbo
Image list	ils
Label	lbl
Lightweight checkbox	lwchk
Lightweight combo box	lw.cbo
Lightweight command button	lw.cmd
Lightweight frame	lw.fra
Lightweight horizontal scroll bar	lw.hsb
Lightweight list box	lw.lst
Lightweight option button	lw.opt
Lightweight text box	lw.txt
Lightweight vertical scroll bar	lw.vsb
Line	lin
List box	lst
List view	lvw
MAPI message	mpm
MAPI session	mps
MCI	mci
Menu	mnu
Month view	mvw
MS chart	ch
MS flex grid	msg
MS tab	mst
OLE container	ole
Option button	opt
Picture box	pic
Picture clip	clp
Progress bar	prg
Remote data	rd
Rich text box	rtf
Shape	shp
Slider	sld
Spin	spn
Status bar	sta

System info	sys
Tab strip	tab
Text box	txt
Timer	tmr
Toolbar	tlb
Tree view	tre
Up-down	upd
Vertical scroll bar	vsb

If you work with databases, take a look at Table 1.6, which holds the prefixes for Data Access Objects (DAO).

Table 1.6 Data Access Object prefixes.

Database Object	Prefix
-----------------	--------

Container	con
Database	db
DBEngine	dbe
Document	doc
Field	fld
Group	grp
Index	ix
Parameter	prm
QueryDef	qry
Recordset	rec
Relation	rel
TableDef	tbd
User	usr
Workspace	wsp

Besides the prefixes in Table 1.6, Microsoft recommends prefixes for menus and constants as well, and we'll take a look at these now to round off our discussion on this topic.

Menu And Constant Prefixes

Microsoft recommends that you prefix menu controls with and then the menu name followed by the menu item name. For example, the File menu's Open item would be named `mnuFileOpen`, and the Edit menu's Cut item would be named `mnuEditCut`. Microsoft also recommends that constant names (you declare constants

with the Const statement) should be mixed case with capitals starting each word, for example:

```
Const DiskDriveNumber = 1           ' Constant
Const MaximumItemCount = 1024      ' Constant
```

TIP: Although standard Visual Basic constants do not include data type and scope information, prefixes like s, g, and m can be useful in understanding the value or scope of a constant.

That completes the prefix and naming conventions. As you can see, there are prefixes for just about every type of programming construct available. You're not constrained to use them, but if you work in a team, they can be extremely helpful.

Microsoft also has a set of suggestions on commenting your code, and we'll take a look at those suggestions now.

Code Commenting Conventions

In general, you should add a new comment when you declare a new and important variable, or wish to make clear some implementation method. Ideally, procedures should only have one purpose and be named clearly enough so that excessive comments are not required. In addition, procedures should begin with a comment describing what the procedure does, and that comment should be broken up into various sections. The Microsoft recommendations for those sections appear in Table 1.7; note that not all sections may be applicable for all procedures.

Table 1.7
Procedures
for starting
comment
block
sections.
Section
Heading

	Purpose	What the procedure does
Assumptions	List of each external variable, control, open file, or other element that is not obvious	
Effects	List of each affected external variable, control, or file and the effect it has (only if this is not obvious)	
Inputs	Each argument that may not be obvious; arguments are on a separate line with inline comments	
Returns	Explanation of the values returned by functions	

Here's an example showing how to set up a comment preceding a function `dblSquare()`:

```
' ****
' dblSquare()
' Purpose: Squares a number
' Inputs: sngSquareMe, the value to be squared
' Returns: The input value squared
' ****
Function dblSquare() (sngSquareMe As Integer) As Double
    dblSquare = sngSquareMe * sngSquareMe      'Use *, not ^2, for speed
End Function
```

TIP: You might notice that `dblSquare()` takes a Single parameter and returns a Double value; that's because squaring a Single can create a larger number, which might not fit into a Single value, or add more decimal places. Note also that we multiply the parameter `sngSquareMe` by itself to square it instead of using the exponentiation operator, because doing so saves a lot of processor time.

Note that it's particularly important to list all the global variables a procedure uses or affects in the initial comment block, because they are not listed in the parameter list.

That completes our overview of the Visual Basic programming conventions. We'll finish the chapter with a look at what we might call best coding practices targeted at Visual Basic. Through the years some definite programming practices have proven themselves better than others, and we'll take some of them now before digging into the rest of the book.

Best Coding Practices In Visual Basic

The full construction of a commercial program is usually a project that involves many clear and distinct steps. There have been whole volumes written on this topic, which are usually only interesting if you're a software project manager (or write computer books and have to know the details so you can write about them!). Such books get pretty involved, encompassing ideas like module coupling and cohesion, bottom-up composition, incremental integration, and much more.

On the whole, however, one can break the software design process into steps like these (note that the explanation of each step is very flexible; there is no one-size-fits-all here):

- " Requirements analysis Identify the problem for the software to tackle.
- " Creating specification Determine what exactly the software should do.
- " Overall design Break the overall project into parts, modules, and so on.

- " Detailed design Design the actual data structures, procedures, and so on .
- " Coding Go from PDL to code.
- " Debugging Solve design-time, compilation, and obvious errors.
- " Testing Try to break the software.
- " Maintenance React to user feedback and keep testing

Each of these steps may have many subparts, of course. (For example, the maintenance part might take as much time as the rest of the project taken together.)

As the design process continues, the model of what the program does evolves. You use this model to conceptual handle on the software (while keeping in mind that models are usually flawed at some point). Keeping the model in mind, then, many programmers use a program design language to start the coding process.

Program Design Language

Everyone seems to think that programmers use flowcharts, but the reality is usually different (flowcharts are nice to show to nonprogrammers, though). One tool that commercial programmers do find useful is a program design language (PDL). Although there are formal specifications for PDL, many programmers simply regard this step as writing out what a program does in English as a sort of pseudo-code.

For example, if we want to create a new function named dblSqrt() that returns a number's square root, we might write its PDL this way in English, where we break what the function does into steps:

```
Function dblSqrt()
    Check if the input parameter is negative
        If the input parameter is negative, return -1
        If the input parameter is positive, return its square root
End Function
```

When you actually write the code, the PDL can often become the comments in that code; for example, here's the completed function:

```
' ****
' dblSqrt( )
' Purpose: Returns the passed parameter's square root
' Inputs: dblParameter, the parameter whose square root we need
' Returns: The input value's square root
' ****
Function dblSqrt(dblParameter As Double) As Double
```

```
'Check if the input parameter is negative
If dblParameter < 0 Then
    'If the input parameter is negative, return -1
    dblSqrt = -1

Else
    'If the input parameter is positive, return its square root
    dblSqrt = Sqr(dblParameter)

End If
End Function
```

In this way, developing your program using PDL, where every line of PDL has one (and only one) specific task, can be very useful. So much for overview let's turn to particulars that affect us as Visual Basic programmers.

Coding To Get The Most From Visual Basic

In this section, we'll discuss some best practices coding for Visual Basic. All of these practices come from professional programmers, but of course whether you implement them or not is up to you. Here we go:

" Avoid magic numbers when you can. A magic number is a number (excluding 0 or 1) that's hardwired right into your code like this:

```
Function blnCheckSize(dblParameter As Double) As Boolean

    If dblParameter > 1024 Then
        blnCheckSize = True
    Else
        blnCheckSize = False
    End If
End Function
```

Here, 1024 is a magic number. It's better to declare such numbers as constants, especially if you have a number of them. When it's time to change your code, you just have to change the constant declaration in one place, not try to find all the magic numbers scattered around your code.

" Be modular. Putting code and data together into modules hides it from the rest of the program, makes it easier to debug, makes it easier to work with conceptually, and even makes load-time of procedures in the same module quicker. Being modular also called information-hiding (and encapsulation in true OOP) is the backbone of working with larger programs. Divide and conquer is the idea here.

" Program defensively. An example of programming defensively would be to check data passed to you in a procedure before using it. This can save a bug from propagating throughout your program and help pinpoint its source. Make no assumptions.

" Visual Basic procedures should have only one purpose, ideally. This is also an aid in larger programs when things start to get complex. Certainly if a procedure has two distinct tasks, consider breaking it up.

" Avoid deep nesting of conditionals or loops. Debugging deeply nested conditionals visually is very, very inefficient. If you need to, place some of the inner loops or conditionals in new procedures and call them. Three levels of nesting should be about

the maximum.

" Use access procedures to protect sensitive ~~data~~^{This is part of programming defensively.)} Access procedures are also called Get/Set procedures, and they are called by the rest of the program when you want to work with sensitive data. If the rest of the program must call ~~Set()~~^{Set} procedure to set that data, you can test to make sure that the new value is acceptable, providing a screen between that data and the rest of the program.

" Ideally, variables should always be defined with the smallest scope possible^{Global} variables can create enormously complex conditions. (In fact, Microsoft recommends that global variables should be used only when there is no other convenient way to share data between forms.)

" Do not pass global variables to procedures^{If you pass global variables to} procedures, the procedure you pass that variable to might give it one name (as a passed parameter) and also reference it as a global variable. This can lead to some serious bugs, because now the procedure has two different names for the variable.

" Use the & operator when linking strings and +^{The operator when working with} numerical values^{This is per Microsoft's recommendations.}

" When you create a long string, use the underscore line-continuation character to create multiple lines of code^{This is so you can read or debug the string easily. For example:}

```
Dim Msg As String
Msg = "Well, there is a problem " _
    &"with your program. I am not sure " _
    &"what the problem is, but there is " _
    &"definitely something wrong."
```

" Avoid using variants if you can^{Although convenient, they waste not only memory but time.} You may be surprised by this. Remember, however, that Visual Basic has to convert the data in a variant to the proper type when it learns what is required, and that conversion actually takes a great deal of time.

" Indent your code with four spaces per Microsoft's recommendation^{Believe it or not, there have been serious studies undertaken here, and 2 to 4 spaces were found to be best. Be consistent.}

" Finally, watch out for one big Visual Basic pitfall: misspelled variables^{Because you don't have to declare a variable in Visual Basic to use it, you might end up surprised when Visual Basic creates a new variable after you've misspelled a variable's name. For example, here's some perfectly legal code modified from our tic-tac-toe project that compiles and runs, but because of a misspelling for xNow it doesn't work at all:}

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If xNow Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If

    xNoww = Not xNow

End Sub
```

Because Visual Basic treats ~~xNow~~ as a legal variable, this kind of bug is very hard to find when debugging.

TIP: Because Visual Basic auto-declares variables, it's usually better to use variable names that say something (like CurrentIndex) instead of ones that don't (like intDD35A) to avoid declaring a variable through misspelling its name. A better idea is to use Option Explicit to make sure all variables must be explicitly declared.

If you work in teams, use version control. There are several well-known utilities that help programmers work in teams, such as Microsoft's Visual SourceSafe. This utility, which is designed to work with programming environments like Visual Basic, restricts access to code so that two programmers don't end up modifying independent copies of the same file.

That's it for our best practices tips for now. We'll see more throughout the book.

Getting Down To The Details

That completes our overview of topics common to the rest of the book. In this chapter, we've seen an overview of a Visual Basic project, including what goes into a project, how it's stored on disk, and how the idea of scope works in a project. We've also seen a number of Visual Basic programming considerations, from naming conventions to best programming practices, including a list of Visual Basic-specific topics.

We're ready for the rest of the book, and we'll turn to the first natural topic now—the Visual Basic IDE.

Chapter 2

The Visual Basic Development Environment

If you need an immediate solution to:

Selecting IDE Colors, Fonts, And Font Sizes

Aligning, Sizing, And Spacing Multiple Controls

Setting A Startup Form Or Procedure

Using Visual Basic Predefined Forms, Menus, And Projects

Setting A Project's Version Information

Setting An EXE File's Name And Icon

Displaying The Debug, Edit, And Form Editor Toolbars

Turning Bounds Checking On Or Off

Checking For Pentium Errors

Managing Add-Ins

Adding ActiveX Controls And Insertable Objects To Projects

Customizing Menus And Toolbars

Setting Forms' Initial Positions

Enabling Or Disabling Quick Info, Auto List Members, Data Tips, And Syntax Checking

Displaying Or Hiding IDE Windows

Searching An Entire Project For Specific Text Or A Variable's Definition

Optimizing For Fast Code, Small Code, Or A Particular Processor

Adding And Removing Forms, Modules, And Class Modules

Using Bookmarks

Using The Object Browser

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to get started with Visual Basic at the logical place to start: the Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment (IDE). The IDE is where you do your programming work in Visual Basic just as the name says, you develop your projects in the Integrated Development Environment.

Over the years, the IDE has become more powerful, and with that power has come complexity. The IDE used to be more or less invisible to the programmer, but now that there are all kinds of project options, ActiveX controls to add, version resource data to set, and so much more, the IDE has become a worthy object of study. In this chapter, we'll cover IDE tasks so you don't have to dig out that information when you have more important things to do. We'll start with an overview of the IDE, and then go directly to the Practical Guide for the IDE, showing how to get things done.

Overview Of The Integrated Development Environment

The Visual Basic IDE appears in Figure 2.1, and as a Visual Basic programmer, this is where you'll spend most of your programming time. If you're not already familiar with the parts of the IDE, you will be in time.



Figure 2.1 The Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment.

The Visual Basic IDE has three distinct states: Design, Run, and Debug. The current state appears in Visual Basic's title bar. This chapter concentrates on the Design state. We'll cover the Debug state later in the book. (In the Run state, Visual Basic is in the background while your program runs.) It's the Design state that's become complex over the years, and we'll lay it bare in this chapter.

The IDE is composed of these parts:

- " The menu bar
- " The toolbar
- " The Project Explorer
- " The Properties window
- " The Form Layout window
- " The toolbox
- " Form designers
- " Code windows

We'll take a look at all of these parts in this overview.

The Menu Bar

The menu bar presents the Visual Basic menus. Here's a list of those menus and what they do:

- " File File handling and printing; also used to make EXE files
 - " Edit Standard editing functions, undo, searches
 - " View Displays or hides windows and toolbars
 - " Project Sets project properties, adds/removes forms and modules, and adds/removes references and components
 - " Format Aligns or sizes controls
 - " Debug Starts/stops debugging and stepping through programs
 - " Run Starts a program, or compiles and starts it
 - " Tools Adds procedures, starts the Menu Editor, sets IDE options
 - " Add-Ins Add-in manager, lists add-ins like Application Wizard and API Viewer
 - " Window Arranges or selects open windows
 - " Help Handles Help and the About box
-

TIP: Note that one important job of the File menu is to create EXE files for your program. When you run a program from the Run menu, no EXE file is created; if you want to run the program outside of Visual Basic, you must create that EXE file, and you do that with the File menu's Make ProjectName.exe item (where ProjectName is the name you've set for the project).

We'll see a great deal more about these menus and the items they contain in the Immediate Solutions section of this chapter.

The Toolbar

The main Visual Basic toolbar appears in Figure 2.2. This toolbar contains buttons matching popular menu items, as you can see in Figure 2.2; clicking the button is the same as selecting a menu item and can save you some time.



Figure 2.2 The main Visual Basic toolbar.

Besides the main toolbar, you can also display other dockable toolbars in Visual Basic: the Debug, Edit, and Form Editor toolbars. To display one of these toolbars, just select it using the Toolbars item in the View menu; the toolbar appears

free-floating at first, but you can dock it as you like in the IDE.

TIP: If you're unsure what a particular tool in the toolbar does, just rest the mouse over it. A tool tip (a small yellow window displaying text) will display the tool's purpose.

Form Designers And Code Windows

The last parts of the IDE that we'll take a look at in our overview are form designers and code windows, which appear in the center of Figure 2.8. (The form designer displays the current form under design, complete with command button, and the code window displays the code for the Command1_Click() procedure.)



Figure 2.8 A form designer and code window.

Form designers are really just windows in which a particular form appears. You can place controls into a form simply by drawing them after clicking the corresponding control's tool in the toolbox.

Code windows are similarly easy to understand: you just place the code you want to attach to an object in the code window (to open an object's code in the code window, just double-click that object). There are two drop-down list boxes at the top of the code window: the left list lets you select the object to add code to, and the right list lets you select the procedure to add (all the methods the object supports appear in this list).

That completes our overview of the IDE. Let's get into the actual meat of the chapter now, task by task.

Immediate Solutions

Selecting IDE Colors, Fonts, And Font Sizes

The Visual Basic IDE comes with all kinds of preset colors blue for keywords, green for comments, black for other code, and so on. But as when you move into a new house, you might want to do your own decorating. Visual Basic allows you to do that. Just open the Options box by clicking the Options item in the Visual Basic Tools menu, and click the Editor Format tab, as shown in Figure 2.9.



Figure 2.9 Selecting IDE colors.

Here are the text items whose colors you can select:

- " Normal Text
- " Selection Text
- " Syntax Error Text

- " Execution Point Text
- " Breakpoint Text
- " Comment Text
- " Keyword Text
- " Identifier Text
- " Bookmark Text
- " Call Return Text

To set a particular type of text's color and background color, just select the appropriate color from the drop-down list boxes labeled Foreground and Background, and click on OK. You can also set text font and font sizes in the same way just specify the new setting and click on the OK button to customize the text the way you want it.

Aligning, Sizing, And Spacing Multiple Controls

Visual Basic is very...well visual, and that includes the layout of controls in your programs. If you've got a number of controls that should be aligned in a straight line, it can be murder to have to squint at the screen, aligning those controls in a line down to the very last pixel. Fortunately, there's an easier way to do it:

1. Hold down the Ctrl key and click all the controls you want to align.
2. Make sure you have one control in the correct position, and click that one last.

Sizing handles—the eight small boxes that you can grasp with the mouse to resize a control, appear around all the clicked controls. The sizing handles appear hollow around all but the last control you clicked, as shown in Figure 2.10; the last control you clicked has solid sizing handles, and it will act as the key control. The other controls will be aligned using this key control's position.

To align all the selected controls to the same left, right, or center position of the key control, you continue with these steps:

3. Select the Align item in the Format menu, opening the Align submenu, as shown in Figure 2.10.



Figure 2.10 Aligning new controls.

4. Select the type of alignment you want in the Align submenu: align the left, the center, the right, the top, the middle, or the bottom edges of the controls with the key control.

5. While the controls are still collectively selected, you can move them, if you like, as a group to any new location now that they are aligned as you want them.

To size all selected controls the same as the key control, follow Steps 1 and 2, and then continue this way:

3. Select the Make Same Size item in the Format menu, opening that submenu, as shown in Figure 2.11.



Figure 2.11 Sizing new controls.

4. Choose the appropriate item in the Make Same Size submenu to size the controls as you want them: matching the key control's width, height, or both.

To space multiple controls vertically or horizontally, follow Steps 1 and 2 and then continue:

3. Select the Horizontal Spacing or Vertical Spacing item in the Format menu, opening that submenu, as shown in Figure 2.12.



Figure 2.12 Spacing controls.

4. To space the controls horizontally or vertically, select one of the items in the corresponding submenu:

- " Make Equal Sets the spacing to the average of the current spacing
- " Increase Increases by one grid line
- " Decrease Decreases by one grid line
- " Remove Removes spacing

The Design Time Grid

Spacing depends on grid lines. The grid is made up of the array of dots you see on a form at design time. This grid is to help you place controls on a form, and by default, controls are aligned to the grid (which means they are sized to fit along vertical and horizontal lines of dots). You can change the grid units (in twips) in the Options box when you click the General tab, as shown in Figure 2.13. (To open the Options box, select the Options item in the Tools menu.)



Figure 2.13 Modifying the grid settings.

Besides setting the units of the grid, you can also specify whether or not controls

must be aligned to the grid by checking the Align Controls To Grid checkbox.

Setting A Startup Form Or Procedure

Visual Basic programs mean windows, right? Not necessarily. Visual Basic programs do not need to have any windows at all, in fact. That case is a little extreme, but there are times when you don't want to start your program with code in a form. For example, you might want to display a flash screen when your program first starts, without waiting for the first (possibly complex) form to load, and then switch to the form when it does load.

Creating A Form-Free Startup Procedure

To start a program from code not in any form, you add a subroutine ~~Main()~~ to your program. Follow these steps:

1. Select the Properties item in the Project menu to open the Project Properties box, as shown in Figure 2.14.



Figure 2.14 The Project Properties box.

2. Click the General tab in the Project Properties box (if it s not already selected), select Sub Main in the Startup Object drop-down list, and click on OK.
3. Select Add Module in the Project menu, and double-click the Module icon in the Add Module box that opens.
4. Add this code to the new module s (General) section in the code window:

```
Sub Main()
End Sub
```

5. Place the code you want in ~~the~~ Main() subroutine.

Selecting The Startup Form

On the other hand, you might have a number of forms in a project how do you specify which one is displayed first? You do that with the General tab of the Project Properties box, just as we ve added ~~Main()~~ subroutine to our program.

To specify the startup form for a project, just open the Project Properties box as we ve done in the previous section and select the appropriate form in the Startup Object box, as shown in Figure 2.15. Now when your program starts, that form will act as the startup form.



Figure 2.15 Setting a project s startup form.

Using Visual Basic Predefined Forms, Menus, And Projects

You re designing a new program, and you want a form with a complete File menu on it. You don t want to use the Application Wizard, because that add-in would redesign your whole project for you. Rather than designing a complete standard File menu from scratch, there s an easier way: you can use one of the predefined menus

that come with Visual Basic.

To add one of the predefined Visual Basic menus, follow these steps:

1. Select the form you want to add the menu to by clicking it with the mouse.
2. Open the Visual Component Manager from the Tools menu. If the Visual Component Manager is not already loaded into Visual Basic, open the Add-In Manager in the Add-Ins menu, click the box labeled Visual Component Manager, and close the Add-In Manager. If your version of Visual Basic does not come with the Visual Component Manager, refer to the discussion after these steps.
3. Open the Visual Basic folder in the Visual Component Manager.
4. Open the Templates folder in the Visual Basic folder.
5. Open the Menus folder in the Templates folder, as shown in Figure 2.16.



Figure 2.16 Opening the Menus folder in the Visual Component Manager.

6. Select the type of menu you want and double-click it. These are the available menus:

- " Edit menu
- " File menu
- " Help menu
- " View menu
- " Window menu

7. The new menu will be added to the form you selected, as shown in Figure 2.17.



Figure 2.17 Adding a predefined Visual Basic menu to a form.

Besides menus, you can add a whole selection of predefined forms to your projects by finding the Forms folder in the Templates folder in the Visual Component Manager. Here are the available forms, ready to be added to your project with a click of the mouse:

- " Blank forms
- " About dialog boxes (two types)
- " Addin forms
- " Browser forms

- " Data grid forms
- " Dialog forms
- " Tip forms
- " Log-in forms
- " ODBC log-in forms
- " Options forms
- " Query forms

As you'll see in the Visual Component Manager's Templates folder, you can add the following pre-defined elements to a Visual Basic Project:

- " Classes
- " Code procedures
- " Control sets
- " Forms
- " MDI forms
- " Menus
- " Modules
- " Project templates
- " Property pages
- " User controls
- " User documents

After you've created components like these in Visual Basic, you can add them to other projects using the Visual Component Manager in fact, reusing components like this is one of the things professional programmers and programming teams do best.

If You Don't Have The Visual Component Manager

If your version of Visual Basic does not come with the Visual Component Manager, you can still add many predefined components to a project, including forms, MDI forms, modules, class modules, user controls, and property pages. For example, to add a predefined form to your project, just select Add Form from the Project menu, opening the Add Form dialog box, as shown in Figure 2.18.



Figure 2.18 The Add Form dialog box.

As you can see, the predefined forms are here, so you can add them to your project with a simple click of the mouse.

Adding menus is a little different here, because you actually add a whole new form with that menu, instead of adding that menu to an already-existing form. For example, to add a new form with a File menu already in place, click the Existing tab in the Add Form dialog box, click the Menus folder, and double-click the Filemenu.frm entry. This adds a new form to your project, complete with File menu.

Setting A Project s Version Information

Five years from now, a user stumbles across your EXE file, which you ve conveniently named CDU2000.exe. This makes perfect sense to you what else would you name the EXE file for a utility named Crop Dusting Utility 2000? However, the user is a little puzzled. How can he get more information directly from the EXE file to know just what CDU2000.exe does? He can do that by interrogating the file s version information

A program s version information includes more than just the version number of the program; it also can include the name of the company that makes the software, general comments to the user, legal copyrights, legal trademarks, the product name, and the product description. All these items are available to the user, and if you re releasing your software commercially, you should fill these items in. Here s how you do it:

1. Open the Project Properties box in Visual Basic now by selecting the Properties item in the Project menu.
2. Select the Make tab, as shown in Figure 2.19.



Figure 2.19 Setting a project s version information.

3. Fill in the information you want, including the program s version number, product name, and so on.
4. Create the EXE file, which in our case is CDU2000.exe, using the Make CDU2000.exe item in the File menu.
5. To look at the version information in CDU2000.exe, find that file in the Windows Explorer and right-click the file, selecting Properties from the pop-up menu that opens. As you can see in Figure 2.20, our version information including the name of the product appears in the Properties box.



Figure 2.20 Reading a program s version information.

Sometimes, version information is all that users have to go on when they encounter your program, so be sure to include it before releasing that product.

Setting An EXE File s Name And Icon

You re about to release your software commercially, but you suddenly realize that

Project1.exe might not be the best name for your product's executable file. The stockholders' meeting is in five minutes how can you change your EXE file's name?

To set the EXE file's name, you just set the project's name. Here's how you do it:

1. Select the Properties item in the Project menu to open the Project Properties box, as shown in Figure 2.21.



Figure 2.21 Setting a project's name.

2. Select the General tab in the Project Properties box (if it's not already selected).
3. Enter the name of the project you want to use, such as CDU2000 in Figure 2.21.
4. The project's name will become the name of the EXE file when you create it with the Make CDU2000.exe item in the File menu.

Now you've named your EXE file, but how do you set the program's icon that will appear in Windows? The program's icon is just the icon of the startup form, and you can set that by setting that form's Icon property in the Properties window. If you have a new icon in ICO file format, you can load that icon right into that form by setting the form's Icon property to the ICO file name.

Displaying The Debug, Edit, And Form Editor Toolbars

By default, Visual Basic displays one toolbar, the standard toolbar. However, there are other toolbars available: the Debug, Edit, and Form Editor toolbars. If you want them, you add those toolbars with the Toolbars submenu of the Visual Basic View menu just click the new toolbar you want to add. You can also remove one or all toolbars the same way.

The Debug toolbar has the following buttons:

- " Start
- " Break
- " End
- " Toggle Breakpoint
- " Step Into
- " Step Over
- " Step Out
- " Locals Window
- " Immediate Window

" Watch Window

" Quick Watch

" Call Stack

The Edit toolbar includes these buttons:

" List Properties/Methods

" List Constants

" Quick Info

" Parameter Info

" Complete Word

" Indent

" Outdent

" Toggle Breakpoint

" Comment Block

" Uncomment Block

" Toggle Bookmark

" Next Bookmark

" Previous Bookmark

" Clear All Bookmarks

The Form Editor toolbar includes these buttons:

" Bring To Front

" Send To Back

" Align

" Center

" Width

" Lock Controls

The Debug, Edit, and Form Editor toolbars appear from left to right in the top toolbar in Figure 2.22.



Figure 2.22 Visual Basic with the Debug, Edit, and Form toolbars.

Turning Bounds Checking On Or Off

When you use arrays, Visual Basic checks to make sure that you don't inadvertently try to access memory past the end or before the beginning of the array when the program runs, which is an error that could corrupt memory. In the early days of programming, however, you could use array index values that were past the end of an array without causing a compiler error, and some programmers used to rely on that to create some programming tricks involving accessing memory far beyond what they were supposed to stick with (especially in C, where the name of an array is really a pointer). That practice is heavily discouraged today, but some programmers must still have a soft spot for it, because Visual Basic allows you to turn off array bounds checking. (In fairness, there are one or two other reasons you might want to turn off bounds checking, such as not having the program halt for bounds violations while you're trying to track down a bug or, conceivably, for performance reasons.)

What does a bounds violation look like? Here's an example in code where we set up an array and then try to access a location past the end of it:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Addresses(1 To 10) As Integer
    Addresses(1) = 1                      'Fine
    Addresses(11) = 11                     'Problem!
End Sub
```

If you were to run this code, you'd get the error box shown in Figure 2.23 unless you turn off bounds checking.



Figure 2.23 An out-of-bounds error.

You can turn off bounds checking by following these steps:

1. Select the Properties item in the Project menu to open the Project Properties box.
2. Select the Compile tab in the Project Properties window.
3. Click the Advanced Optimizations button in the Project Properties window to open the Advanced Optimizations box, as shown in Figure 2.24.



Figure 2.24 Turning off bounds checking.

4. Select the Remove Array Bounds Checks checkbox to turn off array bounds checking.

That s it now you ve turned off array bounds checking.

WARNING! Before turning off array bounds checking, however, make sure you have a really good reason for doing so; you may find your program crashing Windows as it makes illegal use of memory.

Checking For Pentium Errors

Some time ago, one version of the Intel Pentium suffered from a well-publicized hardware bug in the floating point instruction named FDIV. Intel responded quickly and offered to replace the defective chips, but it s reasonable to expect some are still out there.

For that reason, Visual Basic has a check to make sure the Pentium your program runs on is safe. That check is enabled by default, but if for some reason you want to turn it off (although it is hard to see why you would), you can turn off the Pentium FDIV check with these steps:

1. Select the Properties item in the Project menu to open the Project Properties box.
2. Select the Compile tab in the Project Properties window.
3. Click the Advanced Optimizations button in the Project Properties window to open the Advanced Optimizations box (as shown earlier in Figure 2.24).
4. Select the Remove Safe Pentium FDIV Checks checkbox.

That s it you ve disabled the FDIV Pentium check. Although you might want to do this yourself if you know what you re doing, it s not recommended that you do this in any software you release commercially.

Managing Add-Ins

The deadline for your project is fast approaching, and the pressure is on. Suddenly it occurs to you that you ve already written a lot of the components you need to use the day is saved! But how can you access those components? One easy way is to use the Visual Component Manager. But when you check the Visual Basic Add-Ins menu, you don t see the Visual Component Manager there. How do you add it?

You use the Visual Basic Add-In Manager to add this and any other add-in. Here s how to use the Add-In Manager:

1. Select the Add-In Manager item in the Visual Basic Add-In menu.
2. The Add-In Manager opens, as shown in Figure 2.25.



Figure 2.25 The Visual Basic Add-In Manager.

3. Select the add-ins you want, as also shown in Figure 2.25, and close the Add-In Manager.

That s it now you ve added the add-in you want. To remove it, simply deselect the add-in s box in the Add-In Manager. (Some add-ins have an annoying habit of starting when Visual Basic starts, grinding on for a long time while it loads and taking up a lot of memory, which can be annoying if you don t need the add-in any more.)

Adding ActiveX Controls And Insertable Objects To Projects

Been away from Visual Basic for a while and need to get back into the swing of things? You ve been designing your project but suddenly realize you need a Microsoft Grid control. That s an ActiveX control how do you add those again? Use the Add File To Project menu item? Double-click the toolbox and hope an Insert dialog box comes up? Add a reference to the actual Grid control s OCX file, asctrls.ocx, to the project?

None of those here s how you do it:

1. Select the Project menu s Components item.
2. The Visual Basic Components box opens, as shown in Figure 2.26; click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.



Figure 2.26 The Visual Basic Components dialog box.

3. Select the ActiveX control you want to add in the Components box, then close the Components box. The new control will appear in the toolbox.

TIP: If the ActiveX control you want to add to a Visual Basic project doesn t appear in the Components dialog box, it may not have been registered with Windows properly. Try using the regsvr32.exe tool in the Windows\system directory to register it again.

You can also add insertable objects like Microsoft Word or Microsoft Excel objects to a Visual Basic project by using the Components dialog box. Instead of the Controls tab in the Components box, however, you use the Insertable Objects tab and select the object you want; that object will appear in the toolbox, and you can use it in your project from then on. For example, we ve inserted an Excel worksheet into the Visual Basic project in Figure 2.27.

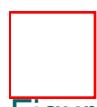


Figure 2.27 A Microsoft Excel worksheet in a Visual Basic project.

Customizing Menus And Toolbars

Visual Basic might be nice, but it's just not set up as you'd like it. You might think, for example, that the Start menu item to run programs surely should be in the Edit menu. Well, if you'd like to place it there, it's possible (just don't expect anyone else to be able to use Visual Basic after you've customized it that way...).

Here's how you move items between menus or toolbars:

1. Right-click the menu bar to open the Customize box.
2. Next, find the menu item you want to add to another menu or to a toolbar; here, we'll move the Start menu item to the Edit menu.
3. Using the mouse, drag the menu item from the Customize dialog's Command box to the new location in a menu or a toolbar, as shown in Figure 2.28, where we drag the Start item to the Edit menu.



Figure 2.28 Add the Start menu item to the Visual Basic Edit menu.

4. Releasing the mouse adds the menu item to its new location. Finally, click Close in the Customize box to close that dialog.

Besides moving menu items to new locations in menus and toolbars, you can also move whole menus. For example, to move the Edit menu in the menu bar, just open the Customize box and find the Built-in Menus item in the Categories box of the Commands tab. Next, drag the menu you want to move such as the Edit menu from the Commands box to its new location in the menu bar. You can move menus to either the menu bar or other toolbars this way.

TIP: If you use one particular menu item a lot, you might consider moving it directly into the menu bar (where it will appear among all the menu names). You can do that the same way you'd drag that item to a new menu just drag it into the menu bar instead.

The toolbars in Visual Basic are dockable, of course, so that means you can move them around as you'd like even above the menu bar. Just grasp the double upright bars at left in the toolbar (Visual Basic uses Explorer-style toolbars) and move the toolbar to its new location.

Setting Forms Initial Positions

You've completed the project on schedule and under budget even. But you're not

crazy about where Visual Basic displays the startup form on the screen when the program starts. You can set the form's Left and Top properties if you like, but there's an easier and more interactive way using the Form Layout window.

The Form Layout window is part of the IDE, and its default position is at the lower right in the IDE. This window appears in Figure 2.29.



Figure 2.29 Setting a form's initial position.

Setting a form's initial position couldn't be easier just drag the form into the new location using the mouse. If you want to know the form's exact new position, watch the first set of numbers in the toolbar those numbers record the location of the upper left of the form (in twips).

TIP: Using the Form Layout window, you can even place forms off screen, beyond the edges of the display. That means, of course, that if you want to see the form when the program runs, you'll have to move it, either by setting its Left and Top properties or with the Move method.

Enabling Or Disabling Quick Info, Auto List Members, Data Tips, And Syntax Checking

Depending on your personal tastes, Visual Basic has a great/terrible set of features/bugs that assist/hobble you while working on your code. These features are as follows:

- " Quick Info
- " Auto List Members
- " Data Tips
- " Syntax Checking

The Quick Info feature lets you know what parameters a procedure takes as you're actually typing the procedure's name, as in Figure 2.30. This is a useful feature that can save you time looking up parameter order or type.



Figure 2.30 The Visual Basic Quick Info feature.

The Auto List Members feature lists the members of an object as you're typing the object's name (actually when you type the dot [.] after the object's name, as in Figure 2.31). This is useful if you can't remember exactly what property you want to work with (for example, do I want the Text property, or was it the Caption

property?).



Figure 2.31 The Visual Basic Auto List Members feature.

Visual Basic Data Tips are tip tools that appear while you're debugging a program, and they're a truly useful innovation. When Visual Basic is in the Debug state, you can let the mouse rest over a variable name in your code, and Visual Basic will display that variable's current value in a Data Tip, as shown in Figure 2.32.



Figure 2.32 The Visual Basic Data Tips feature.

TIP: Note that Data Tips can only display the values of simple variables, not complex ones like objects or arrays. For those objects, you must use either the Immediate window or the Watch window.

Syntax Checking speaks for itself when you move the text insertion point away from a line of Visual Basic code while writing that code, Visual Basic will check the line's syntax and display an error box if there is an error. That can get annoying if you're the type of programmer who likes to move around in a file while writing code (What was the name of that variable again?).

You can turn all of these features on and off following these steps:

1. Select the Options item in the Tools menu.
2. Select the Editor tab in the Options box, as shown in Figure 2.33.



Figure 2.33 Selecting Auto List Members, Data Tips, and more.

3. Select the options you want from the checkboxes: Auto Syntax Check, Auto List Members, Auto Quick Info, and Auto Data Tips. That's all it takes.

Displaying Or Hiding IDE Windows

You're feeling cramped is it your chair? Your office? No, this time, it's your screen. With the proliferation of windows in the Visual Basic IDE, there seems to always be more and more of them clamoring for your attention. Want to clear some IDE windows out to make room for the important ones? Just close the windows by clicking their close buttons (the button marked 'x' in the top right of the window).

Whoops now you need the Form Layout window back. But how do you get it back? Or how would you get the toolbox back if it disappeared? Or the Properties window? The solution is easy: All you have to do is to select the window you want to show again in the View menu, and it'll reappear. Open the View menu as shown in Figure 2.34, and click the name of the window you want to make visible again it's that simple.



Figure 2.34 Specifying visible IDE windows in the View menu.

This is a simple task indeed, but it's worth including here; more than one programmer has panicked after closing the toolbox by mistake and wondering if Visual Basic must be reinstalled to get it back!

Searching An Entire Project For Specific Text Or A Variable's Definition

Forms, modules, class modules, MDI forms how are you supposed to keep them all straight? These days, there are more files than ever in a Visual Basic project, and anything that can give you an overview can help. The Project Explorer is one such tool. This window gives you an overview of your entire project, organized into folders.

However, there are times when that's not good enough times when you need more details. One such occasion is when you want to find all the occurrences of specific text throughout an entire project for example, you might want to find all the places a particularly troublesome variable is used. To do that, you can now just use the Edit menu's Find item. Selecting that item opens the Find box, as shown in Figure 2.35. Now you can search all the code in an entire project if the code window is open just click the Current Project option button before searching, as shown in Figure 2.35.



Figure 2.35 Searching for text throughout a whole project.

Even if you're familiar with searching for text throughout an entire project, there's

one more capability that you might not know about jumping to a variable s or procedure s definition just by clicking it. To jump to a variable s or procedure s definition, just right-click that variable or procedure any place it s used in the code. Doing so opens a pop-up menu, as shown in Figure 2.36.



Figure 2.36 Finding a variable s definition.

To jump to the variable s or procedure s definition, just select the Definition item in the pop-up menu. This is very useful when, for example, you ve set up a new procedure somewhere but can t quite remember what parameters you pass to that procedure, and in what order.

TIP: Besides jumping to a variable or procedure s definition in code, you can also jump to its previous use in code just select the pop-up menu s Last Position item.

Optimizing For Fast Code, Small Code, Or A Particular Processor

Your project works the way you want it, but now the users are complaining about the size of the EXE file. Isn t there any way to make it less than 500MB? Well, that might be a bit of an exaggeration, but Visual Basic does let you optimize your project in several different ways, and one of them is to optimize the code for size.

To optimize your program for code size or speed, follow these steps:

1. Select the Properties item in the Visual Basic Project menu.
2. The Project Properties box opens, as shown in Figure 2.37. Select the Compile tab in that box.



Figure 2.37 Optimizing a project for speed or code size.

3. Select the kind of code optimization you want in the
 - " Properties box:
 - " Optimize For Fast Code
 - " Optimize For Small Code
 - " No Optimization

Besides optimizing for code size and speed, you can optimize the code for the Pentium Pro processor in the Project Properties box as well just click the Favor Pentium Pro checkbox. The Pentium Pro is currently the only processor Visual Basic lets you optimize for, but it does have one automatic check: the FDIV check

to check for bad Pentiums (see [Checking For Pentium Errors](#) earlier in this chapter).

Adding And Removing Forms, Modules, And Class Modules

Your project is nearly finished. Now it's time to add an About dialog box. So how do you add new forms to a project? You do that in one of a couple of ways: First, you can use the View menu, as shown in Figure 2.38.



Figure 2.38 Adding forms and modules with the Visual Basic Project menu.

The Visual Basic Project menu allows you to add these items to a project:

- " Form
- " MDI form
- " Module
- " Class module
- " User control
- " Property page

You can also add these items to a project by right-clicking any item in the Project Explorer window and selecting the Add item in the resulting pop-up menu. The Add submenu opens, and it holds the same items.

Adding ActiveX Designers

Besides ready-made objects like forms and modules, you can add ActiveX designers to the Visual Basic Project menu. These designers let you design new objects that are part of your project. For example, to add the Visual Basic Add-In Designer, you follow these steps:

1. Select the Components item in the Project menu, opening the Components box as shown in Figure 2.39.



Figure 2.39 Adding the Add-In Designer.

2. Select the Designers tab in the Components box.
3. Select the designer you want to add, such as the Add-In Designer, and close the Components box.
4. You can reach the new object designer to design the addition to your project with the Add ActiveX Designer item in the Project menu. That item opens a submenu

showing the available designers, including the one we've just added, the Visual Basic Add-In Designer.

Using Bookmarks

It's been a long night and it's nearly dawn, but you're still programming because the deadline's in a few hours. Now you've lost your place in the dozen separate code files that make up the project. There are 10 separate windows open in the IDE and you're switching back and forth between them. Isn't there a better way to mark a location and jump back to it when you need to?

There certainly is you can use a bookmark. You mark a line of code by toggling a bookmark on or off at that location, and when you're ready you can jump back to that bookmark.

Setting Bookmarks

You set a bookmark at a particular line of code by clicking that line of code and selecting the Toggle Bookmark item in the Bookmarks submenu of the Edit menu, as shown in Figure 2.40. Selecting this same item again would remove the bookmark.



Figure 2.40 Using bookmarks in the Visual Basic IDE.

Jumping To A Bookmark

Now that you've set a bookmark and moved away from it while editing your code, how do you get back to it? You jump back to a bookmark with the two items in the Bookmarks submenu marked Next Bookmark and Previous Bookmark. (It would be convenient if Visual Basic allowed you to name bookmarks and select from a list of them where to jump to; perhaps that will appear in some future version of Visual Basic.)

Using The Object Browser

One of the best ways of getting an overview of your project is to use the Object Browser. The Object Browser is very useful to get overviews, especially in larger projects. If your version of Visual Basic includes the Visual Basic Object Browser, you open it by selecting the Object Browser item in the View menu or by clicking its icon in the toolbar. The Object Browser opens, as shown in Figure 2.41.



Figure 2.41 The Visual Basic Object Browser provides an overview of the objects in a project.

You can scan through all the objects in the project by moving up and down in the

Classes list. When you find the type of object you want to examine, select it; its properties and methods appear in the Members pane, as also shown in Figure 2.41.

If you want to learn more about a property or method, just select it with the mouse; you'll see an explanation of the property or method and the list of parameters for methods.

Chapter 3

The Visual Basic Language

If you need an immediate solution to:

Declaring Constants

Declaring Variables

Selecting Variable Types

Converting Between Data Types

Setting Variable Scope

Verifying Data Types

Declaring Arrays And Dynamic Arrays

Declaring Subroutines

Declaring Functions

Preserving Variables Values Between Calls To Their Procedures

Handling Strings

Converting Strings To Numbers And Back Again

Handling Operators And Operator Precedence

Using If&Else Statements

Using Select Case

Making Selections With Switch() And Choose()

Looping

Using Collections

Sending Keystrokes To Other Programs

Handling Higher Math

Handling Dates And Times

Handling Financial Data

Ending A Program At Any Time

In Depth

This chapter is all about what makes the various parts of a Visual Basic program work: the Visual B language itself. In this chapter, we'll see the components of the Visual Basic language and how to use them. After designing and creating the interface for your application using the Visual Basic IDE, and filling it with forms and controls, you'll need to write the code that makes those controls do something.

The Visual Basic language supports a large number of programming constructs and elements, and this language is the foundation on which we'll build in this book. A good start here is essential for the work we do throughout the book.

If you've programmed in other languages, much of the material in this chapter will probably be familiar to you and once you understand the basics, you will be able to create powerful applications using Visual Basic.

How Does Visual Basic Code Look?

We're going to take a look at the elements of the Visual Basic language that will let us make Visual Basic work. What will that code look like? Some of our code will be short, such as when we check for errors from a multimedia device like this in Chapter 22:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_Done(NotifyCode As Integer)
    If MMControl1.Error <> 0 Then
        MsgBox MMControl1.ErrorMessage
    End If
End Sub
```

Some of our code will be a little longer, such as this code, where we display the status of a CD-ROM that's playing a music CD:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Dim strMode As String
    strMode = ""

    Select Case MMControl1.Mode
        Case mciModeReady
            strMode = "Ready."
        Case mciModeStop
            strMode = "Stopped."
        Case mciModeSeek
            strMode = "Seeking."
    End Select
End Sub
```

```

Case mciModePlay
    strMode = "Playing."

Case mciModeRecord
    strMode = "Recording."

Case mciModePause
    strMode = "Paused."

End Select

Label1.Caption = strMode

```

End Sub

That's what the Visual Basic language looks like at work. As you can imagine, knowing how to write code is necessary to get anywhere in Visual Basic.

In the topics coming up, then, we'll see how to declare variables, functions, and subroutines and what elements mean. We'll see how to use text strings, conditionals, operators, loops, and math techniques. Even see how to handle special Visual Basic formats like dates and financial data. And we'll see some that programmers like but don't often encounter in programming books, such as how ~~Select~~ and Choose()

We'll cover tasks that involve some complexity and whose syntax is hard to remember. In this way, this chapter also acts as a reference for easy lookup of those hard-to-remember items and can save you from reinventing the wheel.

We'll see a lot of syntax in this chapter, and there's one convention you should be aware of before we use brackets for optional elements and keywords like this for the statement:

```
Dim [WithEvents] varname [([subscripts])] [As [New] type] [, [WithEvents]
varname[([subscripts])] [As [New] type]]
```

Here, all the elements in square brackets are optional, and the variable names in italics are placeholders. Fill them in with the names of your variables as appropriate for your program.

It's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions now no further introduction is needed.

Immediate Solutions

Declaring Constants

You've filled your code with numeric values and now it's time to change them all as you start working on

new version of the software. What a pain to have to track down and change all the numeric values (magic numbers) throughout all the code. Isn't there a better way?

There is: Use constants and declare them all in one place, then refer to the constants by name throughout the code instead of hardwiring numeric values in the code. When it's time to change those values, you just change the constants, all in one well-defined part of the code.

How do you use constants? You declare constants in Visual Basic with the `Const` statement:

```
[Public | Private] Const constname [As type] = expression
```

The `Public` keyword is used at the module level to make a constant global. This keyword is not allowed in procedures. The `Private` keyword is used at the module or form level to declare constants that are private, which means only available within the module or form where the declaration is made. The `Protected` keyword is not allowed in procedures (constants in procedures are always private anyway). `constname` is the actual name of the constant. `Type` is the data type of the constant, which may be `Byte`, `Boolean`, `Integer`, `Long`, `Currency`, `Single`, `Double`, `Date`, `String`, or `Variant`. The `expression` holds the value you want for this constant. It may be a literal, other constant, or a combination that includes all arithmetic or logical operators (except the `Not` operator).

You can use a constant anywhere you can use any Visual Basic expression, and you usually use numeric or string values that you want to use many places in a program. That way, when you want to modify the value of the constant, you only have to change it in its declaration, not in many places in the program. Also, constants don't change their values, which can make them more useful than variables in certain circumstances.

TIP: You can't use variables, user-defined functions, or intrinsic Visual Basic functions in expressions assigned to constants.

Here's an example showing how to declare and use a constant:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Const Pi = 3.14159
    Dim Radius, Area
    Radius = 1#
    Area = Pi * Radius * Radius
    MsgBox ("Area = " & Str(Area))
End Sub
```

Declaring Variables

Before using variables, you have to set aside memory space for them after all, that's what they are: locations in memory. Usually, you use the **Dim** statement to declare variables, although you can also use the **Private** (declare a private variable), **Public** (declare a global variable), **Static** (declare a variable that holds its value between procedure calls), **ReDim** (redimension a dynamic array), **Type** (declare a user-defined type) keywords to declare variables, as we'll see in the tasks covered in this chapter.

The Dim Statement

Here's how you use the **Dim** statement:

```
Dim [WithEvents] varname[([subscripts])] [As [New] type] [, [WithEvents]
varname [([subscripts])] [As [New] type]] . . .
```

The **WithEvents** keyword is valid only in class modules. This keyword specifies that the variable used to respond to events triggered by an ActiveX object. The **varname** identifier is the name of the variable you are declaring. You use **subscripts** if you're declaring an array.

You set up the **subscripts** argument this way:

```
[lower To] upper [, [lower To] upper]
```

TIP: In Visual Basic, you may declare up to 60 dimensions for an array.

The `New` keyword enables creation of an object. If you `New` when declaring the object variable, a new instance of the object is created on first reference to it. This means you don't have to ~~Set statement~~ to assign the object reference. Here's an example:

```
Dim DataSheet As New Worksheet
```

The `Type` argument specifies the data type of the variable, which may be Boolean, Integer, Long, Currency, Single, Double, Date, String (for variable-length strings), String * length (for fixed-length strings), Object, Variant, a user-defined type, or an object type. If you don't specify a type, the default is Variant, which means the variable can act as any type.

TIP: By default in Visual Basic, numeric variables are initialized to 0, variable-length strings are initialized to a zero-length string (), and fixed-length strings are filled with zeros. Variant variables are initialized to `Empty`.

Here's an example of declaring variables using `Dim`:

```
Dim EmployeeID As Integer
Dim EmployeeName As String
Dim EmployeeAddress As String
```

Implicit Declarations And Option Explicit

Following the traditions of earlier versions of Basic, you don't actually need to declare a variable as you use it just using it in code declares it as a variant if it's not been declared. It's better to require all variables to be explicitly declared, however, because misspelling a variable name can declare a new variable that cause problems, as we saw in this code from Chapter 1, where we think we're toggling a Boolean named `xNow` but are placing the result in a new and misspelled variable `xNoww`:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If xNow Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If

    xNoww = Not xNow

End Sub
```

To force variable declarations to be explicit (that is, to insist that each variable be declared), add the Option Explicit statement at the module or form level to the (General) declarations object.

Selecting Variable Types

It's time to create a new variable but what type should you use? For that matter, exactly what type variable types are there and what do they do? Even if you remember what types there are, you probably don't remember the range of possible values that variable type allows.

There's a wide range of data types, so we'll use a table here. The Visual Basic variable types appear in Table 3.1 for reference, making selecting the right type a little easier (note that although Visual Basic lists ~~Decimal~~ variable type, that type is not yet actually supported). We also include the literal suffix symbols for numeric values in Table 3.1 those are the suffixes you can add to the end of values or variables to tell Visual Basic their type, like `UserFormatString$`.

Table 3.1

Variable types.

Variable Type	Bytes	Of Literal Storage	Range Suffix	
Range				
Boolean	2	N/A	True, False	
Byte	1	N/A	0 to 255	
Currency	8	@	-922,337,203,685,477.5808 to 922,337,203,685,477.5807	
Date	8	#	1 January 100 to 31 December 9999 and times from 0:00:00 to 23:59:59	
Decimal	12	N/A	-79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335 to 79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335	
Double	8	#	-1.79769313486232E308 to -4.94065645841247E-324 for negative values and from 4.94065645841247E-324 to 1.79769313486232E308 for positive values	
Integer	2	%	-32,768 to 32,767	
Long	4	&	-2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647	
Object	4	N/A	N/A	
Single	4	!	-3.402823E38 to -1.401298E-45 for negative values and from 1.401298E-45 to 3.402823E38 for positive values	
String	N/A	\$	A variable-length string can contain up to approximately 2 billion characters; a fixed-length string can contain 1 to approximately 64K characters	
User-defined data type	N/A	N/A		N/A
Variant	N/A	N/A	N/A	

As you can see in Table 3.1, Visual Basic has a large number of data formats. The Variant type deserves special mention, because it's the default variable type. If you don't declare a type for a variable, it is made a variant:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim NumberTrains
    ...
End Sub
```

In this case, the variable `NumberTrains` is a variant, which means it can take any type of data. For example, here we place an integer value `NumberTrains` (note that we specify that 5 is an integer by using the percent sign [%] suffix as specified in Table 3.1):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim NumberTrains
    NumberTrains = 5%
End Sub
```

We could have used other data types as well; here, for example, we place a string into `NumberTrains`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim NumberTrains
    NumberTrains = "Five"
End Sub
```

And here we use a floating point value (! is the suffix for single values):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim NumberTrains
    NumberTrains = 5.00!
End Sub
```

Be careful of variants, however they waste time because Visual Basic has to translate them into other data types before using them, and they also take up more space than other data types.

Converting Between Data Types

Visual Basic supports a number of ways of converting from one type of variable to another in fact, that's one of the strengths of the language. The possible conversion statements and procedures appear in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2
Visual Basic
data
conversion Use This
functions.
To Do This

ANSI value to string	Chr
String to lowercase or uppercase	Format, LCASE, UCASE
Date to serial number	DateSerial, DateValue
Decimal number to other bases	Hex, Oct
Number to string	Format, Str
One data type to another	CBool, CByte, CCur, CDate, CDbl, CDec, CInt, CLng, CSng CStr, CVar, CVErr, Fix, Int
Date to day, month, weekday, or year	Day, Month, Weekday, Year
Time to hour, minute, or second	Hour, Minute, Second
String to ASCII value	Asc
String to number	Val
Time to serial number	TimeSerial, TimeValue

TIP: Note that you can cast variables from one type to another in Visual Basic using the functions `CBool()`, `CByte()`, and so on.

Setting Variable Scope

You've just finished creating a new dialog box in your greeting card program, and it's a beauty. However, you realize there's a problem: the user enters the new number of balloons to display the greeting card `TextBox1` of the dialog box, but how do you read that value in the rest of the program when the user closes the dialog box?

It's tempting to set up a global variable `intNumberBalloons`, which you fill in the dialog box when the user clicks on the OK button. That way, you'll be able to use that variable in the rest of the program when the dialog box is closed. But in this case, you should resist the temptation to create a global variable; it's much better to refer to the text in the text box this way (assuming the name of the dialog form you've created is `Dialog`):

```
intNumberBalloons = Dialog.TextBox1.Text
```

This avoids setting up a global variable needlessly. In fact, one of the most important aspects of Vis programming is variable scope. In general, you should restrict variables to the smallest scope possible.

There are three levels of variable scope in Visual Basic, as follows:

- " Variables declared in procedures are private to the procedure.
- " Variables declared at the form or module level in the form or module's (General) section. Dim, ReDim, Private, Static, or Type are form- or module-level variables. These variables are available throughout the module.
- " Variables declared at the module level in the module's (General) section. Public are global and are available throughout the project, in all forms and modules. Note that you cannot Public in procedures.

You can get an overview of the scope of variables in a Visual Basic project in Figure 3.1.



Figure 3.1 Visual Basic's variable scope schematic.

For more information, see the discussion of variable scope in Chapter 1.

TIP: If you use the Option Private Module statement in a module or form, all variables in the module or form become private to the module, no matter how they are declared.

Verifying Data Types

You can change a variable's type with ReDim in Visual Basic, assign objects to variables using Set and even convert standard variables into arrays. For these and other reasons, Visual Basic has a number of verification functions, which appear in Table 3.3, and you can use these functions to interrogate objects to determine their types.

Table 3.3 Data verification functions.

Does This Function

IsArray()	Returns True if passed an array
IsDate()	Returns True if passed a date
IsEmpty()	Returns True if passed variable is uninitialized
IsError()	Returns True if passed an error value
IsMissing()	Returns True if value was not passed for specified parameter in procedure call
IsNull()	Returns True if passed NULL
IsNumeric()	Returns True if passed a numeric value
IsObject()	Returns True if passed an object

Note in particular the `IsMissing()` function, which many programmers don't know about; this function tells you if the call to the current procedure included a value for a particular variant. For example, here's how to check if the call to a subroutine `CountFiles()` included a value in the optional parameter `intMaxFiles`:

```
Sub CountFiles(Optional intMaxFile As Variant)
    If IsMissing(intMaxFile) Then
        'intMaxFile was not passed
    ...
    Else
    ...
    End If
End Sub
```

Declaring Arrays And Dynamic Arrays

It's time to start coding that database program. But wait a moment: how are you going to handle the arrays? Just a simple program, so you don't want to start tangling with the full Visual Basic database techniques. A standard array would be perfect; how do you set them up again?

You can use `Dim` (standard arrays), `ReDim` (dynamic arrays), `Static` (arrays that don't change when between calls to the procedure they're in), `Private` (arrays private to the form or module they're declared in), `Public` (arrays global to the whole program), `Type` (for arrays of user-defined types) to dimension arrays.

We'll start with standard arrays now.

Standard Arrays

You usually use the `Dim` statement to declare a standard array (note that in Visual Basic, arrays can have up to 60 dimensions):

```
Dim [WithEvents] varname [([subscripts])] [As [New] type] [, [WithEvents]
varname [([subscripts])] [As [New] type]] ...
```

The `WithEvents` keyword is valid only in class modules. This keyword specifies that the variable used to respond to events triggered by an ActiveX object. The `type` identifier is the name of the variable you are declaring.

You use `subscripts` to declare the array. You set up the `subscripts` argument this way:

```
[lower To] upper [, [lower To] upper]
```

The `New` keyword enables creation of an object. If you `New` when declaring the object variable, a new instance of the object is created on first reference to it.

The `type` argument specifies the data type of the variable, which may be `Byte`, `Boolean`, `Integer`, `Long`,

Currency, Single, Double, Date, String (for variable-length strings), String * length (for fixed-length strings), Object, Variant , a user-defined type, or an object type. If you don t specify a type, the default is Variant , which means the variable can act as any type.

Here are a few examples of standard array declarations:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Data(30)
    Dim Strings(10) As String
    Dim TwoDArray(20, 40) As Integer
    Dim Bounds(5 To 10, 20 To 100)
    Strings(3) = "Here's a string!"
End Sub
```

TIP: You use the Option Base statement at the form- or module-level to set the lower bound for all arrays. The default value is 0, but you can use either of these two statements: Option Base 0 or Option Base 1

Dynamic Arrays

You can use the Dim statement to declare an array with empty parentheses to declare a dynamic array. Dynamic arrays can be dimensioned or redimensioned as you need them. Redim the statement (which you must also do the first time you want use a dynamic array). Here s how you do it:

```
Redim [Preserve] varname (subscripts) [As type] [, varname(subscripts)
[As type]] ...
```

You use the Preserve keyword to preserve the data in an existing array when you change the size of a dimension. The varname argument holds the name of the array to (re)dimension.

The `subscript` term specifies the dimensions of the array using this syntax:

```
[lower To] upper [, [lower To] upper]
```

The `type` argument specifies the type of the array. The type may be Boolean, Integer, Long, Currency, Single, Double, Date, String (for variable-length strings), String * length (for fixed-length strings), Object, Variant, a user-defined type, or an object type.

This is one of those topics that is made easier with an example, so here's an example using dynamic arrays where we declare an array, dimension it, and then redimension it, like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim DynaStrings() As String
    ReDim DynaStrings(10)
    DynaStrings(1) = "The first string"
    'Need more data space!
    ReDim DynaStrings(100)
    DynaStrings(50) = "The fiftieth string"
End Sub
```

The Array() Function

You can also use the `Array()` function to create a new variant holding an array. Here's how you use `Array()`:

```
Array(arglist)
```

The `arglist` argument is a list of values that are assigned to the elements of the array contained within the variant. Here's an example that creates an array with the values 0, 1, and 2:

```
Dim A As Variant
A = Array(0,1,2)
```

TIP: If you don't specify any arguments, the `Array()` function returns an array of zero length.

We'll finish this topic with a summary of array-handling techniques.

Array-Handling Techniques Summary

Visual Basic has a number of statements and functions for working with arrays, and they appear in an overview in Table 3.4 for easy reference.

Table 3.4

Array-handling
techniques

To Do Use This

This

Verify an array	IsArray
Create an array	Array
Change default lower limit	Option Base
Declare and initialize an array	Dim, Private, Public, ReDim, Static
Find the limits of an array	LBound, UBound
Reinitialize an array	Erase, ReDim

Declaring Subroutines

Everyone knows about subroutines: they're the handy blocks of code that can organize your code into single-purposed sections to make programming easier. Unlike functions, subroutines do not return values. Instead, like functions, you can pass values to subroutines in an argument list.

For reference's sake, here's how you declare a subroutine:

```
[Private | Public | Friend] [Static] Sub name [(arglist)]
...
[statements]
...
[Exit Sub]
...
[statements]
...
End Sub
```

The `Public` keyword makes a procedure accessible to all other procedures in all modules and forms. The `Private` keyword makes a procedure accessible only to other procedures in the module or form in which it is declared. The `Friend` keyword is used only in class modules and specifies that the procedure is visible throughout the project, but not visible to a controller of an instance of an object. The `Static` keyword specifies that the procedure's local variables should be preserved between calls. The `name` identifier is the name of the procedure. The `arglist` identifier is a list of variables representing arguments that are passed to the procedure when it is called. You separate multiple variables with commas. The `statements` identifier is the group of statements to be executed within the procedure.

The `arglist` identifier has the following syntax:

```
[Optional] [ByVal | ByRef] [ParamArray] varname [( )] [As type]
[= defaultvalue]
```

In arglist, Optional means that an argument is not required; ByVal means that the argument is passed by value; ByRef means that the argument is passed by reference (ByRef is the default in Visual Basic); ParamArray is used as the last argument in arglist to indicate that the final argument is an array of Variant elements; varname is the name of the variable passed as an argument; type is the data type of the argument; and defaultvalue is any constant or constant expression, which is used as the argument's default value if you've used the optional keyword.

TIP: When you use ByVal, you pass a copy of a variable to a procedure; when you use ByRef, you pass a reference to the variable, and if you make changes to that reference, the original variable is changed.

The Exit Sub keywords cause an immediate exit from the Sub procedure. Finally, End Sub ends the procedure definition.

You call a Sub procedure using the procedure name followed by the argument list. Here's an example of a subroutine:

```
Sub CountFiles(Optional intMaxFile As Variant)
    If IsMissing(intMaxFile) Then
        ' intMaxFile was not passed
        MsgBox ("Did you forget something? ")
    Else
    ...
    End If
End Sub
```

TIP: For an overview of how to comment procedures, see the discussion in Chapter 1.

Declaring Functions

There are two types of procedures in Visual Basic: subroutines and functions. Subroutines can take arguments passed in parentheses but do not return a value; functions do the same but do return a value (which can be discarded). A function is a block of code that you call and pass arguments to, and using functions helps break your code up into manageable parts.

For reference's sake, here's how you declare a function:

```
[Private | Public | Friend] [Static] Function name [(arglist)] [As type]
...
```

[*statements*]

...

[*name* = *expression*]

...

[Exit Function]

...

[*statements*]

...

End Function

The Public keyword makes a procedure accessible to all other procedures in all modules and forms. The Private keyword makes a procedure accessible only to other procedures in the module or form in which it is declared. The Friend keyword is used only in class modules and specifies that the procedure is visible throughout the project, but not visible to a controller of an instance of an object. The Static keyword specifies that the procedure's local variables should be preserved between calls. The identifier is the name of the procedure. The Arglist identifier is a list of variables representing arguments that are passed to the procedure when it is called. You separate multiple variables with commas. The statements identifier is the group of statements to be executed within the procedure.

The Arglist identifier has this following syntax:

```
[Optional] [ByVal | ByValRef] [ParamArray] varname [()] [As type]
[= defaultvalue]
```

In Arglist, Optional means that an argument is not required. ByVal means that the argument is passed by value. ByRef means that the argument is passed by reference. ByRef is the default in Visual Basic. ParamArray is used as the last argument in Arglist to indicate that the final argument is an array of Variant elements. Name is the name of the variable passed as an argument. Type is the data type of the argument; and Defaultvalue is any constant or constant expression, which is used as the argument's default value if you've used the Optional keyword. The Type identifier is the data type returned by the function. End Function keywords cause an immediate exit from Function procedure.

You call a Function procedure using the function name, followed by the argument list in parentheses. You return a value from a function by assigning the value you want to return to the function's name like this: Name = expression. Finally, End Function ends the procedure definition.

Here's an example showing how to use a function:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intResult As Integer
    intResult = Add1(5)
    MsgBox ("Result = " & Str$(intResult))
End Sub
```

```
Function Add1(intAdd1ToMe As Integer) As Integer
    Add1 = intAdd1ToMe + 1
End Function
```

Preserving Variables Values Between Calls To Their Procedures

You've written a function named Counter() to keep track of the number of times the user clicks a particular button. Each time the user clicks the button, you call Counter() function to increment the count of button clicks, and then display the result in a message box. But the counter never seems to be incremented; instead it always returns 1. Why?

Let's look at the code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intResult As Integer
    intResult = Counter()
    MsgBox ("Result = " & Str$(intResult))
End Sub
```

```
Function Counter() As Integer
    Dim intCountValue As Integer
    intCountValue = intCountValue + 1
    Counter = intCountValue
End Function
```

The problem here is that the counter variable intCountValue, in the Counter() function is reinitialized each time the Counter() function is called (because a new copy of all the variables local to procedures is allocated each time you call that procedure).

The solution is to declare intCountValue as static. This means it will retain its value between calls to the Counter() function. Here's the working code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intResult As Integer
    intResult = Counter()
    MsgBox ("Result = " & Str$(intResult))
End Sub
```

```
Function Counter() As Integer
    Static intCountValue As Integer
    intCountValue = intCountValue + 1
    Counter = intCountValue
End Function
```

In fact, you could declare the whole function static, which means that all the variables in it

will be static. That looks like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intResult As Integer
    intResult = Counter()
    MsgBox ("Result = " & Str$(intResult))
End Sub
```

```
Static Function Counter() As Integer
    Dim intCountValue As Integer
    intCountValue = intCountValue + 1
    Counter = intCountValue
End Function
```

Besides declaring variables ~~with~~ static, you can also use it as a keyword when declaring functions or subroutines.

Handling Strings

You've decided to lead the way into the future by letting your users type in English sentences as commands to your program. Unfortunately, this means that you ~~have~~ ~~have~~ to (that is, break down to individual words) what they type. So what was that string function that lets you break a string into smaller strings again? We'll get an overview of string handling in this topic.

Two Kinds Of Strings

There are two kinds of strings: variable-length and fixed-length strings. You declare a variable-length string this way:

```
Dim strVariableString As String
```

A variable-length string can contain up to approximately 2 billion characters, and it can grow or shrink to match the data you place in it.

You declare a fixed-length string this way, with an asterisk character (*) followed by the string's length:

```
Dim strFixedString As String * 20
```

Here, we give our fixed-length string 20 characters. A fixed-length string can contain 1 to approximately 64K characters.

The String-Handling Functions

There are quite a number of string-handling functions in Visual Basic. For example, you use Left(), Mid(), and Right() to divide a string into substrings, you find the length of a string with Len(), and so on.

For reference, the Visual Basic string-handling functions appear in Table 3.5.

Table 3.5

String-handling
functions.

To Do Use This

This

Compare two strings	StrComp
Convert strings	StrConv
Convert to lowercase or uppercase	Format, LCase, UCase
Create string of repeating character	Space String
Find length of a string	Len
Format a string	Format
Justify a string	LSet, RSet
Manipulate strings	InStr, Left, LTrim, Mid, Right, RTrim, Trim
Set string comparison rules	Option Compare
Work with ASCII and ANSI values	Asc, Chr

Converting Strings To Numbers And Back Again

You're all set to write your SuperDeluxe calculator program in Visual Basic but suddenly you realize that the user will be entering numbers in text form, not in numeric form. How can you translate text into numbers, and then numbers into text to display your results?

It's common in Visual Basic to have to convert values from numbers to strings or from strings to numbers, and it's easy to do. You can use `Str()` to return a string representation of a number, and you use `Val()` to convert a string to a number. That's all there is to it, but it's easy to forget those two functions, so we include them here for reference.

Besides `Str()` and `Val()`, you can also use `Format()`, which lets you format an expression into a string this way:

```
Format (expression [, format[, firstdayofweek[, firstweekofyear]]])
```

Here, `expression` is the expression to format into the string, `format` is a valid named or user-defined format expression, `firstdayofweek` is a constant that specifies the first day of the week, and `firstweekofyear` is a constant that specifies the first week of the year.

For more information about how to use this function and format strings, see [Handling Dates And Time Using Dates](#) later in this chapter.

Handling Operators And Operator Precedence

You've done well in your computer class so well that the instructor has asked you to calculate the average grade on the final. Nothing could be easier, you think, so you put together the following program:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intGrade1, intGrade2, intGrade3, NumberStudents As Integer
    intGrade1 = 60
    intGrade2 = 70
    intGrade3 = 80
    NumberStudents = 3
    MsgBox ("Average grade = " &_
        Str(intGrade1 + intGrade2 + intGrade3 / NumberStudents))
End Sub
```

When you run the program, however, it calmly informs you that the average score is 156.666666. That doesn't look so good what's wrong?

The problem lies in this line:

```
Str(intGrade1 + intGrade2 + intGrade3 / NumberStudents))
```

Visual Basic evaluates the expression in parentheses from left to right, using pairs of operands and their associated operator, so it adds the first two grades together first. Instead of adding the final grade, however, it first divides that grade by NumberStudents because the division operation has higher precedence than addition. So the result is $60 + 70 + (80/3) = 156.66666667$.

The solution here is to group the values to add together this way using parentheses:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intGrade1, intGrade2, intGrade3, NumberStudents As Integer
    intGrade1 = 60
    intGrade2 = 70
    intGrade3 = 80
    NumberStudents = 3
    MsgBox ("Average grade = " &
        Str((intGrade1 + intGrade2 + intGrade3) / NumberStudents))
End Sub
```

Running this new code gives us an average of 70, as it should be.

This example points out the need to understand how Visual Basic evaluates expressions involving operators. In general, such expressions are evaluated left to right, and when it comes to a conflict between two operators (such as + and / in the last term of our original program), the operator with the higher precedence is used first.

Visual Basic's operator precedence, arranged by category, appears in Table 3.6.

Table 3.6
Operators and
operator
precedence. ComparisonLogical
Arithmetic

Exponentiation (^)	Equality (=)	Not
Negation (-)	Inequality (<>)	And
Multiplication and division (* , /)	Less than (<)	Or

Integer division (\)	Greater than (>)	Xor
Modulus arithmetic (Mod)	Less than or equal to (=<)	Eqv
Addition and subtraction (+, or -)	Greater than or equal to (=>)	Imp
String concatenation (&)	Like	
	Is	

When expressions contain operators from more than one category in Table 3.6, arithmetic operators are evaluated first, comparison operators are evaluated next, and logical operators are evaluated last. Also, comparison operators actually all have equal precedence, which means they are evaluated in the left-to-right order in which they appear.

If in doubt, use parentheses: operations within parentheses are always performed before those outside. Within parentheses, however, operator precedence is maintained.

Using If&Else Statements

The If statement is the bread and butter of Visual Basic conditionals, but you can forget the syntax every now and then (that is, is ElseIf or Else If?), so here's the statement:

```
If condition Then
[statements]
[ElseIf condition-n Then
[elseifstatements]]...
[Else
[elsestatements]]
End If
```

And here's an example showing how to use the various parts of this popular statement:

```
Dim intInput
intInput = -1

While intInput < 0
    intInput = InputBox("Enter a positive number")
Wend
```

```
If intInput = 1 Then
    MsgBox ( "Thank you." )
ElseIf intInput = 2 Then
    MsgBox ( "That's fine." )
ElseIf intInput >= 3 Then
    MsgBox ( "Too big." )
End If
```

Using Select Case

You have to get a value from the user and respond in several different ways, but you don't look forward to a long and tangled series of If&Then&Else statements. What can you do?

If your program can handle multiple values of a particular variable and you don't want to stack up a lot of If&Else statements to handle them, you should consider using Select Case. You use Select Case to test an expression, seeing which of several cases matches, and execute the corresponding code. Here's the syntax:

```
Select Case testexpression
[Case expressionlist-n
[statements-n]] ...
[Case Else
[elsestatements]]
End Select
```

Here s an example using ~~Select CaseIn~~ this example, we read a positive value from the user and test it, responding according to its value. Note that we also use ~~Select Case Is~~ keyword (not the same as ~~the~~ operator) to check if the value we read in is greater than a certain value. ~~Case End If~~ to handle values we don t explicitly provide code for. Here s the example:

```

Dim intInput
intInput = -1

While intInput < 0
    intInput = InputBox("Enter a positive number")
Wend

Const intMax = 100

Select Case intInput
    Case 1:
        MsgBox ("Thank you.")
    Case 2:
        MsgBox ("That's fine.")
    Case 3:
        MsgBox ("Your input is getting pretty big now...")
    Case 4 To 10:
        MsgBox ("You are approaching the maximum!")
    Case Is > intMax:
        MsgBox ("Too big, sorry.")
    Case Else:
        MsgBox ("Please try again.")
End Select

```

Making Selections With Switch() And Choose()

For some reason, few books on Visual Basic cover ~~Switch()~~ and ~~Choose()~~ functions. They certainly have their uses, however, and we ll take a look at them here.

The Switch() Function

The Switch() function evaluates a list of expressions and returns ~~Variant~~ value or an expression associated with the first expression in the list that is true. Here s the syntax:

```
Switch (expr-1, value-1[, expr-2, value-2 ... [, expr-n, value-n]])
```

In this case expr-1 is the first expression to evaluate; if true, Switch() returns value-1. If expr-1 is not True but expr-2 is, Switch() returns value-2 and so on.

Here's an example showing how to use Switch(). In this case, we ask the user to enter a number and use Switch() to calculate the absolute value of that value (having temporarily forgotten how to use the built-in Visual Basic absolute value function Abs()):

```
Dim intValue

intValue = InputBox("Enter a number")

intAbsValue = Switch(intValue < 0, -1 * intValue, intValue >= 0, intValue)

MsgBox "Absolute value = " & Str(intAbsValue)
```

The Choose() Function

You use the Choose() function to return one of a number of choices based on an index. Here's the syntax:

```
Choose (index, choice-1 [, choice-2, ... [, choice-n]])
```

If the index value is 1, the first choice is returned, if index equals 2, the second choice is returned, and so on.

Here's an example using Choose(). In this case, we have three employees Bob, Denise, and Ted with employee IDs 1, 2, and 3. This code snippet accepts an ID value from the user and chooses to display the corresponding employee name:

```
Dim intID
intID = -1

While intID < 1 Or intID > 3
    intID = InputBox("Enter employee's ID")
Wend

MsgBox "Employee name = " & Choose(intID, "Bob", "Denise", "Ted")
```

Looping

Many programmers have a love/hate relationship with looping, based primarily on syntax. Programmers have to switch back and forth these days between languages, and can find themselves writing, for example, a C++ loop in the middle of a Visual Basic program and being taken by surprise when the compiler objects.

To make it easier, we'll include examples here of all the Visual Basic loops, starting with Do loop.

The Do Loop

The Do loop has two versions; you can either evaluate a condition at the beginning

```
Do [{While | Until} condition]
[statements]
[Exit Do]
[statements]
Loop
```

or at the end:

```
Do
[statements]
[Exit Do]
[statements]
Loop [{While | Until} condition]
```

Here s an example where we read from a file, looping until we reach the end of the file, which we che the end-of-file functionEOF():

```
Do Until EOF(1)
    Line Input #1, Data$
    Form1.TextBox1.Text = Form1.TextBox1.Text + Data$
Loop
```

TIP: Note that the second form of the Do loop ensures that the body of the loop is executed at least onc the other hand, you sometimes want to make sure the loop run even once if the condition is not met For example, when reading from a file, you shouldn t read from a file before checking for the end of fi case the file is empty.

The For Loop

The Do loop doesn t need a loop index, but For loop does. Here s the syntax for For loop:

```
For index = start To end [Step step]
[statements]
[Exit For]
[statements]
Next [index]
```

Here s how to put it to work:

```
Dim intLoopIndex, Total
Total = 0
For intLoopIndex = 1 To 10
    Total = Total + 1
Next intLoopIndex
```

TIP: Although it's been common practice to use a loop index after a loop completes (to see how many iterations were executed), that practice is now discouraged by people who make it their business to v good and bad programming practices.

The For Each Loop

You use the For Each loop to loop over elements in an array or collection. Here's its syntax:

```
For Each element In group
[statements]
[Exit For][statements]
Next [element]
```

You can get a look at this loop in action with an example like this one, where we display all the elements of an array in message boxes:

```
Dim IDArray(1 To 3)
IDArray(1) = 1
IDArray(2) = 2
IDArray(3) = 3

For Each ArrayItem In IDArray
    MsgBox (Str(ArrayItem))
Next ArrayItem
```

The While Loop

You use a While loop if you want to stop looping when a condition is no longer true. Here's the While loop's syntax:

```
While condition
[statements]
Wend
```

And here's an example putting While to work:

```
Dim intInput  
intInput = -1  
  
While intInput < 0  
    intInput = InputBox("Enter a positive number")  
Wend
```

TIP: Many Visual Basic functions, like EOF(), are explicitly constructed to return values True or False so that you can use them to control loops such as Do and While loops.

The With Statement

Properly speaking, the `With` statement is not a loop, but it can be as useful as a loop and in fact, many programmers actually think of it as a loop. You use the `With` statement to execute statements using a particular object. Here's the syntax:

```
With object
[statements]
End With
```

Here's an example showing how to `With` to work. Here, we use a text box, `Text1`, and set several of its properties in `With` statement:

```
With Text1
    .Height = 1000
    .Width = 3000
    .Text = "Welcome to Visual Basic"
End With
```

Using Collections

Using collections, you can group related items together. Collections can be heterogeneous that is, members of a collection don't have to share the same data type, and that can be very useful, because life doesn't always present you with collections made up of items of the same type.

You create a collection as you would any other object:

```
Dim GarageSaleItems As New Collection
```

You can add members to the collection with `Add` method and remove them with the `Remove` method.

You can also reach specific members in the collection using `Item` method. Most importantly, from a programming point of view, you can loop over the entire collection using the `For Each&Next` statement (see the previous section, [Looping](#)).

Collections are very useful and are one of the high points of Visual Basic. However, because of the heterogeneous nature of their contents, they don't necessarily lend themselves to tight and uniform coding practices (which makes some C and C++ programmers look down their noses at Visual Basic).

Sending Keystrokes To Other Programs

It's time to print out the 349 screen spreadsheets you've created in your new spreadsheet program to show the boss. Regrettably, there just doesn't seem to be any way to print them out except one at a time, using the File menu's Print item. Can Visual Basic help here?

Yes. You can use the `SendKeys()` function to send keys to the program that currently has the Windows focus, just as if you typed in those keys yourself. Using the Alt key, you can reach the menu items in your spreadsheet's File menu. The day is saved, because now you can automate your printing job, even waiting until the spreadsheet program processes the current keystroke before continuing. Here's how you use `SendKeys()`:

```
SendKeys string [, wait]
```

The `string` expression is the string you want to send to the other program. The `wait` argument is a Boolean value indicating the wait mode. If `False` (which is the default), control returns right after the keys are sent. If `True`, the keystrokes must be processed by the other program before control returns.

If the keys you want to send are not simple text, just embed the codes you see in Table 3.7 in the text you send `SendKeys()`.

Table 3.7
`SendKeys()`
 key codes. Code
 Key

Backspace	{BACKSPACE}, {BS}, or {BKSP}
Break	{BREAK}
Caps Lock	{CAPSLOCK}
Del or Delete	{DELETE} or {DEL}
Down arrow	{DOWN}
End	{END}
Enter or Return	{ENTER} or ~
Esc	{ESC}
Help	{HELP}
Home	{HOME}
Ins or Insert	{INSERT} or {INS}
Left arrow	{LEFT}
Num Lock	{NUMLOCK}
Page Down	{PGDN}
Page Up	{PGUP}

Print Screen	{PRTSC}
Right arrow	{RIGHT}
Scroll Lock	{SCROLLLOCK}
Tab	{TAB}
Up arrow	{UP}
F1	{F1}
F2	{F2}
F3	{F3}
F4	{F4}
F5	{F5}
F6	{F6}
F7	{F7}
F8	{F8}
F9	{F9}
F10	{F10}
F11	{F11}
F12	{F12}
F13	{F13}
F14	{F14}
F15	{F15}
F16	{F16}
Shift	+
Ctrl	^
Alt	%

Here s an example showing how to `SendKeys()`. Here, we give the Windows WordPad program the focus with the `AppActivate()` function, passing it the title of that program (which appears in its title bar), and send the string `Hello from Visual Basic!` to that program as follows:

```
AppActivate ("Document - WordPad")
SendKeys ("Hello from Visual Basic!")
```

The result appears in Figure 3.2 now we re able to send keystrokes to another program.

 Figure 3.2 Sending keystrokes to Windows WordPad.

Handling Higher Math

Well, it may have been a mistake taking on that programming job from the

astrophysics department. How do you calculate a hyperbolic cosecant anyway? Can Visual Basic do it?

Yes, although not directly. The built-in Visual Basic math functions appear in Table 3.8.

Table 3.8
Visual
Basic math
functions. Calculates This
Function

Abs	Absolute value
Atn	Arc tangent
Cos	Cosine
Exp	Exponentiation
Fix	Fix places
Int	Integer value
Log	Log
Rnd	Random number
Sgn	Sign
Sin	Sine
Sqr	Square root
Tan	Tangent

If what you want, like hyperbolic cosecant, is not in Table 3.8, use Table 3.9, which shows you how to calculate other results using the built-in Visual Basic functions. There's enough math power in Table 3.9 to keep most astrophysicists happy.

**Table 3.9
Calculated
math
functions. Calculate This Way
Function**

Secant	$\text{Sec}(X) = 1 / \text{Cos}(X)$
Cosecant	$\text{Cosec}(X) = 1 / \text{Sin}(X)$
Cotangent	$\text{Cotan}(X) = 1 / \text{Tan}(X)$
Inverse sine	$\text{Arcsin}(X) = \text{Atn}(X / \text{Sqr}(-X * X + 1))$
Inverse cosine	$\text{Arccos}(X) = \text{Atn}(-X / \text{Sqr}(-X * X + 1)) + 2 * \text{Atn}(1)$
Inverse secant	$\text{Arcsec}(X) = \text{Atn}(X / \text{Sqr}(X * X - 1)) + \text{Sgn}(X) - 1 * (2 * \text{Atn}(1))$
Inverse cosecant	$\text{Arccosec}(X) = \text{Atn}(X / \text{Sqr}(X * X - 1)) + (\text{Sgn}(X) - 1) * (2 * \text{Atn}(1))$
Inverse cotangent	$\text{Arccotan}(X) = \text{Atn}(X) + 2 * \text{Atn}(1)$
Hyperbolic sine	$\text{HSin}(X) = (\text{Exp}(X) - \text{Exp}(-X)) / 2$
Hyperbolic cosine	$\text{HCos}(X) = (\text{Exp}(X) + \text{Exp}(-X)) / 2$
Hyperbolic tangent	$\text{HTan}(X) = (\text{Exp}(X) - \text{Exp}(-X)) / (\text{Exp}(X) + \text{Exp}(-X))$
Hyperbolic secant	$\text{HSec}(X) = 2 / (\text{Exp}(X) + \text{Exp}(-X))$
Hyperbolic cosecant	$\text{HCosec}(X) = 2 / (\text{Exp}(X) - \text{Exp}(-X))$
Hyperbolic cotangent	$\text{HCotan}(X) = (\text{Exp}(X) + \text{Exp}(-X)) / (\text{Exp}(X) - \text{Exp}(-X))$
Inverse hyperbolic sine	$\text{HArcsin}(X) = \text{Log}(X + \text{Sqr}(X * X + 1))$
Inverse hyperbolic cosine	$\text{HArcos}(X) = \text{Log}(X + \text{Sqr}(X * X - 1))$

Inverse hyperbolic tangent	$HArctan(X) = \text{Log}((1 + X) / (1 - X)) / 2$
Inverse hyperbolic secant	$HArcsec(X) = \text{Log}((\text{Sqr}(-X * X + 1) + 1) / X)$
Inverse hyperbolic cosecant	$HArcosec(X) = \text{Log}((\text{Sgn}(X) * \text{Sqr}(X * X + 1) + 1) / X)$
Inverse hyperbolic cotangent	$HArccotan(X) = \text{Log}((X + 1) / (X - 1)) / 2$
Logarithm to base N	$\text{LogN}(X) = \text{Log}(X) / \text{Log}(N)$

Handling Dates And Times

One of the biggest headaches a programmer can have is working with dates. Handling hours, minutes, and seconds can be as bad as working with pounds, shillings, and pence. Fortunately, Visual Basic has a number of date- and time-handling functions, which appear in Table 3.10 you can even add or subtract dates using those functions.

Table 3.10
 Visual Basic
 date
 keywords. Use This
 To Do This

Get the current date or time	Date, Now, Time
Perform date calculations	DateAdd, DateDiff, DatePart
Return a date	DateSerial, DateValue
Return a time	TimeSerial, TimeValue
Set the date or time	Date, Time
Time a process	Timer

There's something else you should know: `Format$()` function makes it easy to format dates into strings, including times. For easy reference, see Table 3.11, which

shows how to display the date and time in a string note how many ways there are to do this.

Table 3.11Using Format\$() to display dates and times.Format Expression

Format\$(Now, m - d - yy)	Yields This on January 1, 2000 at 1:00 A.M.
----------------------------	---

Format\$(Now, m - d - yy)	1-1-00
Format\$(Now, m / d / yy)	1 / 1 / 00
Format\$(Now, mm - dd - yy)	01-01-00
Format\$(Now, ddd, mmmm d, yyyy)	Friday, January 1, 2000
Format\$(Now, d mmm, yyyy)	1 Jan, 2000
Format\$(Now, hh:mm:ss mm/dd/yy)	01:00:00 01/01/00
Format\$(Now, hh:mm:ss AM/PM mm- dd- yy)	01:00:00 AM 01-01-00

You can also compare dates and times directly. For example, here s how you loop until the current time (returned as a string Time\$) exceeds the time the user has entered in a text box (for example, 15:00:00); when the time is up, the program beeps and displays a message box:

```
While Time$ < Text1.Text
Wend
Beep
MsgBox ( "Time s up!" )
```

Warning! Don t use this code snippet for more than an example of how to compare times! The eternal looping while waiting for something to happen is a bad idea in Windows, because your program monopolizes a lot of resources that way. Instead, set up a Visual Basic Timer object and have a procedure called, say, every second.

Handling Financial Data

You finally landed that big programming job at MegaMegaBank congratulations! But now there's some trouble just what is an internal rate of return anyway? Visual Basic to the rescue there are 13 Visual Basic functions devoted entirely to financial work, and they appear in Table 3.12.

Table 3.12
The Visual
Basic financial
functions.To Use This
Do This

Calculate depreciation	DDB, SLN, SYD
Calculate future value	FV
Calculate interest rate	Rate
Calculate internal rate of return	IRR , MIRR
Calculate number of periods	NPer
Calculate payments	IPmt , Pmt, PPmt
Calculate present value	NPV, PV

TIP: If you're going to be working with financial data, checkout the Visual Basic currency data in Declaring Variables earlier in this chapter. The currency data type can hold values from -922,337,203,685,477.5808 to 922,337,203,685,477.5807.

Ending A Program At Any Time

Our last topic in this chapter will be about ending programs. There are times when you want to end a program without any further ado for example, to make an Exit menu item active. How do you do that?

You use the End statement. This statement stops execution of your program but note that it does so immediately, which means that Unload() or similar event handling functions are called. End just brings the program to an end, which is what it should do.

TIP: The Stop statement is similar to End, except that it puts the program in a break state. Executing Stop statement, therefore, is just like running into a breakpoint the debugger will come up.

Chapter 4

Managing Forms In Visual Basic

If you need an immediate solution to:

Setting Title Bar Text

Adding/Removing Min/Max Buttons And Setting A Window's Border

Adding Toolbars To Forms

Adding Status Bars To Forms

Referring To The Current Form

Redrawing Form Contents

Setting Control Tab Order

Moving And Sizing Controls From Code

Showing And Hiding Controls In A Form

Measurements In Forms

Working With Multiple Forms

Loading, Showing, And Hiding Forms

Setting The Startup Form

Creating Forms In Code

Using The Multiple Document Interface

Arranging MDI Child Windows

Opening New MDI Child Windows

Arrays Of Forms

Coordinating Data Between MDI Child Forms (Document Views)

Creating Dialog Boxes

All About Message Boxes And Input Boxes

Passing Forms To Procedures

Minimizing/Maximizing And Enabling/Disabling Forms From Code

In Depth

In this chapter, we'll take a look at handling forms in Visual Basic. There's a great deal to see about form handling, and we'll look at it all. We'll see how to customize forms, how to work with multiple forms, how to support the multiple document interface (MDI), how to coordinate MDI child forms, how to use `MsgBox()` and `InputBox()` functions, how to load, hide, show, and unload forms, and much more. We'll begin the chapter by getting an overview of Visual Basic forms.

The Parts Of A Form

Forms are the names for windows in Visual Basic (originally, you called windows under design forms and the actual result when running `Shadow`, but common usage has named both forms now), and you add controls to forms in the Integrated Development Environment (IDE).

We're designing a form in the Visual Basic IDE in Figure 4.1, and you can see several aspects of forms there. At the top of the form is the title bar, which displays the form's title; here that's just Form1. At right in the title bar is the control box, including the minimizing/maximizing buttons and the close button. These are controls the user takes for granted in most windows, although we'll see they are inappropriate in others (such as dialog boxes).



Figure 4.1 A form under design.

Under the title bar comes the menu bar if there is one. In Figure 4.1, the form has one menu: the File menu (we'll see how to work with menus in the next chapter). Under the menu bar, forms can have toolbars as you see in the IDE itself.

The main area of a form—the area where everything takes place—is called the client area. In general, Visual Basic code works with controls in the client area and leaves the rest of the form to Visual Basic (in fact, the client area is itself a window). In Figure 4.1, we've added a control—a command button to the form.

Finally, the whole form is surrounded by a border, and there are several types of borders that you can use.

The Parts Of An MDI Form

Besides standard forms, Visual Basic also supports MDI forms. An MDI form appears in Figure 4.2.



Figure 4.2 An MDI form.

You can see that an MDI form looks much like a standard form, with one major difference, of course the client area of an MDI form acts like a kind of corral for other forms. That is, an MDI form can display MDI child forms in it, which is how the multiple document interface works. In Figure 4.2, we have two documents open in the MDI form.

That's the third type of form you can have in Visual Basic MDI child forms. These forms appear in MDI child windows, but otherwise are very similar to standard forms.

Those, then, are the three types of forms available to us in Visual Basic: standard forms, MDI forms, and MDI child forms. We'll work with all of them in this chapter. In fact, we're ready to start getting into the details now as we turn to the Immediate Solutions section of this chapter.

Immediate Solutions

Setting Title Bar Text

You've submitted your project to the user-testing stage and feel smug. What could go wrong? Suddenly the phone rings and they don't like the title in the program's title bar: Project1. How can you change it?

This stymies a lot of Visual Basic programmers, because the text in the title bar seems like something that Windows itself manages, not the program. In fact, it's up to the program, and setting the text in the title bar couldn't be easier. At design time, you just change the form's `Caption` property, as shown in Figure 4.3.



Figure 4.3 Setting a form's caption.

You can also set the `Caption` property at runtime in code like this (note that we use the `Me` keyword here to refer to the current form see Referring to the Current Form later in this chapter):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Me.Caption = "Hello from Visual Basic!"
End Sub
```

Adding/Removing Min/Max Buttons And Setting A Window's Border

Forms usually come with minimizing and maximizing buttons, as well as a close box at the upper right. However, that's not appropriate in all cases, as we'll see when we design dialog boxes later in this chapter.

To remove these buttons, you can set the `ControlBox` property to False, as

shown in Figure 4.4. Note that the usual buttons are missing from the form at the upper right.



Figure 4.4 Removing the control box from a form.

TIP: If you are thinking of designing a dialog box, take a look at [Creating Dialog Boxes](#) later in this chapter besides removing the control box, you should also set the dialog's border correctly, add OK and Cancel buttons, and take care of a few more considerations.

You can also set what buttons are in a form by setting its border type. For example, if you set the border style to a fixed type, the minimizing and maximizing buttons will disappear.

Setting A Form's Border

You set a form's border style with `BorderStyle` property; here are the possible values for that property:

- " 0 None
- " 1 Fixed Single
- " 2 Sizable
- " 3 Fixed Dialog
- " 4 Fixed Tool window
- " 5 Sizable Tool window

We'll see more about using the `BorderStyle` property when we work with dialog boxes in this chapter.

Adding Toolbars To Forms

For some reason, adding toolbars to forms isn't covered in a lot of Visual Basic books. However, we come to expect toolbars in more complex programs, and we'll see how to add them here. Toolbars have buttons that correspond to menu items and give the user an easy way to select the commands that correspond to.

Adding A Toolbar With The Application Wizard

The easiest way to design a toolbar and add it to a program is with the Application Wizard. When you create a new application using the Application Wizard, it lets you design the toolbar, as shown in Figure 4.1.



Figure 4.5 Designing a toolbar with the Application Wizard.

This is a great way to put a toolbar in a program, because the support is already there for all these buttons by default. When you create the program, here's how it handles the buttons in the toolbar. ~~Select Case~~ statement that looks at the button's ~~Key~~ value:

```
Private Sub tbToolBar_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    On Error Resume Next
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "New"
            LoadNewDoc
        Case "Open"
            mnuFileOpen_Click
        Case "Save"
            mnuFileSave_Click
        Case "Print"
            mnuFilePrint_Click
        Case "Copy"
            mnuEditCopy_Click
        Case "Cut"
            mnuEditCut_Click
        Case "Paste"
            mnuEditPaste_Click
        Case "Bold"
            ActiveForm.rtfText.SelBold = Not ActiveForm.rtfText.SelBold
            Button.Value = IIf(ActiveForm.rtfText.SelBold, tbrPressed, _
```

```

        tbrUnpressed)

Case "Italic"
    ActiveForm.rtfText.SelItalic = Not ActiveForm.rtfText.-
        SelItalic
    Button.Value = IIf(ActiveForm.rtfText.SelItalic, tbrPressed,_
        tbrUnpressed)

Case "Underline"
    ActiveForm.rtfText.SelUnderline = Not _
        ActiveForm.rtfText.SelUnderline
    Button.Value = IIf(ActiveForm.rtfText.SelUnderline,_
        tbrPressed, tbrUnpressed)

Case "Align Left"
    ActiveForm.rtfText.SelAlignment = rtfLeft
Case "Align Right"
    ActiveForm.rtfText.SelAlignment = rtfRight
Case "Center"
    ActiveForm.rtfText.SelAlignment = rtfCenter
End Select
End Sub

```

Adding A Toolbar To A Program Yourself

You can also add toolbars to already-existing programs; just follow these steps:

1. Use the Project[vbar]Components item to open the Components box, and select the Controls tab.
2. Click the Microsoft Windows Common Controls box, and click on OK to close the Components box.
3. Double-click the New Toolbar tool in the toolbox to add a new toolbar to your form now.
4. Right-click the toolbar now, and select the Properties item in the pop-up menu that appears, open the button's property page, as shown in Figure 4.6.



Figure 4.6 Setting a toolbar button's properties.

5. Click the Buttons tab in the property page now, and click Insert Button to insert a new button into toolbar.
6. Give the new button the caption you want, and set its `Caption` property to a string of text you want to refer the button with in code (in Figure 4.6, we set the new button's `Caption` property to "First").
7. Add other buttons in the same way and close the property page.
8. Double-click a button in the toolbar now to open the code window, displaying `Toolbar1_ButtonClick()`:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
...
End Sub
```

9. Add the code you want `Toolbar1_ButtonClick()`. You do this with a `Select Case` statement, selecting on the buttons `Key` property:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "First"
            MsgBox "You clicked the first button."
        Case "Second"
            MsgBox "You clicked the second button."
        Case "Third"
            MsgBox "You clicked the third button."
    End Select
End Sub
```

And that's it now we've added a toolbar to a program; when the user clicks a key in the toolbar, our code will handle it. The result appears in Figure 4.7.



Figure 4.7 A form with a toolbar.

Adding Status Bars To Forms

You've finished your program, and it's ready to go to market but suddenly the project director calls and asks why there's so many message boxes popping up all the time. You explain that you have to give the user feedback on the file downloading process after all, downloading the 200MB initialization file from the Internet takes some time, and you like to update the user on the process every time a kilobyte of data has been read.

What about using the status bar? the project director asks.

Hmm, you think what about using the status bar?

The easiest way to put a status bar in a form is to design your program with the Application Wizard, and the result of that process appears earlier in Figure 4.2. However, you can also add status bars to a program yourself with these steps:

1. Use the Project[vbar]Components item to open the Components box, and select the Controls tab.
2. Click the Microsoft Windows Common Controls box, and click on OK to close the Components box.
3. Double-click the New Status Bar tool in the toolbox to add a new status bar to your form now.
4. Right-click the status bar, and select the Properties item in the pop-up menu that appears, opening the button's property page, as shown in Figure 4.8.



Figure 4.8 Adding panels to a status bar.

5. Status bars are organized into panels and each panel can display separate text. To add the panels you want to the status bar, use the Insert Panel button. Close the property page.
6. Now you can set the text in the panels from code. You do that with the status bar's Panels collection. The first panel in the status bar is Panels(1) the second Panels(2) and so on. For example, to set the text in the first panel to Status: OK , you would use this code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()
    StatusBar1.Panels(1).Text = "Status: OK"
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 4.9 now we're using status bars in our programs.



Figure 4.9 A new status bar in a program.

Referring To The Current Form

You've written a terrific subroutine to change a form's color to red

```
Sub ColorWindow(FormToColor As Form)
    FormToColor.BackColor = RGB(255, 0, 0)
End Sub
```

and you want to color all the forms in your project when the user clicks a button. That's easy to do using the **Me** keyword, which refers to the current object. Here, for example, is how we'd pass the current form to **ColorWindow()** subroutine:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    ColorWindow Me
End Sub
```

That is, **Me** is an implicit variable, always available, and stands for the current object, which comes in handy when you want to pass the current object to a procedure.

TIP: The **Me** keyword is also very useful in class modules where more than one instance of a class can occur, because it always refers to the current instance.

Redrawing Form Contents

You've written some code to draw an **x** across a form like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight)
    Line (0, ScaleHeight)-(ScaleWidth, 0)
End Sub
```

You try it out and it looks perfect but then the boss walks past and you minimize your program for a second to go back to that word-processing program so you'll look busy. When you maximize the x program again, the x is gone what happened?

One of the biggest headaches for Windows programmers is refreshing the window

when required, because that involves redrawing the entire form's contents. To make matters worse, this is a common occurrence, because in Windows, the user is always covering and uncovering windows, minimizing and maximizing them, and changing their size, all of which means that your program has to keep redrawing itself.

In C or C++ programs, you have to write all the redrawing code yourself; fortunately, there is an easy fix in Visual Basic (and that's one of the things that made Visual Basic so popular in the first place) you just use the `AutoReDraw` property. You've probably already used the `AutoReDraw` property, but we include it here for reference. When you set this property to True, as shown in Figure 4.10, the graphics displayed in the form are stored and redisplayed when needed. All the window refreshes are done for you.



Figure 4.10 Setting AutoReDraw to True.

Now when you minimize and then maximize your X program, the X reappears as it should. Problem solved!

Setting Control Tab Order

Another call from the Testing Department. They've been going over your program with a fine-tooth comb and asking about the keyboard interface.

What does that mean? you ask.

They explain that theoretically, according to Microsoft, users should be able to run all Windows programs with the keyboard alone.

But that was archaic years ago, you say.

Add it to your program, they say.

In Visual Basic, you can make controls accessible to the keyboard by setting their tab order. The user can move around from control to control, highlighting the currently selected control, using the Tab key. But it's up to you to set the order in which the focus moves from control to control, and even whether or not a control can be reached with the Tab key.

To set the tab order of the controls in your program, follow these steps:

1. Select a control whose tab order you want to set with the mouse, as shown in Figure 4.11.



Figure 4.11 Setting a control's `TabIndex` property to set its tab order.

2. Next, make sure the control's TabStop property is set to True, as shown in Figure 4.11. If this property is False, the user cannot reach the control using the Tab key.
3. Now set the control's position in the tab order by setting its TabIndex property. The first control in the tab order has TabIndex of 0, the next TabIndex of 1, and so on.
4. When you run the program, the first control is highlighted; when the user presses the Tab key, the focus moves to the second control in the tab order, when he presses Tab again, the focus moves to the third control, and so on.

That's all it takes now you're giving your program a keyboard interface.

Moving And Sizing Controls From Code

Sometimes it's necessary to move or resize the controls in a form as a program is running, but for some reason, many Visual Basic programmers think you can only do that at design time. In fact, you can do it at runtime easily.

All controls have these properties available at design time or runtime to set their location and dimensions:

- " Top The y coordinate of the top left of the control.
- " Left The x coordinate of the top left of the control.
- " Width The width of the control.
- " Height The height of the control.

You can change all these settings interactively to move or resize a control in a form. Note that all measurements are in twips (1/1440 of an inch) by default, and that the origin (0, 0) in a form is at upper left.

You can also use a control's `Move()` method to move a control to a new location:

```
object.Move left, [top, [width, [height] ]]
```

Here's an example in this case, when the user clicks a button `Command1`, we double the button's width and height, and move it 500 twips to the left:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Const intIncrement = 500
    Command1.Width = 2 * Command1.Width
    Command1.Height = 2 * Command1.Height
    Command1.Move (Command1.Left + intIncrement)
End Sub
```

TIP: One way of creating simple animation is to use an Image control to display an image and use its `Move()` method to move it around a form.

Showing And Hiding Controls In A Form

The Testing Department is on the phone again does your program really work? After all, that's exactly what menus were designed for: to

hide controls not needed, getting them out of the user's way. (In fact, that's usually a good way to determine if a control item should be in a menu or on the main form: you use menus to make options available to the user at all times, while keeping them out of the way.)

However, let's say you really don't want to put your control items into menus you can still use buttons if you hide the ones that don't apply at a particular time, showing them when appropriate. Hiding and showing controls in a form as needed can produce dramatic effects at times.

Showing and hiding controls is easy: just use the `Visible` property. Setting this property to True displays the control; setting it to False hides it. Here's an example where we make a button disappear (probably much to the user's surprise) when the user clicks it:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Command1.Visible = False
End Sub
```

Measurements In Forms

The default measurement units for forms are twips, but the project design board says they want the data-entry forms you're designing to look like real 3x5 cards on the screen. Can you convert from twips to inches in Visual Basic? Yes, you can, and we'll take a look at that and other measurement issues here.

You can get the dimensions of a form's client area with these properties:

- " `ScaleWidth` The width of the client area.
- " `ScaleHeight` The height of the client area.
- " `ScaleLeft` The horizontal coordinate of upper left of client area.
- " `ScaleTop` The vertical coordinate of upper left of client area.

And you can get the overall dimensions of the form using these properties:

- " `Width` The width of the form.
- " `Height` The height of the form.
- " `Left` The horizontal coordinate of upper left of the form
- " `Top` The vertical coordinate of upper left of the form

You can also use the `ScaleMode` property to set a form's coordinate system units you don't have to use twips. Here are the possible values for `ScaleMode`:

- " 0 User-defined

- " 1 Twips (1/1440ths of an inch)
- " 2 Points (1/72nds of an inch)
- " 3 Pixels
- " 4 Characters (120 twips horizontally, 240 twips vertically)
- " 5 Inches
- " 6 Millimeters
- " 7 Centimeters

User-Defined Coordinates

To make life easier for yourself, you can set ~~user-defined~~ coordinate system just set the ~~ScaleWidth~~ and ~~ScaleHeight~~ properties yourself. For example, if you want to plot data on a 1000x1000 grid, just ~~Set~~ ~~ScaleWidth~~ and ~~ScaleHeight~~ to 1000. To draw a scatter plot of your data, then, you could ~~PSet~~ to set individual pixels directly. If one of the points to graph was (233, 599), you could draw that dot this way ~~PSet(233, 599)~~

Working With Multiple Forms

You've designed your program and it's a beauty: an introductory form to welcome the user, a data-entry form to get data from the user, a summary form to display the data analysis results, a logon form to connect to the Internet it's all there.

Suddenly it occurs to you aren't Visual Basic projects organized into modules and forms? How does the code in one form reach the code in another that is, how can the code in the analysis module read what the user has entered in the data-entry form? It's time to take a look at working with multiple forms.

For example, let's say that your introductory form looks something like that in Figure 4.12.



Figure 4.12 A single form that lets the user display another form.

When the user clicks the Show Form2 button, the program should ~~display~~ on the screen and place the text "Welcome to Visual Basic" in the text ~~box~~ as well, as shown in Figure 4.13. To be able to do that, we'll need to reach one form from another in code.



Figure 4.13 A multiform program.

Create a new Visual Basic project now. This project has one default form, Form1. To add another form, Form2, just select the Add Form item in the Project menu; click on OK in the Add Form dialog box that appears to accept the default new form. In addition, add a new text box, Text1, to the new form, Form2.

In addition, add a command button, Form1, and give it the caption "Show Form2" and open the code for that button now:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()
```

```
End Sub
```

When the user clicks the Show Form2 button, we will ~~show~~, which we do with Form2's Show() method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()  
    Form2.Show
```

...

End Sub

Next, to place the text Welcome to Visual Basic in the text ~~Text1~~, in Form2, we need to use that text box's fully qualified name: Form2.Text1, indicating that the text box we want is in Form2. We can use that text box's Text property this way to set the text in the box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Form2.Show
    Form2.Text1.Text = "Hello from Visual Basic"
End Sub
```

TIP: One useful property that controls have is ~~Parent~~ property. Controls are really child windows of the form they're in, so if you wanted to set the background color of the form that ~~Text1~~ is in and don't know that form's name, you can use the `Text1.Parent.BackColor` property.

That completes the code for the Show Form2 button. Form2 has a button labeled Hide Form, and we can implement that by hiding Form2 in that button's event handler procedure:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Hide
End Sub
```

WARNING! If you hide all windows in a Visual Basic program that has no Main() procedure in a module, the program will end.

And that's it we've written a program that handles multiple forms.

TIP: You can also make variables global in a Visual Basic project by declaring them at the module level and using ~~Public~~ keyword. The code in all forms has access to global variables (but in general, you should limit the number of global variables you use so the global space remains uncluttered and you don't get conflicts and unintended side effects with variables of the same name).

Loading, Showing, And Hiding Forms

There are times when you might want to work with a form before displaying it on

the screen to initialize it (with graphics and so on), in which case you can load the form into memory using the `Load` statement.

TIP: You don't need to load or unload forms to show or hide them the loading and unloading processes are automatic. You usually load forms explicitly only to work on them before displaying them, as Visual Basic recommends if you want to work with a form before showing it. However, it actually turns out that you don't really need to use `Load` even then, because referring to a form makes Visual Basic load it automatically. This means you don't have to load forms to use `Show()` or `Hide()` methods with them.

To actually show the form on the screen, then, you use the `Show()` method. Here's an example in which we load a new form, `Form2`, and then show it:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Load Form2
    Form2.Show
End Sub
```

TIP: If you load an MDI child window without having loaded its associated MDI frame, the MDI frame is also loaded automatically.

After displaying a form, you can hide it with the `Hide()` method and unload it (although that's not necessary) with the `Unload` statement. You usually unload forms if you have a lot of them and are concerned about memory usage. Here's an example in which we hide `Form2` and then unload it:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Form2.Hide
    Unload Form2
End Sub
```

Setting The Startup Form

Well, the program is complete, and you've saved writing the best for last: the opening form in which you greet the user. Unfortunately, that greeting form is `Form2`, and when you actually test the program, Visual Basic ~~pops~~¹, which is the Import File dialog box, onto the screen first. How can you make the program start with `Form2`?

You can set the startup form following these steps:

1. Select the Project[vbar]Properties item.
2. Select the General tab in the Project Properties box that opens, as shown in Figure 4.14.



Figure 4.14 Setting the startup form.

3. Set the form you want as the startup form in the Startup Object box, as also shown in Figure 4.14.

That s it now the program will display the form you ve selected first when the program runs.

Creating Forms In Code

You've added a handy calculator form to your financial planning program but you find that many users have several calculations open at once and want to open multiple calculators. How do you create and display new forms like that in Visual Basic?

New forms are simply new objects in Visual Basic. To declare a new form based on a form you already have, say Form1, you just ~~use~~ :

```
Private Sub NewForm_Click()
    Dim NewForm As Form1
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, you create the new form with the ~~New~~ keyword:

```
Private Sub NewForm_Click()
    Dim NewForm As Form1
    Set NewForm = New Form1
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, you show the new form:

```
Private Sub NewForm_Click()
    Dim NewForm As Form1
    Set NewForm = New Form1
    NewForm.Show
End Sub
```

Calling this subroutine will add as many new forms as you want to a program.

Note that we do not keep track of the new form's name (~~New~~Form is a local variable in NewForm_Click(), and you can't use it after returning from that procedure); you might want to save the new forms in an array so you can close them under program control.

Using the code, we create new forms, as shown in Figure 4.15.



Figure 4.15 Creating and displaying new forms.

Using The Multiple Document Interface

You've written a new editor program, and it's a great success. But then you start getting calls from the Field Testing Department: users want to open more than one document at a time. Just how do you do that?

You use MDI forms. MDI frame windows can display multiple child windows inside them; in fact, the Visual Basic IDE itself is an MDI frame window.

For example, if you already have a program based on a single form, Form1, and you want to make that into an MDI child window inside an MDI frame, follow these steps:

1. Add a new MDI form to the project using the Project[vbar]Add MDI Form item.
2. Set the `MDIChild` property of the form you want to use as the MDI child form (Form1 here) to True, as shown in Figure 4.16.



Figure 4.16 Setting a form `MDIChild` property to True.

3. Run the program; the form you've made into the MDI child form appears in the MDI form, as shown in Figure 4.17.



Figure 4.17 Creating an MDI child form

TIP: In Visual Basic, you can use all kinds of forms as MDI children in an MDI form, as long as the `MDIChild` property is set to True. You can also `Show()` and `Hide()` on those windows to manage them as you like.

Arranging MDI Child Windows

So you've made your program an MDI program, just as the users asked. However, the Testing Department is back on the phone, and they think it would be nice if you could provide some way of arranging the MDI children in the main MDI form so it looks tidy.

You could arrange the MDI child forms with the `Left`, `Top`, `Width`, and `Height` properties, but there's an easier way you can use the MDI form `Arrange()`.

For example, if you add a menu item to an MDI form named, say, Arrange All,

you can use the `Arrange()` method to arrange all the windows in the form in a cascade this way:

```
Private Sub ArrangeAll_Click()
    Me.Arrange vbCascade
End Sub
```

Using this method results in the cascade of MDI children seen in Figure 4.18.



Figure 4.18 Arranging MDI child forms.

The possible values to pass to `Arrange()` to specify the way you want to arrange MDI children appear in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1 Ways
of arranging MDI
child windows. Value Does This
Constant

vbCascade	0	Cascades all nonminimized MDI child windows
vbTileHorizontal	1	Tiles all nonminimized MDI child forms horizontally
vbTileVertical	2	Tiles all nonminimized MDI child forms vertically
vbArrangeIcons	3	Arranges icons for minimized MDI child forms

Opening New MDI Child Windows

Now that you've supported MDI, your program's users want to actually open multiple documents how can you allow them to do that?

You can do this one of two ways: first, you can create all the forms you want to use at design time and set their `Visible` properties to False so they don't appear when the program starts. When you want to show or hide them, you can use `Show()` or `Hide()`.

You can also create new forms as needed see [Creating Forms In Code](#) earlier in this chapter. For example, here we create and display a new MDI child form (assuming `Form1`'s `MDIChild` property is set to True), as well as setting its caption:

```
Private Sub NewWindow_Click()
    Dim NewForm As Form1
    Set NewForm = New Form1
```

```
NewForm.Caption = "Document"  
NewForm.Show  
End Sub
```

(If you want to display text in these new child forms, you might use a rich text box to cover the form's client area when you design them.)

We're adding forms this way in Figure 4.19.



Figure 4.19 Creating new MDI children from code.

Arrays Of Forms

Now that you've written your MDI program, you suddenly have a lot of windows to manage. The user wants to open 20 documents at the same time how can you keep track of all that? Wouldn't it be nice if you could use arrays of forms in Visual Basic and just refer to each form with one single array index?

You can do that in Visual Basic (in fact, you can create arrays of many types of objects, excluding such objects that there can only be one of, like the application ~~Object~~). You create an array of forms just as you would create an array of any other kind of object; here, we're creating an array of Form1 objects, because that's the type of form we'll use as MDI children in an MDI program:

```
Dim Forms(1 To 20) As Form1
```

If we declare this array `Forms()`, as a form-level array in the MDI form, we can refer to that array in all procedures in the MDI form. For example, we might want to create and display a new MDI child form in a procedure named `NewWindow_Click()`:

```
Private Sub NewWindow_Click()
```

```
End Sub
```

Next, we set up a static variable to hold the total number of MDI child forms, `NumberForms`, and increment that variable now that we're adding a new form:

```
Private Sub NewWindow_Click()
    Static NumberForms
    NumberForms = NumberForms + 1
    ...
End Sub
```

Now, we create a new form and add it to the form array:

```
Private Sub NewWindow_Click()
    Static NumberForms
    NumberForms = NumberForms + 1
    Set Forms(NumberForms) = New Form1
    ...
End Sub
```

Throughout the rest of the program, now, we're able to refer to the new form as a member of the form array; here, for example, we set its caption and show it, referring to it with an index value in the form array:

```
Private Sub NewWindow_Click()
    Static NumberForms
    NumberForms = NumberForms + 1
    Set Forms(NumberForms) = New Form1
    Forms(NumberForms).Caption = "Document" & Str(NumberForms)
    Forms(NumberForms).Show
End Sub
```

Coordinating Data Between MDI Child Forms (Document Views)

Your new word-processor program is almost done just one more refinement to add. You want to allow the user to open multiple views into the same document. A view is just a window into a document, and if a document has multiple views open, the user can scroll around in different parts of the same document at the same time. You've been able to open the same document in several view windows now but what if the user starts typing into one view? All the other views should also be updated with the new text as well. How do you keep all the open views of the same document coordinated?

We'll see how this works now. In this example, the MDI child windows will be based on a form, Form1, in which we've placed a text box. The user can open as many MDI child windows as they like with the New item in the Window menu. When they type in one MDI child's text box, however, we should mirror any such changes in the other MDI children's text boxes as well. This is shown in Figure 4.20, where the text appears simultaneously in both MDI children while the user types into one.



Figure 4.20 Coordinating MDI children.

We start by adding a new module to the program with the Project[vbar]Add Module item so that we can set up a global array of forms, and an array index variable, NumberForms, in that module:

```
Public Forms(1 To 20) As Form1
Public NumberForms As Integer
```

Next, we add a Window menu to the MDI form. We also add new forms to that array of forms when the user creates such new forms by adding this code to the MDI form's New item in the Window menu:

```
Private Sub NewWindow_Click()
    NumberForms = NumberForms + 1
    Set Forms(NumberForms) = New Form1
    Forms(NumberForms).Caption = "Document" & Str(NumberForms)
    Forms(NumberForms).Show
End Sub
```

Now theForms array holds the MDI children in our program.

When the user types text into the text box displayed in an MDI child, we want to update all the other MDI children as well, making them display the same text. When you type into a text box, aChangeevent occurs, and we'll add code to that event's handler function to update all the other MDI children:

```
Private Sub Text1_Change()
```

```
End Sub
```

Here, we store the text in the just-changed text box and, in this simple example, just loop over all MDI children, updating them to match the changed text box:

```
Private Sub Text1_Change()
    Dim Text As String
    Text = Text1.Text
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To NumberForms
        Forms(intLoopIndex).Text1.Text = Text
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

Now when you change the text in one child, the text in all children is updated. In this way, we can support multiple views into the same document.

Creating Dialog Boxes

It's time to ask the user for some feedback, and you don't want to use the Visual Basic input box because that can only accept one line of text. Besides, you don't like the way it looks (it's not a great favorite among Visual Basic programmers, perhaps for that reason). Looks like you'll have to use a dialog box. How do they work in Visual Basic?

To add a dialog box to a project, select the Project[vbar]Add Form item. You can add a simple form and make it into a dialog box, but Visual Basic already has a predefined dialog box form, named Dialog, so select that in the Add Form box and click Open.

TIP: To learn more about adding predefined forms to a project, see [Using Visual Basic Predefined Forms, Menus, And Projects](#) in Chapter 2.

This adds a new dialog box to the project, as shown in Figure 4.21.



Figure 4.21 A new dialog box.

This dialog box comes with an OK and Cancel button, and its `BorderStyle` property is already set to 3, which creates a fixed dialog-style border with only one control button: a close button.

We add a text box, `Text1`, to the dialog box, as also shown in Figure 4.21. Next, we declare a `Public` string, `Feedback`, in the dialog box's (General) section; this string will hold the text that the user gives us as feedback:

```
Public Feedback As String
```

When the dialog box opens, we can initialize `Feedback` to the empty string:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Feedback = ""
End Sub
```

If the user clicks the Cancel button, we want to leave the `Feedback` as the empty string and just hide the dialog box:

```
Private Sub CancelButton_Click()
```

```
    Hide
```

```
End Sub
```

If the user clicks OK, on the other hand, we fill ~~the~~ `sFeedbackString` with what the user has typed into the text box, and then hide the dialog box:

```
Private Sub OKButton_Click()
    Feedback = Text1.Text
    Hide
End Sub
```

That completes the dialog box. In the program's main form, we can show that dialog box when required this way note that we pass a value of 1 `Show()` method, which displays our dialog box ~~as~~ modal. Modal means that the user must dismiss the dialog box before continuing on with the rest of the program (the default value passed to `Show()` is 0, which displays windows in a non-modal way):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dialog.Show 1
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, we can display the feedback that the user has given us, if any, by examining the dialog's `sFeedbackString` this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dialog.Show 1
    Text1.Text = Dialog.Feedback
End Sub
```

And that's it now we are supporting dialog boxes, as shown in Figure 4.22.



Figure 4.22 Using a newly created dialog box.

TIP: One good rule for constructing dialog boxes: always add a Cancel button so that if users open the dialog box by mistake, they can close it without consequences.

All About Message Boxes And Input Boxes

Visual Basic provides two ways of displaying message boxes and input dialog boxes:

using `MsgBox()` and `InputBox()`. We'll cover their syntax in the following subsections.

The MsgBox() Function

You use `MsgBox()` to display a message to the user and get a return value corresponding to one of the buttons in the message box. Here's the syntax:

```
MsgBox(prompt[, buttons] [, title] [, helpfile, context])
```

The *prompt* argument holds the string displayed as the message in the dialog box. (The maximum length of *prompt* is approximately 1,024 characters.)

TIP: If *prompt* is made up of more than one line, you can separate the lines using a carriage return character (`\r(13)`), a linefeed character (`\n(10)`), or both (`\r(13) & \n(10)`) between each line.

The *buttons* argument specifies what to put into the message box, as specified in Table 4.2. The default value for *buttons* is 0.

Table 4.2 `MsgBox()`

constants	Constant	Value	Description
<code>vbOKOnly</code>	0	Display OK button only	
<code>vbOKCancel</code>	1	Display OK and Cancel buttons	
<code>vbAbortRetryIgnore</code>	2	Display Abort, Retry, and Ignore buttons	
<code>vbYesNoCancel</code>	3	Display Yes, No, and Cancel buttons	
<code>vbYesNo</code>	4	Display Yes and No buttons	
<code>vbRetryCancel</code>	5	Display Retry and Cancel buttons	
<code>vbCritical</code>	16	Display Critical Message icon	
<code>vbQuestion</code>	32	Display Warning Query icon	
<code>vbExclamation</code>	48	Display Warning Message icon	
<code>vbInformation</code>	64	Display Information Message icon	
<code>vbDefaultButton1</code>	0	First button is default	
<code>vbDefaultButton2</code>	256	Second button is default	
<code>vbDefaultButton3</code>	512	Third button is default	
<code>vbDefaultButton4</code>	768	Fourth button is default	
<code>vbApplicationModal</code>	0	Application modal; the user must respond to the message box before continuing work in the current application.	
<code>vbSystemModal</code>	4096	System modal; all applications are suspended until the user responds to the message box.	
<code>vbMsgBoxHelpButton</code>	16384	Adds Help button to the message box	

VbMsgBoxSetForeground	65536	Specifies the message box window as the foreground window
vbMsgBoxRight	524288	Text is right-aligned
vbMsgBoxRtlReading	1048576	Specifies text should appear as right-to-left reading on Hebrew and Arabic systems

The title parameter holds the string displayed in the title bar of the dialog box. (If you don't specify title, the application name is placed in the title bar.)

The helpfile argument is a string that identifies the Help file to use to provide context-sensitive Help for the dialog box.

The contextargument is the Help context number assigned to the appropriate Help topic.

The possible return values from MsgBox() appear in Table 4.3.

Table 4.3

MsgBox()
return
values. ValueDescription
Constant

vbOK	1	OK
vbCancel	2	Cancel
vbAbort	3	Abort
vbRetry	4	Retry
vbIgnore	5	Ignore
vbYes	6	Yes
vbNo	7	No

The InputBox() Function

You can use the InputBox() function to get a string of text from the user. Here's the syntax for this function:

```
InputBox(prompt[, title] [, default] [, xpos] [, ypos] [, helpfile,
context])
```

The prompt argument is a string displayed as the message in the dialog box.

The title argument is a string displayed in the title bar of the dialog box. (If you don't specify the title, the application name is placed in the title bar.)

The default argument is a string displayed in the text box as the default response if no other input is provided.

The xpos argument is a number that specifies (in twips) the horizontal distance of the left edge of the dialog box from the left edge of the screen.

The ypos argument is a number that specifies (in twips) the vertical distance of the upper edge of

the dialog box from the top of the screen.

The `helpfile` argument is a string that identifies the Help file to use to provide context-sensitive Help for the dialog box.

The `context` argument is the Help context number assigned to the appropriate Help topic.

The `InputBox()` function returns the string the user entered.

Passing Forms To Procedures

You can pass forms to procedures just as you would any object. Here, we've set up a subroutine, `ColorWindowWhite()`, to turn the background color of a form to white:

```
Sub ColorWindowWhite(FormToColor As Form)
```

```
End Sub
```

In this case, we can simply refer to the form passed to this subroutine by the name we've given the passed parameter, `FormToColor`:

```
Sub ColorWindowWhite(FormToColor As Form)
    FormToColor.BackColor = RGB(255, 255, 255)
End Sub
```

Now you can pass a form to the `ColorWindowWhite()` subroutine easily:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    ColorWindowWhite Me
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes to pass a form to a procedure.

Minimizing/Maximizing And Enabling/Disabling Forms From Code

To exert a little more control over the windows in your programs, you can set the `WindowState` property to maximize or minimize them. Here's how you set that property, and what those settings mean:

- " 0 Normal
- " 1 Minimized
- " 2 Maximized

Here's an example, where we minimize a form when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    WindowState = 1
End Sub
```

You can also set the Enabled property to enable or disable a window (when it's disabled, it will only beep if the user tries to give it the focus). You set Enabled property to True to enable a window and to False to disable it.

Chapter 5

Visual Basic Menus

If you need an immediate solution to:

Using The Visual Basic Application Wizard To Set Up Your Menus

What Item Goes In What Menu?

Adding A Menu To A Form

Modifying And Deleting Menu Items

Adding A Menu Separator

Adding Access Characters

Adding Shortcut Keys

Creating Submenus

Creating Immediate (Bang) Menus

Using The Visual Basic Predefined Menus

Adding A Checkmark To A Menu Item

Disabling (Graying Out) Menu Items

Handling MDI Form And MDI Child Menus

Adding A List Of Open Windows To An MDI Form's Window Menu

Making Menus And Menu Items Visible Or Invisible

Creating And Displaying Pop-Up Menus

Adding And Deleting Menu Items At Runtime

Adding Bitmaps To Menus

Using The Registry To Store A Most Recently Used (MRU) Files List

In Depth

Everyone who uses Windows knows about menus they're those clever controls that hide away lists of items until you want to make a selection, like the Visual Basic File menu, which appears in Figure 5.1. And, in fact, that's the design philosophy

behind menus: rather than presenting the user with all possible controls at once, menus hide their items until needed. Imagine a program with 50 buttons all over it Save File, Save File As, Insert Object, Paste Special, and so on you'd hardly have space for anything else. That's why menus are so popular: they present their controls in drop-down windows, ready to use when needed.



Figure 5.1 The Visual Basic File menu.

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at using menus in Visual Basic. We'll start with an overview of designing your menu system, including some considerations that Microsoft has developed. Then we'll go to this chapter's Immediate Solutions, seeing how to use the Visual Basic Menu Editor to create and modify menus. We'll also see how to modify menus and the items they include from code, when a program is running. And, of course, we'll see some special topics, like how to create a Most Recently Used (MRU) list of files and how to use Windows functions to add bitmaps to menu items.

We'll start our overview on Visual Basic menus now by taking a look at the parts of a menu.

Menu Design Considerations

Every Windows programmer is familiar with the parts of a menu; for reference, they appear in Figure 5.1. The menu names in a program appear in the menu bar usually just under the title bar and when the user selects a menu, that menu opens, like the File menu in Figure 5.1.

Each menu usually contains items arranged in a vertical list. These items are often grouped into functional groups with menu separators, or thin horizontal rules, as shown in Figure 5.1. When the user selects a menu item (from the keyboard or with the mouse), that item appears highlighted; pressing Enter or releasing the mouse button opens that item.

Menu items can also be disabled (also called "grayed out"), as shown in Figure 5.1. A disabled item is not accessible to the user and does nothing if selected.

TIP: If your program presents the user with a lot of disabled menu items, the user may feel locked out and frustrated. To avoid such situations, many programs add or remove menu items from menus at runtime, and we'll see how to do that in this chapter.

Access Characters And Shortcuts

Ideally, each item should have a unique ~~access~~ character for users who choose commands with keyboards. The user reaches the menu or menu item by pressing Alt

key and the access character. The access character should be the first letter of the menu title, unless another letter offers a stronger link; no two menus or menu items should use the same access character.

Shortcuts are also useful to the user; these keys are faster than access characters in that the user only needs to enter a shortcut to execute the corresponding menu item. For example, the New Project shortcut in Figure 5.1 is Ctrl+N.

Note also that an ellipsis (&) should follow names of menu items that display a dialog box (Save As&, Preferences&, etc.) when selected. In addition, if you have menus in the menu bar that execute a command immediately instead of opening a menu, you should append an exclamation point to the menu's name, such as Collate!

Designing Your Menus

A popular aspect of Windows is that it gives the user a common interface, no matter what program they're using, and users have come to expect that. In fact, if it's hard to learn a new, nonstandard Windows program, the user may well turn to a Windows-compliant alternative, so it's a good idea to stick with the Windows standards.

Most programs have a File menu first (at left) in the menu bar, followed by other menus, like a View menu, a Tools menu, and so on, followed by a Help menu, which usually appears last (and often at the extreme right in the menu bar). Users expect to find certain standard items in particular menus; for a list of these items, see *What Item Goes In What Menu?* in this chapter.

Microsoft recommends that you keep your menu item names short. For one thing, if you want to release your application internationally, the length of words tends to increase approximately 30 percent in foreign versions, and you may not have enough space to list all of your menu items. Microsoft also recommends that you use the mnu prefix in code for menus, like mnuFile, and menu items, like mnuFileOpen.

That completes our overview; it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Using The Visual Basic Application Wizard To Set Up Your Menus

Probably the easiest way to get a substantial menu system going in your program is to design that program with the Visual Basic Application Wizard. The menu-designing window that appears when you build an application with the Application Wizard appears in Figure 5.2.



Figure 5.2 Using the Application Wizard to design a menu system.

You can arrange, add, or remove menu items with the click of a mouse. The Application Wizard isn't for everyone, but it can create a very complete menu system, as shown in Figure 5.3, where the File menu in the created application is open.



Figure 5.3 An Application Wizard designed program's menu system.

What Item Goes In What Menu?

The Testing Department gives you a call to ask why the Paste item in your new application is in the View menu. You ask if they had a different menu in mind, and they mention something about the Edit menu. How can you avoid such calls? With the following lists.

Users expect to find certain standard items in certain menus if your program is going to support those items. To start us off, here's the kind of item you might find in the File menu (note that not all programs will use all these menus):

- " New
- " Open
- " Close
- " Close All
- " Save
- " Save As
- " Save All
- " Properties
- " Templates
- " Page Setup
- " Print Preview
- " Print
- " Print Using
- " Send
- " Update
- " Exit

TIP: Even in programs that don't handle files, it's not uncommon to see a File menu for one reason that's where the user expects the Exit item. Don't forget to add an Exit item to your menu system (you can end a Visual Basic program using the End statement, so this menu item is easy to implement).

The Edit menu usually holds items like these:

- " Undo
- " Redo
- " Cut
- " Copy
- " Paste
- " Paste Using
- " Paste Special
- " Clear
- " Select All
- " Find
- " Replace
- " Bookmark
- " Insert Object (unless you have a separate Insert menu)

The View menu has items like these:

- " Toolbar
- " Status Bar
- " Refresh
- " Options

The Window menu has items like these:

- " New Window
- " Cascade
- " Tile Windows
- " Arrange All
- " Split
- " List Of Windows

The Help menu has items like these:

- " Help

- " Help Index
- " Help Table of Contents
- " Search for Help On
- " Web Support
- " About

Adding A Menu To A Form

The design process is complete it's time to start adding menus to your new program. But when you sit down and start looking for the Menu tool in the toolbox, you find that there isn't one. Just how do you add a menu to a form?

You use the Visual Basic Menu Editor. You'll get a basic introduction to the Menu Editor here, and we'll use it throughout this chapter. To add a menu to a form, select that form (that is, click on it), and open the Menu Editor by selecting the Menu Editor in the Tools menu. Or, you can select its icon in the toolbar (which has the tool tip *Menu Editor*). The Visual Basic Menu Editor appears in Figure 5.4.



Figure 5.4 The Visual Basic Menu Editor.

Creating A New Menu

To create a new menu, you only have to provide two essential items: the caption of the menu and its name. The `Caption` property holds the title of the menu, such as `File`, and the `Name` property holds the name you'll use for that menu in code, such as `mnuFile`.

Fill in the `Caption` and `Name` properties for your new menu now. Congratulations, you've created a new menu. Now it's time to add items to the new menu.

Creating A New Menu Item

We can add a new menu item, say, `New`, to the `File` menu we've just created. To do so, click the `Next` button in the Menu Editor, moving the highlighted bar in the box at the bottom of the Menu Editor down one line. If you just entered `Caption` and `Name` values and left it at that, you'd create a new menu, not a new menu item. So click the right-pointing arrow button in the Menu Editor now to indent the next item four spaces in the box at the bottom of the Menu Editor. Now enter the `Caption` (`New`) and `Name` (`mnuFileNew`) values for the new menu item.

The menu item you've just created appears in the Menu Editor below the `File` menu item and indented, like this:

File

....New

This means that we now have a File menu with one item in it New.

That's how your menu system is displayed in the Menu Editor: as a series of indented items. For example, here's how a File menu with New and Open items, followed by an Edit menu with three items, Cut, Copy, and Paste, would look in the Menu Editor:

```
File
....New
...Open
Edit
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
```

Here's how to create a new menu system in the Menu Editor, step-by-step:

1. Enter the first menu's caption and name.
2. Click the Next button (or press Enter).
3. Click the right arrow to indent one level, making this next entry a menu item.
4. Enter the menu item's caption and name.
5. Click the Next button (or press Enter).
6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for all the items in the first menu.
7. Click the Next button (or press Enter).
8. Click the left arrow to outdent, making this next entry a menu.
9. Enter the next menu's caption and name.
10. Click the right arrow to indent one level, making this next entry a menu item.
11. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for the items in this new menu.
12. Repeat Steps 7 through 11 for the rest of the menus in the program.
13. Click on OK to close the Menu Editor.
14. Edit the code.

You edit the code for menu items just as you do for other controls: click the menu item in the form under design (opening the item's menu if necessary). This opens the menu item's event handler, like this:

```
Private Sub mnuFileNew_Click()
```

```
End Sub
```

Just add the code you want to execute when the user chooses this menu item to the event handler procedure:

```
Private Sub mnuFileNew_Click()
```

```
    LoadNewDoc
```

```
End Sub
```

And that's it now you've added a menu system to your program.

Modifying And Deleting Menu Items

You think the program is perfect, but the users are complaining that they don't like having the Save As item in the Edit menu and want to move it to the File menu. Is that possible?

Yes, using the Menu Editor. You can rearrange, add, or remove items in your menu with the Menu Editor, so open that tool now (as shown in Figure 5.4).

Inserting Or Deleting Items In A Menu System

To add a new item to a menu, or a new menu to the menu system, select an item in the Menu Editor, and click the Insert button. This inserts a new, empty entry into the menu just before the item you selected:

```
File
....New
....Open
...
Edit
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
```

Now just enter the new item's ~~Caption~~ and ~~Name~~ properties, and you're all set.

To remove a menu or menu item, just select that menu or item and click the Delete button.

Rearranging Items In A Menu System

You can use the four arrow buttons in the Menu Editor to move items up and down, as well as indent or outdent (that is, remove one level of indenting) menu items.

Here's what the arrows do:

- " Right arrow Indents a menu item.
- " Left arrow Outdents a menu item.
- " Up arrow Moves the currently selected item up one level.
- " Down arrow Moves the currently selected item down one level.

For example, to move the Save As item from the Edit menu to the File menu, just select that item and keep clicking the up arrow button until the Save As item is positioned as you want it in the File menu.

Adding A Menu Separator

Menus themselves allow you ways to group commands by function (File, Edit, and so on). Often within a menu, however, it helps the user to group ~~items~~ by function (Print, Print Preview, Page Setup, and so on). You do that with separators

A menu separator is a horizontal rule that really only has one purpose to divide menu items into groups (refer back to Figure 5.1). And using the Menu Editor, you can add separators to your menus.

To add a menu separator, select an item in the Menu Editor and click Insert to create a new item just before the item you selected. To make this new item a menu separator, just give it a hyphen (-) for its ~~Caption~~ property. You must give all menu items a name even if they don't do anything so give it a ~~Name~~ property value as well, such as ~~menuSeparator~~.

When you run the program, you'll see the menu separators in place, as in the menu in Figure 5.5. Now we're adding menu item separators to our menus.



Figure 5.5 A menu with menu separators.

Adding Access Characters

The Testing Department's calling again: They like the menus you've added to your program, but there's the keyboard access issue. Theoretically, they say, users should be able to use the keyboard for everything.

It's time to add access characters to your program. When the user presses the Alt key and an access character, the menu item corresponding to that access character is selected. How do you associate an access character with a menu or menu item? It's easy just place an ampersand (&) in front of the character you want to make into the access character in that menu or item's caption.

For example, if you had this menu system

```
File
....New
....Open
Edit
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
```

you could make a letter in all menus or menu items into access characters by placing an ampersand in front of it:

```
&File
....&New
....&Open
&Edit
....&Cut
....C&opy
....&Paste
```

Avoiding Access Character Duplication

Note in the previous example that we have two items Cut and Copy in the Edit menu that begin with C. That's a problem, because an access character must be unique at its level (where the level is the menu bar for menus and a menu for menu items). To avoid confusion (both to the user and to Visual Basic), we make o, the second letter in Copy, the access character for that item.

The result of adding access characters to your menus at design time appears in the Menu Editor in Figure 5.6. At runtime, access characters appear underlined in menus, as shown in Figure 5.7.



Figure 5.6 Adding access characters.



Figure 5.7 Access characters are underlined.

To use an access key, users first open the menu in which the item they want to select appears (possibly using an access key, like Alt+F for the File menu), then they press the Alt key and the access key.

Adding Shortcut Keys

One of the most powerful aspects of menus is the ability to assign **shortcut keys**, single keys or key combinations that let the user execute a menu command immediately (without having to open the menu the command is in, as you must do with access keys). You usually use function keys (although many PCs now go up to F16, it's best to limit yourself to F1 through F10) or Ctrl key combinations for shortcut keys. For example, the standard shortcut key for Select All is Ctrl+A, and entering that shortcut selects all the text in a document.

Giving a menu item a shortcut key is very easy in the Menu Editor. Just open the Menu Editor, select the item you want to give a shortcut key to (such as the File menu's New item in Figure 5.8) and select the shortcut key you want to use in the Menu Editor box labeled Shortcut. (Note that to open the Menu Editor, the form you're designing must be the active window in Visual Basic, not the code window.) In Figure 5.8, we give the New item the shortcut Ctrl+N.



Figure 5.8 Setting a shortcut key.

That's all it takes now run the program, as shown in Figure 5.9. You can see the Ctrl+N at the right in the menu item named New we've installed our menu shortcut.



Figure 5.9 Shortcut key in a program's menu.

Shortcut Key Standards

Windows conventions now include a set of standard shortcut keys that are supposed to apply across most Windows applications. Here are the most common shortcut keys (be very careful when using these key combinations for other purposes; your users may expect the standard response):

- " Ctrl+A Select All

- " Ctrl+B Bold
- " Ctrl+C Copy
- " Ctrl+F Find
- " Ctrl+G Go To
- " Ctrl+H Replace
- " Ctrl+I Italic
- " Ctrl+J Justify
- " Ctrl+N New
- " Ctrl+O Open
- " Ctrl+P Print
- " Ctrl+Q Quit
- " Ctrl+S Save
- " Ctrl+U Underline
- " Ctrl+V Paste
- " Ctrl+W Close
- " Ctrl+X Cut
- " Ctrl+Z Undo
- " F1 Help

Creating Submenus

The email is in and it's more praise for your program (AmazingWingDings Deluxe version). It's gratifying to read the great reviews but one user asks if you couldn't place the Red, Green, and Blue color selections in the Edit menu instead of the Home menu. What are submenus, and how can you create them?

What the user wants appears in Figure 5.10. As you can see in that figure, the Colors item in the Edit menu has a small arrow at the right. This indicates that there's a submenu attached to this menu item. Selecting the menu item opens the submenu, as also shown in Figure 5.10. As you can see, submenus appear as menus attached to menus.



Figure 5.10 A program with a submenu.

Submenus let you organize your menu system in a compact way, and adding them to a program is simple. For example, let's say you started this way, with a Red, Green, and Blue menu item in the Edit menu:

```
Edit
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
....Red
....Green
....Blue
....Select All
```

To put those items in a submenu, we first add a name for the submenu say, Colors:

```
Edit
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
....Colors
....Red
....Green
....Blue
....Select All
```

All that's left is to indent (using the right arrow in the Menu Editor) the items that should go into that submenu (note that they must appear just under the submenu's name):

Edit

```
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
....Colors
.....Red
.....Green
.....Blue
....Select All
```

That's it close the Menu Editor.

You add code to submenu items in the same way that you add code to menu items just click them to open the corresponding event-handling function and add the code you want, as we've done here to report the user's color selection:

```
Private Sub mnuEditColorsBlue_Click()
    MsgBox ("You selected Blue")
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuEditColorsGreen_Click()
    MsgBox ("You selected Green")
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuEditColorsRed_Click()
    MsgBox ("You selected Red")
```

Creating Immediate (Bang) Menus

Sometimes you'll see immediate menus (also called bang menus) in menu bars. These are special menus that don't open when you merely click them in the menu bar, they execute their associated command. The name of these menus is followed with an exclamation mark (!) like this: Download!. When you click the Download! item in the menu bar, the downloading process starts at once, without opening a menu at all.

Now that toolbars are so common, one sees fewer immediate menus (that is, toolbars act very much like immediate menus are supposed to work), but some programmers still use them. And because they're easy to create, we'll cover them here.

To create an immediate menu, just add a menu, such as Download! (don't forget to add exclamation point on the end of Download in the Caption property, but not in

the Name property), and don't give it any menu items. Instead, place the code you want to run in the Click event handler for the menu itself:

```
Private Sub mnuDownload_Click()
    MsgBox ( "Downloading from the Internet..." )
End Sub
```

That's all you need. Now when the user selects the Download! menu, this code will be executed. We're about to execute the Download! immediate menu in Figure 5.11. Note that there is no menu opening, even though the Download! item in the menu bar is selected.



Figure 5.11 Selecting an immediate menu.

Using The Visual Basic Predefined Menus

You can use the Visual Component Manager to add a predefined menu to a form (note that not all versions of Visual Basic come with the Visual Component Manager). As you can see in the Visual Component Manager's Visual Basic|Templates|Menus folder, as shown in Figure 5.12, six predefined menus are available. These menus include a File menu, an Edit menu, a Help menu, a Window menu, and so on. To add one of these menus to a form, just select the form and double-click the menu in the Visual Component Manager.



Figure 5.12 Selecting a predefined menu.

For example, we can add a predefined File menu to a form this way. The result appears in Figure 5.13.



Figure 5.13 Using a predefined menu.

Adding a predefined menu also adds code to the form. For example, here's the skeletal code that's added when you add a predefined File menu:

```
Private Sub mnuFileNew_Click()
    MsgBox "New File Code goes here!"
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFileOpen_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Open Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFilePrint_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Print Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFilePrintPreview_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Print Preview Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFilePrintSetup_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Print Setup Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFileProperties_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Properties Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFileSave_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Save File Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFileSaveAll_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Save All Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFileSaveAs_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Save As Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub mnuFileSend_Click()
```

```
    MsgBox "Send Code goes here!"
```

```
End Sub
```

TIP: If you don't have the Visual Component Manager, you can add a form with a predefined menu to a project. Select Project|Add Form, click the Existing tab, and

open the Menus folder to find the possible menu forms to add to your project.

Adding A Checkmark To A Menu Item

When you want to toggle an option in a program, such as Insert mode for entering text, it's easy to add or remove checkmarks in front of menu items. Displaying a checkmark gives visual feedback to the user about the toggle state of the option, and there's two ways to add checkmarks to menu items: at design time and at runtime.

Adding Checkmarks At Design Time

To add a checkmark to a menu item at design time, you simply select the Checked box in the Menu Editor, as shown in Figure 5.14, where we add a checkmark to the Edit menu's Insert item.



Figure 5.14 Adding a checkmark to a menu item at design time.

Now when the Edit menu is first displayed, the Insert item will appear checked.

Adding Checkmarks At Runtime

You can also set checkmarks at runtime using a menu item's `Checked` property. For example, here's how we toggle the Insert item's checkmark each time the user selects that item; setting `Checked` to True places a checkmark in front of the item, and to False removes that checkmark:

```
Private Sub mnuEditInsert_Click()
    Static blnChecked As Boolean
    blnChecked = Not blnChecked
    mnuEditInsert.Checked = blnChecked
End Sub
```

Running this code toggles a checkmark in front of the Insert item, as shown in Figure 5.15.



Figure 5.15 Adding a checkmark to a menu item at runtime.

Disabling (Graying Out) Menu Items

To indicate to the user that a menu item is not available at a particular time (such as Copy when there is no selected text), you can disable a menu item (also called graying it out). And you can do this at design time or runtime.

Disabling Menu Items At Design Time

To disable a menu item at design time, just deselect the Enabled box in the Menu Editor, as shown in Figure 5.16, where we disable the Insert menu item.



Figure 5.16 Disabling a menu item at design time.

Now when the Edit menu is first shown, the Insert item will be disabled.

Disabling Menu Items At Runtime

You can also disable (and enable) menu items at runtime using the ~~Enabled~~ property. You set this property to True to enable a menu item and to False when you want to disable an item.

For example, here's how we disable the Edit menu's Insert item when the user clicks it (note that in this program there is then no way for the user to enable it again):

```
Private Sub mnuEditInsert_Click()
    mnuEditInsert.Enabled = False
End Sub
```

Figure 5.17 shows the result we've disabled the Insert menu item.



Figure 5.17 Disabling a menu item at runtime.

Handling MDI Form And MDI Child Menus

You've created your new program, ~~SuperWizardTextEdit~~ and made it an MDI program. But now there's a call from the Testing Department users are getting confused. Why is the Edit menu still visible when no documents are open to edit? Can you fix this?

Yes you can. Visual Basic lets you specify two menus in an MDI program, one for the MDI form and one for the MDI child form (and more if you have several types of MDI child forms). If the MDI form has a menu and the MDI child form has no

menu, the MDI form's menu is active at all times.

If, on the other hand, the MDI child form has a menu, that menu takes over the MDI form's menu system any time one or more of those child forms is open. What this means in practice is that you give the MDI form a rudimentary menu system (typically just File and Help menus) and save the full menu system (like File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Tools, Window, Help, and so on) for the child windows to ensure the full menu system is on display only when documents are open and those menus apply.

For example, you might add just this simple menu system to the MDI form in an MDI program. Note that you should, at a minimum, give the user some way to open a new or existing document, and you should provide access to Help:

```
File
....New
....Open
Help
....Contents
```

Here's an example of a full menu system you might then give to the MDI child form, which will take over the main MDI form's menu system when a child form is open:

```
File
....New
....Open
....Save
....Save As
Edit
....Cut
....Copy
....Paste
Tools
....Graphics Editor
....Charts Editor
....Exporter
Help
....Contents
```

TIP: If the user closes all documents at any time, the MDI form's menu system

becomes active again it's only when MDI child forms are open that their menus take over the main menu system.

Adding A List Of Open Windows To An MDI Form's Window Menu

You might have noticed that Window menus in professional MDI programs include a list of open MDI child windows, and you can select which child is active by selecting from this list. You can add that to your program by adding all the code yourself, but there's an easier way you can set a `mnuWindowList` property.

Setting a menu `WindowList` property to True adds a list of windows to that menu, and you can set the `WindowList` property in the Menu Editor simply by selecting a checkbox, as shown in Figure 5.18.



Figure 5.18 Adding a window list to a Window menu.

Now when the program runs, the menu you added a window list to will indeed display a list of open windows, separated from the rest of the menu items with a menu separator, as shown in Figure 5.19.



Figure 5.19 Our window list is active.

You've added a touch of professionalism to your program with a single mouse click.

Making Menus And Menu Items Visible Or Invisible

The Field Testing Department is on the phone again. Someone there doesn't like the look of the 30 disabled menu items in the Edit menu. You explain that those items just don't apply in most cases, so they should be disabled. The Field Testing people suggest you just remove those items from the Edit menu until they can be used. How does that work?

Like other Visual Basic controls, menus and menu items have a `Visible` property, and you can set that property to True to make a menu or menu item visible, and to False to make it invisible (and so remove it from a menu bar or menu).

For example, you might have an item in the File menu: Connect to the Internet, which is inappropriate in a computer that has no way to connect to the Internet. You can make that item disappear from the File menu by setting its `Visible` property to False, as we do here after checking some hypothetical variable `blnCanConnect`:

```
If blnCanConnect Then
    mnuFileInternet.Visible = True
```

```
Else
```

```
    mnuFileInternet.Visible = False
```

```
End If
```

Making menus and menu items visible or invisible is often a better alternative to displaying menus with too many disabled items (which can frustrate the user and make a program seem inaccessible).

Creating And Displaying Pop-Up Menus

Pop-up menus those menus that appear when you right-click a form have become very popular these days, and we can add them to Visual Basic programs.

Creating A Pop-up Menu

To create a new pop-up menu, just use the Menu Editor as shown in Figure 5.20, where we create a new menu named Popup (you can use whatever caption you want for the menu; the caption does not appear when the popup menu appears only the items in the menu appear). The menu has two items in it: Message (displays a message box) and Beep (beeps).



Figure 5.20 Designing a pop-up menu.

Note that we set this menu's `Visible` property to False to make sure we don't display it in the menu bar.

We've created our pop-up menu now but it doesn't appear in the menu bar. How can we add code to the two items in that menu?

You reach those two items, `mnuPopupMessage` and `mnuPopupBeep` in the code window. Double-click the form now to open the code window. The left drop-down box in the code window lists all the objects in the form, so find `mnuPopupMessage` and `mnuPopupBeep` and add event-handling functions to the `Click` events:

```
Private Sub mnuPopupBeep_Click()
End Sub

Private Sub mnuPopupMessage_Click()
End Sub
```

Here, we'll just make the Beep item beep and the Message item display a message box acknowledging the user's action:

```
Private Sub mnuPopupBeep_Click()
    Beep
End Sub

Private Sub mnuPopupMessage_Click()
    MsgBox ("You selected the Message item")
End Sub
```

That completes the design of the pop-up menu but how do we display it when the user right-clicks the form?

Displaying A Pop-Up Menu

We want to check for right mouse button events, so add a `MouseDown` event handler to our program using the code window now:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer,
                           X As Single, Y As Single)
End Sub
```

You can tell which mouse button went down by comparing the `Button` argument to these predefined Visual Basic constants:

```
" vbLeftButton = 1
```

```
" vbRightButton = 2
" vbMiddleButton = 4
```

This means we check for the right mouse button:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer,_
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    If Button = vbRightButton Then
    ...
    End If
End Sub
```

If the right mouse button did go down, we display the pop-up menu with `PopupMenu` method:

```
[object.]PopupMenu menuname [, flags [,x [, y [, boldcommand ]]]]
```

Here, `menuname` is the name of the menu to open, the possible values for `flags` parameter appear in Table 5.1, and `x` and `y` indicate a position for the menu, `boldcommand` is the name of the one (but no more than one) menu item you want to appear bold. Here's how we use `PopupMenu`:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer,_
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    If Button = vbRightButton Then
        PopupMenu Popup
    End If
End Sub
```

Table 5.1 Pop-UpMenu

<code>constants</code>	<code>Constant</code>	<code>Does This</code>
------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

`vbPopupMenuLeftAlign` Default. The specified location defines the left edge of the pop-up menu.

`vbPopupMenuCenterAlign` The pop-up menu is centered around the specified location.

`vbPopupMenuRightAlign` The specified location defines the right edge of the pop-up menu.

`vbPopupMenuLeftButtonDefault`. The pop-up menu is displayed when the user clicks a menu item with the left mouse button only.

`vbPopupMenuRightButton` The pop-up menu is displayed when the user clicks a menu item with either the right or left mouse button.

That's it the result appears in Figure 5.21. Now we're using pop-up menus in Visual Basic.



Figure 5.21 Our pop-up menu at work.

Adding And Deleting Menu Items At Runtime

We've all seen menus that change as a program runs, and that can be a sophisticated effect. It's also impressive if the menu can change in response to user input (for example, adding a new item with the caption `CreateProgname.exe`, where `Progname` is the name given the program). You can add this capability to your program in Visual Basic.

Here, we'll just add new items Item 1, Item 2, and so on to the File menu with the user clicks a button. We start by designing our menu system, giving it a File menu with two items: New and Items, as you can see in Figure 5.22.



Figure 5.22 Designing an extendable menu.

The Items item is actually a placeholder for the items we'll add to the File menu. Make this item into a control array by giving it an index, 0, in the Index box, as shown in Figure 5.22. This item is just a placeholder we don't want it to be visible before the user adds items to this menu so set its Visible property to False, as also shown in Figure 5.22.

Now add a button to the program, and give `Click` event-handling function:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
End Sub
```

We'll keep track of the items in the File menu with a variable named `intItemCount`, which we increment each time the button is clicked:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Static intItemCount
    intItemCount = intItemCount + 1
    ...
End Sub
```

To add a new item to the Items control array, we use `Insert()`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Static intItemCount
```

```

intItemCount = intItemCount + 1
Load mnuFileItems(intItemCount)

...
End Sub

```

Finally, we set the caption of the item to indicate what its item number is, and make it visible:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Static intItemCount
    intItemCount = intItemCount + 1
    Load mnuFileItems(intItemCount)
    mnuFileItems(intItemCount).Caption = "Item " & intItemCount
    mnuFileItems(intItemCount).Visible = True
End Sub

```

You can also add `Click` event handler to the Items menu item (because it's not visible in the menu bar, find `mnuFileItems` in the code window and add the event handler to it there). This event handler is passed the index of the clicked item in the control array, so we can indicate to the user which item he has clicked:

```

Private Sub mnuFileItems_Click(Index As Integer)
    MsgBox ("You clicked item " + Str(Index))
End Sub

```

That's it now the File menu can grow as you like, as shown in Figure 5.23.



Figure 5.23 Adding items to a menu at runtime.

To remove items from the menu, just ~~Load~~ `Unload()` statement like this (and make sure you adjust the total item count):

```
Unload mnuFileItems(intItemCount)
```

Adding Bitmaps To Menus

You can even add bitmaps to Visual Basic menu items, although you can't use Visual Basic directly to do that. To see how to do that, we'll create an example that will load in a small bitmap file, `image.bmp`, and display it in a menu item.

This is going to take some Windows work, which we'll introduce later in the book (if you don't understand what's going on, it will become clear later). First, create a new project and give Form1 a File menu one item in it. Add a Picture control, Picture1, to the form, setting that control's ~~Visible~~ property to False, and its AutoRedraw property to True. We'll use that control to load in the image file when the form loads.

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture(App.Path & "\image.bmp")
    ...
End Sub
```

To insert a bitmap into a menu item, we'll need a handle to a bitmap. We have access to the image through the Picture control, so we create a device context with the ~~Windows~~ CreateCompatibleDC() function, and an empty bitmap with the ~~Windows~~ CreateCompatibleBitmap() function (note that all the Windows functions we used must be declared before being used we'll see more about this later in the book)

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture(App.Path & "\image.bmp")

    Dim dcMemory As Long
    Dim hMemoryBitmap As Long
    dcMemory = CreateCompatibleDC(Picture1.hdc)
    hMemoryBitmap = CreateCompatibleBitmap(Picture1.hdc, 60, 30)
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, we select (that is, install) the new bitmap into the device context ~~SelectObject~~

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture(App.Path & "\image.bmp")

    Dim dcMemory As Long
    Dim hMemoryBitmap As Long
    dcMemory = CreateCompatibleDC(Picture1.hdc)
    hMemoryBitmap = CreateCompatibleBitmap(Picture1.hdc, 60, 30)
    Dim pObject As Long
    pObject = SelectObject(dcMemory, hMemoryBitmap)
    ...
End Sub
```

Now that we've created our new device context and installed a bitmap, we can copy the image from Picture control's device context to the new device context this way using the ~~WB~~~~BitBlt()~~ function:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture(App.Path & "\image.bmp")

    Dim dcMemory As Long
    Dim hMemoryBitmap As Long
    dcMemory = CreateCompatibleDC(Picture1.hdc)
    hMemoryBitmap = CreateCompatibleBitmap(Picture1.hdc, 60, 30)

    Dim pObject As Long
    pObject = SelectObject(dcMemory, hMemoryBitmap)

    dummy = BitBlt(dcMemory, 0, 0, 60, 30, Picture1.hdc, 0, 0, &HCC0020)
    dummy = SelectObject(dcMemory, pObject)

    ...
End Sub

```

Finally, we use the ~~Windows.~~ModifyMenu() function to modify the menu, installing our new bitmap:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture(App.Path & "\image.bmp")

    Dim dcMemory As Long
    Dim hMemoryBitmap As Long
    dcMemory = CreateCompatibleDC(Picture1.hdc)
    hMemoryBitmap = CreateCompatibleBitmap(Picture1.hdc, 60, 30)

    Dim pObject As Long
    pObject = SelectObject(dcMemory, hMemoryBitmap)

    dummy = BitBlt(dcMemory, 0, 0, 60, 30, Picture1.hdc, 0, 0, &HCC0020)
    dummy = SelectObject(dcMemory, pObject)

    dummy = ModifyMenu(GetSubMenu(GetMenu(Me.hwnd), 0), 0, &H404, 0,_
        hMemoryBitmap)
End Sub

```

The result appears in Figure 5.24, where you can see our bitmap in the File menu.



Figure 5.24 Using bitmapped menu items.

The listing for this form appears in is locate in the bitmap folder on this book s accompanying CD-R (Note that all the Windows functions we used must be declared before being used we ll see more later in the book.)

Using The Registry To Store A Most Recently Used (MRU) Files List

Your program s users love your new application but there s always something new in the Suggest Today s suggestion asks whether you can add a Most Recently Used (MRU) list of files to the File These lists are appended to the end of the File menu and let the user select recently opened files fact, the Visual Basic IDE has an MRU list, as you can see in Figure 5.25.



Figure 5.25 The Visual Basic MRU list.

In this example, we ll support a very short MRU list just one item but the idea is easily extendable. new Visual Basic project now named `mru`, and give Form1 a File menu with two items in it: Open `mnuOpen`) and MRU (`mnuMRU`). Make the MRU item a control array by setting `Index` property to 0 in the Menu Editor, and make it invisible by deselecting `Visible` box in the Menu Editor so we can us it as a placeholder.

This example uses the Visual Basic `GetSetting()` and `SetSetting()` functions to access the Windows Registry. We ll see how to use these functions in depth later in this book, but for now, `GetSetting()` when Form1 is first loaded to see if we ve saved a file name for the MRU list in the Registry s Settings/Doc1 section (here, we ll use the application s name as its Registry key, and we get that in `App.Title`):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim FileName As String
    FileName = GetSetting(App.Title, "Settings", "Doc1")
```

If we have saved a file name in the Registry, we should place it in the File menu, and we do that by adding a new menu item in the `mnuMRU` array, setting its caption to the file name, and making it visible this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim FileName As String
    FileName = GetSetting(App.Title, "Settings", "Doc1")

    If FileName <> "" Then
```

```
Load mnuMRU(1)
mnuMRU(1).Caption = FileName
mnuMRU(1).Visible = True
End If
End Sub
```

That solves the case where we've stored a file name for the MRU list in the registry but how do we get those names there in the first place? We do that when the user selects the Open item in the File menu. To get the file name from the user, we'll use an Open Common Dialog box, so add a Common Dialog named dlgCommonDialog to the form now (if you don't know how to do that, see Chapter 17, which discusses file handling) and get a file name to open from the user this way:

```
Private Sub mnuOpen_Click()
    With dlgCommonDialog
        .DialogTitle = "Open"
        .CancelError = False
        .Filter = "All Files (*.*)|*.*"
        .ShowOpen
        If Len(.FileName) = 0 Then
            Exit Sub
        End If
    End With
End Sub
```

Chapter 6

Text Boxes And Rich Text Boxes

If you need an immediate solution to:

Creating Multiline, Word-Wrap Text Boxes

Aligning Text In Text Boxes

Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes

Making A Text Box Read-Only

Accessing Text In A Text Box

Selecting And Replacing Text In A Text Box

Copying Or Getting Selected Text To Or From The Clipboard

Creating A Password Control

Controlling Input In A Text Box

Adding An RTF Box To A Form

Accessing Text In A Rich Text Box

Selecting Text In Rich Text Boxes

Using Bold, Italic, Underline, And Strikethru

Indenting Text In Rich Text Boxes

Setting Fonts And Font Sizes In Rich Text Boxes

Using Bullets In Rich Text Boxes

Aligning Text In A Rich Text Box

Setting Text Color In RTF Boxes

Moving The Insertion Point In RTF Boxes

Adding Superscripts And Subscripts In Rich Text Boxes

Setting The Mouse Pointer In Text Boxes And Rich Text Boxes

Searching For (And Replacing) Text In RTF Boxes

Saving RTF Files From Rich Text Boxes

Reading RTF Files Into A Rich Text Box

Printing From A Rich Text Box

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to start working with Visual Basic controls in this case, text boxes and rich text boxes. Every Windows user is familiar with text boxes. They're exactly what their name implies: box-like controls in which you can enter text. Text boxes can be multiline, have scroll bars, be read-only, and have many other attributes, as we'll see in this chapter. Not every Windows user is familiar with rich text boxes, on the other hand. Rich text boxes (also known as RTF boxes) support not only plain text, but also Rich Text Format (RTF) text.

RTF text supports a variety of formats. For example, you can color text in a rich text box, underline it, bold it, or make it italic. You can select fonts and font sizes, as well as write the text out to disk or read it back in. RTF boxes can also hold a great amount of data, unlike standard text boxes, which are limited to 64K characters.

RTF text was designed to be a step beyond plain text, and because many word processors let you save text in that format, it can provide a link between different types of word processors. Using RTF boxes, you can also create your own simple word processors, and that's exactly what the Visual Basic Application Wizard does if you create an application with it. You'll find that the child windows in an Application Wizard program have a rich text box stretched across them, ready for the user to put to work.

How do you create text boxes and RTF boxes? As with other Visual Basic controls, you use the toolbox, as shown in Figure 6.1. In that figure, the Text Box tool is the second tool down on the right, and the RTF Box tool (which you add to a project with the Project|Components box's Controls tab) appears at lower right.



Figure 6.1 The Text Box and RTF Box tools.

Use Of Text Boxes And RTF Boxes In Windows Programs

In Windows programs, text boxes and RTF boxes are used to handle text-based data, and not to let the user enter commands. When Windows first appeared, DOS-oriented programmers used to use text boxes to accept text-based commands from the user, but Microsoft considers that an abuse of the Windows user interface. The user is supposed to issue commands to a program with standard Windows controls like menu items, command buttons, radio buttons, toolbars, and so forth, not by typing command syntax into a text box. Text boxes and RTF boxes can certainly hold data that commands require for execution, but those controls are not

usually intended to hold the commands themselves.

With all that in mind, then, let's start working with text boxes and RTF boxes. These are two of the most fundamental controls in Windows, and two of the most fun to work with. We'll cover text boxes first in the Immediate Solutions and then turn to rich text boxes.

Immediate Solutions

Creating Multiline, Word-Wrap Text Boxes

You've got a text box all set up for user feedback, and it can hold about 60 characters of text. Surely that's enough, you think. But when you start actually reading the users' comments, you find that they're all favorable, but truncated ("I loved your program! In fact, let me say that I never saw a"). Maybe it's worthwhile to allow the user to enter more text.

You can do that by setting the text box's `MultiLine` property to True, converting a text box into a multiline text box, complete with word wrap. The result appears in Figure 6.2. Now your program's users can type in line after line of text.



Figure 6.2 Creating a multiline text box.

Note that you can also add scroll bars to multiline text boxes. (See [Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes](#) later in this chapter.)

Aligning Text In Text Boxes

The Aesthetic Design Department has sent you a memo. Your new program meets its requirements for design standards, except for one thing: all the text boxes in your program are stacked one on top of the other, and the Aesthetic Design Department thinks it would be terrific if you display the text in those boxes as centered, not left-justified.

Well, you seem to remember that text boxes have an `Alignment` property, so you set it to Centered at design time in all the text boxes (there are three possibilities: 0 for left-justified, 1 for right-justified, and 2 for centered). You run your program and the text you enter ends up being left-justified. The `Alignment` property doesn't seem to work. What's wrong?

You need to set the text box's `MultiLine` property to True before text alignment will work; that's one of the quirks of text boxes. When you set `MultiLine` property to True, everything works as it should, as you see in Figure 6.3.



Figure 6.3 Aligning text in a text box.

Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes

Now that you're using multiline text boxes, it would be even better if you could add scroll bars to let the user enter even more text. If your program's users are going to be entering a lot of text into text boxes, you can avoid the need for huge text boxes by adding scroll bars.

Using the `ScrollBars` property, there are four ways to add scroll bars to a text box. Here are the settings you use for `ScrollBars` property, and the type of scroll bars each setting displays:

- " 0 None
- " 1 Horizontal
- " 2 Vertical
- " 3 Both

Note that in order for the scroll bars to actually appear, the text `MultiLine` property must be True. After you install scroll bars in a text box, the result appears as in Figure 6.4. Now the user can enter much more text simply by scrolling appropriately.



Figure 6.4 Using scroll bars in a text box.

TIP: Although text boxes can hold up to 64K characters, that may be too much for you to conveniently handle, and you may want to limit the maximum number of characters a text box can hold. You do that by setting the text `MaxLength` property to the maximum number of characters you want the user to be able to enter (the default value for `MaxLength` is 0, which actually means 64K characters).

Making A Text Box Read-Only

There are times when you want to make text boxes read-only. For example, you might have written a calculator program in which you let the user enter operands in text boxes and display the result in another text box. The result text box should be read-only so that the user doesn't enter text there by mistake. Here's how you do that.

Locking A Text Box

You use the `Locked` property to make a text box read-only. Setting this property to

True means that the user cannot enter text into the text box except under your program's control, like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text1.Text = "This box is locked."
End Sub
```

An example of a locked text box appears in Figure 6.5 (note that users can't tell if a text box is locked until they try to enter text in it!)



Figure 6.5 A locked text box.

Disabling A Text Box

You can also disable a text box by setting its `Enabled` property to False. However, although this means the user can't enter text into the text box, it also means the text in the box appears grayed. Disabling is better done to indicate that the control is inaccessible.

Using Labels Instead Of Text Boxes

Another alternative to using read-only text boxes is to display read-only text in label controls. (Label controls can hold as much text as a text box.) You can change the text in a label control from code using the `Label1.Caption` property.

Accessing Text In A Text Box

Java, C++, Visual Basic a programmer has to switch between a lot of languages these days. So how do you set the text in a text box again? Is there a `SetText()` method?

No, you use the `Text` property like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
Text1.Text = "Hello from Visual Basic"
End Sub
```

When the user clicks the command button `Command1`, the text "Hello from Visual Basic" appears in the text box, as shown in Figure 6.6.



Figure 6.6 Setting a text box's text.

Selecting And Replacing Text In A Text Box

To work with part of the text in a text box, you select the text you want using three properties:

- " SelLength Returns or sets the number of characters selected.
- " SelStart Returns or sets the starting point of selected text. If no text is selected, SelStart indicates the position of the insertion point.
- " SelText Returns or sets the string containing the currently selected text. If no characters are selected, SelText consists of a zero-length string ().

For example, here's how we select all the text in a text box and replace it with "Welcome to Visual Basic" (which we could have done just as easily by assigning that string to the Text property, of course). Note the use of Len() to get the length of the text currently in the text box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text1.SelStart = 0
    Text1.SelLength = Len(Text1.Text)
    Text1.SelText = "Welcome to Visual Basic"
End Sub
```

That's how it works when you want to select some text: you specify the beginning of the selected text in SelStart, the end in SelLength, and refer to the text with the SelText property.

Note that text selected under program control this way does not appear highlighted in the text box.

The HideSelection Property

While on the topic of text selection, we might note the HideSelection property, which, when True, turns off text-selection highlighting when your program loses the focus.

Copying Or Getting Selected Text To Or From The Clipboard

After entering their new novels into your program, users were surprised that they couldn't copy them to the Clipboard and paste them into other applications. How can you support the Clipboard with text in a text box?

You can copy selected text to the Clipboard using SetText

```
Clipboard.SetText text, [format]
```

Here, text is the text you want to place into the Clipboard, format has these possible values:

```
" vbCFLink &HBF00; DDE conversation information  
" vbCFRTF &HBF01; Rich Text Format  
" vbCFText 1 (the default); Text
```

You can get text from the clipboard using `GetText()` function this way

```
Clipboard.GetText( [format] )
```

where `format` can be taken from the earlier list of possible format types.

Here's an example to make this clearer; in this case, we place all the text in text box `Text1` into the clipboard:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()  
    Clipboard.SetText Text1.Text  
    ...  
End Sub
```

Then we read the text back and display it in a new text `Text2`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()  
    Clipboard.SetText Text1.Text  
    Text2.Text = Clipboard.GetText  
End Sub
```

TIP: Text boxes already allow the user to use these shortcuts to work with the Clipboard: `Ctrl+C` to copy selected text, `Ctrl+V` to paste text from the clipboard, and `Ctrl+X` to cut selected text.

Creating A Password Control

It's time to heighten security. Users of your ~~SuperSpecialDataBase~~ program are worried about the low security of your program, so you decide to add a little security with password controls. Visual Basic will help out.

To convert a standard text box into a password box, you just assign some character (usually an asterisk [*]) to the `Text Box.PasswordChar` property. After that, your program can read the text in the text box, but only the password character will appear on the screen each time the user types a character, as shown in Figure 6.7.



Figure 6.7 Creating a password control.

TIP: You may be concerned that someone can copy the text in a password control and paste it into a word processor to read it, but in fact, Clipboard-handling from the text box is disabled if you are using a password character.

WARNING! A note about security: don't trust the password control too far, because there may be some security loopholes in it that someone out there can exploit. I once wrote an article that included a tiny program to encrypt data in a minimum-security way just to get readers started and got a letter full of angry satisfaction from a code-breaking expert who told me it had taken him only five days (with full-time access to a supercomputer) to break a file encoded with my program.

Controlling Input In A Text Box

The Testing Department is on the phone there's a bug in your program. The users are getting runtime errors. Don't panic, you say; you'll be right down.

You ask the users to duplicate what caused the problem, and you find that they're trying to add two numbers with your program: 15553 and 955Z. What's 955Z? you ask. A typo, they say. Is there any way you can restrict user input so this doesn't happen?

Yes, you can. Just use the `KeyPress` event and check the `KeyAscii` parameter, which is the ANSI (not ASCII, despite its name) code for the just-struck key. Let's make this clearer with an example; here's how you would restrict users to only typing digits into `Text1`; all non-digits are simply discarded:

```

Private Sub Text1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    If KeyAscii < Asc("0") Or KeyAscii > Asc("9") Then
        KeyAscii = 0
    End If
End Sub

```

Besides the `KeyPress` event, text boxes support the `KeyUp` and `KeyDown` events, although the `KeyPress` event is easiest to use, because you get the character code of the typed character passed to you immediately. In the `KeyUp` and `KeyDown` events, you are passed a virtual key code you have to translate into a character, after checking to see if the Shift key was down and so on. You can also use the text box's `Change` event, which occurs when there's a change in the text box's text.

Adding An RTF Box To A Form

So you've decided to make the move from text boxes to rich text boxes, and you turn to the toolbox. Wait a minute where's the Rich Text Box tool in the toolbox? The answer is that it's not there until you add it.

To add a rich text box to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components box.
3. Find and select the Microsoft Rich Textbox Control box, and click on OK to close the Components box.
4. The rich text control now appears in the toolbox (at lower right in Figure 6.1), and you can use it to add rich text boxes to your forms, as shown in Figure 6.8.



Figure 6.8 Displaying rich text in a rich text box.

TIP: What these steps really accomplish is to add the `Richtx32.ocx` file to your program, and you'll need to distribute that file with your program if you use rich text boxes.

Accessing Text In A Rich Text Box

To access text in a rich text box, you can use two properties: `Text` and `TextRTF`. As their names imply, `Text` holds the text in a rich text box in plain text format (like a text box), and `TextRTF` holds the text in Rich Text Format.

Here s an example where we read the text from RichTextBox1 without any RTF codes and display that text as plain text in RichTextBox2:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox2.Text = RichTextBox1.Text
End Sub
```

Here s the same operation where we transfer the text including all RTF codes that is, here we re transferring rich text from one rich text box to another:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox2.TextRTF = RichTextBox1.TextRTF
End Sub
```

Selecting Text In Rich Text Boxes

Rich text boxes support the SetText property just like standard text boxes. However, SetText only works with plain text. You can set the start and end of plain-text selection with the SelStart and SelLength properties.

If you want to work with RTF-selected text, on the other hand, use the SelRTF property. For example, here s how we select the first 10 characters in RichTextBox1 and transfer them to RichTextBox2 using SelRTF:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
    RichTextBox1.SelLength = 10
    RichTextBox2.TextRTF = RichTextBox1.SelRTF
End Sub
```

The Span Method

Besides the SelRTF property, you can use the Span() method to select text based on a set of characters.

```
RichTextBox.Span characterset, [forward, [negate]]
```

The characterset parameter is a string that specifies the set of characters to look for. The forward parameter determines which direction the insertion point moves. The negate parameter specifies whether the characters in characterset define the set of target characters or are excluded from the set of target characters.

You use Span() to extend a selection from the current insertion point based on a set of specified characters. This method searches the text in the rich text box (forwards or backwards as you've specified) and extends the text selection to include (or exclude, if you've so specified) as many of the characters you've seen in the character set that it can find. For example, to select the text from the current insertion point to the end of the sentence, use Span(".?!") which works for sentences ending in periods, question marks, or exclamation marks.

Here's an example where we use Span() to find the word underlined and underline it:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports underlined, bold, _
        italic, and strikethru text."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("underlined")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("underlined")
    RichTextBox1.SelUnderline = True
End Sub
```

Using Bold, Italic, Underline, And Strikethru

To make text bold, italic, underlined, or strikethru, you use the SelBold, SelItalic, SelUnderline, and SelStrikethru properties. These properties work on selected RTF text only, so you have to select the text whose format you want to change.

To make this clearer, here's an example where we set the underline, bold, italic, and strikethru properties of the text. We start by placing some text into a rich text box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports underlined, bold, _
        italic, and strikethru text."
    ...

```

Next, we'll underline the word `underlined` in the text. We start by finding that word using the rich text `Find()` method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports underlined, bold,_
        italic, and strikethru text."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("underlined")
    ...

```

We then use `Span()` to select the word `underlined`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports underlined, bold,_
        italic, and strikethru text."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("underlined")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("underlined")
    ...

```

Finally, we underline the selected text by setting the rich text `SelUnderline` property to True:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports underlined, bold,_
        italic, and strikethru text."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("underlined")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("underlined")
    RichTextBox1.SelUnderline = True
    ...

```

And we can do the same to demonstrate bold, italic, and strikethru text:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports underlined, bold,_
        italic, and strikethru text."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("underlined")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("underlined")
```

```

RichTextBox1.SelUnderline = True
RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("bold")
RichTextBox1.Span ("bold")
RichTextBox1.SelBold = True

RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("italic")
RichTextBox1.Span ("italic")
RichTextBox1.SelItalic = True

RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("strikethru")
RichTextBox1.Span ("strikethru")
RichTextBox1.SelStrikeThru = True

```

End Sub

Running this program yields the results you see in Figure 6.9.



Figure 6.9 Setting rich text properties.

Indenting Text In Rich Text Boxes

One of the aspects of word processors that users have gotten used to is the ability to indent text, and text boxes (which are designed to be RTF word processors in a control) have this capability. To indent a paragraph-by-paragraph, you use these properties (you set them to numeric values to indicate the indentation amount, using the measurement units of the underlying form, which is usually twips):

- " SelIndent Indents the first line of the paragraph
- " SelHangingIndent Indents all other lines of the paragraph with respect to the first line
- " SelRightIndent Sets the right indentation of the paragraph

To use these properties on a paragraph of text, you either select the paragraph (`SelStart` and `SelLength`, or `Span()`), or simply place the insertion point in the paragraph (you can move the insert point under program control with the `MoveTo()` method).

Here's an example: When the user places the insertion point in a paragraph of text and clicks a button Command1, we can indent the paragraph 500 twips. We can then indent all lines after the first by 250 twips with respect to the overall 500-twip indentation (which means that all lines after the first will be indented 250 twips from the left margin) and set the right indent to 100 twips:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.SelIndent = 500
    RichTextBox1.SelHangingIndent = -250
    RichTextBox1.SelRightIndent = 100
End Sub
```

Running this code on a paragraph of text yields the result you see in Figure 6.10. Now we're indenting individual paragraphs in rich text controls.



Figure 6.10 Indenting a paragraph of text.

Besides working paragraph-by-paragraph, you can set the right margin for the whole rich text at once using the RightMargin property. Just assign this property the new value you want for the right margin, and it's set.

Setting Fonts And Font Sizes In Rich Text Boxes

Another call from the Field Testing Department. It seems that the users want to use different fonts in your word-processor program. Well, some people are never satisfied but rich text boxes can help here, too.

To set a selection's font, you just set `SelFontName` to the new font name (for example, Arial or Times New Roman). To set a selection's font size, you just set `SelFontSize` property. That's all it takes.

Here's an example. In this case, we'll display the text "This rich text box supports fonts like Arial and Courier in different sizes." in a rich text box, and format the words Arial and Courier in those fonts, and in different font sizes.

We start by placing that text in a rich text box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports fonts like Arial and_
        Courier in different sizes."
    ...

```

Next, we select the word Arial :

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports fonts like Arial and_
        Courier in different sizes."

    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("Arial")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("Arial")
    ...

```

Then we display that word in Arial font, with a 24-point size:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports fonts like Arial and_
        Courier in different sizes.

    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("Arial")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("Arial")
    RichTextBox1.SelFontName = "Arial"
    RichTextBox1.SelFontSize = 24
    ...

```

We do the same for the word Courier , displaying it in 18-point size:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports fonts like Arial and_
        Courier in different sizes."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("Arial")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("Arial")
    RichTextBox1.SelfFontName = "Arial"
    RichTextBox1.SelfFontSize = 24

    RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("Courier")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("Courier")
    RichTextBox1.SelfFontName = "Courier"
    RichTextBox1.SelfFontSize = 18
End Sub

```

The result appears in Figure 6.11.



Figure 6.11 Setting fonts and font sizes.

Being able to set the font and font size of individual text selections instead of working with all the text in a rich text box is a very powerful capability.

Using Bullets In Rich Text Boxes

Rich text boxes support bullets those black dots that appear in lists of items that you want to set off in the text. Putting a bullet in front of each item gives the list a snappy appearance and helps the reader assimilate information quickly.

To set bullets, you use the SelBullet and BulletIndent properties. The SelBullet property displays a bullet in front of the paragraph in which the current selection is. The BulletIndent property indicates how much you want the bullet to be indented from the left.

TIP: It's a good idea to set the bullet indentation, because if you don't, the bullet will appear right in front of the first character in the paragraph you're bulleting, which can look awkward.

Let's make this clearer with an example. We start by placing some text in a rich text box:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box shows how to use bullets _"

```

and indent bulleted text."

...

We set the indentation for this paragraph to 200 twips:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box shows how to use bullets _
        and indent bulleted text."
    RichTextBox1.SelIndent = 200
    ...

```

Next, we set the bullet's indent to 90 twips, so it's set off from the rest of the text. We set that indent's BulletIndent property:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box shows how to use bullets _
        and indent bulleted text."
    RichTextBox1.SelIndent = 200
    RichTextBox1.BulletIndent = 90
    ...

```

Finally, we add the bullet with the SelBullet property:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box shows how to use bullets _
        and indent bulleted text."
    RichTextBox1.SelIndent = 200
    RichTextBox1.BulletIndent = 90
    RichTextBox1.SelBullet = True
End Sub
```

That's it the result appears in Figure 6.12.



Figure 6.12 Adding a bullet to text in a rich text box.

Aligning Text In A Rich Text Box

You can set the alignment of text in a rich text box paragraph-by-paragraph using the SelAlignment property. You just select the paragraph you want to align, or place the insertion point in that paragraph, and set the SelAlignment property to one of the following values:

- " rtfLeft 0(the default); the paragraph is aligned along the left margin.

- " rtfRight 1; the paragraph is aligned along the right margin.
- " rtfCenter 2; the paragraph is centered between the left and right margins.

Being able to align text paragraph-by-paragraph like this is much more powerful than the ~~Alignment~~ property of a standard text box, which aligns all the text at the same time.

Setting Text Color In RTF Boxes

Another call from the Testing Department now the users want to use different colors in your word-processing program. Can you do that? Yes, you can, using the `SelColor` property.

To set colors in a rich text box, you just make a selection and set the rich text box's `SelColor` property using the `RGB()` function. You pass three values (each ranging from 0 to 255) `RGB(255, 0, 0)` function for the three color values: red, green, and blue.

Here's an example to make this clearer. We display the text "This rich text box supports font colors like red and blue and green." in a rich text box, and color the word "red" red, "blue" blue, and "green" green. Here's how that example looks in code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This rich text box supports font colors like _
        red and blue and green."
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("red")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("red")
    RichTextBox1.SelColor = RGB(255, 0, 0)

    RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("green")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("green")
    RichTextBox1.SelColor = RGB(0, 255, 0)

    RichTextBox1.SelStart = 0
    RichTextBox1.SelStart = RichTextBox1.Find("blue")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("blue")
    RichTextBox1.SelColor = RGB(0, 0, 255)
End Sub
```

This program produces the display you see in Figure 6.13. (Although it only appears in black and white in this book, the word "red" is red, and so on!)



Figure 6.13 Coloring text in a rich text box.

Moving The Insertion Point In RTF Boxes

Using the `UpTo()` method, you can move the insertion point around in a rich text box. This method moves the insertion point up to (but not including) a character or set of characters. Moving the insertion point yourself can be a powerful technique in a rich text box for example, you can move the insertion point to the section of text the user is searching for. Here's how `UpTo()` method works:

```
RichTextBox.UpTo(characterset, forward, negate)
```

The `characterset` parameter is a string that specifies the set of characters to look for. The `forward` parameter determines which direction the insertion point moves. The `negate` parameter specifies whether the characters in `characterset` define the set of target characters or are excluded from the set of target characters.

This is made easier to understand with an example, so let's put together an example now. Here, we'll display the text Click the button to move the insertion point here: *, and when the user clicks a button we'll move the insertion point right up to the asterisk (*).

We begin by displaying that text in a rich text box when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "Click the button to move the insertion point _ 
        here: *"
End Sub
```

Next, when the user clicks a button, we can move the insertion point up to the asterisk in the text (note, of course, that you can search for multi-character text as well as single characters):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.UpTo ("*")
    ...
End Sub
```

That's not quite good enough, though. Because we've clicked the command button, the button has focus, which means the blinking insertion point in the rich text box isn't visible at all. To make sure the insertion point in the rich text box reappears, we give the focus back to the rich text box. This appears in Figure 6.14. Now we're handling the insertion point.



Figure 6.14 Moving the insertion point in a rich text box.

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.UpTo ("*")
    RichTextBox1.SetFocus
```

```
End Sub
```

Adding Superscripts And Subscripts In Rich Text Boxes

Uh oh the users of your new word-processing program are demanding more text-formatting power. Your program has become so popular that the staff physicists are starting but they want to use superscripts and subscripts in text. Can you add that?

Yes, with the rich text box SelCharOffset property. You use this property to make a selection a superscript or subscript if you set this value to a positive value, you get a superscript, and if you set a negative value, you get a subscript. (All measurements use the measurement units of the underlying text such as twips.)

Let's see an example. Here we can display a simple quadratic equation using this text

```
X12 + 2X1 + 1 = 0
```

where we'll make the 1s subscripts and the first 2 a superscript. We start by displaying that text in a text box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "X12 + 2X1 + 1 = 0"
End Sub
```

Next, we select the characters we want and set the SelCharOffset property to positive or negative twip values to create superscripts and subscripts:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.UpTo ("1")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("1")
    RichTextBox1.SelCharOffset = -40

    RichTextBox1.UpTo ("2")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("2")
    RichTextBox1.SelCharOffset = 40

    RichTextBox1.UpTo ("1")
    RichTextBox1.Span ("1")
    RichTextBox1.SelCharOffset = 0
End Sub
```

That's it the result of this code appears in Figure 6.15. Now even the physicists will be happy.

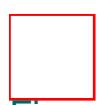


Figure 6.15 Using superscripts and subscripts in a rich text box.

Setting The Mouse Pointer In Text Boxes And Rich Text Boxes

You can set the mouse pointer when it travels over a text box or rich text box. Just set the `Mousepointer` property to one of the values in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1 Mouse
pointer options.

Constant	Value	Description
<code>rtfDefault</code>	0	(Default) Shape determined by the object
<code>rtfArrow</code>	1	Arrow
<code>rtfCross</code>	2	Cross (cross-hair pointer)
<code>rtfIbeam</code>	3	I beam
<code>rtfIcon</code>	4	Icon (small square within a square)
<code>rtfSize</code>	5	Size (four-pointed arrow pointing north, south, east, and west)
<code>rtfSizeNESW</code>	6	Size NE SW (double arrow pointing northeast and southwest)
<code>rtfSizeNS</code>	7	Size N S (double arrow pointing north and south)
<code>rtfSizeNWSE</code>	8	Size NW, SE
<code>rtfSizeEW</code>	9	Size E W (double arrow pointing east and west)
<code>rtfUpArrow</code>	10	Up arrow
<code>rtfHourglass</code>	11	Hourglass (wait)
<code>rtfNoDrop</code>	12	No drop
<code>rtfArrowHourglass</code>	13	Arrow and hourglass
<code>rtfArrowQuestion</code>	14	Arrow and question mark
<code>rtfSizeAll</code>	15	Size all
<code>rtfCustom</code>	99	Custom icon specified by the <code>MouseIcon</code> property

Searching For (And Replacing) Text In RTF Boxes

The users of your popular new word processor `SuperDuperTextProcessor` are still not satisfied. They find it inconvenient to search through 300-page documents for a particular word. Can you add search capability to your program? Better yet, they ask, how about search and replace?

Any word processor of any value will let the user search for text, and rich text boxes do that with the `Find()` method. For example, if we placed this text in a rich text box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load( )
```

```
RichTextBox1.Text = "Here is some text."
```

```
End Sub
```

Next, we could search for the word `some` this way `Find()`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Find ("some")
    ...
End Sub
```

After you find an item, it becomes the new selection. So, if we wanted to replace the word `some` with, say, `the`, we could do that this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Find ("some")
    RichTextBox1.SelRTF = "the"
End Sub
```

In this way, we search for the word `some` in the text and replace it with `the`, as shown in Figure 6.16.



Figure 6.16 Searching for and replacing text.

Saving RTF Files From Rich Text Boxes

You've gotten feedback from a user of your word processor `DuperTextPro` and it seems she's written a 600-page novel with the program and now finds there's no way to save it to disk. Can you help? She will keep her computer on until she hears from you.

You use the `SaveFile()` method to save the text in a rich text box to disk, and doing that is really easy; you just use `SaveFile()` this way:

```
RichTextBox.SaveFile(pathname, [filetype])
```

You can save text as plain or RTF text; the setting `filetype` appears as follows:

- " rtfRTF 0 (the default); the RichTextBox control saves its contents as an RTF file.
- " rtfText 1; the RichTextBox control saves its contents as a text file.

Here's an example where we display some text in a rich text box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This is the text in the file."
End Sub
```

Next, we save that text to a file this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.SaveFile ("c:\data.txt")
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes. Now we've written RTF to a file.

TIP: Many word processors, like Microsoft Word, support RTF files, so you can now write text formatted files that such word processors can read in and use.

Reading RTF Files Into A Rich Text Box

You can write files to disk from a rich text box with SaveFile() how can you read files back in? You use LoadFile().

Like SaveFile() LoadFile() is very easy to use:

RichTextBox.LoadFile pathname, [filetype]

And you can load in plain text or RTF text files; the settings filetype are as follows:

- " rtfRTF 0(The default); the RichTextBox control saves its contents as an RTF file.
- " rtfText 1; the RichTextBox control saves its contents as a text file.

Here's an example where we load in the file we wrote in the last topic on saving files, data.txt:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.LoadFile "c:\data.txt"
End Sub
```

That's all there is to it it's that easy to load in files.

Printing From A Rich Text Box

You can print from a rich text box using the SelPrint() method and the Visual Basic Printer object. The only thing to remember here is that you should first initialize the printer by printing a string of zero length or similar operation.

Here s how we print the last two words in the text Printing this text& ; first, we display that text in the rich text box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "Printing this text..."  
End Sub
```

Next, we select the last two words:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Find ("this text&")
    RichTextBox1.SelLength = Len("this text&")
    ...

```

Finally, we print them. Note that we have to pass the handle of the device context with which we want to print to SelPrint(), and here, that s the Printer object s device context,Printer.hDC:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.Find ("this text...")
    RichTextBox1.SelLength = Len("this text...")
    Printer.NewPage
    RichTextBox1.SelPrint (Printer.hDC)
End Sub
```

Chapter 7

Command Buttons, Checkboxes, And Option Buttons

If you need an immediate solution to:

Setting A Button's Caption

Setting A Button's Background Color

Setting Button Text Color

Setting Button Fonts

Reacting To Button Clicks

Creating Button Control Arrays

Resetting The Focus After A Button Click

Giving Buttons Access Characters

Setting Button Tab Order

Disabling Buttons

Showing And Hiding Buttons

Adding Tool Tips To Buttons

Resizing And Moving Buttons From Code

Adding A Picture To A Button

Adding A Down Picture To A Button

Adding Buttons At Runtime

Passing Buttons To Procedures

Handling Button Releases

Making A Command Button Into A Cancel Button

Getting A Checkbox's State

Setting A Checkbox's State

Grouping Option Buttons Together

Getting An Option Button's State

Setting An Option Button's State

Using Graphical Checkboxes And Radio Buttons

Using Checkboxes And Option Buttons Together

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at what are arguably the most popular controls in Visual Basic: buttons. These include command buttons, checkboxes, and option buttons.

Command buttons—the plain buttons that you simply click and release—are the most common type of buttons. These are the buttons you see everywhere in Visual Basic applications. They are usually just rounded, rectangular, gray buttons with a caption.

Checkboxes are also familiar controls. You click a checkbox to select it and click it again to deselect it. When you select a checkbox, a checkmark appears in it, indicating that the box is indeed selected.

Option buttons, also called radio buttons, are like checkboxes in that you select and deselect them. However, they are round, whereas checkboxes are square, and you usually use option buttons together in groups. In fact, that's the functional difference between checkboxes and option buttons: checkboxes can work independently, but option buttons are intended to work in groups. When you select one option button in a group, the others are automatically deselected. For example, you might use checkboxes to select trimmings on a sandwich (of which there can be more than one), whereas you might use option buttons to let the user select one of a set of exclusive options, like the current day of the week.

You use tools in the toolbox to add command buttons, checkboxes, and option buttons to a form. In the toolbox in Figure 7.1, the Command Button tool is third down on the right, the Checkbox tool is fourth down on the left, and the Option Button tool is fourth down on the right.



Figure 7.1 The Command Button tool, the Checkbox tool, and the Option Button tool.

How This Chapter Works

Because the three different types of buttons have many similar characteristics, it makes sense to cover them in the same chapter. In fact, the three types of buttons have so many properties and methods in common that when covering such topics, we'll refer to command buttons, checkboxes, and option buttons collectively as

For example, all three controls have `Caption` property, so when we cover how to set captions in those controls, we'll refer to them collectively as buttons. The title of that topic, then, is `Setting A Button's Caption`. If we're covering something that refers to one type of button exclusively, I'll indicate that in the title of the topic, for example, `Grouping Option Buttons Together`. In this way, we'll be able to address both what all the buttons have in common and what makes them useful independently.

That's all the introduction we need we'll turn to the Immediate Solutions now.

Immediate Solutions

Setting A Button's Caption

You use a button's `Caption` property to set its caption. This property is available at both design time and runtime.

After you add a button to a form, you set its caption by placing the appropriate text in the `Caption` property in the Properties window. You can also change the button's caption at runtime, of course. As an example, we'll use our tic-tac-toe program from Chapter 1:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    xNow = True
End Sub

Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If xNow Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If

    xNow = Not xNow
End Sub
```

TIP: It's useful to be able to change the captions of buttons. For example, if a command button's caption reads `Connect To Internet`, then when you're connected you could change the button's caption to `Disconnect From Internet`, and disconnect from the Internet when the button is clicked.

Setting A Button's Background Color

You've got your program running at last, but now the Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. The emergency window in your program is colored red why not the Panic button in the middle of that window also?

So, how do you do that? You can use the button's `BackColor` property, as shown in Figure 7.2. Note that you also have to set the button's `Style` property to `Graphical` (which has a numeric value of 1). We'll see more about graphical buttons later in this chapter. Here, we're setting the background color of a button at design time, and two sets of colors are available: a set of standard Visual Basic control colors (like `Button Face`, `Button Shadow`, and so on), and a palette of colors.



Figure 7.2 Setting a button's background color.

You can also set the button's `BackColor` property at runtime, setting it to a value using the `RGB()` function, which takes three parameters (0 to 255) for the red, green, and blue color values you want to set. Here, we change the color of a graphical button to red:

```
Command1.BackColor = RGB( 255, 0, 0 )
```

Setting Button Text Color

You've got your graphic design program working at last. But wouldn't it be a nice touch if you could set the captions in the color-selection buttons to match the colors the buttons correspond to? For example, the button with the red text lets the user select red as the drawing color, the button with the green text lets the user select green, and so on. You can set the color of a button's caption using the button's ForeColor property.

Interestingly, only checkboxes and option buttons have a ForeColor property; command buttons do not.

You set a button's ForeColor property at design time, as in Figure 7.3, or at runtime like this:

```
Private Sub Check1_Click()
    Check1.ForeColor = RGB(255, 0, 0)
End Sub
```



Figure 7.3 Setting a button's ForeColor property at design time.

Setting Button Fonts

You've written an adventure-type game for your grandfather, but he's emailed to let you know he can't read the tiny text in the buttons. He likes to run his screen in super high-resolution mode. Can you fix that?

Yes you can. All you have to do is to make the font size in the buttons' captions larger. To do that, you use the button's Font property. Selecting the Font item in the Properties window opens the Font dialog box shown in Figure 7.4. As you can see in that figure, captions can go up to 24 point, which should be big enough for grandfather.

Notice that there are number of options in the Font dialog box in Figure 7.4, which means that you can't set a single property at runtime to set a button's font. Instead, you can use the following properties:

- " FontBold
- " FontItalic
- " FontName

" FontSize

" FontStrikethru

" FontUnderline



Figure 7.4 Selecting a font for a button.

You also have direct access to the button's Font object, so you can set those properties by referring to them as, for example, Option1.Font.Bold, Option1.Font.Italic, and so on.

Reacting To Button Clicks

For completeness, we'll include this one here: You respond to button clicks with the button's Click event. To add a Click event handler, just double-click the button at design time, which adds a subroutine like this one:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```



```
End Sub
```

Place the code you want to execute when the button is clicked in this subroutine:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```



```
    MsgBox "You clicked the command button!"
```



```
End Sub
```

All three buttons have a Click event; they wouldn't be much use otherwise and option buttons also have a double-click event, DblClick. If you double-click a checkbox, you select and then deselect it (or deselect and then select it), so you're back to where you started. If you double-click an option button, however, you select it, no matter what its original state, and cause a DblClick event.

Creating Button Control Arrays

You've decided that your new game program really does need 144 buttons in the main form, arranged in a grid of 12x12. But what a pain it is to write 144 sub-routines to handle the click event for each of them! Isn't there a better way?

There is. You use a control array and one event handler function (the control array index of the button that was clicked is passed to the event handler, so you can tell which button you need to respond to). To create a control array, just give two controls of the same type the same name (in Name property); when you do, Visual Basic will ask if you want to create a control array, as in Figure 7.5.

Figure 7.5 Creating a control array.

When you create an event handler subroutine for a button in the control array, Visual Basic will automatically pass the index of the control in the control array to that subroutine:

```
Private Sub GamePiece_Click(Index As Integer)
End Sub
```

You can then refer to the control that caused the event as a member of an array, using the index passed to the subroutine:

```
Private Sub GamePiece_Click(Index As Integer)
    GamePiece(Index).Caption = "You clicked me!"
End Sub
```

TIP: When you add controls to a control array, the first one has Index 0, the next has Index 1, and so on. You can change the index of each control ~~with its~~ property, rearranging the controls in the control array as you like.

You can also create a control array with just one control just set that ~~control's~~ property to 0. Later, you can add more controls to the array at runtime if you like, using the Load statement (see Adding Buttons At Runtime later in this chapter).

Resetting The Focus After A Button Click

When you click a button, the input focus is transferred to the button and in some cases, you don't want that to happen. For example, say you've got a word-processor program based on a rich text box control, and you have a button labeled Search in the program. When the user clicks the button, then we can search for target text in the rich text box using that boxUpTo() method but the focus remains on the button the user clicked. When the user starts typing again, nothing appears in the rich text box control because the focus is still on the button. How do you transfer the focus back to the rich text box?

You do that with the control SetFocus() method, which is something you frequently do in real programs after button clicks. Here's how it might look in code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.UpTo (gstrStringToFind)
```

```
RichTextBox1.SetFocus
```

```
End Sub
```

Now, when the user clicks the button and starts typing again, the focus will be back on the rich text box, as it should be. Note that you can set the control that has the focus when a form first appears by setting the control's ~~Default~~ property to True (only one control on a form may have that property set to True).

TIP: Buttons also have two events, ~~GotFocus~~ and ~~LostFocus~~ that can tell you when your button has gotten or lost the focus.

Giving Buttons Access Characters

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Everyone loves your new program, SuperDuperTextPr~~ob~~ut as usual there are one or two little things. And, as usual, one of those things is keyboard access\$deally, they say, the user should be able to use programs entirely from the keyboard, without the mouse at all. Well, you say, the button's tab order was set correctly (see the next topic). But, they say, what about giving your buttons access characters?

You know you can give menu items access characters those underlined characters in a menu item that the user can reach with the Alt key. Can you add them to buttons?

Yes, you can, and in the same way as you do with menu items. Just place an ampersand (&) in front of the character in the button's caption that you want to make into the access character for that button (and make sure that the access character is unique among all the access characters available at one time). As an example, we've given the buttons in Figure 7.6 access characters note the ampersand in the Caption property in the Properties window.



Figure 7.6 Setting access characters.

Setting Button Tab Order

To make your buttons more accessible from the keyboard especially if you've got a lot of them you can use the TabStop, TabIndex, and Default properties. Here's what those properties do:

- " TabStop indicates if this button can accept the focus when the user tabs to it.
- " TabIndex is the index of the current button in the tab order (starts at 0).
- " Default is True for one control on a form only; that control will have the focus when the form first appears (by default, so to speak, the default control is the control with TabIndex 0).

When the user presses the Tab key, the focus moves from button to button, ascending through the tab order.

You can arrange the tab order for your buttons with the TabIndex property. For example, in Figure 7.7 the first button, at upper left, has the focus (you can tell because its border is thickened). Pressing the Tab key will move the focus to the next button, and the next, then to the next row, and so on.



Figure 7.7 Using tab-enabled buttons.

TIP: Another use of tab order is in text-entry forms. If, for example, you have 10 text boxes in a row that need to be filled out, the user can enter text in the first one, press the Tab key to move to the next one, enter text there, press Tab again to move to the next text box, and so on. Thoughtfully setting the tab order in such a case can make text-oriented forms much easier on your users.

Disabling Buttons

Another problem from the Testing Department concerning your program, SuperDuperTextPrdt seems the users are sometimes pressing your Connect To The Internet button twice by mistake, confusing the program and causing crashes. Can you stop that from happening?

Yes, you can disable the button by setting `Enabled` property to False when it's inappropriate to use that button. For example, we've disabled all the buttons in Figure 7.8. When a button is disabled, it is inaccessible to the user (and it can't accept the focus).



Figure 7.8 Disabling buttons in a form.

You can also disable buttons at runtime, of course, like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Command1.Enabled = False
End Sub
```

TIP: If you set a button `Style` property to Graphical (`Style = 1`), you can set the button `DisabledPicture` property to a picture, such as from an image file. And when the button is disabled, that image will appear in the button. That can be very useful to reinforce the fact that the button is disabled you might have a big X appear, for example.

Showing And Hiding Buttons

In the last topic, we saw that we can disable buttons using `Enabled` property. However, it's an inefficient use of space (and frustrating to the user)

to display a lot of disabled buttons. If you have to disable a lot of buttons, you should hide them.

To make a button disappear, just set its `Visible` property to False. To make it reappear, set the `Visible` property to True. You can set this property at either design time or runtime. Here's how to make a button disappear when you click it (and probably startle the user!):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Command1.Visible = False
End Sub
```

TIP: If your program shows and hides buttons, you can rearrange the visible buttons to hide any gaps using the `Move` method (the `Move` method is discussed in [Resizing And Moving Buttons From Code](#) later in this chapter).

Adding Tool Tips To Buttons

Your new word processor, SuperDuperTextPro, is a winner, but the User Interface Testing Department has a request: can you add tool tips to the buttons in your program? What's a tool tip, you ask? They say that it's one of those small yellow boxes with explanatory text that appears when you let the mouse cursor rest above an object on the screen. Of course I ~~can't~~ add, you say, but can you really?

Yes you can, using the `ToolTipText` property for the buttons. You just place the text you want to appear in the tool tip into the `ToolTipText` property to create a tool tip for the button, and you're all set. For example, we've added a tool tip to the command button in Figure 7.9.



Figure 7.9 A button's tool tip.

You can also set tool tip text at runtime, using the `ToolTipText` property this way in code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Command1.ToolTipText = "You already clicked me!"
End Sub
```

If your buttons change functions as your program runs, changing the buttons' tool tip text can be very helpful to your program's users.

Resizing And Moving Buttons From Code

Your new April Fool's program has an Exit button, but it moves around and resizes itself, making it a moving target for the user to try to hit. Your coworkers think it's hilarious and they love it. Your boss asks to see you in his cubicle to discuss time management immediately.

How do you move buttons and resize them in code? You use the `Left`, `Top`, `Height`, and `Width` properties, or the `Move` method. Here's what those properties hold:

- " Left holds the horizontal coordinate of the upper left of the button.
- " Top holds the vertical coordinate of the upper left of the button.
- " Height holds the button's height.
- " Width holds the button's width.

(When setting these properties, remember that the default measurement units in Visual Basic are twips, so that the default coordinate system's origin is at upper left in a form.)

And here's how you use the `Move` method:

```
Button.Move [left, [top, [width, [height]]]]
```

Let's see an example; here, we move a command button 500 twips to the right when the user clicks it.

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Const iIncrement = 500
    Command1.Move Command1.Left + iIncrement
End Sub
```

Adding A Picture To A Button

Your boss (who's been angling for a promotion) wants the company logo to appear in all the buttons in your program. Before you start looking for a new job, take a look at the Visual Basic `Picture` property.

Using the `Picture` property, you can load an image into a button just by clicking the button with the ellipsis (`...`) in the `Picture` property's entry in the Properties window and indicating an image file in the Load Picture control box that opens. That's not all, however; you also have to set the `Style` property to `Graphical` (which has a numeric value of 1). We've loaded an image into a command button in Figure 7.10.



Figure 7.10 Adding a picture to a button.

When you set checkboxes and option buttons to graphical style, they actually look just like graphical command buttons. The only difference is that when you click a graphical checkbox or option button,

shown in Figure 7.11, they stay clicked until you click them again (and option buttons still function in groups, of course).



Figure 7.11 A graphical checkbox.

You can also set the Picture property at runtime but don't try setting it directly to the name of a file. You only load Visual Basic Picture objects into Picture property; such objects are returned by the LoadPicture() function like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Command1.Picture = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\picturebuttons\image.bmp")
End Sub
```

Adding A Down Picture To A Button

Besides adding a simple image to a button, you can add an image that is displayed when the button is clicked. This is more useful with checkboxes and option buttons which stay down when clicked than it is with command buttons.

Using the DownPicture property, you can load an image into a button just click the button with the ellipsis (&) in the DownPicture property's entry in the Properties window, and indicate an image file in the LoadPicture dialog box that opens.

You also have to set the button's Style property to Graphical (which has a numeric value of 1). For example, we've loaded a down image into a command button in Figure 7.12.



Figure 7.12 Adding a down picture to a graphical checkbox.

You can also set the DownPicture property at runtime using the LoadPicture() function:

```
Private Sub Check1_Click()
    Check1.DownPicture = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\picturebuttons\image2.bmp")
End Sub
```

TIP: You can also add an image to be displayed in a graphical button when it's disabled by using the DisabledPicture property.

Adding Buttons At Runtime

Your new program lets the user add options to customize things, and you want to display a new button for each option. Is there a way to add buttons to a Visual Basic program at runtime?

Yes, there is. You can use the Load statement to load new buttons if they're part of a control array. To

how this works, add a new button to a form, giving it the name, say, Command . To make it the first member of a control array, set ~~Index~~ property to 0. Now when the user clicks this button, we can add new button of the same type to the form ~~With~~. Here, we loadCommand(1), because Command(0) is already on the form:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    Load Command(1)
    &
End Sub
```

The new button is a copy of the original one which includes the original button's position so we move new button so it doesn't cover the original one:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    Load Command(1)
    Command(1).Move 0, 0
    &
End Sub
```

Finally, we make the new button visible by setting ~~Visible~~ property to True:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    Load Command(1)
    Command(1).Move 0, 0
    Command(1).Visible = True
End Sub
```

And that's it we've added a new button to the program at runtime.

TIP: You can also remove buttons at runtime by unloading them ~~With~~.

Passing Buttons To Procedures

You've got 200 buttons in your new program, and each one has to be initialized with a long series of statements. Is there some easy way to organize this process? There is. You can pass the buttons to a procedure and place the initialization code in that procedure.

Here's an example. We can set a button's caption by passing it to a subroutine SetCaption() like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    SetCaption Command1
End Sub
```

In the `SetCaption()` procedure, you just declare the button as a parameter; we'll name that parameter and make it of type `Control`:

```
Private Sub SetCaption(Button As Control)
```

```
End Sub
```

Now we can refer to the passed button as we would any parameter passed to a procedure, like this

```
Private Sub SetCaption(Button As Control)
```

```
    Button.Caption = "You clicked me!"
```

```
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 7.13 when you click the command button. The `SetCaption()` subroutine changes its caption, as shown.



Figure 7.13 Passing a button to a procedure to change its caption.

Handling Button Releases

You can tell when a button's been pushed using `Click` event, but can you tell when it's been released? Yes, using the `MouseUp` event. In fact, buttons support the `MouseDown`, `MouseMove`, `MouseUp`, `KeyDown`, `KeyPress` and `KeyUp` events.

To determine when a button's been released, you can just `MouseUp` event this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_MouseUp(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer,_
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    MsgBox "You released the button."
End Sub
```

This can be useful if you want the user to complete some action that has two parts; for example, you can use `MouseDown` to begin changing (for example, incrementing or decrementing) a setting of some kind in realtime, giving the user interactive visual feedback, and you can use `MouseUp` to freeze the setting when the user releases the button.

Making A Command Button Into A Cancel Button

When you're designing dialog boxes, you usually include an OK button and a Cancel button. In fact, you can skip the OK button if you have other ways of letting the user select options (for example, a Finish button or a Yes button), but a Cancel button is just about required in dialog boxes. You should always have a Cancel button to let the user close the dialog box in case he has opened it by mistake or changed his mind.

Command buttons do have `Cancel` property, and Microsoft recommends that you set it to True if you are making a command button into a Cancel button. Only one button can be a Cancel button in a form.

However, there doesn't seem to be much utility in making a command button into a Cancel button. There's nothing special about that button, really it won't automatically close a dialog box, for example except for one thing: when the user hits the Esc key, the Cancel button is automatically clicked. Using the Esc key is one way users have of closing dialog boxes, but it's not a very compelling reason to have a separate `Cancel` property for buttons.

Tellingly, the Cancel button in the predefined dialog box that comes with Visual Basic (you can add it when you select Project|Add Form) does not have `Cancel` property set to True.

Getting A Checkbox's State

You've added all the checkboxes you need to your new program `BigSuperCasino` and you've connected those checkboxes' `Click` event handlers. But now there's a problem when the users set the current amount of money they want to bet, you need to check if they've exceeded the limit

they've set for themselves. But they set their limit by clicking another checkbox. How can you determine which one they've checked?

You can see if a checkbox is checked by examining its `Value` property (Visual Basic does have a `Checked` property, but that's only for menu items, a fact that has confused more than one programmer). Here are the possible `Value` settings for checkboxes:

- " 0 Unchecked
- " 1 Checked
- " 2 Grayed

Here's an example; in this case, we will change a command button's caption if a checkbox, `Check1`, is checked, but not otherwise:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    If Check1.Value = 1 Then
        Command1.Caption = "The check mark is checked"
    End If
End Sub
```

Setting A Checkbox's State

Your new program \$uperSandwichesToGoRightNow is just about ready, but there's one hitch. You use checkboxes to indicate what items are in a sandwich (cheese, lettuce, tomato, and more) to let users custom-build their sandwiches, but you also have a number of specialty sandwiches with preset ingredients. When the user selects one of those already-built sandwiches, how do you set the ingredients checkboxes to show what's in them?

You can set a checkbox's state by setting its `Value` property to one of the following:

- " 0 Unchecked
- " 1 Checked
- " 2 Grayed

Here's an example; In this case, we check a checkbox, `Check1`, from code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Check1.Value = 1
End Sub
```

Here's another example that uses the Visual Basic `Choose()` function to toggle a checkbox's state each time the user clicks the command button `Command1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Check1.Value = Choose(Check1.Value + 1, 1, 0)
End Sub
```

Grouping Option Buttons Together

When you add option buttons to a form, they are automatically coordinated so that only one option button can be selected at a time. If the user selects a new option button, all the other options buttons are automatically deselected. But there are times when that's not convenient. For example, you may have two sets of options buttons: days of the week and day of the month. You want the user to be able to select one option button in each list. How do you group option buttons together into different groups on the same form?

You can use the frame control to group option buttons together (and, in fact, you can also use Picture Box controls). Just draw a frame for each group of option buttons you want on a form and add the option buttons to the frames (in the usual way just select the Option Button tool and draw the option buttons in the frames). Each frame of option buttons will act as its own group, and the user can select one option button in either group, as shown in Figure 7.14.



Figure 7.14 Grouping option buttons together using frames.

For organizational purposes, and if appropriate, you might consider making the option buttons in each group into a control array, which can make handling multiple controls easier.

Getting An Option Button's State

You can check if an option button is selected or not with the `Value` property. Unlike checkboxes, which have three settings for the `Value` property (corresponding to checked, not checked, and grayed), option buttons' `Value` property only has two settings: True if the button is selected, and False if not.

Here's an example showing how to see whether or not an option button is selected. In this case, display a message in a message box that indicates if an option `Option1`, is selected:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    If Option1.Value Then
        MsgBox "The option button is selected."
    Else
        MsgBox "The option button is not selected."
    End If
End Sub
```

And that's all there is to it.

Setting An Option Button's State

Besides examining an option button's state, you can also set it using the `Value` property. The `Value` property can take two values: True or False.

Here's an example. In this case, we just set an option button, `Option1`, to its selected state by setting its `Value` property to True:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Option1.Value = True
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes.

Using Graphical Checkboxes And Radio Buttons

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone again. Your new program is fine, but it lacks a certain pizzazz. You say Pizzazz? They say, how about using something better than option buttons? Something more graphical!

As it happens, Visual Basic can help out here, because it does support graphical checkboxes and option buttons. You add an image to a button by connecting an image (as from an image file) to the `Picture` property. When you're working with checkboxes and option buttons, you should also set the button's `DownPicture` property to specify what image it should display when selected (in other words, when the button is down).

Graphical checkboxes and option buttons look like image-bearing command buttons, not standard checkboxes and option buttons. The only way you tell them apart from command buttons when they run is that checkboxes and option buttons, when clicked, stay clicked (and, of course, option buttons function in groups).

To see how this works, we set the `Picture` and `DownPicture` properties of a set of option buttons to image files (using the Picture and DownPicture entries in the Properties window). We also must set the `Style` property of the option buttons to 1 to make them graphical buttons, and then run the program. As you can see in Figure 7.15, the option buttons now display images: one when the button is selected and another when the top button in Figure 7.15 is selected.



Figure 7.15 Using graphical option buttons.

You can also add images to buttons in code using the Visual Basic `LoadPicture()` function. For example, here's how we load in a new down picture for `Option1` when the user clicks it:

```
Private Sub Option1_Click(Index As Integer)
```

```
Option1.DownPicture = LoadPicture( "c:\vbbb\picturebuttons\image.bmp" )
```

```
End Sub
```

Using Checkboxes And Option Buttons Together

Your new assignment: to create a program for the SuperDuper Excelsior Tours travel agency. It wants to present users with a list of four tour packages they can choose from and to list the destination cities for each tour. But SuperDuper also wants to let users customize their tours to some extent, so they should be able to add or remove cities from a tour package.

Sounds like a job for Visual Basic. In fact, it sounds like a job for both option buttons and checkboxes because this is just how they are intended to work together: the option buttons let you select one (at most one) option from a list, and the checkboxes display which item or items (that is, one or more than one) correspond to that option. And because checkboxes are interactive controls, users can use them to select the items they want.

To actually write the program the travel agency wants, we add two frames to a form, as shown in Figure 7.16, giving the first frame the caption `Tour` and the second frame the caption `Cities`. In addition, we add four option buttons and checkboxes you see in Figure 7.16.



Figure 7.16 The tour packages program.

When the user clicks `Package 1`, corresponding to the first tour package, we can indicate what cities are included in this tour by setting the appropriate checkboxes:

```
Private Sub Option1_Click( )
    Check1.Value = 1
    Check2.Value = 0
    Check3.Value = 1
    Check4.Value = 0
End Sub
```

And that's how the program works; we can do the same for the other option buttons now:

```
Private Sub Option2_Click( )
    Check1.Value = 0
    Check2.Value = 1
    Check3.Value = 0
    Check4.Value = 1
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Option3_Click( )
    Check1.Value = 1
```

```
Check2.Value = 1  
Check3.Value = 0  
Check4.Value = 0  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Option4_Click()  
    Check1.Value = 1  
    Check2.Value = 1  
    Check3.Value = 1  
    Check4.Value = 1
```

```
End Sub
```

And that's it now run the program as shown in Figure 7.16. When you click one option button, the corresponding tour's cities are displayed in the checkboxes; when you click another option button, the cities are displayed.

This program, then, offers a good example of how the unique capabilities of option buttons and checkboxes may be integrated into the same program. The complete code for the form in Figure 7.16, tourpackage.vbp, is located in the tourpackages folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Chapter 8

List Boxes And Combo Boxes

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding Items To A List Box

Referring To Items In A List Box By Index

Responding To List Box Events

Removing Items From A List Box

Sorting A List Box

Determining How Many Items Are In A List Box

Determining If A List Box Item Is Selected

Using Multiselect List Boxes

Making List Boxes Scroll Horizontally

Using Checkmarks In A List Box

Clearing A List Box

Creating Simple Combo Boxes, Drop-Down Combo Boxes, And Drop-Down List Combo Boxes

Adding Items To A Combo Box

Responding To Combo Box Selections

Removing Items From A Combo Box

Getting The Current Selection In A Combo Box

Sorting A Combo Box

Clearing A Combo Box

Locking A Combo Box

Getting The Number Of Items In A Combo Box

Setting The Topmost Item In A List Box Or Combo Box

Adding Numeric Data To Items In A List Box Or Combo Box

Determining Where An Item Was Added In A Sorted List Box Or Combo Box

Using Images In Combo Boxes

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at two popular Visual Basic controls: list boxes and combo boxes. These controls present the user with a list of items that the user can select from, and every Windows user is familiar with them.

List boxes do just what their name implies: display a list of items. The user can make a selection from that list, and Visual Basic will inform our program what's going on. Because list boxes can use scroll bars if a list gets too long, these controls are very useful to present long lists of items in a way that doesn't take up too much space.

Combo boxes are list boxes combined with text boxes. With combo boxes, you can give users the option of selecting from a list (usually a drop-down list activated when users click the downwards-pointing arrow at right in a combo box) or typing their selections directly into the text box part of the combo box.

List boxes and combo boxes share many properties, so it makes sense to look at them in the same chapter. The reason they share so many properties is that the basis of working with list boxes and combo boxes is item selection. For example, if your program lists various books for sale, you can present their titles in a list; clicking a book's name can display more information about the selected book. If you want to let the user set font size in a program, you might present font sizes in a combo box, and when the user selects a font size, the program can then read the selected size from the combo box.

Both list boxes and combo boxes are controls intrinsic to Visual Basic (in other words, you don't have to add them). You add list boxes to a form with the List Box tool, which is fifth down on the right in the toolbox in Figure 8.1, and combo boxes with the Combo Box tool, which is the fifth tool down on the left in the toolbox. There's nothing special about these controls here; you just add them as usual with the tools in the toolbox.



Figure 8.1 The List Box tool and the Combo Box tool.

In overview, here's how you work with both list boxes and combo boxes: To add or delete items in one of these controls, use the `AddItem` or `RemoveItem` methods. You can use the `List`, `ListCount`, and `ListIndex` properties to enable a user to access items in the control (or you can add items to the list by using the `List` property at design time). When the user makes a selection, you can determine which item was selected with the `ListIndex` or `Text` properties.

Both list boxes and combo boxes have `Click` and `DbClick` events, and the way you

use these events depends on how you've defined your user interface (in other words, does clicking an item to select it in one of these controls launch an action, or does the user have to double-click the item?). It's important to realize that a combo box really is a text box and a list box ~~the~~ Click events only work for the list part of a combo box. When the user makes changes to the text box part of the combo box by typing into that text box, ~~a~~ Change event (as is usual for text boxes) is triggered.

That's how you use the list box events ~~Click~~ when the user clicks the list box, and DblClick when the user double-clicks it. For combo boxes, it's a little more complex: Click when the user clicks an item ~~DblClick~~ when the user double-clicks an item (the Style of the combo box must be set ~~Simple, Style = 1~~, for the DblClick event to work), and Change when the user enters text. Note in particular that when the user makes a selection in a combo box's list box that changes the text in the text box, a Change event is not triggered; the Change event only occurs when the user types text into the combo box.

That's all the overview we need we'll turn to the Immediate Solutions now.

Immediate Solutions

Adding Items To A List Box

The Testing Department is calling again, and they're telling you to get rid of all the beautiful buttons that you've placed on the main form of your program. But, you say, it's a program that lets the user buy computer parts. We have to list what computer parts are available. That's just it, they say, a list should go in a list box.

So you've added your list box, and now it's staring at you: a blank white box. How do you add items to the list box?

You can add items to a list box at either design time or at runtime. At design time, you can use the `List` property, which is a very handy array of the items in the list box; and at runtime, you can use both `this` property and the `AddItem()` method. Here's how you use the `List` property in code (keep in mind that you can get or set items in the list box with the `List` array):

```
ListBox.List(index) [= string]
```

How do you keep track of the total number of items in a list box? You use the `ListCount` property; that is, if you loop over the `List` array, you'll use `ListCount` as the maximum value to loop to.

At design time, you can add items directly to your list box by typing them into the `List` property in the Properties window. Selecting `List` property displays a drop-down list (which is appropriate considering you're filling a list box), and you can type item after item into the list box that way.

At runtime, you can either use the `index` property as detailed previously, or the `AddItem()` method this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    List1.AddItem ( Item 1 )
    List1.AddItem ( Item 2 )
    List1.AddItem ( Item 3 )
    List1.AddItem ( Item 4 )
End Sub
```

Running this code gives us the list box in Figure 8.2.



Figure 8.2 Placing items in a list box.

We should note that when you place items in a list box, they are stored by index, and you can refer to them by their index with `List` property. See the next topic for more details.

Referring To Items In A List Box By Index

When you add items to a list box, each item is given `index`, and you can refer to the item in the list box using this index (for example, you can get the item's text by using the `List` property: `List(index)`). The first item added to a list box gets the index 0, the next index 1, and so on.

When the user selects an item in a list box, you can get the selected item's index with the list box `ListIndex` property. Let's see an example to make this clear. Here, we might just add four items, Item 0 to Item 3, to a list box this way `AddItem()`:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    List1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

This code places the four items into the list box with indexes 0 through 3 like this:

```
List(0) = "Item 0"
List(1) = "Item 1"
List(2) = "Item 2"
List(3) = "Item 3"
```

Now we can refer to the items in the list box by index using `List` property as `List(0)`, `List(1)`, and so on. When the user clicks the list, causing `Click` event, we can display the item number the user clicked with `ListIndex` property, which holds the index of the currently selected item:

```
Private Sub List1_Click()
    MsgBox "You clicked item " & Str(List1.ListIndex)
End Sub
```

You can also change an item's index with `Index` property like this:

```
List(index).Index = 3
```

In addition, you can sort items in a list box see [Sorting A List Box](#) later in this chapter.

Responding To List Box Events

Now you've created your new list box, and it's a beauty. The boss is very pleased with it when you show your new program at the company's expo. The boss clicks the list box with the mouse and nothing happens. The boss asks, Didn't you connect that list box to code? Oh, you think.

Click And DblClick

You use two main events with list boxes: `Click` and `DblClick`. How you actually use them is up to you, because different programs have different needs. For example, if a list box sets a new font that doesn't become active until a font chooser dialog box is closed, it's fine to respond to the `Click` event to display a sample of the font the user has selected in a text box. On the other hand, if you display the names of programs to launch in a text box, you should probably launch a program only after a user double-clicks it in the list box to avoid mistakes.

You use the `Click` event just as you use the `Click` event in a button, with a `Click` event handler. Here, we display the item in the list box the user has clicked, using the `ListIndex` property (you can get the selected item's text with `List1.List(ListIndex)` or with `List1.Text`):

```
Private Sub List1_Click()
    MsgBox "You clicked item " & Str(List1.ListIndex)
End Sub
```

And displaying the selected item is the same. For `DblClick` you just add a `DblClick` handler with the code you want:

```
Private Sub List1_DblClick()
    MsgBox "You clicked item " & Str(List1.ListIndex)
End Sub
```

Note, by the way, that `DblClick` event also triggers the `Click` event, because to double-click an item, you must first click it.

Multiselect List Boxes

List boxes can also be multiselect list boxes (see [Using Multiselect List Boxes](#) later in this chapter), which means the user can select a number of items in the list box. If your list box is a multiselect box, you can determine which items the user has selected by using the `Selected` property this way:

```
For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
    If List1.Selected(intLoopIndex) Then
    ...
    End If
Next intLoopIndex
```

Removing Items From A List Box

The Testing Department is calling again how about letting the users customize your program? You ask, what do you mean? Well, they say, let's give the user some way of removing the 50 fine French cooking tips from the list box.

You can remove items from a list box at design time simply by deleting them ~~list~~ the property. At runtime, you use the `RemoveItem()` method. Here's an example; in this case, we add four items, Items 0 through 3 to a list box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    List1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

Item 0 has index 0 in the list box, Item 1 has index 1, and so on. To remove, say, Item 1 when the user clicks a command button, we can ~~use~~ pass it the item's index:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    List1.RemoveItem 1
End Sub
```

Running the program and clicking the button gives the result shown in Figure 8.3. Now we're able to remove items from a list box.



Figure 8.3 Removing an item from a list box.

TIP: You should note that removing an item from a list box changes the indexes of the remaining items. After you remove Item 1 in the preceding example, Item 2 now gets index 1 and Item 3 gets index 2. If you want to change those indexes back to their original values, set the `itemIndex` properties.

Sorting A List Box

You're very proud of your new program's list box, which ~~list~~ the classical music

recordings available for the last 40 years. But the Testing Department isn't so happy. They ask, Can you alphabetize that list?

You can alphabetize the items in a list box by setting the `Sorted` property to True (it's False by default) at design time or runtime. That's all it takes. (In fact, I've known lazy programmers who sorted arrays of text by placing the text into a hidden list box and then read it back to save writing the code for the string comparisons!)

TIP: You should know, however, that sorting a list box can change the indexes of the items in that list box (unless they were already in alphabetical order). After the sorting is finished, the first item in the newly sorted list has index 0, the next index 1, and so on. If you want to change the indexes of the items back to their original values, you can set their `Index` properties.

Determining How Many Items Are In A List Box

You want to loop over the items in your list box to find out if a particular item is in the list, but you need to know how many items are in the list box in order to set up the loop. How can you set up the loop?

You can use the `ListCount` property to determine how many items are in a list box. When setting up loops over the items in a list box, you should note that `ListCount` is the total number of items in a list, whereas index values start at 0, not 1. This means that if you're looping over indices, you should loop `ListCount - 1`, not `ListCount`.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll search a list box to see if it has an item whose caption is "Item 1". First, we set up the loop over the indexes of the items in the list box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
    ...
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

Then we check the caption of each item, checking for the caption "Item 1", and report if we find that item:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
        If List1.List(intLoopIndex) = "Item 1" Then
            MsgBox "Found item 1!"
        End If
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

```
End If
```

```
Next intLoopIndex
```

```
End Sub
```

Determining If A List Box Item Is Selected

The big point of list boxes is to let the user make selections, of course, and there are a number of properties to handle that process. Here's an overview.

You get the index of the selected item in a list box with `List1.ListIndex` property. If no item is selected, `ListIndex` will be 1.

You can get the text of a list's selected item with `List1.Text` or `List1.List(List1.ListIndex)`.

You can use a list box's `SelectedArray` to determine if individual items in the list box are selected or not. Let's see an example to see how that works; in this case, we'll loop over the elements in the list box until we find the selected one.

We start by loading items into the list box when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load ()
    List1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 3")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 4")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 5")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 6")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 7")
End Sub
```

When the user clicks a command button, we can indicate which item is selected in the list box by displaying that item's caption in a message box. We just loop over all the items in the list box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()
    Dim intLoopIndex
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
    ...
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

And we check the `SelectedArray` for each item to find the selected item:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()  
    Dim intLoopIndex  
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1  
        If List1.Selected(intLoopIndex) Then  
            MsgBox "You selected " & List1.List(intLoopIndex)  
        End If  
    Next intLoopIndex  
End Sub
```

Note that list boxes can support multiple selections if you set the **MultiSelect** property to True. See the next topic in this chapter to see how to handle selections in multiselect list boxes.

Using Multiselect List Boxes

Everyone's very pleased with your new program to sell classical music CDs except for the Sales Department. Why, they want to know, can the user only buy one CD at a time? Well, you explain, the program uses a list box to display the list of CDs, and when the user makes a selection, the program orders that CD. They ask, How about using a multiselect list box? So what's that?

A multiselect list box allows the user to select a number of items at one time. You make a list box into a multiselect list box with the **MultiSelect** property. The user can then select multiple items using the Shift and Ctrl keys. Here are the possible settings for MultiSelect:

- " 0 Multiple selection isn't allowed (this is the default).
 - " 1 Simple multiple selection. A mouse click or pressing the spacebar selects or deselects an item in the list. (Arrow keys move the focus.)
 - " 2 Extended multiple selection. Pressing the Shift key and clicking the mouse or pressing the Shift key and one of the arrow keys extends the selection from the previously selected item to the current item. Pressing the Ctrl key and clicking the mouse selects or deselects an item in the list.
-

TIP: The **DblClick** event isn't very useful with multiselect list boxes, because when you click the list box a second time, every item but the one you've clicked is deselected. In addition, the **Click** event is generated each time the user selects a new item, and you might want to wait until all selections are made before taking action. This is why you often use a command button to initiate action after a user selects items in a multiselect list box. Take a look at the following example to see how this works.

Let's see an example of a multiselect list box at work. In this case, we'll have two list boxes, **List1** and **List2**, as well as a command button displaying an arrow (here, we'll just give a button the caption > to display the arrow). Set **List1**'s **MultiSelect** property to 1. When the user selects a number of items in **List1** and clicks the button with an arrow, we'll copy the selected items in **List1** to **List2**, as in Figure 8.4.



Figure 8.4 Selecting multiple items in a multiselect list box.

We start by loading items into **List1** when the form loads:

```

Private Sub Form_Load ()
    List1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 3")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 4")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 5")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 6")
    List1.AddItem ("Item 7")
End Sub

```

Next, when the user clicks the command button to indicate he has made all the selections he wants, we loop over the list this way:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click ()
    Dim intLoopIndex
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
    ...
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

In the loop, we see which items were selected and move them to the other list box, List2:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click ()
    Dim intLoopIndex
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
        If List1.Selected(intLoopIndex) Then
            List2.AddItem List1.List(intLoopIndex)
        End If
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

The result appears in Figure 8.4, where we're letting the user make multiple selections using the mouse, Shift, and Ctrl keys.

Note that we looped over every item in the list box to see if it was selected or not. Is this necessary? Aren't there SelStart and SelLength properties for the list box as there are for text boxes? Those properties don't exist for list boxes, because the selected items in a multiselect list box may not be contiguous, which also means that we do indeed have to loop over all items in the list box, checking each one.

individually to see if it's been selected.

Making List Boxes Scroll Horizontally

It's a pity that there's so little vertical space for the list box in your new program's layout the user can only view 4 or more than 40 items in the list box at once. Can you make a list box work horizontally instead of vertically?

Yes you can, if you break up the list into columns using the Columns property. When that property is set to 0, the default, the list box presents just a vertical list to the user. When you set the Columns property to another value, the list box displays its items in that number of columns instead.

Let's see an example can multiselect list boxes also be multicolumn list boxes? They sure can; take a look at Figure 8.5.



Figure 8.5 A multiselect multicolumn list box.

In this example, we've just set List1's Columns property to 2 and used the same code we developed for our multiselect example, which transfers selected items from List1 to List2 when the user clicks the command button (if you've made it large, you might have to make it smaller before it will display the items in a number of columns rather than one large column):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To List1.ListCount - 1
        If List1.Selected(intLoopIndex) Then
            List2.AddItem List1.List(intLoopIndex)
        End If
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

Now the user can select multiple items from the column list List1 and transfer them to List2 at the click of a button.

Using Checkmarks In A List Box

The Aesthetic Design Department has sent you a memo. People are so tired, they write, of standard list boxes. Can't you punch them up a little in your program, SuperDuperTextPro? Suppressing your immediate response, which is to tell the Aesthetic Design Department just what you think of them in rather direct terms, you give the problem a little thought. Well, you decide, I could use those new checkmark list boxes.

When you use checkmark list boxes, selected items appear with a checkmark in front of them. You can make a list box into a checkmark list box with the `Style` property, which can take these values:

- " 0 Standard list box (the default)
- " 1 Checkmark list box

For example, the list box in Figure 8.6 has the `Style` property set to 1, making it a checkmark list box.



Figure 8.6 Using checkmark list boxes.

TIP: By default, checkmark list boxes can support multiple selections; the `MultiSelect` property of these list boxes must be set to 0.

Clearing A List Box

It's time to load new items into a list box do you really have to clear the old items out one at a time with `RemoveItem`?

You can use the `Clear` method to clear a list box. Nothing could be easier (so be careful there's no `Undelete` function here!). You just use `Clear` like `List1.Clear`.

Here's how that looks in code; in this case, we're clearing a list box, when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    List1.Clear
End Sub
```

Creating Simple Combo Boxes, Drop-Down Combo Boxes, And Drop-Down List Combo Boxes

Combo boxes are those controls that usually display a text box and a drop-down list. In fact, you might think there is only one kind of combo box, but there are ~~three~~ types, and you select which type you want with the `Style` property. The default type of combo box is probably what you think of when you think of combo boxes, because, as mentioned, it is made up of a text box and a drop-down list. However, you can also have combo boxes where the list doesn't drop down (the list is always open, and you have to make sure to provide space for it when you add the combo box to your form) and combo boxes where the user can only select from the list.

Here are the settings for the `Style` property:

- " VbComboBoxDropList 0; drop-down combo box. Includes a drop-down list and a text box. The user can select from the list or type in the text box. (This is the default.)
- " VbComboBoxSimple 1; simple combo box. Includes a text box and a list, which doesn't drop down. The user can select from the list or type in the text box. The size of a simple combo box includes both the edit and list portions. By default, a simple combo box is sized so that none of the list is displayed. Increase `Height` property to display more of the list.
- " VbComboBoxDropDownList 2; drop-down list. This style allows a selection only from the drop-down list. This is a good one to keep in mind when you want to restrict the user's input; however, if you want to use this one, you should also consider simple list boxes. The selected item appears in the (read-only) text box.

Adding Items To A Combo Box

You've added a new combo box to your program, and it looks great. When you run it, however, all you see is `Combo1` in it. How do you add items to your combo box?

A combo box is a combination of a text box and a list box, so at design time, you can change the text in the text box part by changing the `Text` property. You change the items in the list box part with the `List` property (this item opens a drop-down list when you click it in the Properties window) at design time.

At runtime, you can add items to a combo box using the `AddItem()` method, which adds items to the list box part. You can also add items to the list box using the `List` property, which is an indexed array of items in the list box. If you want to set text in the text box, set the combo box `Text` property.

Here's an example; in this case, we add four items to a combo box's list:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

You can also add items to the list with the `List` property. Here we create a fifth item and give it a caption this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
    Combo1.List(4) = "Item 4"
End Sub
```

That's it; the result appears in Figure 8.7.



Figure 8.7 A newly filled combo box.

Responding To Combo Box Selections

So you've installed a new combo box in your program. SuperDuperTextProgram let's do something with it.

user select new text font sizes, and the combo box is staring at you just a blank box. How do you connect it to your code?

Combo boxes are combinations of text boxes and list boxes, and that combination means that there are two sets of input events when the user types into the text box and Click or DblClick when the user uses the mouse. Note that, unlike standard list boxes, you cannot make multiple selections in a combo box's list box.

Change Events

When the user changes the text in a combo box, a ~~Change~~ event occurs, just as it does when the user types in a standard text box. You can read the new text in the text box with the `Text` property. For example, here's how we display the new text in the combo box every time the user changes that text by typing:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub

Private Sub Combo1_Change()
    MsgBox "New text is: " & Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

TIP: Here's a fact that takes many programmers by surprise: when you use the mouse to select an item in a combo box's list, even if doing so changes the text in the combo's text box. The only event that occurs is `Click` (or `DblClick`) when the user uses the mouse.

Click Events

You can also get click events when the user makes a selection in the list box using the mouse. You can determine which item the user clicked using the `listIndex` property (which holds the index of the clicked item) or get that item's text using the `Text` property, because when you click an item, it is made the new selected item in the text box. Here's an example using `thisIndex` property; in this case, we report to the user which item in the combo box he has clicked:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Combo1_Click()
    MsgBox "You clicked item " & Str(Combo1.ListIndex)
End Sub
```

DblClick Events

You might expect that where there are Click events there are DblClick events, and that's true but for simple combo boxes only (Style = VbComboSimple, where VbComboSimple is a Visual Basic constant that equals 1). When you click an item in the list part of a combo box once, the list closes, so it's impossible to double-click an item except in simple combo boxes, where the list stays open at all times.

For simple combo boxes, then, we can support DblClick event this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Combo1_DblClick()
    MsgBox "You double clicked item " & Str(Combo1.ListIndex)
End Sub
```

Removing Items From A Combo Box

Just as with list boxes, you can remove items from combo boxes using the RemoveItem() method. You just pass the index of the item you want to remove from the combo box's list to RemoveItem()

Here's an example. In this case, we can add four items to a combo box, Items 0 through 3, when the combo box's form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

Next, we remove Item 1 in the list this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Combo1.RemoveItem 1
End Sub
```

And that's it now Item 1 is gone (see Figure 8.8).



Figure 8.8 Removing an item from a combo box.

TIP: You should note that removing an item from a combo box changes the indexes of the remaining items. After you remove Item 1 in the preceding example, Item 2 now gets Index 1 and Item 3 gets Index 2. If you want to change those indexes back to their original values, set the `itemIndex` properties.

Getting The Current Selection In A Combo Box

When you make a selection in a combo box, that new selection appears in the combo box's text box, so it's easy to get the current selection you just use the `ComboBox`'s `Text` property.

For example, say we've added these items to a combo box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

Then, when the user clicks a command button, we can get the text of the current selection in the combo box this way, using the `Text` property.

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MsgBox "New text is: " & Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

That's the way to do it when you need to know what the current selection in a combo box is, you can use the `Text` property.

You can also get the currently selected item's index in the combo box's list using the

ListIndex property. If no selection is made (for instance, when the form first loads and the combo s text box is empty), this property will return 1. If the user has altered the selection by typing into the text box (in other words, so the selected item no longer matches the item the combo box s list), ListIndex will also be 1. And if the user opens the combo box s list and then clicks outside that list without making a selection, ListIndex is set to 1.

Here s an example in which we display the index of the currently selected item using ListIndex . First, we fill the combo box with items:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

Then we can display the index of the current selection when the user clicks a command button using ListIndex this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MsgBox Str(Combo1.ListIndex)
End Sub
```

TIP: If you want to restrict the user s input to items from the combo box s list, set the combo box Style property to VbComboBoxDrop-DownList, a predefined Visual Basic constant whose value is 2. In this style of combo boxes, the user cannot type into the text part of the control.

Sorting A Combo Box

You've been newly commissioned to write the guidebook to the local zoo with Visual Basic, and everything looks great except for one thing. The program features a combo box with a list of animals that the user can select to learn more about each animal, and it would be great if you could make that list appear in alphabetical order. The zoo, however, keeps adding and trading animals all the time. Still, it's no problem, because you can leave the work up to the combo box itself if you set the ~~Sort~~ property to True (the default is False).

For example, say we set the ~~Sort~~ property to True for a combo box `Combo1`. Now it doesn't matter in what order you add items to that combo box.

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem "zebra"
    Combo1.AddItem "tiger"
    Combo1.AddItem "hamster"
    Combo1.AddItem "aardvark"
End Sub
```

because all the items will be sorted automatically. The sorted combo box appears in Figure 8.9. Now you'll be able to handle the animals from aardvark to zebra automatically.

 Figure 8.9 Sorting the items in a combo box.

TIP: You should know, however, that sorting a combo box can change the indexes of the items in that combo box (unless they were already in alphabetical order). After the sorting is finished, the first item in the newly sorted combo list has Index 0, the next Index 1, and so on. If you want to change the indexes of the items back to their original values, you can set the `Index` properties.

Clearing A Combo Box

It's time to put new items into a combo box but does that mean you have to delete all the current items there one by one with `RemoveItem()`?

No, you can clear a whole combo box at once with the `Clear()` method. Here's an example. First, we add items to a combo box:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub

```

Then we can clear the combo box when the user clicks a command button:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Combo1.Clear
End Sub

```

Note that there is no `unclear` method! Once you remove the items from a combo box, they're gone until you expressly add them again.

Locking A Combo Box

You can lock a combo box by setting its `Locked` property to True. When locked, the user cannot enter text in the combo's text box and cannot make selections from the combo's list (although if the list is drop-down, it will still open). However, when programmers think of locking a combo box, it's not usually the `Locked` property that they want.

The more common operation is to restrict the user's ability to enter text in a combo box so that he must instead select one of the items in the combo's list. You can make sure that the user can't enter text in the combo box's text box by setting the combo box's `Style` property to `VbComboDrop-DownList`. Here are the settings for the `ComboBoxStyle` property:

- " `VbComboDropDown` 0; drop-down combo box. Includes a drop-down list and a text box. The user can select from the list or type in the text box. (This is the default.)

- " `VbComboSimple` 1; simple combo box. Includes a text box and a list, which doesn't drop down. The user can select from the list or type in the text box. The size of a simple combo box includes both the edit and list portions. By default, a simple combo box is sized so that none of the list is displayed; size the combo box to display more of the list.

- " `VbComboDrop-DownList` 2; drop-down list. This style allows a selection only from the drop-down list. This is a good one to keep in mind when you want to restrict the user's input, but if you want to use this one, you should also consider simple list boxes.

Besides locking or setting the `Style` property of a combo box, you can also disable a

combo box, of course, by setting `Enabled` property to False; however, this grays out the control and makes it completely inaccessible. Another option is to make the combo box disappear by setting `Visible` property to False (setting `Visible` property to True makes the combo box reappear).

Getting The Number Of Items In A Combo Box

You're trying to bend over backwards to make your program user-friendly and have let the user add items to the main combo box. But now you need to see if he has added a particular item to the combo box. How do you find out how many items there are in the combo box currently so you can set up your loop?

You can use a combo box's `ListCount` property to determine how many items are in the combo box's list. Let's see how to `ListCount` in an example. Here, we'll search the items in a combo box for one particular item with the caption "Item 1", and if we find it, we'll display a message box.

We start by setting up our loop over the indexes of all the items in the combo box this way (note that we subtract 1 from `ListCount` because indices are zero-based):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To Combo1.ListCount - 1
    ...
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

Then we search the index's `List` property for the item we want and, if we find it, report that fact to the user:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
    For intLoopIndex = 0 To Combo1.ListCount - 1
        If Combo1.List(intLoopIndex) = "Item 1" Then
            MsgBox "Found item 1!"
        End If
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

Setting The Topmost Item In A List Box Or Combo Box

One of the properties of list and combo boxes, `TopIndex`, has fooled a lot of programmers, because according to Microsoft, this property lets you set the topmost item in a list box or combo box's list. However, what that seems to mean is not exactly how it works.

When you set a list box or combo box's `TopIndex` property to some value, the items in the list are not reordered (if you want to reorder them, use the `Items` properties or the control's `Sorted` property). What `TopIndex` does is to set the topmost visible item in the list in those cases where not all items in the list are visible (in other words, if the list has scroll bars on the side).

Let's see an example. Here we place some items into a simple combo box (in other words, a simple combo box has its list permanently open as its `Style` property is set to `VbComboSimple`, whose value is 1):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
End Sub
```

When the user clicks a command button, we can make Item 2 topmost in the visible portion of the list:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Combo1.TopIndex = 2
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 8.10. When you click the button, the list scrolls automatically so Item 2 is the topmost visible item (note that this scrolling operation only occurs if not all items in the list are visible at once).



Figure 8.10 Making an item topmost.

TIP: The reason for `TopIndex`'s existence is to make life easier for users when they are working with long lists. Each time they reopen a list, it's a pain to have to scroll down to the former location just to be able to select the following item. For this reason, programs often remember the last-selected item in a list and make that topmost when the list is opened again.

Adding Numeric Data To Items In A List Box Or Combo Box

You've been asked to write the employee phone directory program and place a combo box with all the employee's names in the middle of a form. Now how do you connect phone numbers to the names?

You can use a list box's or combo box's ~~Items~~ ItemData array to hold Long integers, because that array is indexed in the same way as the control's items themselves are indexed. That is, you can store numeric data for Item 5 in the list or combo box in ItemData(5).

Let's see an example to make this easier. Here, we add four items to a combo box when its form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")
    ...

```

Next, we add numeric data to each item in the combo box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 0")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 1")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 2")
    Combo1.AddItem ("Item 3")

    Combo1.ItemData(0) = 0
    Combo1.ItemData(1) = 111
    Combo1.ItemData(2) = 222
    Combo1.ItemData(3) = 333
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks an item in the combo box, we can indicate what that item's numeric data is with a message box:

```
Private Sub Combo1_Click()
    MsgBox "Data for the clicked item is: " & _
        Str(Combo1.ItemData(Combo1.ListIndex))
End Sub
```

In this way, you're able to store more than just text for list or combo box items.

TIP: Associating simple numbers with your list or combo box items isn't enough?

What if you have more data? Try using the `ItemData` value as an index into an array of data structures instead.

Determining Where An Item Was Added In A Sorted List Box Or Combo Box

You're letting the user customize a combo box by adding items to the combo box, and in code, you place data into the `ItemData` array for this item after it's been added. But there's a problem: this is a `sortedcombo` box (or list box), which means you don't know the item's actual index when it's added, and you therefore don't know its index in the `ItemData` array. How can you find out where the item was placed in the sorted combo box?

You can use the control's `NewIndex` property to determine the index of the most recently added item to the control. For example, let's say that the user can add items to a sorted combo box by placing the text of the new item in a text box and clicking a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Combo1.AddItem (Text1.Text)
End Sub
```

The index of the new item in the sorted list is now in the `NewIndex` property, so we can add data to the new item's entry in the `ItemData` array (if you don't know what this array does, see the previous topic) and display that data in a message box this way:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Combo1.ItemData(Combo1.NewIndex) = 10000
    MsgBox "Data for the new item is: " & _
        Str(Combo1.ItemData(Combo1.NewIndex))
End Sub
```

Using Images In Combo Boxes

We've seen in this book that you can add images to menus and to buttons. Can you add images to combo boxes? Yes, you can, ~~use~~ image comboboxes.

Image combo boxes are one of the Windows common controls, so you have to add those controls to your project. Here's how you install image combo boxes step-by-step:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Select the Controls tab in the Components box that opens.
3. Click the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item in the Components box now, and click on OK to close the Components box, adding the common controls to the toolbox.
4. Draw a new image combo box in your program.
5. To store the images for the image combo box, you'll need an image list control (another of the Windows common controls), so add one of those to your program as well by drawing it on your form (the control will not appear at runtime).
6. Right-click the image list control now, and select Properties in the menu that appears in order to open the property pages, as shown in Figure 8.11.



Figure 8.11 The Images tab of the image list property pages.

7. Click the Images tab in the image list's property pages now, and use the Insert Picture button to insert all the images you want to use in the image list, as also shown in Figure 8.11 (where we're using solid colors for each image).
8. Close the image list property page by clicking OK.
9. Right-click the image combo control now and select the Properties item in the menu that opens.
10. We need to connect the image `ImageList1`, to the image combo box, so click the General tab in the image combo property pages and select `ImageList1` in the `ImageList` box, as shown in Figure 8.12.



Figure 8.12 The General tab of the image combo property pages.

11. Close the image combo property pages by clicking on OK.

12. Now add the items to the image combo box ImageCombo1 in code. To add those items to the image combo box, you actually add ComboBoxItem objects to that control. To do that, you can use the image combobox's `ComboBoxItems` collection's `Add` method. This method takes the index of the item to add, a key (which is a unique text string that identifies the item), the caption of the item if any, and the index of the item's picture in the associated image list control:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    ImageCombo1.ComboBoxItems.Add 1, "key1", "Item 1", 1
    ImageCombo1.ComboBoxItems.Add 2, "key2", "Item 2", 2
    ImageCombo1.ComboBoxItems.Add 3, "key3", "Item 3", 3
End Sub
```

And that's it. Now when you run the program, the combo box displays images, as shown in Figure 8.13. Now we're using images in combo boxes.



Figure 8.13 A combo box displaying images.

Chapter 9

Scroll Bars And Sliders

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding Horizontal Or Vertical Scroll Bars To A Form

Setting Scroll Bars Minimum And Maximum Values

Setting Up Scroll Bar Clicks (Large Changes)

Setting Up Scroll Bar Arrow Clicks (Small Changes)

Getting A Scroll Bar's Current Value

Handling Scroll Bar Events

Handling Continuous Scroll Bar Events

Showing And Hiding Scroll Bars

Coordinating Scroll Bar Pairs

Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes

Creating And Using Flat Scroll Bars

Customizing Flat Scroll Bar Arrows

Creating Slider Controls

Setting A Slider's Orientation

Setting A Slider's Range

Setting Up Slider Groove Clicks

Adding Ticks To A Slider

Setting A Slider's Tick Style

Getting A Slider's Current Value

Handling Slider Events

Handling Continuous Slider Events

Handling Slider Selections

Clearing A Selection In A Slider

Creating An Updown Control

Setting An Updown Control's Minimum And Maximum

Handling Updown Events

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at those controls that scroll and slide in Visual Basic. The controls we'll cover here are scroll bars, sliders, flat scroll bars, and updown controls, shown in Figure 9.1. Every Windows user is familiar with scroll bars. If computers had wall-sized displays, we might not need scroll bars, but as it is, scroll bars help control what parts of your program's data are visible at any one time. For example, you can place a large document in a text box, only part of which is visible at once. Using scroll bars, you can manipulate the document, moving through it as you like. You manipulate that document by dragging the small box in the scroll bar, which is called the scroll bar's thumb. A relatively new control is the flat scroll bar, which functions just like a normal scroll bar, except that it can appear flat, rather than three-dimensional.



Figure 9.1 Scroll bars, a flat scroll bar, a slider, and an updown control.

A new control for some Windows users is the **Slider** control, which appears at the bottom of Figure 9.1. Using the mouse, you can drag the knob in a slider control much the way you'd work the volume control on a stereo. You use slider controls to let the user make a selection from a range of values in a convenient way. For example, you may use a slider control to resize an image rather than asking the user to type in twip values.

The updown control is also new to many users. This control consists of two buttons, one pointing up and one pointing down, as you see at right in Figure 9.1. Updowns actually work much like the arrow buttons in scroll bars, because each time you click them, the setting of the control changes. You use updowns to let the user increment or decrement a setting.

Adding Scroll Bars And Sliders To A Program

Standard scroll bars are intrinsic controls in Visual Basic, which means that they appear in the toolbox as soon as you start Visual Basic. You'll find both the Vertical and the Horizontal Scroll Bar tools in the toolbox; to add those controls to a form, just paint them as you need them in that form.

You add the other controls in this chapter with the Project|Components menu item (click the Controls tab in the Components box that opens). To add flat scroll bars, you select the Microsoft Flat Scrollbar Control item; to add sliders, you select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item; and to add the updown control, you click

the Microsoft Windows Common Controls-2 item.

The toolbox tools for these controls appear in Figure 9.2. The Horizontal Scroll Bar tool is fourth down in the middle, the Vertical Scroll Bar tool is fourth down on the right. The Updown tool is eighth down in the middle, the Slider tool is eleventh down on the right, and the Flat Scroll Bar tool is twelfth down in the middle.



Figure 9.2 The Horizontal Scroll Bar, Vertical Scroll Bar, Updown, Slider, and Flat Scroll Bar tools.

In overview, these controls work in more or less the same way: you add them to a form, use `Min` and `Max` properties to set the possible range of values the user can set, then read the `Value` property to get the control's setting in a `Change` event handler to interpret actions undertaken by the user.

`Change` events occur after the user is finished changing the control's setting; you can also use the `Scroll` event to handle events as the user works with the control, as we'll see in this chapter. In fact, we'll see how all this works and more in the Immediate Solutions, and we'll turn to that now.

Immediate Solutions

Adding Horizontal Or Vertical Scroll Bars To A Form

Many programmers think that there is one Scroll Bar tool that you add to a form and then set its orientation vertical or horizontal. In fact, those are two different controls, as you see in the toolbox in Figure 9.2. To add a horizontal scroll bar to a form, you use the Horizontal Scroll Bar tool, and to add a vertical scroll bar, you use the Vertical Scroll Bar tool. A horizontal scroll bar, `hScroll1`, and a vertical scroll bar, `vScroll1`, appear in Figure 9.3.



Figure 9.3 A horizontal and a vertical scroll bar.

Setting Scroll Bars Minimum And Maximum Values

The Testing Department is calling again. The Field Testing Unit loves the new program you've written to help them record in-the-field performance of the company's products, but there's just one problem: performance is measured on a scale of 1 to 100, and the scroll bars in your program seem to go from 0 to 32767. It's been very hard for the users of your program to operate with only 1/32 of the whole scroll bar. Can you rescale it?

Yes, you can. After you place a scroll bar in a program, the first thing to do is to set its range of possible values, which by default is 0 to 32767. The minimum value a scroll

bar can be set to is stored in `Min` property, and the maximum value in `Max` property. You can set `Min` and `Max` properties for scroll bars at design time or at runtime; here's how we change those properties in a vertical scroll bar:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll1.Min = 1
    VScroll1.Max = 100
End Sub
```

Setting Up Scroll Bar Clicks (Large Changes)

The Testing Department is calling again. The scroll bars you've added to your program, SuperDuperTextPr~~d~~ook terrific. But why doesn't anything happen when the user clicks the scroll bar itself, in the area between the thumb (the scroll box) and an arrow button? You ask, "Should something happen?" They say, yes.

When the user clicks the scroll bar itself, not the thumb and not an arrow button, the thumb should move in that direction by the amount set by the scroll bar's LargeChange property (see also the next topic, which deals with the SmallChange property). For example, if you've set the scroll bar's range to be 1 to 100, a reasonable LargeChangesetting would be 10. You can set the LargeChangeproperty at design time or at runtime.

Here's an example where we set the LargeChangeproperty for two scroll bars, a horizontal one and a vertical one:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll11.Min = 1
    VScroll11.Max = 100
    VScroll11.LargeChange = 10

    HScroll11.Min = 1
    HScroll11.Max = 100
    HScroll11.LargeChange = 10
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks the scroll bar between the thumb and arrow buttons, the scroll bar's value will increase or decrease by 10.

Note that on some occasions, you should change the LargeChangeproperty while a program is running. For example, if you let the user scroll through a document with this property, setting it to 1, and the user loads in a 30,000-line document, it might be wise to change the value of this property, such as making the large change, say, 5 percent of the total, or 1,500 lines.

Setting Up Scroll Bar Arrow Clicks (Small Changes)

As far as the user is concerned, there are three ways to change the setting of a scroll bar: by moving the thumb (the scroll box), by clicking the area of the scroll bar between the thumb and an arrow button, and by clicking an arrow button. When the user clicks an arrow button, the thumb moves by an amount stored in the

SmallChange property (see also the previous topic, which deals with the **LargeChange** property).

I've known someone who thought the **SmallChange** property was a joke because its name can be interpreted humorously, but it exists all right. When the user clicks a scroll bar's arrow, the setting of the scroll bar is incremented or decremented (depending on which arrow was clicked) by the value in **SmallChange**.

You can set a scroll bar's **SmallChange** property at design time or at runtime. Here we set the **SmallChange** property for two scroll bars, a horizontal one and a vertical one:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll11.Min = 1
    VScroll11.Max = 100
    VScroll11.SmallChange = 1

    HScroll11.Min = 1
    HScroll11.Max = 100
    HScroll11.SmallChange = 1
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks the arrow buttons, the setting of the scroll bar will change by 1.

Note that on some occasions, you should change **SmallChange** while a program is running. For example, if you let the user scroll through a document with this property, setting it to 1, and the user loads in a 30,000-line document, it might be wise to change the value of this property to, say, something like 1 percent of the total, or 300 lines.

TIP: This is one of those values that you should test yourself, because it's part of your program ~~feel~~. I know of a graphics program that scrolls exactly ~~pixel~~ at a time when you click the arrow buttons in the scroll bars next to an image. Such a thing is annoying and gives users the impression that your program is unresponsive and hard to use.

Getting A Scroll Bar's Current Value

You've added the scroll bars you need to a program and set the **Max**, **SmallChange** and **LargeChange** properties, but you'd like to add one more touch. When your program first displays the scroll bars, you'd like them to display a default value, which is right in the middle of their range. How do you set the setting of a

scroll bar?

You use the `Value` property to set a scroll bar's setting. You can set this value at either design time or runtime, and you can set it to read a scroll bar's setting while the program is running. The `Value` property holds values that can be in the range spanned by the values in the `Min` and `Max` properties.

Here's an example. In this case, we're setting up two scroll bars, a horizontal one and a vertical one, and placing the thumb of each scroll bar in the center of the range when the scroll bar first appears by setting `Value` properties this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll11.Min = 1
    VScroll11.Max = 100
    VScroll11.LargeChange = 10
    VScroll11.SmallChange = 1
    VScroll11.Value = 50

    HScroll11.Min = 1
    HScroll11.Max = 100
    HScroll11.LargeChange = 10
    HScroll11.SmallChange = 1
    HScroll11.Value = 50
End Sub
```

When the user makes a change in a scroll bar, you get the new setting from the `Value` property when the `Change` event is triggered (see the next topic).

Handling Scroll Bar Events

You've added the scroll bars the Testing Department wanted. You've set the scroll bars Min, Max, SmallChange and LargeChange properties. Now how do you add the scroll bars to your program's code?

When the user changes the setting in a scroll bar, a Change event occurs, and you can react to those changes with an event handler attached to that event. For example, you may use scroll bars to move other controls around on the form (using those controls' Move method), and when the user changes a scroll bar's setting, you'll be informed of the new value in the Change event handler.

Let's look at an example. We start by adding two scroll bars: a horizontal scroll bar, HScroll1, and a vertical scroll bar, VScroll1 to a form. We set those controls' Min, Max, SmallChange, LargeChange and Value properties when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll1.Min = 1
    VScroll1.Max = 100
    VScroll1.LargeChange = 10
    VScroll1.SmallChange = 1
    VScroll1.Value = 50

    HScroll1.Min = 1
    HScroll1.Max = 100
    HScroll1.LargeChange = 10
    HScroll1.SmallChange = 1
    HScroll1.Value = 50
End Sub
```

Now when the user changes the setting in a scroll bar, we can report the new setting in a text box, Text1, simply by using the new setting in the Value property. This looks like the following code. Now we're handling scroll bar events, as shown in Figure 9.4.



Figure 9.4 Working with scroll bars.

```
Private Sub HScroll1_Change()
    Text1.Text = "Horizontal setting: " & Str(HScroll1.Value)
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub VScroll1_Change()
    Text1.Text = "Vertical setting: " & Str(VScroll1.Value)
End Sub
```

Handling Continuous Scroll Bar Events

You can use the `Change` event to catch the user's scrolling actions, but there's another one that's a lot better for many uses: the `Scroll` event. When you use the `Change` event, nothing happens until users are done with their scrolling actions. After the action is completed, the `Change` event is triggered, and you find out what happened. With the `Scroll` event, on the other hand, you get continuous updates as the action is happening. This means that you can update the screen immediately to show users the results of their scrolling actions. It's very useful to be able to update the screen as the user scrolls, especially in cases where you're scrolling a long document. Imagine trying to scroll 25 pages at a time, only to have to stop scrolling before the screen was updated.

Here's an example showing how to use the `Scroll` event; fundamentally, using this event is the same as using the `Change` event (unless you have an action that should only be performed after the user is done scrolling, in which case you should stick with the `Change` event). We start the example by adding two scroll bars, a horizontal scroll bar (`HScroll1`) and a vertical scroll bar (`VScroll1`), to a form. We set those controls' `Min`, `Max`, `SmallChange`, `LargeChange`, and `Value` properties when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll1.Min = 1
    VScroll1.Max = 100
    VScroll1.LargeChange = 10
    VScroll1.SmallChange = 1
    VScroll1.Value = 50

    HScroll1.Min = 1
    HScroll1.Max = 100
    HScroll1.LargeChange = 10
    HScroll1.SmallChange = 1
    HScroll1.Value = 50
End Sub
```

Next, we just add code to the two scroll bar's `Scroll` events to display the new setting in a text box, `Text1`:

```

Private Sub HScroll11_Scroll()
    Text1.Text = "Horizontal setting: " & Str(HScroll11.Value)
End Sub

Private Sub VScroll11_Scroll()
    Text1.Text = "Vertical setting: " & Str(VScroll11.Value)
End Sub

```

With this code, the text box is continuously updated with the setting of the scroll bars as users manipulate them. This is in sharp contrast to using the `Change` event, which only occurs when users are finished with their scrolling actions.

Showing And Hiding Scroll Bars

Unlike other controls, there are well-defined times when scroll bars should disappear from your program. If the object you're scrolling can be entirely visible, there is no need for scroll bars, and you should remove them. (Another option is to disable them by setting their `Enabled` property to False. Disabled scroll bars appear gray and don't display a thumb.)

You can make a scroll bar disappear by setting its `Visible` property to False, and you can make it reappear by setting that property to True. Here's an example. In this case, we add two scroll bars to a form: a horizontal scroll bar and a vertical scroll bar and initialize them when the form loads:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    VScroll11.Min = 1
    VScroll11.Max = 100
    VScroll11.LargeChange = 10
    VScroll11.SmallChange = 1
    VScroll11.Value = 50

    HScroll11.Min = 1
    HScroll11.Max = 100
    HScroll11.LargeChange = 10
    HScroll11.SmallChange = 1
    HScroll11.Value = 50
End Sub

```

When the user clicks a command button, we can hide both scroll bars simply by setting their `Visible` properties to False:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    HScroll1.Visible = False
    VScroll1.Visible = False
End Sub
```

And that's it now we can hide and show scroll bars at will. As mentioned, you usually hide scroll bars (or disable them) when the object they scroll is entirely visible and the scroll bars are no longer needed.

Coordinating Scroll Bar Pairs

The Testing Department is calling again. The two scroll bars you've added to your SuperDuperWinBigCasino game look great, but there's one problem: A pair of scroll bars straddle the user's view of the roulette tabs. When you scroll one, the other doesn't move to match it. Can you fix that?

It's common to have two scroll bars that perform the same scrolling action one on either side of an image you're scrolling, for example. The user should be able to scroll either scroll bar and have the other one match.

Keeping scroll bars coordinated is easy. All you have to do is make sure that when one scroll bar has a `Change` event, you update the other scroll bar's `Value` property. For example, say we have two vertical scroll bars, `VScroll1` and `VScroll2`, that straddle an object they're in charge of scrolling. You can update `VScroll2` when `VScroll1` changes this way:

```
Private Sub VScroll1_Change()
    VScroll2.Value = VScroll1.Value
End Sub
```

And you can update `VScroll1` when `VScroll2` changes:

```
Private Sub VScroll2_Change()
    VScroll1.Value = VScroll2.Value
End Sub
```

That's all there is to it. Now the scroll bars are coordinated.

Adding Scroll Bars To Text Boxes

How do you add scroll bars to text boxes? You use the text box's `Scrollbar` property instead of using actual scroll bar controls, but we include this topic here anyway because this is a natural chapter to turn to with this question.

First, make sure you set the text box's `MultiLine` property to True, because only multiline text boxes support scroll bars. Next, decide what kind of scroll bars you want on the text box: horizontal, vertical, or both, and set the `Scrollbar` property to match. That property can take these values:

- " `VbSBNone0`; no scroll bars (the default)
- " `VbHorizontal 1`; horizontal

" VbVertical 2; vertical

" VbBoth 3; both vertical and horizontal

For example, we've added both horizontal and vertical scroll bars to the text box in Figure 9.5.



Figure 9.5 Adding scroll bars to a text box.

Creating And Using Flat Scroll Bars

A relatively new control is the flat scroll bar control. This control can function just like any other scroll bar, except that it appears flat, not 3D.

To add flat scroll bars to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item, and click the Controls tab in the Components box that opens.
2. Select the Microsoft Flat Scrollbar Control item.
3. Close the Components box by clicking on OK.
4. The Flat Scroll Bar tool appears in the toolbox at this point. Add a flat scroll bar to your form in the usual way.
5. Set the flat scroll bar's Min, Max, SmallChange and LargeChange values as you want them.
6. Add the code you want to the scroll bar event you want, Change or Scroll. For example, here we add code to a flat scroll bar's Change event, updating a text box with the setting of the scroll bar when the user is finished scrolling it:

```
Private Sub FlatScrollBar1_Change()
    Text1.Text = "Scroll bar's value: " & _
        Str(FlatScrollBar1.Value)
End Sub
```

Run the program now, as shown in Figure 9.6. As you can see in that figure, the flat scroll bar does indeed appear flat, but it functions like any other scroll bar when the user scrolls it.



Figure 9.6 Adding a flat scroll bar to a program.

Unlike standard scroll bars, you can change the orientation of a flat scroll bar with its

Orientation property. The Orientation property can take these values:

- " fsbVertical 0; vertical scroll bar
 - " fsbHorizontal 1; horizontal scroll bar
-

TIP: You can actually make a flat scroll bar appear 3D by setting the Appearance property. This property can take these values: fsb3D (whose value is 0), fsbFlat (value 1), and fsbTrack3D (value 2).

Customizing Flat Scroll Bar Arrows

Flat scroll bars have one advantage over standard scroll bars: you can disable either arrow button selectively in a flat scroll bar using the Arrows property. You set the Arrows property to one of these values:

- " fsbBoth 0; enable both arrows
- " fsbLeftUp 1; enable left/up arrow
- " fsbRightDown 2; enable right/down arrow

For example, we set the flat scroll bar's Arrows property to fsbLeftUp at design time in Figure 9.7, which means the right button is disabled.



Figure 9.7 Disabling the right arrow button in a flat scroll bar.

You can also work with the Arrows property in code like this, where we enable both arrow buttons:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    FlatScrollBar1.Arrows = fsbBoth
End Sub
```

Creating Slider Controls

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone again. They've heard about slider controls in Visual Basic and like their look. Is there any way you can add them to your program, SuperDuperTextPro?

Adding a slider to a program is easy; just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item, and click the Controls tab in the Components box that opens.
2. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item.
3. Close the Components box by clicking on OK.
4. The Slider tool appears in the toolbox at this point. Add a slider to your form in the usual way.
5. Set the slider `Orientation` property to `ccOrientationHorizontal` (value 0, the default) or `ccOrientationVertical` (value 1) to specify the orientation you want.
6. Set the slider `Min`, `Max`, `SmallChange` and `LargeChange` values as you want them.
7. Set the slider `TickFrequency` property to the number of units between tics on the slider's scale.
8. Add the code you want to the slider event you want, `Change` or `Scroll`. For example, here we add code to a slider's `Change` event, setting the blue color of a text box, `Text1`, to match the slider's setting, using the Visual Basic `RGB` function:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 255
    Slider1.Min = 0
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Slider1_Click()
    Text1.BackColor = RGB(0, 0, Slider1.Value)
End Sub
```

Running this program yields the result you see in Figure 9.8. Now we're using sliders in Visual Basic.



Figure 9.8 Adding a slider to a program.

Setting A Slider's Orientation

Like scroll bars, sliders can be horizontal or vertical, but unlike scroll bars, horizontal and vertical sliders are not two different controls. Instead, you set a slider's Orientation property to make it horizontal or vertical.

You can set theOrientation at design time or run-time; this property takes these values:

- " ccOrientationHorizontal (value 0, the default) orients the slider horizontally.
- " ccOrientationVertical (value 1) orients the slider vertically.

Can you change a slider's orientation in code? You certainly can. In this example, we make a slider's orientation vertical when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Slider1.Orientation = ccOrientationVertical
End Sub
```

TIP: Besides reorienting sliders, you can move them around a form using their ~~Move~~ method.

Setting A Slider's Range

You've added a new slider to your environment control program to let users set the temperature they want in their homes, but now they have a complaint. Why does the slider return values of up to 32,767 degrees?

It's time to reset the slider's range of possible values, and you ~~use~~ the Min (default value 0) and Max (default value 10) properties to do that. You can set a slider's range at design time or runtime.

For example, here's how we set a slider's range to a more reasonable span of temperatures:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 90
    Slider1.Min = 50
End Sub
```

After setting theMin andMax properties, you'll probably want to set the slider's ticks frequency so the ticks on the slider's scale look appropriate for the new range (see

Adding Ticks to a Slider in this chapter).

Setting Up Slider Groove Clicks

Besides dragging the knob along the groove in a slider, you can click the groove itself to move the knob (just as you can click the area of a scroll bar between the thumb and arrow buttons). The amount the knob moves each time the user clicks the groove is set with the slider `LargeChange` property (just as it is in scroll bars). The default value for this property is 5.

You can set the `LargeChange` property at design time or runtime. For example, here's how we set a slider `LargeChange` property to 5 when the form containing the slider first loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 255
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.LargeChange = 5
End Sub
```

If you change a slider's range of possible values (in other words, `Min` and `Max` properties), keep in mind that you might also have to change `LargeChange` property as well. For example, if you change the possible range of slider values from 0 to 32767 to 1 to 100 but leave `LargeChange` at 4096, there's going to be a problem when the user clicks the slider's groove.

TIP: Sliders also have `SmallChange` property, but this seems to be one of the mystery properties you run across occasionally in Visual Basic, because there just is no way to use it in a slider. (Even looking it up in the Visual Basic documentation reveals nothing it's undocumented, although it appears in the Properties window.) When you click a slider's groove, the slider moves by `LargeChange` amount, but there aren't any arrow buttons in sliders to cause `SmallChange` events.

Adding Ticks To A Slider

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. The slider you've added to the program looks good, but what's that thick black bar underneath it? You explain that sliders use tick marks to make it easier to move the knob to the approximate position that the user wants. In this case, the slider's possible values extend from 0 to 32767, and you've just added a tick mark for each unit on that scale. That would give you 32,767 tick marks, they say. Right, you say. Maybe it's time to reset the frequency property.

To set the number of tick marks in a slider's scale, you actually set the distance between ticks with the `tickFrequency` property. For example, if your slider's scale goes from 0 to 100, a good value for the `slideTickFrequency` might be 10 (although this depends on the slider's width or height, of course). `TickFrequency` of 5 might be better for a long slider).

You can set this property at design time or runtime. For example, here's how we set the tick frequency in a slider to 10 units:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 255
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.TickFrequency = 10
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 9.9.



Figure 9.9 Setting tick frequency in a slider control.

TIP: To make the tick marks come out evenly spaced, you should set the `TickFrequency` value so that the equation $(\text{Max} - \text{Min}) / \text{TickFrequency}$ comes out to be a whole number with no remainder. To find out how many ticks there are in a slider, use its `getNumTicks()` method.

Setting A Slider's Tick Style

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone again. Your multimedia program is great, but wouldn't it be better if the sliders had tick marks ~~so~~ on both sides? Well, you think, is that possible?

It is. You can set a slider's ~~TickStyle~~ property to `sldBoth` to place tick marks on both sides of a slider. In fact, you can place ticks on one side, both sides, or no sides of a slider. Here are the possible values of ~~TickStyle~~ property:

- " `sldBottomRight` 0; ticks on bottom or right only
- " `sldTopLeft` 1; ticks on top or left only
- " `sldBoth` 2; ticks on both sides
- " `sldNoTicks` 3; no ticks

For example, we've set ~~TickStyle~~ to `sldBoth` in the slider that appears in Figure 9.10.



Figure 9.10 A slider with ticks on both sides.

You can also set ~~TickStyle~~ property in code. Here, we set ~~TickStyle~~ to `sldNoTicks` when a slider loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 100
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.LargeChange = 5
    Slider1.TickFrequency = 10
    Slider1.TickStyle = sldNoTicks
End Sub
```

Getting A Slider's Current Value

Now that you've added a new slider control to your program, how exactly can you determine that control's setting? As with scroll bars, you use the ~~Value~~ property.

The `Value` property is the slider's fundamental property. You can get or set the ~~Value~~ property at design time or runtime. For example, here's how we set a slider to a value of 125, halfway through its range of 0 to 250 (when you set a slider's `Value` in code, the knob in the slider moves to match):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 250
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.LargeChange = 5
    Slider1.TickFrequency = 25
```

```
Slider1.Value = 125
```

```
End Sub
```

To work with the `Value` property when the user moves the slider's knob, see the next two topics.

Handling Slider Events

You've added the new slider to your program, and it looks fine. But how do you connect it to your code? How can you make sure that the slider events are handled properly when the user uses it?

Like scroll bars, sliders have `Change` event (and like scroll bars, they also have a `Scroll` event to handle continuous changes see the next topic in this chapter). You make use of the `Change` event to catch the user's slider actions.

An example will make this clearer; here, we set up a slider when the form loads, setting its `Min`, `Max`, and other properties:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 250
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.LargeChange = 5
    Slider1.TickFrequency = 25
End Sub
```

When the user is done moving the slider's knob, `Change` event occurs, which you can catch in a `Change` event handler:

```
Private Sub Slider1_Change()
End Sub
```

For example, we can display the current setting of the slider in a text box this way, using the slider's `Value` property:

```
Private Sub Slider1_Change()
    Text1.Text = "Slider's position: " & Str(Slider1.Value)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 9.11. When the user moves the slider's knob, the slider's new setting appears in the text box. Now you're handling slider events.

 Figure 9.11 Handling slider events.

Handling Continuous Slider Events

Although sliders have `Change` event, the `Scroll` event might be a better choice when working with a slider. The `Change` event only occurs when users complete their slider actions, but `Scroll` events occur as users move the slider's knob. In other words, the `Change` event lets you know what happened whereas the `Scroll` event lets you know what is happening.

Here's an example. We set up a slider `Slider1`, when the form containing that slider loads, like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 250
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.LargeChange = 5
    Slider1.TickFrequency = 25
End Sub
```

Then we can catch slider actions by setting up an event handler `Slider1_Scroll`:

```
Private Sub Slider1_Scroll()
End Sub
```

In this case, we'll just display the slider's new setting in a text box `Text1`:

```
Private Sub Slider1_Scroll()
    Text1.Text = "Slider's position: " & Str(Slider1.Value)
End Sub
```

Note that unlike code using the `Change` event, this code updates the text box with the slider's new setting as the slider moves.

TIP: Of course, the `Scroll` event is not appropriate for all cases. For example, if you have an action that needs a firm setting before getting started, it might be better to use the `Change` event. However, providing visual feedback to users as they move a slider using `Scroll` can prove very useful.

Handling Slider Selections

Using the Shift key, you can select a range of values in a slider. From the users point of view, the process goes like this: they move the slider's knob to the beginning of the selection they want to make in a slider and press the Shift key. Then they move the knob to the end of the range they want to select and release the Shift key. When the Shift key is released, the selection appears in the slider as a blue band.

This capability of sliders is useful when you want to specify a range for example, you might want to set the tolerable level of music volume to a certain range. To let a slider select a range, you must first set the ~~SelectRange~~ property to True (when it's False, the slider will not support range selection). Here are the two properties you use when selecting ranges in sliders:

- " SelLength returns or sets the length of a selected range in a slider control.
- " SelStart returns or sets the start of a selected range in a slider control.

However, setting the range when the user uses the Shift key is up to you. Let's see how that can work in a simple example. We'll need some way of determining if the Shift key is up or down in this example, so we set up a form-wide Boolean variable ~~bIn~~ShiftUp, in the (General) declarations area of the form:

```
Dim blnShiftUp As Boolean
```

And we set that variable to True when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 250
    Slider1.Min = 0
    Slider1.LargeChange = 5
    Slider1.TickFrequency = 25
    blnShiftUp = True
End Sub
```

When users move the knob to the beginning of the range they want to select and press the Shift key, we can catch that in the ~~KeyDown~~ event handler for the slider; here, we check if ~~Shift~~ argument is 1, which means the Shift key is down:

```
Private Sub Slider1_KeyDown(KeyCode As Integer, Shift As Integer)
    If Shift = 1 And blnShiftUp Then
```

...

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

(The Shift argument in KeyUp and KeyDown event handlers is a bit field, with the least-significant bits corresponding to the Shift key [bit 0], the Ctrl key [bit 1], and the Alt key [bit 2]. These bits correspond to the values 1, 2, and 4, respectively.)

If the Shift key is down, we set the flag blnShiftUp to False; we set the start of the selection, SelStart, to the current slider position; and we set the length of the selection, SelLength, to 0. (Note that it's necessary to set the length of the selection to 0 in case the user starts further selections after finishing with the current one):

```
Private Sub Slider1_KeyDown(KeyCode As Integer, Shift As Integer)
```

```
If Shift = 1 And blnShiftUp Then
    blnShiftUp = False
    Slider1.SelStart = Slider1.Value
    Slider1.SelLength = 0
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

Now when a key goes up, we check to make sure the Shift key is up in KeyUp event handler:

```
Private Sub Slider1_KeyUp(KeyCode As Integer, Shift As Integer)
```

```
If Shift = 0 Then
...
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

If the Shift key is indeed up, we set the Boolean flag blnShiftUp to True, place the selection length in SelLength (note that we use the Visual Basic absolute value Abs() function here to find the selection length, because the user may have moved the slider's knob to a lower, not higher, setting), and set the SelStart property to the current value of the slider if that value is less than the currentSelStart

```
Private Sub Slider1_KeyUp(KeyCode As Integer, Shift As Integer)
```

```
If Shift = 0 Then
    blnShiftUp = True
    Slider1.SelLength = Abs(Slider1.Value - Slider1.SelStart)
    If Slider1.Value < Slider1.SelStart Then
        Slider1.SelStart = Slider1.Value
    End If
...

```

Finally, we can display the length of the new selection in a text box this way:

```
Private Sub Slider1_KeyUp(KeyCode As Integer, Shift As Integer)

If Shift = 0 Then

    blnShiftUp = True
    Slider1.SelLength = Abs(Slider1.Value - Slider1.SelStart)
    If Slider1.Value < Slider1.SelStart Then
        Slider1.SelStart = Slider1.Value
    End If

    Text1.Text = "Selection length: " & Str(Slider1.SelLength)
End If

End Sub
```

And that's it. When you run this program and make a selection with the slider, the length of that selection appears in the text box, as in Figure 9.12.



Figure 9.12 Selecting a range in a slider.

Clearing A Selection In A Slider

Besides setting selections in sliders, you can also clear them with the `ClearSel` method. For example, here's how we might set up a selection in a slider when the form holding that slider loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Slider1.Max = 250
```

```
Slider1.Min = 0  
Slider1.LargeChange = 5  
Slider1.TickFrequency = 25  
Slider1.SelStart = 30  
Slider1.SelLength = 10
```

```
End Sub
```

And here's how we can clear that selection when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()  
    Slider1.ClearSel  
End Sub
```

That's all there is to it.

Creating An Updown Control

The testing department is on the phone again, with an issue about the Print dialog box in your program SuperDuperTextPrd. Why is there a scroll bar next to the Number Of Copies To Print box in the Print dialog box? Well, you say, that's in case the user wants to increment or decrement the number of copies to print. There's a better control than a scroll bar for that, they say what about using updowncontrol?

What's an updown control? It's a control made up of two buttons next to each other, and each button holds an arrow (each pointing away from the other button). You can use an updown when values should be incremented and decremented, and you want to give the user an easy way to do that.

Adding an updown control to a program is easy; just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item, and click the Controls tab in the Components box that opens.
2. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls-2 item.
3. Close the Components box by clicking on OK.
4. The Updown tool appears in the toolbox at this point. Add an updown to your form in the usual way.
5. Set the updown Orientation property as you want it: c2OrientationVertical (the default) or c2OrientationHorizontal.
6. Set the updown Min and Max values as you want them.
7. Add the code you want to the updown's event you want to work with (Change, UpClick, or DownClick). For example, here we add code to report the setting of the updown control in a text box when the user changes it in the updown Change event:

```
Private Sub UpDown1_Change()
Text1.Text = 'New setting: " & Str(UpDown1.Value)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 9.13.



Figure 9.13 Using an updown control.

TIP: Updown controls can have buddycontrols that are clicked when you click the

updown. To make a control an updown's buddy, place that control's name in the updown's `sBuddyControl` property, and set the updown's `sSyncBuddy` property to True. This will align the updown next to the buddy property; for example, if you make an updown the buddy of a command button, that command button is clicked each time the user clicks the updown's up/right arrow. Or, you can increment or decrement a value in a text box by making an updown the buddy of the text box, setting the updown's `sSyncBuddy` property to True, and setting the updown's `Min` and `Max` properties to the minimum and maximum value you want the user to be able to increment and decrement to in the text box.

Setting An Updown Control's Minimum And Maximum

The default maximum value for an updown control is 10, and the default minimum is 0. How can you change those?

Just set the updown's `Max` and `Min` properties as you want them. For example, here's how we set those properties in an updown when it loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    UpDown1.Min = 0
    UpDown1.Max = 100
End Sub
```

That's all there is to it. To handle the updown control's events, take a look at the next topic.

Handling Updown Events

You've added an updown control to your program but how do you connect it to your code? There are three main events you can use: the `Change` event, the `UpClick` event, and the `DownClick` event.

The `Change` event occurs when the user clicks either of the two buttons in the updown. Here's an example; we can report the new setting of an updown when the user clicks a button by catching that action's `Change` event handler:

```
Private Sub UpDown1_Change()
    ...
End Sub
```

We can display the updown's new value in a text box, `TextBox1`, this way, using the updown's `sValue` property:

```
Private Sub UpDown1_Change()
```

```
Text1.Text = "New setting: " & Str(UpDown1.Value)
```

```
End Sub
```

Besides the ~~Change~~ event, you can also attach event handlers to the updown's UpClick and DownClick events to handle Up/Right button clicks and Down/Left button clicks. Being able to work with the individual buttons this way makes the updown a more versatile control.

Chapter 10

Picture Boxes And Image Controls

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding A Picture Box To A Form

Setting Or Getting The Picture In A Picture Box

Adjusting Picture Box Size To Contents

Aligning A Picture Box In A Form

Handling Picture Box Events (And Creating Image Maps)

Picture Box Animation

Grouping Other Controls In A Picture Box

Using A Picture Box In An MDI Form

Drawing Lines And Circles In A Picture Box

Using Image Lists With Picture Boxes

Adding Text To A Picture Box

Formatting Text In A Picture Box

Clearing A Picture Box

Accessing Individual Pixels In A Picture Box

Copying Pictures To And Pasting Pictures From The Clipboard

Stretching And Flipping Images In A Picture Box

Printing A Picture

Using Picture Box Handles

Setting Measurement Scales In A Picture Box

Saving Pictures To Disk

Adding An Image Control To A Form

Stretching An Image In An Image Control

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to take an in-depth look at two popular Visual Basic controls: image controls and picture boxes. In fact, this will be our introduction to a very popular Visual Basic topic, working with graphics, because picture boxes let you do far more with images than just display them.

The two controls we'll work with in this chapter appear in Figure 10.1. We'll take a closer look at these two controls now.



Figure 10.1 A picture box and an image control.

Image Controls

You use image controls to do just what the name implies: display images. This control is a very simple one that doesn't take up many program resources: it's just there to display (and stretch, if you wish) images. If that's all you want to do, use an image control. You load a picture into an image control's Picture property (either at design time or using LoadPicture() at runtime).

TIP: You should also know that if you just want to display a picture as a sort of backdrop for your program, Form objects themselves have a Picture property that you can load images into without the need for image controls or picture boxes.

Image controls are very accommodating; they resize themselves automatically to fit the image you're placing in them. On the other hand, if you don't want the image control to change size, set its Stretch property to True. Doing so means that the image, not the control, will be resized when loaded to fit the control. Another advantage of the image control over the picture box is that it repaints itself faster than picture boxes. Image boxes can't do a lot of things that picture boxes can do, however, such as act as containers for other controls.

Both image controls and picture boxes are intrinsic controls in Visual Basic, which means they appear in the toolbox when you start the program. The Image Control tool is tenth down on the left in the toolbox in Figure 10.2.



Figure 10.2 The Image Control tool.

Picture Boxes

Picture boxes are more complete controls than image controls. Just as the rich text control provides a sort of word-processor-in-a-control, so the picture box does for

graphics in Visual Basic. You can load images into a picture box, save images to disk, draw with some rudimentary graphics methods, print images, work pixel-by-pixel, set an image's scale, and more. Besides graphics handling, the picture box can also act as a container for other controls and besides toolbars and status bars, it's the only control that can appear by itself in an MDI form.

As with image controls, you load pictures into a picture ~~box~~^{Picture} property, and you can do that at design time or runtime (at runtime you use ~~Load~~^{LoadPicture()} method). When you load an image into a picture box, the picture box does not resize itself by default to fit that image as the image control does but it will if you set its AutoSize property to True. The picture box has a 3D border by default, so it doesn't look like an image control unless you set ~~Border~~^{BorderStyle} property to 0 for no border (instead of 1, the default). In other words, you can make a picture box look and behave just like an image control if you wish, but keep in mind that picture boxes use a lot more memory and processor time, so if you just want to display an image, stick with image controls.

Like image controls, picture boxes are intrinsic controls in Visual Basic; the Picture Box tool is at right in the first row of tools in Figure 10.3.



Figure 10.3 The Picture Box tool.

That's all the overview we need for these two popular controls. It's time to start working with them directly in the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Picture Box To A Form

You've decided that you need a picture box in your program. How do you add one? Adding a picture box is simple; just follow these steps:

1. Select the Picture Box tool in the toolbox, and double-click it to add a picture box to your form, or click it once and draw the picture box where you want it on the form.
2. If you want the picture box to resize itself to fit the picture you'll load into it, set its AutoSize property to True. If you don't want a border on the control, set its BorderStyle property to None (0).
3. If you want the picture box's contents to be refreshed when needed (for example, in case another window obscuring the picture box is removed), set the Redraw property to True.
4. Load the image you want to display into the picture box using the Picture property. Click that property in the Properties window and click the button with an ellipsis (...) in it to open the Load Picture dialog box. At runtime, you can load a picture using LoadPicture() like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture _
        ("c:\vbbb\picturesandimages\image.bmp")
End Sub
```

We've loaded an image into the picture box in Figure 10.4 following the preceding steps. Now the picture box is ready to go. That's all there is to it.



Figure 10.4 A picture box in a form.

Setting Or Getting The Picture In A Picture Box

You've added a new picture box to your form, and it looks fine except for one thing: it's completely blank. How do you add images to a picture box again?

You use the Picture property. A picture box is very versatile and can display images from bitmap (.bmp), icon (.ico), metafile (.wmf), JPEG (.jpg), or GIF (.gif) files just load the file's name into the Picture property.

At design time, click that property in the Properties window and click the button with an ellipsis (...) to open the Load Picture dialog box. Specify the file you want to load into the picture box, and click on

At runtime, you can use `LoadPicture()` to load in a picture like this, where we load in an image when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\picturesandimages\image.bmp")
End Sub
```

TIP: Besides `LoadPicture()`, Visual Basic also supports `LoadResPicture()` which lets you load pictures from resource files. Using `LoadResPicture()` is useful for localizing a Visual Basic application the resources are isolated in one resource file, and there is no need to access the source code or recompile the application.

If you want to get the picture in a picture box, you also use the `Picture` property. For example, here we copy the picture from `Picture1` to `Picture2` when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture2.Picture = Picture1.Picture
End Sub
```

The `Picture` property is very useful in Visual Basic because it provides such an easy way of handling images, as you can see in the preceding two code snippets. With the `Picture` property, you can store images and transfer them between controls.

Besides the `Picture` property, picture boxes also have an `Image` property. The `Image` property is actually the handle to the image's bitmap in the picture box and as such is very useful when working with Windows directly. You can also assign images from the `Image` property to a `Picture` property like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture2.Picture = Picture1.Image
End Sub
```

Adjusting Picture Box Size To Contents

You've displayed the image of the company's illustrious founder in a picture box in your new program. The picture box was a little small, and you can only see most of the I.F.'s forehead. There's some important news waiting for you from the president's office, and you think you know what it says. How can you make picture boxes readjust themselves to fit the picture they're displaying?

When you load a picture into a picture control, it does not readjust itself to fit the picture (although other controls do) at least, not by default. Picture boxes will resize themselves to fit their contents if you set

AutoSize properties to True. If AutoSize is set to True, you don't have to worry about resizing the picture box, even if you load images into the picture box at runtime. This saves a lot of fiddling with the picture's Left, Top, Width, and Height properties.

Aligning A Picture Box In A Form

Picture boxes are special controls in that they can contain other controls (in Visual Basic terms, picture boxes are container controls). In fact, if you place option buttons inside a picture box (just draw them inside the picture box), those option buttons act together as a group.

Besides grouping option buttons together, the original idea here was to provide Visual Basic programmers (rather rudimentary) way of creating toolbars and status bars in their programs. That's been superseded by the toolbar and status bar controls, of course.

To let you create toolbars or status bars, picture boxes have an Align property. You use this property to place the picture box at top, bottom, or on a side of a form. Here are the possible values for Align:

- " 0 Align none
- " 2 Align bottom
- " 3 Align left
- " 4 Align right

For example, we've aligned the picture box in Figure 10.5 to the top of the form, giving it a few buttons and we've set its BackColor property to deep blue to make a rudimentary toolbar.



Figure 10.5 Creating a toolbar with an aligned picture box.

Handling Picture Box Events (And Creating Image Maps)

The New Products Department is on the phone; they want you to design a program to welcome new employees to the company. The program should display a picture of the main plant, and when the user employee clicks part of that image, it should sort of zoom in on it. Can you do something like that in Visual Basic?

Responding to targeted mouse clicks in an image means creating a map and you can create one with a picture box. Picture boxes have Click events (and even DblClick events), of course, but Click event handlers only tell you that the picture box was clicked, not where it was clicked:

```
Private Sub Picture1_Click()
```

```
End Sub
```

The Click event is useful if you want to use picture boxes as sort of image-bearing buttons (although you can also display images now). However, if you want to know where in a picture box the user clicked the mouse, use MouseDown (Besides the full range of mouse events, picture boxes also support key events).

KeyDown, KeyPress and so on.)

Creating An Image Map

Here's an example where we create an image map. We'll need to know the exact locations of the various hotspots in the image that do something when clicked, and it's easy to find their dimensions and locations using a simple graphics program like the Windows Paint program.

Note, however, that programs like Windows Paint will measure your image in pixels, and if you want pixel measurements, not twips, you must set the picture ~~SizeMode~~ property to vbPixels, like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
End Sub
```

We'll use the image you see in the picture box in Figure 10.6 as our image map and report to users which word they click either word, Picture or Box.



Figure 10.6 Creating an image map with a picture box.

In the MouseDown event handler, we're passed the location of the mouse click as (X, Y), and we can then see if the mouse went down on either word in the image:

```
Private Sub Picture1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    If X > 16 And X < 83 And Y > 11 And Y < 36 Then
        ...
        End If

        If X > 83 And X < 125 And Y > 11 And Y < 36 Then
        ...
        End If
End Sub
```

If the user did click one or the other word, we can report that to the user this way:

```
Private Sub Picture1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _  
X As Single, Y As Single)  
If X>16 And X<83 And Y>11 And Y<36 Then  
    MsgBox "You clicked the word ""Picture"""  
End If  
  
If X>83 And X<125 And Y>11 And Y<36 Then  
    MsgBox "You clicked the word ""Box"""  
End If  
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 10.6 now we're creating image maps in Visual Basic.

One more note here image controls also ~~Mouse~~Down events, so if you're just creating an image map, you should consider an image control because they use far fewer system resources.

TIP: Other picture box events that can be useful include ~~Res~~ize Change and Paint events.

Picture Box Animation

One easy way to support graphics animation in Visual Basic is to use a picture box. For example, you may have a control array of picture boxes, only one of which is visible at any one time. You can make the others appear (at the same location) by setting the first picture's ~~Visible~~Visible property to False, the next one's ~~Visible~~Visible property to True, and so on, cycling through the picture boxes.

That method is very wasteful of memory, however; if you're going to use picture boxes to support animation, a better idea is to use one picture box and keep changing its ~~Picture~~Picture property to display successive frames of an animation. You can store the images themselves in an image list control.

To add an image list control, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Select the Controls tab in the Components box.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item in the Components box and click on OK to close that box.
4. Add a new image list control to your program using the Image List tool in the toolbox.

5. Right-click the new image list control and select the Properties item in the menu that opens.
6. Click the Images tab in the Property Pages box that opens, and load the images you want to the image list using the Insert Picture button.
7. Close the Property Pages box by clicking on OK.

All that remains is to add the code you need. For example, here we've added a timer (Timer1), to the program, set its Enabled property to False, and its Interval property to 1000 (the interval property is measured in milliseconds, 1/1000s of a second), which means the Timer() event handler will be called once a second.

For the purposes of this example, we will just switch back and forth between two images in the PictureBox. These two images are the first two images in an image list (ImageList1). To switch back and forth, we use a static Boolean flag named blnImage1 like this (for more information on using image lists, see Chapter 16):

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean

    If blnImage1 Then
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
    Else
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(2).Picture
    End If
    ...

```

At the end of Timer1_Timer(), we toggle the blnImage1 flag this way:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean

    If blnImage1 Then
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
    Else
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(2).Picture
    End If

    blnImage1 = Not blnImage1
End Sub
```

And that's all we need now we're supporting a rudimentary animation using picture boxes.

Grouping Other Controls In A Picture Box

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone again. They like the new option buttons you've added to your program, but wouldn't it be nice if you could display pictures behind each group of option buttons?

You can do that with picture boxes. Picture boxes are container controls, which means they can hold other controls. You usually use this capability to group option buttons together, because those can work as a group (you can also group option buttons together by form or frame control).

The important thing here is to make sure that you paint the option buttons in the target picture box, not just double-click the Option Button tool. Only when an option button is drawn entirely inside a picture box from the start is it associated with that picture box.

For example, we've added nine option buttons to two picture boxes in the form in Figure 10.7. As you can see in that figure, we can click option buttons in the two groups independently; they function as separate groups.



Figure 10.7 Grouping option buttons with picture boxes.

Picture boxes can also contain other controls, of course, like command buttons (see Aligning A Picture Box In A Form earlier in this chapter to see how to create rudimentary toolbars and status bars this way) or checkboxes.

Using A Picture Box In An MDI Form

Another special use of picture boxes is to draw toolbars or status bars in an MDI form. This method has been superceded by the toolbar and status bar controls, but it used to be the way you could add those items to MDI forms.

For example, to add a Picture Box toolbar to an MDI form (only controls that support the Align property may be added to MDI forms), you just draw that control in the MDI form. Visual Basic will align the picture box with the top of the client area of the MDI form by default, but you can align it to the bottom or on either side as well. Here are the possible values for the picture box's Align property:

- " 0 Align none
- " 1 Align top
- " 2 Align bottom
- " 3 Align left
- " 4 Align right

As an example, we've added a picture box to the MDI form in Figure 10.8 and placed a few command buttons in that picture box to create a rudimentary toolbar. As you can see in that figure, the MDI form draws a border at the bottom of the new toolbar automatically.



Figure 10.8 Using a picture box to create a toolbar in an MDI form.

Although this used to be the way to create toolbars and status bars in MDI forms, it's now better the controls specifically designed for this purpose, the toolbar and status bar controls.

Drawing Lines And Circles In A Picture Box

The Testing Department is on the phone again. The new picture box-based image map you've created for your program is terrific, but can you draw a box around the hotspots in the map as the user click them? That would make things much clearer.

Visual Basic can help out here because picture boxes give you some rudimentary graphics-draw capabilities that you can make use of in code. In particular, you can draw lines and circles, and so on, to particular colors in picture boxes using the following methods (note, by the way, that you can use all the following methods with forms as well as picture boxes).

Some of the following methods make use of CurrentX and CurrentY ; these are properties that you can set in a picture box. For example, if you omit the first set of coordinates when using the Line() method, Visual Basic draws the line from the location CurrentX , CurrentY).

You may want to specify measurements to the graphics methods using pixels, not the default twips. You can change the measurements in a picture box to pixels by setting the ScaleMode property this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
End Sub
```

We'll start working with the drawing methods of picture boxes now, starting with the Circle() method.

Drawing Circles

You use the Circle() method to draw circles:

```
PictureBox.Circle [Step] ( x, y ), radius, [color, start, end, aspect]
```

Here are the arguments you pass to Circle():

- " Step Keyword specifying that the center of the circle, ellipse, or arc is relative to the current coordinates given by the CurrentX and CurrentY properties of the object
- " x, y Single values indicating the coordinates for the center point of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The ScaleMode property of the object determines the units of measure used.
- " radius Single value indicating the radius of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The ScaleMode property of the object determines the unit of measure used.
- " color Long integer value indicating the RGB color of the circle's outline. If omitted, the value of the ForeColor property is used. You can use the RGB function or QBColor function to specify the color.
- " start, end Single-precision values. When an arc or a partial circle or ellipse is drawn, you must specify (in radians) the beginning and end positions of the arc. The range for both is -2 pi radians to 2 pi radians. The default value for start is 0 radians; the default end is 2 * pi radians.
- " aspect Single-precision value indicating the aspect ratio of the circle. The default value is 1.0, which yields a perfect (nonelliptical) circle on any screen.

As an example, we draw a circle in a picture box with this code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Circle (80, 70), 50
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 10.9. If there were an image already in the picture box, circle would appear drawn on top of it.



Figure 10.9 Drawing a circle in a picture box.

Drawing Lines

You use the `Line()` method to draw lines:

```
PictureBox.Line [Step] ( x1, y1 ) [Step] ( x2, y2 ), [ color ], [B][F]
```

Here are the arguments you pass `Line()`:

" Step Keyword specifying that the starting point coordinates are relative to the current graphics position given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties.

" `x1, y1` Single values indicating the coordinates of the starting point for the line or rectangle. The `ScaleMode` property determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the line begins at the position indicated by `CurrentX` and `CurrentY`.

" Step Keyword specifying that the end-point coordinates are relative to the line starting point.

" `x2, y2` Single values indicating the coordinates of the end point for the line being drawn.

" `color` Long integer value indicating the RGB color used to draw the line. If omitted, the `ForeColor` property setting is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.

" `B` If included, causes a box to be drawn using the coordinates to specify opposite corners of the box.

" `F` If the `B` option is used, the `F` option specifies that the box is filled with the same color used to draw the box. You cannot use `F` without `B`. If `B` is used without `F`, the box is filled with the current `FillColor` and `FillStyle`. The default value for `FillStyle` is transparent.

Setting Points

You use `PSet()` to set points in a picture box:

```
PictureBox.PSet [Step] ( x, y ), [ color ]
```

Here are the arguments you pass `PSet()`:

" Step Keyword specifying that the coordinates are relative to the current graphics position given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties.

" x, y Single values indicating the horizontal (x-axis) and vertical (y-axis) coordinates of the point set.

" color Long integer value indicating the RGB color specified for point. If omitted, the current ForeColor property setting is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.

TIP: In a picture box, you set the color of figures with the `ForeColor` property and the fill color with the `FillColor` property.

TIP: If you want your images to persist (in other words, be redrawn automatically when needed) set the picture box `AutoRedraw` property to True.

Using Image Lists With Picture Boxes

When handling images, it's often useful to use image lists. An image list is an invisible control whose only purpose is to hold images. A common thing to do is to load images into an image list and then when they're all loaded (and stored in memory, not on the disk), place them rapidly into picture boxes as needed.

We'll see how to use an image list with picture boxes here. To add an image list control to a program, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Select the Controls tab in the Components box.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item in the Components box and click on OK to close the box.
4. Add a new image list control to your program using the Image List tool in the toolbox.
5. Right-click the new image list control, and select the Properties item in the menu that opens.
6. Click the Images tab in the Property Pages box that opens, and load the images you want to use in the list using the Insert Picture button.
7. Close the Property Pages box by clicking on OK.

Now you're free to load images from the image list into a picture box. To reach the actual images, you use the image list's `ListImages` array of `ImageList` objects; there's one such object for each image in the image list and you can reach it with the `Picture` property.

For example, here's how we load Image 1 (image lists are 1-based, not 0-based) when the user clicks Command1, Image 2 when the user clicks Command2 and Image 3 when the user clicks Command3:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
End Sub
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(2).Picture
End Sub
Private Sub Command3_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(3).Picture
End Sub
```

Loading all your images into memory and storing them with an image list can be a valuable asset when working with multiple images and picture boxes this way.

Adding Text To A Picture Box

Besides drawing figures, picture boxes support drawing text as well. This can come in very handy to label parts of a figure in a picture box.

You draw text in a picture box with its `Print` method, passing that method the text you want to print. Where does that text appear? It appears at the location set by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties that is, at `(CurrentX, CurrentY)` in the picture box (with respect to the upper left corner of the picture box).

Keep in mind that picture boxes use twips (1/1440s of an inch) as their default measurement unit. You can change that to, say, pixels by setting the picture box's ~~ScaleMode~~ property to vbPixels.

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
    ...

```

Then we can specify an absolute location at which to display text:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = 20
    ...

```

Finally, we print the text in the picture box with Print method; here, we just print the text Text in a picture box! :

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = 20
    Picture1.Print ("Text in a picture box!")
End Sub
```

Make sure the picture box's AutoRedraw property is set to True, which it needs to be for the picture box to display text. The results of the preceding code appear in Figure 10.10. Now we're displaying text in picture boxes.



Figure 10.10 Printing text in a picture box.

Formatting Text In A Picture Box

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling. The text your program uses to label images in picture boxes but how about making it, say, bold and italic to emphasize what's going on? You think you do that?

Yes, you can. You can format text in a picture box using ~~Font~~Bold, FontItalic, FontStrikethru, and FontUnderline properties. Each of those properties does just what it says: when you set a property to ~~True~~, the property applies the next time you use Print method in the picture box.

You can also format the placement of text using CurrentX and CurrentY properties; setting these properties sets the location where text will next appear when you use Print method. In addition, you can determine the height and width of a string of text with TextHeight and TextWidth methods.

Here's an example. First, set the picture box's AutoRedraw property to True, which you need to display text

Next, we set the measurement units in a picture box to pixels, ~~SetCurrentX~~ and ~~CurrentY~~ properties, and print a plain string of text:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = 20
    Picture1.Print ("Text in a picture box!")
    ...

```

Next, we skip to the next line using ~~TextHeight()~~, ~~setFontUnderline~~ to True, and print some underlined text:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = 20
    Picture1.Print ("Text in a picture box!")
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = Picture1.CurrentY + Picture1.TextHeight("ABCDEFG")
    Picture1.FontUnderline = True
    Picture1.Print ("Underlined text.")
    ...

```

Finally, we set ~~FontBold~~ to True as well, skip to the next line, and print bold underlined text:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = 20
    Picture1.Print ("Text in a picture box!")
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = Picture1.CurrentY + Picture1.TextHeight("ABCDEFG")
    Picture1.FontUnderline = True
    Picture1.Print ("Underlined text.")
    Picture1.CurrentX = 25
    Picture1.CurrentY = Picture1.CurrentY + Picture1.TextHeight("ABCDEFG")
    Picture1.FontBold = True
    Picture1.Print ("Bold underlined text.")
End Sub
```

Running this code yields the result shown in Figure 10.11, where the picture box displays formatted text.

rich text box, but you can use the text capabilities of a picture box to display labels and call-outs for gr:



Figure 10.11 Formatting text in a picture box.

Clearing A Picture Box

How can you clear the current image in a picture box and start over? You ~~Clear~~ the method. Here s an example that clears a picture box when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Cls
End Sub
```

TIP: The name `Cls` comes from the original DOS days, when it stood for `clear screen`. That command was adopted in Microsoft Basic, and from there became a part of Visual Basic, even though it s no longer used to clear the screen.

Accessing Individual Pixels In A Picture Box

The Testing Department is calling. Wouldn't it be better to let users select new colors in your SuperDuperTextPrprogram by just clicking the new color they want in a picture box instead of asking them to type in new color values? Hmm, you think, how do you do that?

You can use the Point method to determine the color of a pixel in a picture box. This method returns red, green, and blue colors in a long integer.

Let's see an example to make this clear. Here, we'll let the user click one picture box, Picture1, to set the color in another Picture2, using the MouseDown event:

```
Private Sub Picture1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _  
    X As Single, Y As Single)  
  
End Sub
```

When the user clicks a pixel Picture1, we'll set the background color Picture2 to the same color, and we get that color using the Point method:

```
Private Sub Picture1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _  
    X As Single, Y As Single)  
    Picture2.BackColor = Picture1.Point(X, Y)  
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 10.12. When the user clicks a point in the top picture box, the program sets the background color of the bottom picture box to the same color.



Figure 10.12 Using the Point method to get a point's color.

TIP: Besides getting a pixel with the Point method, you can also set individual pixels with the Set method. See Drawing Lines And Circles In A Picture Box earlier in this chapter.

Copying Pictures To And Pasting Pictures From The Clipboard

The users love your new graphics program, SuperDuperGraphics4, but would like to export the images they create to other programs. How can you do that?

You can copy the images to the Clipboard, letting the user paste them into other programs. To pl

in the Clipboard, you use `SetData()` and to retrieve data from the Clipboard, you use `GetData()`.

An example will make this clearer. Here, we'll paste a picture `Picture1` to `Picture2` using two buttons: `Command1` and `Command2`. When users click `Command1`, we'll copy the picture from `Picture1` to the Clipboard; when they click `Command2`, we'll paste the picture `Picture2`.

To place the image `Picture1` into the Clipboard, we use `SetData()`

```
Clipboard.SetData data, [format]
```

Here are the possible values for the `format` parameter for images:

- " vbCFBitmap 2; bitmap (.bmp) file
- " vbCFMetafile 3; metafile (.wmf) file
- " vbCFDIB 8; device-independent bitmap (.dib) file
- " vbCFPalette 9; color palette

If you omit the `format` parameter, Visual Basic will determine the correct format, so we'll just copy the picture from `Picture1.Picture` to the Clipboard this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Clipboard.SetData Picture1.Picture
End Sub
```

To paste the picture, use `GetData()`:

```
Clipboard.GetData ([format])
```

The `format` parameter here is the same as `SetData()`, and as before, if you don't specify the `format`, Visual Basic will determine it. So when the user clicks the second button, we paste the image into `Picture2` this way:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Picture2.Picture = Clipboard.GetData()
End Sub
```

That's all it takes. When you run the program and click the Copy and then the Paste button, the image is copied to the Clipboard and then pasted into the second picture box, as shown in Figure 10.13. The program is a success. Now we're using the Clipboard with picture boxes.



Figure 10.13 Copying a picture to and pasting it from the Clipboard.

Stretching And Flipping Images In A Picture Box

You can gain a lot more control over how images are displayed in picture boxes using the `PaintPicture` method:

```
PictureBox.PaintPicture    picture, x1, y1, [width1, height1, [x2, y2, _  
[width2, height2, [opcode]]]]
```

Using this method, you can stretch or flip images in a picture box. Here's what the arguments pass to `PaintPicture` mean:

- " picture The source of the graphic to be drawn onto the object; should be a `Picture` property.
- " x1, y1 Single-precision values indicating the destination coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) on the picture for the picture to be drawn. The `SizeMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used.
- " width1 Single-precision value indicating the destination width of the picture. The `SizeMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination width is larger or smaller than the source width (`width2`), the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source width is assumed.
- " height1 Single-precision value indicating the destination height of the picture. The `SizeMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination height is larger or smaller than the source height (`height2`), the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source height is assumed.
- " x2, y2 Single-precision values indicating the coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) of a clipping region within the picture. The `SizeMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire source is used.
- " width2 Single-precision value indicating the source width of a clipping region within the picture. The `SizeMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire source is used.
- " height2 Single-precision value indicating the source height of a clipping region within the picture. The `SizeMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire source is used.
- " opcode Long value or code that is used only with bitmaps. It defines a bit-wise operation (such as `vbMergeCopy`) that is performed on the picture as it is drawn on the object.

You can flip a bitmap horizontally or vertically by using negative values for the destination height (height1) and/or the destination width (width1). For example, here's how we flip the image `Picture1` horizontally and display it in `Picture2` (keep in mind that to draw from the `Form_Load` event, you have to set the form's `AutoRedraw` property to True):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture2.PaintPicture Picture1.Picture, Picture1.ScaleWidth, 0, _
        -1 * Picture1.ScaleWidth, Picture1.ScaleHeight
    Picture2.Height = Picture1.Height
End Sub
```

The results of the preceding code appear in Figure 10.14. Now we're flipping images in picture boxes.



Figure 10.14 Flipping an image in a picture box.

Printing A Picture

Can you print the image in a picture box out on the printer? You sure can, using the `PrintPicture` method. To print on the printer, you just use the Visual Basic Printer object this way with `PaintPicture`:

```
Printer.PaintPicture picture, x1, y1, [width1, height1, [x2, y2, _  
[width2, height2, [opcode]]]]
```

Here's what the arguments passed to `PaintPicture` mean:

" picture The source of the graphic to be drawn onto the object (for example `Picture1.Picture`).

" x1, y1 Single-precision values indicating the destination coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) on the object for the picture to be drawn. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used.

" width1 Single-precision value indicating the destination width of the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination width is larger or smaller than the source width (width2), the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source width is used.

" height1 Single-precision value indicating the destination height of the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination height is larger or smaller than the source height (height2), the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source height is used.

" x2, y2Single-precision values indicating the coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) of a clipping region within the picture (drawing operations outside the clipping region are ignored). The ScaleMode property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, 0 is assumed.

" width2Single-precision value indicating the source width of a clipping region within the picture. The ScaleMode property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire source width is used.

" height2Single-precision value indicating the source height of a clipping region within the picture. The ScaleMode property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire source height is used.

" opcodeLong value or code that is used only with bitmaps. It defines a bit-wise operation (such as vbMergeCopy) that is performed on the picture as it is drawn on the object.

For example, here's how to print the picture Picture1 on the printer:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Printer.PaintPicture Picture1.Picture, 0, 0
End Sub
```

That's all there is to it! The PaintPicture method is extraordinarily powerful. Note that before printing a picture, you may want to display a Print dialog box (see the next chapter).

Using Picture Box Handles

You can gain even more control over what's going on in a picture box by using the various Windows handles available for that control together with direct Windows API calls. Here are the picture box handle properties:

- " hDC Handle to the picture box's device context
- " hWnd Handle to the picture box's window
- " Image Handle to the picture box's bitmap
- " Handle Different handle types depending on the picture Type property (for example, Picture1.Picture.Type) as follows:
 - " Type = 1 An HBITMAP handle
 - " Type = 2 An HMETAFILE handle
 - " Type = 3 An HICON or anHCURSOR handle
 - " Type = 4 An HENHMETAFILE handle

For example, here we use the hDC property of a picture box to create a compatible bitmap and device context matching the picture box, using the Windows API function CreateCompatibleDC() and

CreateCompatibleBitmap() (these and all Windows API functions must also be declared in the program, as we'll see in Chapter 23):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture("image.bmp")

    Dim dcMemory As Long
    Dim hMemoryBitmap As Long
    dcMemory = CreateCompatibleDC(Picture1.hdc)
    hMemoryBitmap = CreateCompatibleBitmap(Picture1.hdc, 60, 30)
End Sub
```

Setting Measurement Scales In A Picture Box

Picture boxes have a number of scale properties, and perhaps the most popular is ScaleMode which sets the units of measurement in a picture box. Here are the possible values for ScaleMode (note that when you set the scale mode of a picture box, all measurements are in those new units, including coordinates passed to your program, like mouse-down locations):

- " vbUser0; indicates that one or more of ScaleHeight, ScaleWidth, ScaleLeft, and ScaleTop properties are set to custom values
- " vbTwips 1 (the default); Twip (1440 twips per logical inch; 567 twips per logical centimeter)
- " vbPoints 2; point (72 points per logical inch)
- " vbPixels 3; pixel (smallest unit of monitor or printer resolution)
- " vbCharacters 4; character (horizontal equals 120 twips per unit; vertical equals 240 twips per unit)
- " vbInches5; inch
- " vbMillimeters 6; millimeter
- " vbCentimeters 7; centimeter
- " vbHimetric 8; hiMetric
- " vbContainerPosition 9; units used by the control's container to determine the control's position
- " vbContainerSize 10; units used by the control's container to determine the control's size

For example, in our image map example, we set the scale mode to pixels:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.ScaleMode = vbPixels
End Sub
```


Then we could use pixel dimensions in **MouseDown** event:

```
Private Sub Picture1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    If X > 16 And X < 83 And Y > 11 And Y < 36 Then
        MsgBox "You clicked the word ""Picture"""
    End If

    If X > 83 And X < 125 And Y > 11 And Y < 36 Then
        MsgBox "You clicked the word ""Box"""
    End If
End Sub
```

If you set the scale mode to **User**, you can define your own units by setting the dimensions of the picture box using the **ScaleLeft**, **ScaleTop**, **ScaleWidth**, and **ScaleHeight** properties. This can be very useful if you're plotting points and want to use a picture box as a graph.

TIP: The **ScaleWidth** and **ScaleHeight** properties of a picture box hold the image's actual dimensions (units determined by the **SizeMode** property), not the **Width** and **Height** properties, which hold the control width and height (including the border).

Saving Pictures To Disk

We already know you can load pictures into a picture box with the **LoadPicture** function. Can you save them to disk?

Yes, you can, using **SavePicture**. Here's how that statement works:

```
SavePicture   picture, stringexpression
```

Here's what the parameters mean:

" picture Picture or image control from which the graphics file is to be created

" stringexpression File name of the graphics file to save

SavePicture only saves images in BMP, WMF, and ICO formats (depending on the file type the image came from originally); if the image came from a GIF or JPEG file, it's saved in BMP format. Graphics **Image** property are always saved as bitmap (.bmp) files no matter what their original format.

Here's an example where we save the image **Picture1** to a file, C:\image.bmp, when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    SavePicture Picture1.Picture, "c:\image.bmp"
End Sub
```

Adding An Image Control To A Form

You've got 200 picture boxes in your program, and suddenly the Testing Department is on the line: your program is causing users' computers to run out of memory. No problem here, you say. They say, though, because not everyone has 128MB of RAM like you do it's time to decrease your program's memory consumption.

One way of using fewer system resources is to use fewer picture boxes. As we've seen in this chapter, picture boxes are powerful controls and with that power comes lots of overhead. If you're just going to be displaying images, use image controls instead. The image control uses fewer system resources and repaints faster than a picture box (however, it supports only a subset of the picture box properties, events, and methods).

To install an image control, just use the Image Control tool in the toolbox. After adding the image control to your form, just set its Picture property to the image file you want to display. By default, image controls shape themselves to the image you display; if you want to stretch the image to fit the image control and not the other way around, set the image control's Stretch property to True (the default is False).

As an example, we've placed an (unstretched) image in the image control in Figure 10.15.



Figure 10.15 Using an image control.

Stretching An Image In An Image Control

You can stretch (or flip) an image in a picture box using the PaintPicture method, but you can't use PaintPicture with image controls. Is there still some way of producing interesting graphics effects in a picture control?

You can use the image control's Stretch property. By default, image controls shape themselves to fit the images inside them (after all, their primary purpose is to display images), but if you set the Stretch property to True (the default is False), the image control will stretch the image to fit the control.

As an example, we're stretching an image in the image control in Figure 10.16.



Figure 10.16 Stretching an image in an image control.

You can also stretch an image in an image control by resizing the control (using the Width and Height properties) at runtime as long as the control's Stretch property is True.

Chapter 11

Windows Common Dialogs

If you need an immediate solution to:

Creating And Displaying A Windows Common Dialog

Setting A Common Dialog's Title

Did The User Click OK Or Cancel?

Using A Color Dialog Box

Setting Color Dialog Flags

Using The Open And Save As Dialogs

Setting Open And Save As Flags

Getting The File Name In Open, Save As Dialogs

Setting Maximum File Name Size In Open And Save As Dialog Boxes

Setting Default File Extensions

Set Or Get The Initial Directory

Setting File Types (Filters) In Open, Save As Dialogs

Using A Font Dialog Box

Setting Font Dialog Flags

Setting Max And Min Font Sizes

Using The Print Dialog Box

Setting Print Dialog Flags

Setting The Minimum And Maximum Pages To Print

Setting Page Orientation

Showing Windows Help From A Visual Basic Program

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to examine the Windows Common Dialogs, which provide a powerful and professional set of dialog boxes for interacting with the user.

Microsoft created the Common Dialogs to promote a common user interface across all Windows programs, and in fact the Common Dialogs do work well and they make programming easier for the programmer. Having a common user interface across all Windows programs is valuable for the user, because it simplifies tasks. For the programmer, the Common Dialogs means that we have a powerful set of dialog boxes ready for us to use, without having to create them ourselves. From both ends of the spectrum, then, the Windows Common Dialogs may be considered a success.

The Common Dialog control can display five different dialog boxes Open A File, Save A File, Set A Color, Set A Font, and Print A Document.

The Common Dialog Control

The Common Dialogs are all part of one control: the Common Dialog control. You add that control to a program with the Visual Basic Project|Components menu item. Click the Controls tab in the Components box that opens, and select the entry labeled Microsoft Common Dialog Control, then click on OK to close the Components box. You add a Common Dialog control to a form in the usual way just double-click the Common Dialog tool in the toolbox, or select it and paint the control on the form. The Common Dialog tool appears as the eleventh tool down on the right in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 11.1. The Common Dialog control will appear as a nonresizable icon on your form and is not visible at runtime.



Figure 11.1 The Common Dialog tool.

You use the control Action property to display a dialog box or, equivalently, these methods:

- " ShowOpen Show Open dialog box
- " ShowSave Show Save As dialog box
- " ShowColor Show Color dialog box
- " ShowFont Show Font dialog box
- " ShowPrinter Show Print or Print Options dialog box

Besides these dialog boxes, you can also display Windows Help:

- " ShowHelp Invokes the Windows Help engine

The Common Dialog control automatically provides context-sensitive Help on the interface of the dialog boxes. You invoke context-sensitive Help by clicking the Help button labeled What's This in the title bar, then clicking the item for which you want more information. In addition, you can right-click the item for which you want more information, then select the What's This command in the displayed context menu.

TIP: We might also note, by the way, that there is no way currently to specify where a dialog box is displayed; that might change in some future release.

As an example, the Font dialog box appears in Figure 11.2.



Figure 11.2 The Font dialog box.

That's really all the overview we need. We're ready to start the Immediate Solutions now.

Immediate Solutions

Creating And Displaying A Windows Common Dialog

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program ~~SuperDuperText~~ is great, but why is the File Save As dialog box the size of a postage stamp? And why is it colored purple? Shouldn't it match the uniform kind of dialog box that other Windows programs use?

To make your dialog boxes look just like the dialog boxes other programs use (and add professionalism to your program), you can use the Windows Common Dialogs, which are wrapped up in the Windows Common Dialog control. The Common Dialog control can display five different dialog boxes Open A File, Save A File, Set A Color, Set A Font, and Print A Document, and you can also display Windows Help.

Adding a Windows Common Dialog control to your program is easy: just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Select the Controls tab in the Components box that opens.
3. Select the entry labeled Microsoft Common Dialog Control, then click on OK to close the Components box.
4. Add a Common Dialog control to a form in the usual way just double-click the Common Dialog tool in the toolbox, or select it and paint the control on the form. (The Common Dialog tool appears as the eleventh tool down on the right in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 11.1.)
5. Add the code you want to open the dialog box and make use of values the user sets.

To display various dialog boxes, you use these Common Dialog methods (for example, `CommonDialog1.ShowColor`):

" ShowOpenShow Open dialog box

- " ShowSaveShow Save As dialog box
- " ShowColor Show Color dialog box
- " ShowFont Show Font dialog box
- " ShowPrinter Show Print or Print Options dialog box
- " ShowHelp Invokes the Windows Help engine

You can also set the Common Dialog `Action` property to do the same thing (and in fact, that's the way you used to display Common Dialogs until recent Visual Basic releases). Microsoft says that using the preceding methods adds functionality, but in fact, the two ways of displaying dialog boxes are equivalent at this writing (although using methods like `ShowHelp` instead of `Action = 6` makes code a little clearer). Here are the values you can place in `Action` property:

- " 0 No action
- " 1 Displays the Open dialog box
- " 2 Displays the Save As dialog box
- " 3 Displays the Color dialog box
- " 4 Displays the Font dialog box
- " 5 Displays the Print dialog box
- " 6 Runs winhelp32.exe

Now that you've added a Common Dialog control to your program, refer to the individual topics in this chapter for the dialog box you want to work with to see how to retrieve values from the user.

TIP: Before displaying the Font and Help dialog boxes, you need to set the Common Dialogs control \$Flags property or nothing will appear. See Setting Color Dialog Flags, Setting Open and Save As Flags, Setting Font Dialog Flags, and Setting Print Dialog Flags later in this chapter.

Setting A Common Dialog's Title

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again: can't you change the text in the title bar of those dialog boxes? How about changing the title of the Open dialog box from Open to Select A File To Open?

Although some programmers may question the wisdom of changing a Common Dialog's title, you can do it using the ~~DialogTitle~~ property. As an example, here we're changing the title of an Open dialog box to Select a file to open (see Figure 11.3):



Figure 11.3 Our dialog box with revised title.

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    CommonDialog1.DialogTitle = "Select a file to open"
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
End Sub
```

WARNING! Note that this property ~~DialogTitle~~, does not work for the Color, Font, and Print dialog boxes.

Did The User Click OK Or Cancel?

You've displayed your dialog box, and the user has dismissed it. But did the user click the OK or the Cancel button? Should you take action or not?

You can check which button the user has selected by examining the various properties of the dialog box control for example, when the user clicks Cancel in a File Open dialog box, the ~~FileName~~ property returns an empty string, .

However, Visual Basic provides a more systematic way of checking which button was

clicked. You can set the Common Dialog's `CancelError` property to True to create a special, nonharmful, and trappable error, error number 32755 (Visual Basic constant `cdlCancel`), when the user clicks the Cancel button.

To trap this error if you've set the `CancelError` property to True, use `On Error GoTo`, and place the label control at the end of the procedure:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Then you can show the dialog box and take action, assuming the user clicked on OK. If, on the other hand, the user clicked Cancel, control will go to the end of the procedure and exit harmlessly:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowColor
    Text1.BackColor = CommonDialog1.Color
Cancel:
End Sub
```

TIP: If you have enabled other trappable errors in your procedure (`On Error GoTo` statement in the preceding code does not affect code outside the procedure it's defined in), check to make sure that the error you're expecting when the user clicks Cancel does in fact have the number `cdlCancel`. You can do this by checking the `Error` object's `sNumber` property. Note also that Common Dialog controls can return errors besides `cdlCancel` such as `cdlHelp` when the Help system failed to work properly, or `cdlFonts` if no fonts exist and you might check for those separately.

Using A Color Dialog Box

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Wouldn't it be nice if you let the user select the color of the controls in your program? Yes, you say, but... Great, they say, and hang up.

To let the user select colors, you use the Color dialog box, and you display that dialog box with the Common Dialog method `ShowColor`. To retrieve the color the user selected, you use the dialog box's `Color` property. There are special flags you can set for the Color dialog box see the next topic for more information.

Let's see an example. When the user clicks a button, we'll display a Color dialog box and let the user select the background color of a text box. Add a Common Dialog control to a form and set its CancelError property to True so that clicking Cancel will cause `acdlCancelerror`. Next, we trap that error this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Now we use the Common Dialog control's `ShowColor` method to show the color dialog:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowColor
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

When control returns from the dialog box, we use the `Color` property to set the text box's background color to the color the user has selected:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowColor
    Text1.BackColor = CommonDialog1.Color
Cancel:
End Sub
```

That's it when you run the program and click the button, the Color dialog box appears, as in Figure 11.4.



Figure 11.4 The Color dialog box.

When the user selects a color and clicks on OK, the program sets the text box's background color to the newly selected color, as shown in Figure 11.5.



Figure 11.5 Setting a control's color with the Color dialog box.

Now we're using the Color dialog box. The listing for the preceding program is located in the colordialog folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Setting Color Dialog Flags

There are a number of options you can set before displaying a Color dialog box, and you set them in the `Flags` property of the Common Dialog control. Here are the possible values:

- " `cdICCRGBInit` 1; sets the initial color value for the dialog box
- " `cdCCIFullOpen` 2; entire dialog box is displayed, including the Define Custom Colors section
- " `cdICCPreventFullOpen` 4; disables the Define Custom Colors command button and prevents the user from defining custom colors
- " `cdICCHelpButton` 8; causes the dialog box to display a Help button

You can set more than one flag for a dialog box using the `Or` operator. For example:

```
CommonDialog1.Flags = &H10& Or &H200&
```

(Note that although this shows what we're doing numerically, it's usually better to use constants to make the code more readable.) Adding the desired constant values produces the same result.

Using The Open And Save As Dialogs

Probably the most common use of the Common Dialog control is to display File Open and File Save As dialog boxes, and you display those dialog boxes with the Common Dialog control's `ShowOpen` and `ShowSave` methods. These methods need no arguments passed to them to set various options, you set the Common Dialog control's `Flags` property (see the next topic), such as overwriting existing files and so on.

You can also set the `Filter` property so the dialog box displays only certain types of files, such as text files. See "Setting File Types (Filters) In Open, Save As Dialogs" a little later in this chapter.

To find out what file the user wants to work with, you check the Common Dialog's `FileName` property after the user clicks on OK in the dialog box. That property holds the fully qualified (that is, with path) name of the file to open. If you just want the file's name, use the `FileName` property.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll let the user select a file to open, and then display the file's name and path in a message box.

Start by adding a Common Dialog control to a form, then set the control's `CancelError` property to True so we can check if the user clicked Cancel. To check that, we use `On Error GoTo`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Then we display the Open dialog box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Finally, assuming the user clicked on OK, we can display the name of the file they selected in a message box using the `FileName` property:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    MsgBox "File to open: " & CommonDialog1.FileName
Cancel:
End Sub

```

When you run this code and click the button, the Open dialog box appears, as in Figure 11.6.



Figure 11.6 The Open dialog box.

If you make a file selection and click on OK, the Open dialog box closes and the program displays the name of the file you selected, along with its path, in a message box. Our program is a success; the code for this program is located in the opendialog folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Setting Open And Save As Flags

You can set a wide variety of options when you display File Open and File Save As dialog boxes by setting the Common Dialog control's **Flags** property. Here are the possible settings:

- " cdIOFNAllowMultiSelect &H200; specifies that the File Name list box allows multiple selections.
- " cdIOFNCreatPrompt &H2000; the user can select more than one file at runtime by pressing the Shift key and using the up arrow and down arrow keys to select the desired files. When this is done, the **FileName** property returns a string containing the names of all selected files. The names in the string are delimited by spaces.
- " cdIOFNCreatPrompt &H2000; specifies that the dialog box prompts the user to create a file that doesn't currently exist. This flag automatically sets the **cdIOFNPPathMustExist** and **cdIOFNFileMustExist** flags.
- " cdIOFNEExplorer &H80000; displays the Explorer-like Open A File dialog box template. Works with Windows 95 and Windows NT 4.
- " cdIOFNEExtensionDifferent &H400; indicates that the extension of the returned file name is different from the extension specified by the **DefaultExt** property. This flag isn't set if the **DefaultExt** property is Null, if the extensions match, or if the file has no extension. This flag value can be checked upon closing the dialog box. This can be useful if you want to track the kind of file the user wants to open.
- " cdIOFNFileMustExist &H1000; specifies that the user can enter only names of existing files in the File Name text box. If this flag is set and the user enters an invalid

file name, a warning is displayed. This flag automatically sets the cdIOFNPathMustExist flag.

- " cdIOFNHelpButton &H10; causes the dialog box to display the Help button.
- " cdIOFNHideReadOnly &H4; hides the Read Only checkbox.
- " cdIOFNLONGNAMES&H200000; enables the use of long file names.
- " cdIOFNNOCHANGEDIR &H8; forces the dialog box to set the current directory to what it was when the dialog box was opened.
- " cdIOFNNOdereferenceLinks&H100000; disables the use of shell links (also known as shortcuts). By default, choosing a shell link causes it to be interpreted by the shell.
- " cdIOFNNOlongNames&H40000; disables long file names.
- " cdIOFNNOReadOnlyReturn &H8000; specifies that the returned file won't have the Read Only attribute set and won't be in a write-protected directory.
- " cdIOFNNOVALIDATE &H100; specifies that the Common Dialog allows invalid characters in the returned file name.
- " cdIOFNOverwritePrompt &H2; causes the Save As dialog box to generate a message box if the selected file already exists. The user must confirm whether to overwrite the file.
- " cdIOFNPathMustExist &H800; specifies that the user can enter only valid paths. If this flag is set and the user enters an invalid path, a warning message is displayed.
- " cdIOFNReadOnly &H1; causes the Read Only checkbox to be initially checked when the dialog box is created. This flag also indicates the state of the Read Only checkbox when the dialog box is closed.
- " cdIOFNShareAware&H4000; specifies that sharing violation errors will be ignored.

You can set more than one flag for a dialog box using the `Or` operator. For example:

```
CommonDialog1.Flags = &H10& Or &H200&
```

(Although this shows what we're doing numerically, it's usually better to use constants to make your code more readable.) Adding the desired constant values produces the same result.

Getting The File Name In Open, Save As Dialogs

Now that you've used the Common Dialog controls ShowOpen or ShowSave to display an Open or Save As dialog box, how do you get the file name the user has specified? You do that using one of two properties after the user clicks on the OK button:

- " FileName Holds the file name the user selected, with the file's full path.
- " FileTitle Holds just the file's name, without the path.

Here's an example where we've set a Common Dialog control's CancelError property to True so Visual Basic will create a trappable `CancelError` if the user clicks the Cancel button, show a File Open dialog box, and display the name and path of the file the user selected in a message box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    MsgBox "File to open: " & CommonDialog1.FileName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

You can set the Filter property so the dialog box displays only certain types of files, such as text files. The Flags property can be used to change various elements on the dialog box, as well as to prompt the user when certain actions may occur, such as overwriting a file. See Setting File Type (Filters) In Open, Save As Dialogs for more on filters. For more on flags, see Setting Color Dialog Flags, Setting Open and Save As Flags, Setting Font Dialog Flags, and Setting Print Dialog Flags later in this chapter.

Setting Maximum File Name Size In Open And Save As Dialog Boxes

You can use the Common Dialog control's MaxFileSize property to set not the maximum file size you can open, but the maximum file namesize. You set this property to a number of bytes as follows, where we're restricting the file name and path to fit into 100 bytes:

```
CommonDialog1.MaxFileSize = 100
```

This is useful if you're passing file names to other programs that can't use names longer than a certain length.

TIP: When using the `OFNAllowMultiSelect` flag, you may want to increase the value in the MaxFileSize property to allow enough memory for the selected file names.

Setting Default File Extensions

Like many Windows programs, you can make your programs set the default extension for the types of files you want to save (for example, .txt) if the user doesn't specify one. You specify a default extension with the Common Dialog control's `DefaultExt` property.

An example will make this clearer. Here, we set the default extension of our files to save to `.txt` by setting the `DefaultExt` property:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.DefaultExt = "txt"
    CommonDialog1.ShowSave
    MsgBox "File to save: " & CommonDialog1.FileName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Let's say the user just types a file name without an extension, such as `phonebook`, in the Save dialog box; the dialog box will then report the actual name of the file to save as `phonebook.txt`. If on the other hand, the user specifies a file extension, that extension is preserved.

Set Or Get The Initial Directory

The Testing Department is calling again: users of your program `SuperDuperTextProcessor` are complaining. When they want to save many files to their favorite directory, `C:\poetry\roses\are\red\violets\are\blue`, they have to open folder after folder each time to get back to that directory. Can't you let them set a default directory to save files to?

You can, using the Common Dialog control's `InitDir` property. For example, here's how we set the initial directory to `C:\windows` when we open files using the Open dialog box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.InitDir = "c:\windows"
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    MsgBox "File to open: " & CommonDialog1.FileName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Running this code results in the Open dialog box you see in Figure 11.7.



Figure 11.7 Setting an initial directory.

Setting the initial directory like this can make multiple opens or saves much easier, which is very considerate to the user (and I know of some Microsoft software that could benefit by doing this).

Setting File Types (Filters) In Open, Save As Dialogs

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program DuperGraphics4, which only works with graphics files, but somehow users are trying to open text (.txt) files and crashing the program. Is there some way you can clue them in as to allowed file types when they open files?

Yes you can set the Common Dialog control's `Filter` property to indicate the allowed file types and extensions in a drop-down list box in the Open and Save As dialog boxes. (To see an example of such a drop-down list box, use Visual Basic's Save Project As menu item in the File menu; this list box gives two file extension types: *.vbp and all files, *.*.)

To set up the `Filter` string, you separate prompts to the user for example, Text files (*.txt) with upright characters (| , also called pipe symbol) from the file specifications to Visual Basic (*.txt). (Don't add extra spaces around the uprights, because if you do, they'll be displayed along with the rest of the file extension information.)

This is obviously one of those things made easier with an example (in fact, I always forget how to set up file filter strings unless I can work from an example), so let's see one now. Here, we'll let the user select from three options: text files (*.txt), image files (*.jpg, *.gif), and all files (*.*). We set the `Filter` string this way in that case; look closely at the following string and you'll be able to see how to set up this string for yourself. (Here we've also set the Common Dialog control's `CancelError` property to True to create a trappable error if the user clicks the Cancel button):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Filter = "Text files (*.txt)|*.txt|Image files _ 
        (*.jpg, *.gif)|*.jpg;*.gif|All files (*.*)|*.*"
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    MsgBox "File to open: " & CommonDialog1.FileName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Note in particular that when you have two file extensions for one file type as we do for image file (*.jpg, *.gif) you surround the file extensions with a semicolon (;) and enclose them in parentheses.

The result of this code appears in Figure 11.8. Here, we're letting the user select from our three types of files: text files (*.txt), image files (*.jpg, *.gif), and all files (*.*).

Figure 11.8 Setting file extension types in dialog boxes.

Using A Font Dialog Box

The Testing Department is calling again. Your new word processor, SuperDuperTextProcessor is great, but why can't the users select the font they want to use? You ask, should they be able to do that? The Testing Department says, take a look at the Font dialog box.

You use the Common Dialog control's `ShowFont` method to show a Font dialog box. Note that before you use the `ShowFont` method, you must set the `Flags` property of the Common Dialog control to one of three constants to indicate if you want to display screen fonts, printer fonts, or both. The possible values are as follows:

- " `cdlCFScreenFonts`&H1; show screen fonts
- " `cdlCFPrinterFonts` &H2; show printer fonts
- " `cdlCFBoth` &H3; show both types of fonts

If you don't set one of these in the `Flags` property, a message box is displayed advising the user that There are no fonts installed , which will probably cause them to panic. To see more possible settings for `Flags` property, take a look at the next topic in this chapter.

When the user dismisses the Font dialog box by clicking on OK, you can determine their font selections using these properties of the Common Dialog control:

- " `Color` The selected color. To use this property, you must first set the `Flags` property to `cdlCFEffects`.
- " `FontBold` True if bold was selected.
- " `FontItalic` True if italic was selected.
- " `FontStrikethru` True if strikethru was selected. To use this property, you must first set the `Flags` property to `cdlCFEffects`.
- " `FontUnderline` True if underline was selected. To use this property, you must first set the `Flags` property to `cdlCFEffects`.
- " `FontName` The selected font name.
- " `FontSize` The selected font size.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll let the user set the font, font size, and font styles (like underline and bold) in a text box. We start by setting the Common Dialog control's `sCancelOnError` property to True so clicking the Cancel button causes a trappable error:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Next, we set the ~~Flags~~ property and show the Font dialog box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Flags = cdlCFBoth Or cdlCFFEffects
    CommonDialog1.ShowFont
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Finally, we set the text box's properties to match what the user set in the Font dialog box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Flags = cdlCFBoth Or cdlCFFEffects
    CommonDialog1.ShowFont

    Text1.FontName = CommonDialog1.FontName
    Text1.FontBold = CommonDialog1.FontBold
    Text1.FontItalic = CommonDialog1.FontItalic
    Text1.FontUnderline = CommonDialog1.FontUnderline
    Text1.FontSize = CommonDialog1.FontSize
    Text1.FontName = CommonDialog1.FontName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Now when you run this program and click the button, the Font dialog box appears, as in Figure 11.9.



Figure 11.9 The Font dialog box.

When you select the font options you want and click on OK, those options are

installed in the text box `Text1`, as shown in Figure 11.10.



Figure 11.10 Setting fonts and font styles with the Font dialog box.

That's it now we're using Font dialog boxes. The listing for this program, `fontdialog.frm`, is located in the `fontdialog` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Setting Font Dialog Flags

You can set a wide variety of options when using Font dialog boxes by using the Common Dialog control `Flags` property. Here are the possible values to use with that property:

- " `cdlCFANSIOnly &H400`; specifies that the dialog box allows only a selection of the fonts that use the Windows character set. If this flag is set, the user won't be able to select a font that contains only symbols.
- " `cdlCFApply &H200`; enables the Apply button on the dialog box.
- " `cdlCFBoth &H3`; causes the dialog box to list the available printer and screen fonts. The `hDC` property identifies the device context associated with the printer.
- " `cdlCFEffects &H100`; specifies that the dialog box enables strikethru, underline, and color effects.
- " `cdlCFFixedPitchOnly &H4000`; specifies that the dialog box selects only fixed-pitch fonts.
- " `cdlCFForceFontExist &H10000`; specifies that an error message box is displayed if the user attempts to select a font or style that doesn't exist.
- " `cdlCFHelpButton &H4`; causes the dialog box to display a Help button.
- " `cdlCFLimitSize &H2000`; specifies that the dialog box selects only font sizes within the range specified by the `Min` and `Max` properties.
- " `cdlCFNoFaceSel &H80000`; no font name was selected.
- " `cdlCFNoSimulations &H1000`; specifies that the dialog box doesn't allow graphic device interface (GDI) font simulations.
- " `cdlCFNoSizeSel &H200000`; no font size was selected.
- " `cdlCFNoStyleSel &H100000`; no style was selected.
- " `cdlCFNoVectorFonts &H800`; specifies that the dialog box doesn't allow vector-font selections.
- " `cdlCFPrinterFonts &H2`; causes the dialog box to list only the fonts supported by

the printer, specified by the DC property.

" cdICFScalableOnly&H20000; specifies that the dialog box allows only the selection of fonts that can be scaled.

" cdICFScreenFonts&H1; causes the dialog box to list only the screen fonts supported by the system.

" cdICFTTOnly &H40000; specifies that the dialog box allows only the selection of TrueType fonts.

" cdICFWYSIWYG &H8000; specifies that the dialog box allows only the selection of fonts that are available on both the printer and on screen. If this flag is set, the cdICFBoth and cdICFScalableOnly flags should also be set.

You can set more than one flag for a dialog box using the OR operator. For example:

```
CommonDialog1.Flags = &H10& Or &H200&
```

Adding the desired constant values produces the same result.

Setting Max And Min Font Sizes

The Testing Department is calling again. Now users are setting the font size in your program, SuperDuperTextPrdo 3 points and then complaining they can't read what they've typed. Can you limit the allowed font range?

Yes, you can, using the Common Dialog control's `Min` and `Max` properties. When you want to make these properties active with a Font dialog box, you must first add the `cdlCFLimitSize` flag to the Common Dialog control's `Flags` property. Then you're free to restrict the possible range of font sizes.

Here's an example. We set the Common Dialog's `CancelError` property to True to catch Cancel button clicks, then set `Flags` property of the Common Dialog control to display both screen fonts and printer fonts, and set `cdlCFLimitSize` flag:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Flags = cdlCFBoth Or cdlCFLimitSize
    ...

```

Then we set the minimum and maximum font sizes we want to allow, measured in points:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Flags = cdlCFBoth Or cdlCFLimitSize
    CommonDialog1.Min = 12
    CommonDialog1.Max = 24
    ...

```

Finally, we show the Font dialog box, and then make use of the newly set font size:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Flags = cdlCFBoth Or cdlCFLimitSize
    CommonDialog1.Min = 12
    CommonDialog1.Max = 24
    CommonDialog1.ShowFont
    Text1.FontName = CommonDialog1.FontSize

```

```
Cancel:
```

```
End Sub
```

That's all we need the result of this code appears in Figure 11.11, where, as you can see, we've restricted the range of font sizes from 12 to 24 points in the Font dialog box.

 **Figure 11.11** Restricting font size range in a Font dialog box.

TIP: Note that because the font size is entered in a combo box in a Font dialog box, the user can enter a value outside the allowed range in the text box part of the combo. If they do and click on OK, however, an error message box appears saying the font size must be in the ~~Min~~ to Max range.

Using The Print Dialog Box

The Testing Department is calling again. The Print button you've placed in your word processor SuperDuperTextPros very nice, but it doesn't let the user set the number of copies of a document they want to print. You can't do that with a button, you explain. Right, they say use a Print dialog box.

You show the Print dialog box with the Common Dialog control ~~ShowPrinter~~ method. If you know your document's length, you can set the minimum and maximum pages to print in the Common Dialog control's ~~Min~~ and ~~Max~~ properties; setting these properties enables the From and To page range text boxes in the Print dialog box (see [Setting The Minimum And Maximum Pages To Print](#) later in this chapter). You can also set the Common Dialog control's ~~Flags~~ property to select various options here see the next topic in this chapter.

This dialog box doesn't send data to the printer; instead, it lets the user specify how he wants data printed. Printing is up to you.

How do you print? If you've set the ~~PrinterDefault~~ property to True, you can use the Printer object to print data (the user can change the default printer from the Printer dialog box, setting a new default printer in the Windows registry or win.ini, but that new printer automatically becomes the one referred to by ~~Printer~~ object). For example, you can print the picture in a picture box using ~~Printer~~ object this way: Printer.PaintPicture Picture1.Picture, 0, 0. Otherwise, you must use Windows functions to print to the device represented by ~~hDC~~ (a device context handle) property.

After the user clicks on OK, you can read these properties from the Common Dialog control to determine what printer options they've selected:

- " Copies The number of copies to print

- " FromPage The page to start printing
- " ToPage The page to stop printing
- " hDC The device context for the selected printer

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll use the Visual Basic Form method to print a copy of the current form as many times as the user specifies. We start by setting the Common Dialog control CancelError property to True so we can catch Cancel button clicks as trappable errors:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Then we set the PrinterDefault property to True and show the Print dialog box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.PrinterDefault = True
    CommonDialog1.ShowPrinter
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

All that's left is to loop over the number of copies the user has requested (as returned in the Copies property) and call PrintForm each time:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.PrinterDefault = True
    CommonDialog1.ShowPrinter
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To CommonDialog1.Copies
        PrintForm
    Next intLoopIndex

Cancel:
```

End Sub

That is it when the user clicks Command1, the program displays the Print dialog box; the user can set the number of copies to print and when they click on OK, Visual Basic displays a dialog box with the text Printing& momentarily, and the print job starts.

Our Print dialog box example is a success the code for this program is located in the printerdialog folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Setting Print Dialog Flags

You can set a number of options in the Common Dialog `Flags` property when working with the Print dialog box:

- " `cdlPDAllPages&H0`; returns or sets the state of the All Pages option button.
- " `cdlPDCollate &H10`; returns or sets the state of the Collate checkbox.
- " `cdlPDDisablePrintToFile &H80000`; disables the Print To File checkbox.
- " `cdlPDHelpButton &H800`; causes the dialog box to display the Help button.
- " `cdlPDHidePrintToFile &H100000`; hides the Print To File checkbox.
- " `cdlPDNoPageNums&H8`; disables the Pages option button and the associated edit control.
- " `cdlPDNoSelection&H4`; disables the Selection option button.
- " `cdlPDNoWarning &H80`; prevents a warning message from being displayed when there is no default printer.
- " `cdlPDPageNums&H2`; returns or sets the state of the Pages option button.
- " `cdlPDPrintSetup &H40`; causes the system to display the Print Setup dialog box rather than the Print dialog box.
- " `cdlPDPrintToFile &H20`; returns or sets the state of the Print To File checkbox.
- " `cdlPDRetnDC &H100`; returns a device context for the printer selection made in the dialog box. The device context is returned in the dialog `hDCs` property.
- " `cdlPDRetnDefault &H400`; returns the default printer name.
- " `cdlPDRetnIC &H200`; returns an information context for the printer selection made in the dialog box. An information context provides a fast way to get information about the device without creating a device context. The information context is returned in the dialog box `hDC` property.
- " `cdlPDSelection&H1`; returns or sets the state of the Selection option button. If neither `cdlPDPageNums` nor `cdlPDSelection` is specified, the All option button is in the selected state.
- " `cdlPDUseDevModeCopies&H40000`; if a printer driver doesn't support multiple copies, setting this flag disables the Number Of Copies control in the Print dialog box. If a driver does support multiple copies, setting this flag indicates that the dialog box stores the requested number of copies in the `Copies` property.

You can set more than one flag for a dialog box using the `Or` operator. For example:

```
CommonDialog1.Flags = &H10& Or &H200&
```

Adding the desired constant values produces the same result.

Setting The Minimum And Maximum Pages To Print

When displaying a Print dialog box, you can set the minimum and maximum allowed values for the print range (in other words, the From and To pages to print) using the `Min` and `Max` properties of the Common Dialog control. `Min` property sets the smallest number the user can specify in the From text box. `Max` property sets the largest number the user can specify in the To text box. For example, here we restrict the possible pages to print to a maximum of 10, in the range 0 to 9:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.PrinterDefault = True
    CommonDialog1.Min = 0
    CommonDialog1.Max = 9
    CommonDialog1.ShowPrinter
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To CommonDialog1.Copies
        PrintForm
    Next intLoopIndex

Cancel:
End Sub
```

Now when the Print dialog box appears, you can see that in the Print Range box, at lower left in Figure 11.12, one option button says All 10 Pages . That is, we've set a maximum total of 10 pages for our document. The actual page range is from 0 to 9.



Figure 11.12 Setting print range in a Print dialog box.

TIP: If the user enters a number outside the allowed From and To range and clicks on OK, an error message box will appear letting them know what the allowed range is.

Setting Page Orientation

When printing, you can set the page orientation portrait (upright) or landscape (sideways) with the Common Dialog control's `Orientation` property. This setting is communicated to the printer automatically, but note that not all printers will be able to set a document's orientation.

Here are the possible values for `Orientation` property:

- " `cdlPortrait` 1; documents are printed with the top at the narrow side of the paper (the default).
- " `cdlLandScape2`; documents are printed with the top at the wide side of the paper.

Here's an example. In this case, we're setting the `PrinterDefault` property to landscape:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.PrinterDefault = True
    CommonDialog1.Orientation = cdlLandscape
    CommonDialog1.ShowPrinter
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To CommonDialog1.Copies
        PrintForm
    Next intLoopIndex
```

Cancel:

```
End Sub
```

Showing Windows Help From A Visual Basic Program

You can display a Windows Help file (.hlp) with the Common Dialog control's ShowHelp method. To use this method, you first set the Common Dialog control's HelpCommand property to one of the following settings, and the HelpFile property to the actual name of the Help file to open.

Here are the possible settings HelpCommand:

- " cdlHelpCommand &H102&; executes a Help macro.
- " cdlHelpContents &H3&; displays the Help contents topic as defined by the Contents option in the [OPTION] section of the HPJ file. This constant doesn't work for Help files created with Microsoft Help Workshop Version 4.0X. Instead, you use the value &HB to get the same effect.
- " cdlHelpContext &H1&; displays Help for a particular context. When using this setting, you must also specify a context using HelpContext property.
- " cdlHelpContextPopup &H8&; displays in a pop-up window a particular Help topic identified by a context number defined in the [MAP] section of the HPJ file.
- " cdlHelpForceFile &H9&; ensures WinHelp displays the correct Help file. If the correct Help file is currently displayed, no action occurs. If the incorrect Help file is displayed, WinHelp opens the correct file.
- " cdlHelpHelpOnHelp &H4&; displays Help for using the Help application itself.
- " cdlHelpIndex &H3&; displays the index of the specified Help file. An application should use this value only for a Help file with a single index.
- " cdlHelpKey &H101&; displays Help for a particular keyword. When using this setting, you must also specify a keyword using HelpKey property.
- " cdlHelpPartialKey &H105&; displays the topic found in the keyword list that matches the keyword passed in the Data parameter if there is one exact match.
- " cdlHelpQuit &H2&; notifies the Help application that the specified Help file is no longer in use.
- " cdlHelpSetContents &H5&; determines which contents topic is displayed when a user presses the F1 key.
- " cdlHelpSetIndex &H5&; sets the context specified by HelpContext property as the current index for the Help file specified by HelpFile property. This index remains current until the user accesses a different Help file. Use this value only for Help files with more than one index.

Often, you want to open a Help file to its contents page, and so you'd set the HelpCommand property to the ~~cdlHelpContents~~ constant. Be careful, however, that constant doesn't work with some Help files (those constructed with the Microsoft Help Workshop Version 4.0X), so check ~~ShowHelp~~ works properly before releasing your program. The ~~cdlHelpContents~~ constant works with fewer Help files than you might think in fact, it won't open the main Windows Help file itself, windows.hlp, correctly. Instead, you must use a special value, &HB:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    CommonDialog1.HelpCommand = &HB
    CommonDialog1.HelpFile = "c:\windows\help\windows.hlp"
    CommonDialog1.ShowHelp
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 11.13. Here, we're opening the Windows main Help file to its contents page.



Figure 11.13 Opening Windows Help from a Visual Basic program.

Our ShowHelp example is a success. The code for this example is located in the helpdialog folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Chapter 12

The Chart And Grid Controls

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding A Chart Control To A Program

Adding Data To A Chart Control

Working With A Multiple Data Series

Setting Chart And Axis Titles And Chart Colors

Creating Pie Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Line Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Area Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Bar Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Step Charts

Creating 2D And 3D Combination Charts

Adding A Flex Grid Control To A Program

Working With Data In A Flex Grid Control

Typing Data Into A Flex Grid

Setting Flex Grid Grid Lines And Border Styles

Labeling Rows And Columns In A Flex Grid

Formatting Flex Grid Cells

Sorting A Flex Grid Control

Dragging Columns In A Flex Grid Control

Connecting A Flex Grid To A Database

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to work with two types of Visual Basic controls: chart and grid controls. You use these controls to display data for example, a chart of a data set can make it come alive in a unique way. Like most Visual Basic controls, both of

these control types can be filled with data in two ways: under program control or from a database. In this chapter, we'll get familiar with charts and grids and placing data in them ourselves; when we discuss the Visual Basic's data-bound controls later in this book, we'll see how to make the connection to databases.

The Chart Control

The Visual Basic chart control takes a little getting used to and it's changed significantly over time but when you get the hang of it, you can create dramatic effects. For making your data visible, there's little better than an effective graph. Here are the types of charts you can create using the Visual Basic chart control:

- " 2D or 3D bar chart
- " 2D or 3D line chart
- " 2D or 3D area chart
- " 2D or 3D step chart
- " 2D or 3D combination chart
- " 2D pie chart
- " 2D XY chart

As we'll see, there are several ways of working with the data in a chart control; that data is stored in a data grid, and we're responsible for filling that grid. To create a simple graph, such as a line chart showing wheat production over time, you fill the data grid with a one-dimensional array. If you want to display a graph of three data sets in the same chart, such as a line chart with three lines showing wheat, soybean, and rye production over time, you use a two-dimensional array (with three columns in this case). We'll see how this works in the Immediate Solutions.

To add a chart control to your program, open the Components dialog box by selecting Project[vbbar]Components, click the Controls tab, select the Microsoft Chart Control entry, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. The Chart Control tool appears as the eleventh tool down on the right in Figure 12.1.



Figure 12.1 The Chart Control tool.

The chart control takes care of many programming concerns automatically such as scaling the axes or setting colors although you can override those settings if you wish.

Grid Controls

Grid controls display data in a table-like form, with rows and columns of cells. In fact, you can use grids to do just that: display tables of data. You can also use them to

display spreadsheets.

Visual Basic has a number of grid controls: the data grid control, the flex grid control, and the hierarchical flex grid control. We'll take a look at the flex grid control here and save the data grid control for our discussion of data-bound controls (in fact, flex grids can connect to databases just as data grid controls can, but they present the database's data in read-only format).

Like charts, grids give you a way of displaying data. Whereas charts present data in graphical format, grids appear like spreadsheets (and, in fact, if you want to create a spreadsheet in Visual Basic, you use a grid). A grid presents the user with a two-dimensional array of individual cells. You can make the cells in the grid active just as you'd expect in a spreadsheet; for example, you can keep a running sum at the bottom of columns of data.

One thing that takes many Visual Basic programmers by surprise is that there's no automatic way for users to enter data in a grid control (that is, it doesn't function as a grid of text boxes). When you display a grid, it seems that users should be able to just type the data they want into the grid, but that's not the way it works.

Grid controls can hold data in each cell when you put it there, but the user can't simply enter that data; you have to add the code to do that. We'll see how to fix this with a moveable text box in this chapter when the user types into a cell, we'll move the text box to that cell and make it appear that the user is typing directly into the cell.

The flex grid control is often used to display database data in read-only format. It also features the ability to rearrange its columns under user control, as we'll see, as well as the ability to display images in each cell instead of just text. Each cell supports word wrap and formatting.

To add a flex grid control to your program, open the Components dialog box by selecting Project[View]Components, click the Controls tab, select the Microsoft FlexGrid Control entry, then click on OK to close the Components dialog box. The Flex Grid Control tool is the twelfth tool down on the left in Figure 12.2.



Figure 12.2 The Flex Grid Control tool.

That's it for our overview of charts and grids; it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Chart Control To A Program

The Testing Department is calling again. Your new program, SuperDuperDataCrunch is great, but why does it display the data as a long stream of numbers in a text box? Well, you ask, what else would you suggest? They say, how about a chart?

It's time to add a Microsoft chart control to your program, and doing that is easy just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project[vbar]Components menu item.
2. Select the Controls tab in the Components box that opens.
3. Select the Microsoft Chart Control entry in the Components box, and click on OK to close the Components box.
4. Draw a new chart control on your form.

To select the type of chart you want, you set the chart control's `ChartType` property. Here are the possible settings for that property:

- " VtChChartType3dBar 3D bar chart
- " VtChChartType2dBar 2D bar chart
- " VtChChartType3dLine 3D line chart
- " VtChChartType2dLine 2D line chart
- " VtChChartType3dArea 3D area chart
- " VtChChartType2dArea 2D area chart
- " VtChChartType3dStep 3D step chart
- " VtChChartType2dStep 2D step chart
- " VtChChartType3dCombination 3D combination chart
- " VtChChartType2dCombination 2D combination chart
- " VtChChartType2dPie 2D pie chart
- " VtChChartType2dXY 2D XY chart

TIP: Note that the `ChartType` property actually appears with a small initial letter,

chartType, in the current build of Visual Basic, although when you check the Visual Basic documentation, it has a large initial letter ~~Ch~~artType. Because Visual Basic corrects capitalization automatically, you can type this property in either way, but it's an oddity you might note.

Now that you've added a new chart control to your program, it's time to fill it with data. There are several ways of doing so, and they can get pretty involved. See the next topic in this chapter for the details.

Adding Data To A Chart Control

You've added a chart control to your form, and it's displaying data but it's not your data. How do you fix that?

When you add a chart control to a form, it displays random data (which is good if you want to change chart types and see what the possibilities look like). That's fine as far as it goes, but now it's time to enter your own data in that chart. There are several ways of doing so, and we'll look at them here.

Using The ChartData Property

As mentioned in this chapter's overview, the data in a chart control is stored in an internal data grid (in fact, it's stored in a Visual Basic data grid control, one of the data-bound controls, inside the chart control). Probably the quickest way of filling a chart control is by filling that data grid directly, and we can access the data grid directly with the chart control's ChartData property.

You can either get or set the data grid in a chart control with this property, because it refers directly to an array of variants. Let's take a look at an example. Here, we'll just create a simple bar chart (`ChartType = VtChChartType2dBar`, the default).

Start by adding a new chart control `MSChart1` (that's the default name Visual Basic will give it) to your program. Next, we declare an array of variants to hold our data:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 5) As Variant
    ...

```

The first entry in the array is a label that will appear on the x-axis; we'll just label it "Data":

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 5) As Variant
    X(1) = "Data"
```

...

Next, we add the data itself we want to display:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 5) As Variant
    X(1) = "Data"
    X(2) = 1
    X(3) = 2
    X(4) = 3
    X(5) = 4
    ...

```

Finally, we install the array in MSChart1 using the ChartData property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 5) As Variant
    X(1) = "Data"
    X(2) = 1
    X(3) = 2
    X(4) = 3
    X(5) = 4
    MSChart1.ChartData = X
End Sub
```

That's it. Now run the program as you see in Figure 12.3. We've created our first simple chart.

The code for this program is located in the chart folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Another way of installing data in a chart is to use the Data property.

Using The Data Property

You can also use the chart control's Data property to enter data. To use the Data property to fill the chart control's data grid, you set the row and column you want to place data in using the chart control's Row and Column properties, and then you just

set theData property to the value you want at that location, like ~~MSChart1.Data~~ = 5. Note that because we're not passing an array to the chart control here, you must give that control the proper dimensions of the array you're setting up, which means you must set the RowCount and ColumnCount properties.

If you're just entering sequential data points, you can set the chart control's AutoIncrement property to True, and then enter the sequential points in ~~Data~~ property, one after another:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MSChart1.Data = 1
    MSChart1.Data = 2
    MSChart1.Data = 3
    MSChart1.Data = 4
    ...

```

The Data property can only take numeric data, so to set the text that will appear on the x-axis for our data, we use the RowLabel property to label row 1 like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MSChart1.Data = 1
    MSChart1.Data = 2
    MSChart1.Data = 3
    MSChart1.Data = 4
    MSChart1.Row = 1
    MSChart1.RowLabel = "Data"
End Sub
```

And that's it this code produces the same result you see in Figure 12.3.



Figure 12.3 Creating a simple chart.

Using The SetData Method

You can use the data grid's `SetData` method to place data in the chart control. Here's how you use `SetData`:

```
DataGrid.SetData (row, column, dataPoint, nullFlag)
```

Here's what the various arguments you pass `SetData` mean:

- " row Identifies the row containing the data point value
- " columnIdentifies the column containing the data point value
- " dataPointHolds the data value (Double value)
- " nullFlag Indicates whether or not the data point value is a null

All the data in our simple chart is in the same row, so we fill the data grid in the chart control using `SetData` this way (note that we access the data grid with the chart control's `DataGrid` property here):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MSChart1.DataGrid.SetData 1, 1, 1, False
    MSChart1.DataGrid.SetData 1, 2, 2, False
    MSChart1.DataGrid.SetData 1, 3, 3, False
    MSChart1.DataGrid.SetData 1, 4, 4, False

    MSChart1.Row = 1
    MSChart1.RowLabel = "Data"

End Sub
```

This code produces the same result as before, shown in Figure 12.3.

Working With A Multiple Data Series

The Testing Department is calling again. Your graph of total imported wheat by month looks very nice, but now that the company has diversified, you need to show the imports of rice, corn, wheat, lentils, and rye all on the same chart. Can you do that?

You certainly can, using a `Series`. When you fill the chart control's data grid, you

just add a new column for each crop, and a new line will appear in your graph. How does that work? Let's see an example.

Here, we'll graph rice, corn, wheat, lentils, and rye imports for the months of January and February. Each set of data, rice, corn, wheat, lentils, and rye makes up a series, and each column in the data grid will hold the data for one series. We add a new row to make a new x-axis point for each item in the series. In this example, we'll have two rows, one for January and one for February, and five columns, one each for rice, corn, wheat, lentils, and rye.

In fact, we add one row to hold row labels and one column to hold column labels. The row labels (January and February) will appear on the x-axis, and the column labels (rice, corn, wheat, lentils, and rye) will appear in the chart so the user can figure out what all the different-color lines (the data series) in the chart mean. Here's the way the data grid will be set up when we're done:

	Rice	Corn	Lentils	Wheat	Rye
January	2	3	4	5	6
February	4	6	8	10	12

Here's how that looks in code:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant

    X(1, 2) = "Rice"
    X(1, 3) = "Corn"
    X(1, 4) = "Lentils"
    X(1, 5) = "Wheat"
    X(1, 6) = "Rye"

    X(2, 1) = "January"
    X(2, 2) = 2
    X(2, 3) = 3
    X(2, 4) = 4
    X(2, 5) = 5
    X(2, 6) = 6

    X(3, 1) = "February"
```

```
X(3, 2) = 4
X(3, 3) = 6
X(3, 4) = 8
X(3, 5) = 10
X(3, 6) = 12
```

```
MSChart1.ChartData = X
```

```
End Sub
```

When you set the chart control's `ChartType` property to `VtChChartType2dLine` and the `ShowLegend` property to `True` so the legend is displayed, the result appears as shown in Figure 12.4. You can see the various data series represented there, and the legend at right explains what each line means.



Figure 12.4 A 2D line chart with a data series.

You can also use a data series with 3D graphs setting `ChartType` to `VtChChartType3dStep` creates the 3D step chart in Figure 12.5.



Figure 12.5 A 3D step chart with a data series.

The code for this example is located in the `chartseries` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: To draw the sum of various series in a chart, you can open the chart control's property pages, click the Chart tab, and in the Chart Options box, click the Stack Series item. This will stack the series one on top of the other, which can be convenient if you want to look at a sum of various series.

Setting Chart And Axis Titles And Chart Colors

In the previous topic, we've seen how to create row labels and use a legend in a chart. However, there's much more here you can also set a chart's title, as well as give titles to the entire x- and y-axes.

To set a chart's titles, you can open the chart control's property pages, and you do that at design time by right-clicking the chart control and selecting Properties in the menu that appears. You can then click the Text tab in the property pages and set the text for the chart's title, as well as the titles of the two axes. If you click the Fonts tab, you can

set the fonts used in those titles.

As an example, we've added axis titles to the chart in Figure 12.6.

Figure 12.6 Setting axis titles.

You can also set the colors used in a series in a chart in the property pages just click the Series Color tab in the property pages, and you can set the color used for each series (that is, each column in the data grid).

Creating Pie Charts

The Testing Department is calling again: bar charts are nice, but how about some pie charts in your new program, SuperDuperDataCrunch? You think, How do you do that?

You set the chart control's ChartType property to VtChChartType2dPie. The chart control will display as many pie charts as you set up rows in the data grid (minus one row for the use of labels). For example, we'll set up two pie charts here, January and February, each with five pie slices, rice, corn, lentils, wheat, and rye:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant
    X(1, 2) = "Rice"
    X(1, 3) = "Corn"
    X(1, 4) = "Lentils"
    X(1, 5) = "Wheat"
    X(1, 6) = "Rye"
    X(2, 1) = "January"
    X(2, 2) = 2
    X(2, 3) = 3
    X(2, 4) = 4
    X(2, 5) = 5
    X(2, 6) = 6
    X(3, 1) = "February"
    X(3, 2) = 4
```

```
X( 3 ,  3 ) = 6  
X( 3 ,  4 ) = 8  
X( 3 ,  5 ) = 10  
X( 3 ,  6 ) = 12
```

```
MSChart1.ChartData = X
```

```
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 12.7. Now we're creating pie charts in Visual Basic.



Figure 12.7 Two pie charts in Visual Basic.

TIP: You can also select a pie slice to make it stand out.

Creating 2D And 3D Line Charts

How can you create a 2D or a 3D line chart? You set the Microsoft chart control's ChartType property to VtChChartType2dLine or VtChChartType3dLine.

Here's an example where we create a 2D line chart in the chart ~~MSChart1~~ and a 3D line chart in ~~MSChart2~~. First, we set up the data we'll use in the chart controls' data grids:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant

    X(1, 2) = "Rice"
    X(1, 3) = "Corn"
    X(1, 4) = "Lentils"
    X(1, 5) = "Wheat"
    X(1, 6) = "Rye"

    X(2, 1) = "January"
    X(2, 2) = 6
    X(2, 3) = 5
    X(2, 4) = 4
    X(2, 5) = 3
    X(2, 6) = 2

    X(3, 1) = "February"
    X(3, 2) = 12
    X(3, 3) = 10
    X(3, 4) = 8
    X(3, 5) = 6
    X(3, 6) = 4

    MSChart1.ChartData = X
    MSChart2.ChartData = X
    ...

```

Then we set the chartType property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant
    ...
    MSChart1.ChartData = X
    MSChart2.ChartData = X
    MSChart1.chartType = VtChChartType2dLine
    MSChart2.chartType = VtChChartType3dLine
End Sub
```

And that's it the result of this code appears in Figure 12.8.



Figure 12.8 A 2D and 3D line chart.

Creating 2D And 3D Area Charts

An area chart displays data in a series as areas. How can you create a 2D or a 3D area chart? You set the Microsoft chart control's chartType property to VtChChartType2dArea or VtChChartType3dArea.

Here's an example where we create a 2D area chart in the chart ~~MSChart1~~ and a 3D area chart ~~MSChart2~~. First, we set up the data we'll use in the chart controls' data grids:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant
    X(1, 2) = "Rice"
    X(1, 3) = "Corn"
    X(1, 4) = "Lentils"
    X(1, 5) = "Wheat"
    X(1, 6) = "Rye"
    X(2, 1) = "January"
```

```
X(2, 2) = 2  
X(2, 3) = 3  
X(2, 4) = 4  
X(2, 5) = 5  
X(2, 6) = 6
```

```
X(3, 1) = "February"  
X(3, 2) = 4  
X(3, 3) = 6  
X(3, 4) = 8  
X(3, 5) = 10  
X(3, 6) = 12
```

```
MSChart1.ChartData = X
```

```
MSChart2.ChartData = X
```

```
...
```

Then we set the `chartType` property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
```

```
Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant
```

```
...
```

```
MSChart1.ChartData = X
```

```
MSChart2.ChartData = X
```

```
MSChart1.chartType = VtChChartType2dArea
```

```
MSChart2.chartType = VtChChartType3dArea
```

```
End Sub
```

And that's it the result of this code appears in Figure 12.9. Now we're drawing 2D and 3D area charts.



Figure 12.9 A 2D and 3D area chart in Visual Basic.

Creating 2D And 3D Bar Charts

Bar charts, also called histograms just present their data using bars that match the respective data values. How can you create a 2D or a 3D bar chart? You set the Microsoft chart control **ChartType** property to **VtChChartType2dBar** or **VtChChartType3dBar**.

Here s an example where we create a 2D bar chart in the chart **MSChart1** and a 3D bar chart in **MSChart2**. First, we set up the data we ll use in the chart controls data grids:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant

    X(1, 2) = "Rice"
    X(1, 3) = "Corn"
    X(1, 4) = "Lentils"
    X(1, 5) = "Wheat"
    X(1, 6) = "Rye"

    X(2, 1) = "January"
    X(2, 2) = 4
    X(2, 3) = 6
    X(2, 4) = 8
    X(2, 5) = 10
    X(2, 6) = 12

    X(3, 1) = "February"
    X(3, 2) = 2
    X(3, 3) = 3
    X(3, 4) = 4
    X(3, 5) = 5
    X(3, 6) = 6

    MSChart1.ChartData = X
    MSChart2.ChartData = X
    ...

```

Then we set the **ChartType** property:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()

Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant

...
MSChart1.ChartData = X
MSChart2.ChartData = X

MSChart1.chartType = VtChChartType2dBar
MSChart2.chartType = VtChChartType3dBar

End Sub

```

And that's it the result of this code appears in Figure 12.10. Note that the data rows in the 2D chart's series are presented side by side.



Figure 12.10 A 2D and a 3D bar chart in Visual Basic.

Creating 2D And 3D Step Charts

Step charts present their data using bars as a series of steps. How can you create a 2D or a 3D step chart? You set the Microsoft chart control's `chartType` property to `VtChChartType2dStep` or `VtChChartType3dStep`.

Here's an example where we create a 2D step chart in the chart `MSChart1` and a 3D step chart `MSChart2`. First, we set up the data we'll use in the chart controls' data grids:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()

Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant

X(1, 2) = "Rice"
X(1, 3) = "Corn"
X(1, 4) = "Lentils"
X(1, 5) = "Wheat"
X(1, 6) = "Rye"

X(2, 1) = "January"

```

```
X(2, 2) = 4  
X(2, 3) = 6  
X(2, 4) = 8  
X(2, 5) = 10  
X(2, 6) = 12
```

```
X(3, 1) = "February"  
X(3, 2) = 2  
X(3, 3) = 3  
X(3, 4) = 4  
X(3, 5) = 5  
X(3, 6) = 6
```

```
MSChart1.ChartData = X  
MSChart2.ChartData = X  
...
```

Then we set the chartType property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()  
  
Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant  
  
...  
MSChart1.ChartData = X  
MSChart2.ChartData = X  
  
MSChart1.chartType = VtChChartType2dStep  
MSChart2.chartType = VtChChartType3dStep  
  
End Sub
```

And that's it the result of this code appears in Figure 12.11. Note that the data rows in the 2D chart's series are presented side by side.

 **Figure 12.11** A 2D and a 3D step chart in Visual Basic.

Creating 2D And 3D Combination Charts

Combination charts present their data as bars whose height matches relative data values. How can you create a 2D or a 3D combination chart? You set the Microsoft chart control ~~S~~ChartType property to VtChChartType2dCombination or VtChChartType3dCombination.

Here s an example where we create a 2D combination chart in the chart control MSChart1 and a 3D combination chart MSChart2. First, we set up the data we ll use in the chart controls data grids:

```
Private Sub Form_Load( )  
  
Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant  
  
X(1, 2) = "Rice"  
X(1, 3) = "Corn"  
X(1, 4) = "Lentils"  
X(1, 5) = "Wheat"  
X(1, 6) = "Rye"  
  
X(2, 1) = "January"  
X(2, 2) = 4  
X(2, 3) = 6  
X(2, 4) = 8  
X(2, 5) = 10  
X(2, 6) = 12  
  
X(3, 1) = "February"  
X(3, 2) = 2  
X(3, 3) = 3  
X(3, 4) = 4  
X(3, 5) = 5  
X(3, 6) = 6  
  
MSChart1.ChartData = X  
MSChart2.ChartData = X  
...
```

Then we set the ~~C~~hartType property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
```

```
Dim X(1 To 3, 1 To 6) As Variant
```

```
...
```

```
MSChart1.ChartData = X
```

```
MSChart2.ChartData = X
```

```
MSChart1.chartType = VtChChartType2dCombination
```

```
MSChart2.chartType = VtChChartType3dCombination
```

```
End Sub
```

And that's it the result of this code appears in Figure 12.12. Note that the data rows in the 2D chart's series are presented side by side.



Figure 12.12 A 2D and a 3D combination chart in Visual Basic.

Adding A Flex Grid Control To A Program

The Program Design Department is calling. Can you whip up a program to display a few tables of data? No problem, you say, I'll use the Microsoft flex grid control. They ask, and how about spreadsheets? You say, no problem flex grids can handle that too.

You can add a flex grid to a Visual Basic project easily; just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project[vbar]Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
3. Select the Microsoft FlexGrid Control entry in the Components dialog box.
4. Close the Components dialog box by clicking on OK. This displays the Flex Grid Control tool in the toolbox.
5. Add a flex grid control to your form in the usual way for Visual Basic controls, using the Flex Grid Control tool.
6. Set the flex grid ~~RowsandCols~~ properties to the number of rows and columns you want in your flex grid. You can also customize your flex grid by setting such properties as ~~BorderStyle~~, ~~ForeColor~~, ~~BackColor~~, and so on.

This gives you a blank flex grid control in your program; the next step is to fill it with data. To start doing that, take a look at the next topic in this chapter.

TIP: When you insert a flex grid, you can also connect it to a database. To do this, you create a new data control (it's an intrinsic Visual Basic control and appears in the toolbox when you start Visual Basic), connect that control to the database (by setting its ~~DatabaseName~~ and ~~RecordSource~~ properties), then set the flex grid's ~~DataSource~~ property to the name of the data control. We'll see more about connecting to a database when we discuss the data-bound Visual Basic controls. (See [Connecting A Flex Grid To A Database](#) later in this chapter.)

Working With Data In A Flex Grid Control

You're writing your new program ~~\$uperDuperDataCrunch~~ and it's time to write the code for the spreadsheet part. You can use a flex grid control here but how do you insert and work with the data in a flex grid? To see how this works, we'll build a small spreadsheet example program that adds a column of numbers. This will show how to insert and access data in a flex grid, as well as how to handle text insertion direct from the user in a rudimentary way (we'll see a better method in the next topic in this chapter). Several flex grid properties will help us here:

- " Row The current row in a flex grid
- " Col The current column in a flex grid
- " Rows The total number of rows
- " Cols The total number of columns
- " Text The text in the cell at(Row, Col)

We start by adding a flex grid to a form; give it 7 rows in the `Rows` property and 7 columns in the `Cols` property. We'll begin by labeling the column heads with letters and the row heads with numbers, just as you would see in any spreadsheet program.

Flex grids have `FixedCols` and `FixedRows` properties, which set the header columns and rows in the flex grid. These columns and rows are meant to label the other columns and rows, and they appear in gray by default (the other cells are white by default). Both `FixedCols` and `FixedRows` are set to 1 by default.

We'll add a column of numbers here, so we can also place labels in the first column of cells, Item 1 to Item 6, and a label at the bottom, Total, to indicate that the bottom row holds the total of the six above. These labels are not necessary, of course, but we'll add them to show that you can use text as well as numbers in a flex grid. These labels will appear in column 1 of the flex grid, and users can place the data they want to add in column 2. The running sum appears at the bottom of column 2, as shown in Figure 12.13.



Figure 12.13 Designing a spreadsheet.

To set text in a flex grid cell, you set the `Row` and `Col` properties to that location and then place the text in the flex grid's `Text` property. Here's how we set up the row and column labels in `MSFlexGrid1` when the form loads:

```

Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Items(6) As String
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    Items(1) = "Item 1"
    Items(2) = "Item 2"
    Items(3) = "Item 3"
    Items(4) = "Item 4"
    Items(5) = "Item 5"
    Items(6) = "Total"

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To MSFlexGrid1.Rows - 1
        MSFlexGrid1.Rows(intLoopIndex, 0) = Items(intLoopIndex)
    Next
End Sub

```

```
MSFlexGrid1.Col = 0
MSFlexGrid1.Row = intLoopIndex
MSFlexGrid1.Text = Str(intLoopIndex)
MSFlexGrid1.Col = 1
MSFlexGrid1.Text = Items(intLoopIndex)
Next intLoopIndex
MSFlexGrid1.Row = 0
For intLoopIndex = 1 To MSFlexGrid1.Cols - 1
    MSFlexGrid1.Col = intLoopIndex
    MSFlexGrid1.Text = Chr(Asc("A&") + 1 + intLoopIndex)
Next intLoopIndex
MSFlexGrid1.Row = 1
MSFlexGrid1.Col = 1

End Sub
```

The rows and labels appear as in Figure 12.14.



Figure 12.14 The flex grid spreadsheet program.

We've set up the labels as we want them but what about reading data when the user types it? We can use the `flexgrid1_KeyPress` event for that:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)

End Sub
```

If the user enters numbers in the cells of column 2, we'll add those values together in a running sum and appears at the bottom of that column, just as in a real spreadsheet program. To enter a number in a cell, the user can click the flex grid, which sets the `RowIndex` and `ColIndex` properties. Then, when the user types, we can add that text to the cell:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    MSFlexGrid1.Text = MSFlexGrid1.Text + Chr$(KeyAscii)
    ...
End Sub
```

This represents one way of letting the user enter text into a grid, but notice that we'd have to handle all the editing and deleting functions ourselves this way; see the next topic in this chapter to see how to use the `MSFlexGrid` control together with a flex grid for data entry.

Now that the user has changed the data in the spreadsheet, we add the numbers in column 2 this way:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    Dim intRowIndex As Integer
    Dim Sum As Integer

    MSFlexGrid1.Text = MSFlexGrid1.Text + Chr$(KeyAscii)

    MSFlexGrid1.Col = 2
    Sum = 0

    For intRowIndex = 1 To MSFlexGrid1.Rows - 2
        MSFlexGrid1.Row = intRowIndex
        Sum = Sum + Val(MSFlexGrid1.Text)
    Next intRowIndex
    ...

```

Note that each time you set the `RowIndex` and `ColIndex` properties to a new cell, that cell gets the focus. Because we want to place the sum of column 2 at the bottom of that column, that's a problem. When we place the sum there, as users type the digits of the current number they're entering, the focus would keep moving to the bottom of the column. To avoid that, we save the current row and column and restore them when we're displaying the sum:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    Dim intRowIndex As Integer
```

```

Dim Sum As Integer

MSFlexGrid1.Text = MSFlexGrid1.Text + Chr$(KeyAscii)
OldRow = MSFlexGrid1.Row
OldCol = MSFlexGrid1.Col
MSFlexGrid1.Col = 2
Sum = 0

For intRowIndex = 1 To MSFlexGrid1.Rows    2
    MSFlexGrid1.Row = intRowIndex
    Sum = Sum + Val(MSFlexGrid1.Text)
Next intRowIndex

MSFlexGrid1.Row = MSFlexGrid1.Rows    1
MSFlexGrid1.Text = Str(Sum)
MSFlexGrid1.Row = OldRow
MSFlexGrid1.Col = OldCol
End Sub

```

And that's it. Now the user can type numbers into the spreadsheet, and we'll display the running sum shown in Figure 12.15. We've created a spreadsheet program using a flex grid control.



Figure 12.15 Adding numbers in the flex grid spreadsheet program.

The code for this example is located in the spreadsheet folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM that in this case we had to handle text entry ourselves, and we didn't let the user delete characters or other edits like cut and paste. We can do that if we use a text box for character entry, and we'll see how that in the next topic.

Typing Data Into A Flex Grid

In the previous topic, we saw how to work with data in a flex grid and how to use **KeyPressEvent** to support rudimentary text entry. Microsoft, however, suggests you use a text box for text entry in a flex grid; how are you supposed to do that?

The way you do it is to keep the text box invisible until the user selects a cell, then move the text box to the cell, size it to match the cell, and make it appear. When the user is done typing and clicks another cell, transfer the text to the current cell and make the text box disappear.

Why Microsoft didn't build this into flex grids is anybody's guess perhaps because many flex grids are supposed to support text entry, and that functionality would just take up memory. However, we can do it ourselves.

To see how this works, add a text box to a form, and set its **Visible** property to False so it starts off hidden.

Then add a flex grid to the form and give it, say, 10 columns and 10 rows. We can label the columns letters and the rows with numbers, as is standard in spreadsheets (note that we use the `Visual Basic Asc` functions to set up the letters, and that we enter the text directly into the flex grid using the `TextArray` property):

```
Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = MSFlexGrid1.FixedRows To MSFlexGrid1.Rows
        MSFlexGrid1.TextArray(MSFlexGrid1.Cols * intLoopIndex) =_
            intLoopIndex
    Next

    For intLoopIndex = MSFlexGrid1.FixedCols To MSFlexGrid1.Cols
        MSFlexGrid1.TextArray(intLoopIndex) = Chr(Asc("A") +_
            intLoopIndex - 1)
    Next
End Sub
```

To select a cell, the user can click it with the mouse. When the user starts typing, we can add the text box this way:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
```

```
Text1.Text = Text1.Text & Chr(KeyAscii)  
Text1.SelStart = 1
```

We also move the text box to cover the current cell and shape it to match that cell using the flex grid CellLeft, CellTop, CellWidth, and CellHeight properties:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
```

```
Text1.Text = Text1.Text & Chr(KeyAscii)
Text1.SelStart = 1

Text1.Move MSFlexGrid1.CellLeft + MSFlexGrid1.Left,_
    MSFlexGrid1.CellTop + MSFlexGrid1.Top,           MSFlexGrid1.CellWidth,_
    MSFlexGrid1.CellHeight

Sub
```

Finally, we make the text box visible and give it the focus:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)  
  
    Text1.Text = Text1.Text & Chr(KeyAscii)  
    Text1.SelStart = 1  
  
    Text1.Move MSFlexGrid1.CellLeft + MSFlexGrid1.Left,_  
               MSFlexGrid1.CellTop + MSFlexGrid1.Top, MSFlexGrid1.CellWidth,_  
               MSFlexGrid1.CellHeight  
    Text1.Visible = True  
    Text1.SetFocus  
End Sub
```

When the user clicks another cell, `LeaveCell` event is generated, and we can take advantage of that to transfer the text from the text box to the current cell and hide the text box. Note that if the text box is visible in other words, the user is just moving around in the flex grid we do not want to transfer the text from the text box to the current cell, and so we exit the procedure in that case:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_LeaveCell()
    If Text1.Visible = False Then
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ...

```

Otherwise, we transfer the text from the text box to the current cell, clear the text box, and hide it:

```
Sub MSFlexGrid1_LeaveCell()
    If Text1.Visible = False Then
        Exit Sub
    End If
    MSFlexGrid1.Text = Text1
    Text1.Visible = False
    Text1.Text = ""
End Sub
```

And that's it. Now users can use the text box to enter text in a way that makes it look as though they are entering text directly into the flex grid, as shown in Figure 12.16. The code for this example is located in the flex folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 12.16 Using a text box for flex grid data entry.

Setting Flex Grid Grid Lines And Border Styles

You can set what types of grid lines a flex grid uses with the `GridLines` property. These can be set at design time or runtime to the following values:

- " flexGridNone
- " flexGridFlat
- " flexGridInset
- " flexGridRaised

You can set the grid line width with the `GridLineWidth` property.

In addition, you can set the `BorderStyle` property to show a border around the whole control, or no border at all:

- " flexBorderNone
- " flexBorderSingle

Labeling Rows And Columns In A Flex Grid

The usual convention in spreadsheets is to label the top row with letters and the first column with numbers. Here's some code to do just that (note that we use the Visual Basic `Asc` functions to set up the letters and enter text directly into the flex grid using the `TextArray` property, which holds the grid's text in array form):

```
Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = MSFlexGrid1.FixedRows To MSFlexGrid1.Rows - 1
        MSFlexGrid1.TextArray(MSFlexGrid1.Cols * intLoopIndex) =_
            intLoopIndex
    Next

    For intLoopIndex = MSFlexGrid1.FixedCols To MSFlexGrid1.Cols - 1
        MSFlexGrid1.TextArray(intLoopIndex) = Chr(Asc("A") +_
            intLoopIndex - 1)
    Next
End Sub
```

TIP: The columns and rows you label in a flex grid are usually colored gray; you set the number of columns and rows with the `FixedCols` and `FixedRows` properties.

Formatting Flex Grid Cells

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Can't you ~~fix~~ ~~improve~~ that spreadsheet? Hmm, you think can you?

Yes, you can: flex grid cells support formatting, including word wrap. You can format text using the properties of flex grids:

- " CellFontBold
- " CellFontItalic

- " CellFontName
- " CellFontUnderline
- " CellFontStrikethrough
- " CellFontSize

Besides the preceding properties, you can size cells as you like using ~~CellWidth~~ and RowHeight properties.

Sorting A Flex Grid Control

The Testing Department is calling again. Your new program SuperDuperDataCrunch is terrific, but why can't the user sort the data in your spreadsheet? Sounds like a lot of work, you think.

Actually, it's easy. You just use the flex grid's Sort property (available only at runtime). For example, to sort a flex grid according to the values in column 1 when the user clicks a button, add this code to the program (setting Sort to 1 sorts the flex grid on ascending values):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MSFlexGrid1.Col = 1
    MSFlexGrid1.Sort = 1
End Sub
```

TIP: Note that when the user clicks a column, that column becomes the new default column in the Sort property, so if you want to let the user click a column and sort based on the values in that column, MSFlexGrid1.Col = 1 in the preceding code.

Dragging Columns In A Flex Grid Control

One of the attractive aspects of flex grids is that you can use drag-and-drop with them to let users rearrange the flex grid as they like. To see how this works, we'll write an example here that lets users drag a column around in a flex grid.

When the user presses the mouse button to start the drag operation, we store the column where they went down in a form-wide variable named, say DragColumn in the MouseDown event. This event is stored in the flex grid's MouseCol property:

```
Private Sub MSFlexGrid1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    intDragColumn = MSFlexGrid1.MouseCol
    ...

```

We also add that variable `intDragColumn`, to the (General) declaration area of the form:

```
Dim intDragColumn As Integer
```

Then we start the drag and drop operation for the column in the flex grid:

```
Private Sub MSFlexGrid1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _  
X As Single, Y As Single)  
  
    intDragColumn = MSFlexGrid1.MouseCol  
    MSFlexGrid1.Drag 1  
  
End Sub
```

Finally, when the user drags the column to a new location and drops it, we can catch the `DragDrop` event. In that events handler's procedure, we move the column to its new location the current mouse column using the `ColPosition` property:

```
Private Sub MSFlexGrid1_DragDrop(Source As VB.Control, X As Single,  
Y As Single)  
  
    MSFlexGrid1.ColPosition(intDragColumn) = MSFlexGrid1.MouseCol  
  
End Sub
```

And that's it. Now the user can drag and rearrange the columns in our flex grid. To see how this works, display a database in our flex grid, as shown in Figure 12.17. To see how to do that, take a look at the topic in this chapter where we use a Visual Basic data control (here, the database we use is the Northwind database, which comes with Visual Basic). When the user drags a column in our program, a specific pointer appears, as shown also in Figure 12.17.



Figure 12.17 Dragging a column in a flex grid.

The code for this example is located in the dragged folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM. To run this example, you must set the data control's `DatabaseName` to the `Nwind.mdb` file on your computer, including the correct path).

Connecting A Flex Grid To A Database

We'll work with databases later in this book, but because flex grids are often used with databases, we'll take a look at how to connect a database to a flex grid here. To connect a database to a flex grid, follow these steps:

1. Add a data control `Data1`, to your form (the data control is an intrinsic control in Visual Basic and appears in the toolbox when you start Visual Basic).
2. Set the data control's `DatabaseName` property to the database file you want to use. This can also be done at runtime, but if you do so, be sure to call the data control's `Refresh` method to update that control. In code, the process goes something like this, where we use the Visual Basic `App` object's `sPath` property to get the application's path (assuming the database file is stored at the same path as the application):

```
Data1.DatabaseName = App.Path & "\Nwind.mdb"  
Data1.Refresh
```

3. Set `Data1`'s `RecordSource` property to the table in the database you want to work with.
4. Set the flex grid's `DataSource` property to the data control's name, which is `Data1` here.

For example, we display the `Nwind.mdb` database that comes with Visual Basic in a flex grid in Figure 12.18. (There's a lot more about data-bound controls later in this book; this is just an appetizer.)



Figure 12.18 Opening a database in a flex grid.

Chapter 13

The Timer And Serial Communications Controls

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding A Timer Control To A Program

Initializing A Timer Control

HandlingTimer Events

Formatting Times And Dates

Creating A Clock Program

Creating A Stopwatch

Creating An Alarm Clock

Creating Animation Using The Timer Control

Adding A Communications Control To A Program

Setting Up The Receive And Transmit Buffers

Opening The Serial Port

Working With A Modem

Reading Data With The Communications Control

Sending Data With The Communications Control

Setting Up Communications Handshaking

Handling Communications Events

Closing The Serial Port

Adding A MonthView Control To Your Program

Getting Dates From A MonthView Control

Adding A DateTimePicker Control To Your Program

Using A DateTimePicker Control

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to cover the timer and communication controls that come with Visual Basic. In particular, we'll cover the timer control, the serial port communications control, and two controls that exist mostly for convenience: the MonthView control and the DateTimePicker control. Let's get an overview of these controls first.

The Timer Control

You use a timer control when you want to execute code at specific intervals. To use a timer, you add a timer control to your program (timers are one of the intrinsic controls that appear in the toolbox when you start Visual Basic) and set its `Interval` property. From then on, while the timer is enabled, it creates `Timer` events, which are handled in an event handling procedure, like `Timer1_Timer()`. You place the code you want executed each interval in that procedure.

To add a timer to your program, use the Timer Control tool in the toolbox, which is the seventh tool down on the left in Figure 13.1.



Figure 13.1 The Timer Control tool.

We should note, however, that there are a few issues about using the `Interval` property. Although measured in milliseconds (1/1000s of a second), events cannot actually occur faster than 18.2 times a second (this is the period of the computer's timer interrupt). The interval can be set to values between 0 (in which case nothing happens) and 64,767, which means that even the longest interval can't be much longer than 1 minute (about 64.8 seconds). Of course, you can design your code to wait for several intervals to pass before doing anything.

You shouldn't count on a timer too closely if your task execution is dependent on exact intervals; if the system is busy executing long loops, intensive calculations, or drive, network, or port access (in which case software routinely disables the timer interrupt), your application may not get timer events as often as the `Interval` property specifies. That is to say, timer events are not guaranteed to happen exactly on time. If you need to be sure, your software should check the system clock when it needs to (using, for example, the Visual Basic `Time$` function), rather than try to keep track of time internally.

Another point here has to do with Windows programming philosophy. Using a timer can easily pull programmers back to thinking in terms of sequential programming (as in the DOS days), rather than event-oriented programming. When you use a timer, your code has a lot of control and can get a lot of execution time, because your code is called each time the timer ticks. However, that doesn't mean you should set a timer interval short and put in all kinds of loops. Remember that Windows is built around

user events, not programs that are designed to retain control for long periods of time. Other programs will probably be running at the same time as yours, so it's considerate not to use timers simply to wrest control from the environment.

With all that said, though, the timer is a uniquely powerful control, and we'll put it to use in this chapter.

The Communications Control

You use the Microsoft communications control to support serial port that is, modem communications. If you want to write your own modem package, this is where you start. You can use the communications control to do everything from dialing phone numbers to creating a full-fledged terminal program.

To add this control to your program, select the Project|Components menu item, click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens, select the Microsoft Comm Control entry, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. Doing so adds this control to the toolbox, as shown in Figure 13.2; the Communications Control tool is the eleventh tool down on the right.



Figure 13.2 The Communications Control tool.

When you use the communications control, you use a serial port in your computer. The mouse is usually connected to COM1, and the modem is usually connected to COM2. You set baud rate, parity, and so on, and then call another computer by issuing commands to your modem. After the connection is made, you can exchange data with the other computer.

Receiving And Transmitting

When a serial port is opened, your program creates receive and transmit buffers. To work with these buffers, the communications control supports a number of properties that can be set at design time using the control's property pages.

The InBufferSize and OutBufferSize properties hold the size of the input and output buffers, and the RThreshold and SThreshold properties set or return the number of characters that are received into the receive buffer before the OnRxmm event is fired (this event is used to monitor changes in communications states). We'll see these and other such properties in this chapter.

To establish a connection, you set the communications control's Port property to the serial port's number (usually 2), SetSettings property to the protocol settings you want (for example, 9600,N,8,1), and set RetOpen property to True. To start dialing, you send the appropriate commands to your modem.

Sending Data

To actually send data, you use `Output` property. You can either send data to your modem or to the other computer. For example, here's how you dial a phone number, by sending an ATDT string to your modem (that string is part of the standard Hayes-compatible command set used with modems; `vbCr` is a Visual Basic constant standing for the ASCII code for carriage return/line feed):

```
MSComm1.Output = "ATDT 555-1234" & vbCr
```

You can also send data this way, as we'll see in this chapter:

```
MSComm1.Output = "Here's some text!"
```

Reading Data

You read data when the OnComm event occurs. In the OnComm event handler, you use the CommEvent property to determine what happened. For example, when CommEvent is equal to comEvReceive, we've received data and can use the Input property. Here we fill a buffer with data that the communications control has received:

```
Private Static Sub MSComm1_OnComm( )
    Select Case MSComm1.CommEvent
        Case comEvReceive
            Dim Buffer As Variant
            Buffer = MSComm1.Input
    ...

```

Setting the InputLen property to some value means you'll get that number of bytes when you use the Input property (if those bytes are available). Setting InputLen to 0 makes the communications control read the entire contents of the receive buffer when you use Input. The EOFEnable property is used to indicate when an End Of File (EOF) character is found in the data input. If you set this property to True, it makes data input stop (and the OnComm event fire) when the EOF is encountered.

Finally, as each byte of data is received, the InBufferCount property is incremented by 1 (you use the InBufferCount property to get the number of bytes in the receive buffer). You can also clear the receive buffer by setting the value of this property to 0. You can monitor the number of bytes in the transmit buffer by using the OutBufferCount property. You can clear the transmit buffer by setting this value to 0.

We'll see all about the communications control, such as how to support handshaking and how to hang up, in this chapter.

The MonthView And DateTimePicker Controls

We'll also cover two more controls in this chapter the MonthView and DateTimePicker controls (see Figure 13.3). These controls really exist just to make life a little easier for the user, and they're not all that complex.

 Figure 13.3 The MonthView Control and the DateTimePicker Control tools.

In particular, the MonthView control displays a calendar of the current month and lets

the user scroll to other months as well. The user can select a date or range of sequential dates in MonthView controls.

The DateTimePicker control allows the user to specify a date or time, as its name implies. DateTimePickers can display a MonthView as a drop-down control, or the current time together with an updown control to let users select the time they want. The control `sUpDown` property determines which mode the control is in. When `UpDown` is False, the control is in drop-down calendar mode (that's the default). When the `UpDown` property is True, the DateTimePicker is in time format mode.

To add these controls to your program, select the Project|Components menu item, click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens, select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls-2 entry, and click OK to close the Components dialog box. This adds both these controls to the toolbox, as shown in Figure 13.3. The MonthView Control tool is the thirteenth tool down on the left in Figure 13.3, and the DateTimePicker Control tool is the tool just to the right of the MonthView Control tool.

That's it for our overview it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Timer Control To A Program

The Testing Department is calling again. The users of your new program, SuperDuperDataCrunchturn out to be real clock-watchers. In fact, they'd like your program to display a clock so they don't get neck strain by looking up at the wall every now and then. Can you add a clock to your program?

You can, using the timer control. You add a timer control to your program just as you would any other intrinsic control you just click the Timer Control tool and draw the timer on your form. The timer control is invisible when the program runs, so the size and location of the control don't matter too much.

Now that you've added a timer, how do you get it running? See the next topic.

Initializing A Timer Control

Now that you've installed a timer control in your program how do you get it started? You use these two properties:

- " Enabled determines whether or not the timer creates `Timer` events.
- " Interval sets the number of milliseconds between `Timer` events.

When you place a timer in your program, you can set `Enabled` property to False, which means no `Timer` events will occur. When you want to start the timer, you can set `Enabled` to True.

TIP: Note that a timer ~~Enabled~~ property is different from other controls ~~Enabled~~ properties; the timer ~~Enabled~~ property makes ~~Timer~~ events occur or not, whereas other ~~Enabled~~ properties make controls accessible or inaccessible to the user.

The **Interval** property sets the interval between ~~Timer~~ events. Although measured in milliseconds (1/1000s of a second), ~~Timer~~ events cannot actually occur faster than 18.2 times a second. The interval can be between 0 (in which case nothing happens) and 64,767, which means that even the longest interval can't be much longer than 1 minute (about 64.8 seconds); however, you can design your code to wait for several intervals to pass before doing anything.

WARNING! If the system is busy, your application may not ~~Timer~~ events as often as the **Interval** property specifies. That is, the interval is not guaranteed to elapse exactly on time. To be more sure of accuracy, ~~Timer~~ event handler should check the system clock when needed.

Now that you've set up your timer as you want it, how do you ~~Timer~~ events? See the next topic in this chapter for the details.

Handling Timer Events

Well, you've set your timer's **Interval** property and set its ~~Enabled~~ property to True. Presumably, your timer is doing something but what?

The main event for timers is the ~~Timer~~ event, and double-clicking a timer at design time creates a handler function for that event:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
```

```
End Sub
```

All you need to do is to add the code you want executed to this procedure. For example, here we display the current time in a label named ~~Display~~ using the Visual Basic **Time\$** function:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Display.Caption = Time$
End Sub
```

This code will be called as often as the timer's **Interval** property specifies (although note that ~~Timer~~ events are not guaranteed to occur many other types of programs temporarily suspend the timer interrupt on occasion).

Formatting Times And Dates

When working with times and dates in Visual Basic, it's valuable knowing how to display them as strings. For example, you can use the Visual Basic\$ and Date\$ functions to get the time and date in string form, suitable for display:

```
Text1.Text = Time$
```

You can also use string comparisons here; for example, to check if the current time is past a time specified in string form, you can use code like this:

```
If (Time$ > AlarmSetting.Text) Then  
...  
End If
```

Besides Time\$ and Date\$, you can use Now. This function refers to the current time in a numeric way, and you can use comparisons this way:

```
If (Now > AlarmTime) Then  
...  
End If
```

To display the current date and time using Now, you use the Format\$ function. For example, this uses Format\$ and Now:

```
Format$(Now, "dddd, mmmm d, yy")
```

returns the string with the day of the week, the month, date, and year like this: Friday, January 1, 2000. The different format strings and what they do appear in Table 13.1 and some examples appear in Table 13.2 to make all this clearer.

Table
13.1
Date and
time
format Description
strings.
String

d	The one- or two-digit day.
dd	The two-digit day. Single-digit day values are preceded by a zero.

ddd	The three-character day-of-week abbreviation.
dddd	The full day-of-week name.
h	The one- or two-digit hour in 12-hour format.
hh	The two-digit hour in 12-hour format. Single-digit values are preceded by a zero.
H	The one- or two-digit hour in 24-hour format.
HH	The two-digit hour in 24-hour format. Single-digit values are preceded by a zero.
m	The one- or two-digit minute.
mm	The two-digit minute. Single-digit values are preceded by a zero.
M	The one- or two-digit month number.
MM	The two-digit month number. Single-digit values are preceded by a zero.
MMM	The three-character month abbreviation.
MMMM	The full month name.
s	The one- or two-digit seconds.
ss	The two-digit seconds. Single-digit values are proceeded by a zero.
AM/PM	The two-letter AM/PM abbreviation (that is, AM is displayed as AM).
y	The one-digit year (that is, 1999 would be displayed as 9).
yy	The last two digits of the year (that is, 1999 would be displayed as 99).
yyyy	The full year (that is, 1999 would be displayed as 1999).

Table 13.2 Formatted date and time examples.

Format Expression Result

Format\$(Now, m - d - yy)	1-1-00
Format\$(Now, m / d / yy)	1 / 1 / 00
Format\$(Now, mm - dd - yy)	01 /01 / 00
Format\$(Now, dddd, mmmm d, yyyy)	Friday, January 1, 2000
Format\$(Now, d mmm, yyyy)	1 Jan, 2000
Format\$(Now, hh:mm:ss mm/dd/yy)	01:00:00 01/01/00
Format\$(Now, hh:mm:ss AM/PM mm - dd - yy)	01:00:00 AM 01-01-00

Creating A Clock Program

Creating a clock in Visual Basic is easy with the timer control. To see how that works, just create a new project now and add a timer control `Timer1`. Set the timer's Interval property to 1000 (that is, a thousand milliseconds, or one second).

Next, add a label that covers most of the form and give it a large font, like 48-point Courier New. We'll display the time in that label each time the timer ticks, so add the `Timer1_Tick()` event handler now:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
End Sub
```

All we have to do when there's a `Timer` event is to update the clock, and we use the `VisualBasicTime$` function to do that:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Display.Caption = Time$
End Sub
```

That's all we need. Now the clock is functional, as shown in Figure 13.4.



Figure 13.4 A clock created with the timer control.

The code for this example is located in the `clock` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM. If you want to create more than a simple clock—an alarm clock, for example—see the following topics in this chapter.

Creating A Stopwatch

The Testing Department is calling. Users are concerned about the time your SuperDuperDataCrunch program takes in execution; can you add a stopwatch to the program to convince them it's really pretty fast? You think, a stopwatch?

Building a stopwatch is valuable to see how to work with elapsed time instead of simply system time. To build a stopwatch program, create a new Visual Basic project now and add two buttons, labeled `Start` and `Stop`, as well as a label control named `Display` (set the font in the label to something large, like 48-point Courier New). Also add a timer control `Timer1`, and set its `Enabled` property to `False` so it doesn't do anything until the user clicks the `Start` button.

Now when the user clicks the `Start` button `Command1`, we can store the current time using `Now` in a form-wide variable named `StartTime` (add `StartTime` to the

(General) section of the form), and we can start the timer by setting the ~~Enabled~~ property to True:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    StartTime = Now
    Timer1.Enabled = True
End Sub
```

When the user clicks the Stop button Command2, we can stop the timer:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Timer1.Enabled = False
End Sub
```

Finally, in the Timer event, we just display the time that has elapsed from the starting time, and that time is just the difference between the current value Now and the StartTime variable:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Display.Caption = Format$(Now - StartTime, "hh:mm:ss")
End Sub
```

That's it. The result of this code appears in Figure 13.5. Now we've created a stopwatch in Visual Basic. The code for this example is located in the stopwatch folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Figure 13.5 A stopwatch created with the timer control.

Creating An Alarm Clock

Your great-aunt is calling. Why can't you ever write a program that she can use? She doesn't use databases, spreadsheets, or word processors. You say, what else is there? She says, how about a nice alarm clock?

You can build an alarm clock using the timer control in Visual Basic. To see how to do that, create a new program now and add a ~~timer1~~ to it, setting the timer's Interval property to 1000 (that is, 1 second). Add a label named ~~Display~~ and set the font in the label large enough to read easily (we'll use 48-point Courier New). We'll need some way of setting when the alarm should go off, so add a text box named ~~AlarmSetting~~. We'll also need some way of turning the alarm on or off, so add two option buttons in a control array ~~OnButton~~; give ~~OnButton(1)~~ the caption `Alarm On` and ~~OnButton(2)~~ the caption `Alarm Off`.

Now we're ready to write some code. Add a form-wide Boolean variable to the (General) section of the form named ~~AlarmOn~~. We'll set this variable to True when the user clicks the `Alarm On` button:

```
Sub OnButton_Click(Index As Integer)
    If (Index = 1) Then
        AlarmOn = True
    ...
End Sub
```

and we'll set `AlarmOn` to False when the user clicks the `Alarm Off` button:

```
Sub OnButton_Click(Index As Integer)
    If (Index = 1) Then
        AlarmOn = True
    Else
        AlarmOn = False
    End If
```

```
End Sub
```

Now in the `Timer1_Timer` event handler, we just check if the current time is past the setting in the `AlarmSetting` text box and if `AlarmOn` is True (notice that we can do a direct string comparison with `Time$` and `AlarmSetting.Text`):

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    If (Time$ > AlarmSetting.Text And AlarmOn) Then
    ...
End Sub
```

If the alarm is supposed to sound, we just use the `Beep` procedure, which will beep each time `Timer1_Timer()` is called (in other words, once a second) until the user turns the alarm off:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    If (Time$ > AlarmSetting.Text And AlarmOn) Then
        Beep
    End If
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, we just display the current time in the `Display` label:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    If (Time$ > AlarmSetting.Text And AlarmOn) Then
        Beep
    End If
    Display.Caption = Time$
End Sub
```

As an added touch, you can restrict user input in the `AlarmSetting` text box to valid characters. Here's how you restrict user input in a text box when you set the `KeyAscii` argument to 0, that cancels the struck key:

```
Sub AlarmSetting_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    Dim Key As String
    Key = Chr$(KeyAscii)
    If ((Key < "0" Or Key > "9") And Key <> ":" ) Then
        Beep
        KeyAscii = 0
    End If
End Sub
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

And that's it now we've got a functioning alarm clock, as shown in Figure 13.6. The code for this example is located in the alarm folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

 **Figure 13.6** An alarm clock built on the timer control.

Creating Animation Using The Timer Control

A common use for the timer control is to create graphics animation, because the way you create animation is by displaying successive frames of the animation sequence at intervals. That's a good job for the timer control.

To see how this works, we'll create an example now. In this example, we'll just switch back and forth between two simple images, image1.bmp and image2.bmp, which are simply strips of solid color, red and blue.

To store those images in our program, add an image list ~~cImageList1~~, now.

You add image list controls with the Project|Components menu item; click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens, select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item, and click on OK to close the Components box.

Draw a new image list ~~contrd\~~imageList1, and right-click it, selecting Properties in the menu that opens. We click the Images tab in the image list's property pages, and we use the Insert Picture button to insert the two images in image1.bmp and image2.bmp into the image list.

Next, add a timer control ~~Timer1~~; set itsInterval property to 1000 (in other words, 1 second), and set itsEnabled property to False. Also add a command button, Command1, with the caption Start Animation, and a picture ~~Picture1~~, setting the picture box's AutoSize property to True so that it resizes itself to fit our images.

That's it we're ready to write some code. We start the animation when the user clicks the Start Animation button by enabling the timer:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Timer1.Enabled = True
End Sub
```

We'll keep track of the current image with a Boolean variable ~~name~~image1; if this Boolean variable is True, we'll display the first image in the image list:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
```

```

Static blnImage1 As Boolean

If blnImage1 Then
    Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
...

```

Otherwise, we'll display the second image in the image list:

```

Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean

    If blnImage1 Then
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
    Else
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(2).Picture
    End If
...

```

Finally, we toggle blnImage1:

```

Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean
    If blnImage1 Then
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
    Else
        Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(2).Picture
    End If
    blnImage1 = Not blnImage1
End Sub

```

And that's all we need. When you run the program and click the Start Animation button, shown in Figure 13.7, the animation starts: the picture box flashes red and blue images once a second. Our animation example is a success.

 Figure 13.7 Graphics animation with the timer control in Visual Basic.

The code for this example is located in the coloranimation folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Adding A Communications Control To A Program

The Testing Department is calling. Wouldn't it be great if users of your program could call in directly to the company's bulletin board? Hmm, you think, how do you do that?

To support serial communications, you use the Microsoft communications control. Adding this control to your program is easy; just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Microsoft Comm Control entry, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
4. Following the preceding steps adds this control to the toolbox; draw it on your program's form now. This control is invisible at runtime, so the control's size and location don't matter very much.

Now that you've added the control, how do you set it up and get it working? Take a look at those topics coming up in this chapter.

Setting Up The Receive And Transmit Buffers

When a port is opened, the program creates receive and transmit buffers. To manage these buffers, the communications control has a number of properties that you set at design time using the control's property pages. For example, it's probably not a good idea to have a communications event (OnComm event) for every byte you read; instead, you can set the RThreshold property to the number of bytes you want to read before triggering that event. The communications control's buffer management properties are InBufferSize, OutBufferSize, RThreshold, SThreshold, InputLen, and EOFEnable.

InBufferSize And OutBufferSize

The InBufferSize and OutBufferSize properties indicate how much memory is allocated to the receive and transmit buffers. By default, InBufferSize is 1024 and OutBufferSize is 512, although you can set them as you like. If your buffer size is too small, you run the risk of overflowing the buffer (unless you use handshaking see that topic later in this chapter).

RThreshold And SThreshold

The RThreshold and SThreshold properties set or return the number of bytes that are received into the receive and transmit buffers before the OnComm event is fired. The OnComm event is the important one for the communications control and is used to monitor changes in communications states. For example, when your program receives

more than RThreshold bytes, an OnComm event occurs, and the control's CommEvent property will hold the value omEvReceive (Setting the value for each of these properties to 0 prevents the OnComm event from occurring.)

InputLen And EOFEnable

You can read data in chunks of specific length by setting the InputLen property; this property sets how many bytes you want to read when you use the Input property. When you set this property to 0 (the default), the communications control will read the entire contents of the receive buffer when you use the Input property. The EOFEnable property is used to indicate when an End Of File (EOF) character is found while reading data. Setting this property to True makes data input stop when an EOF is found and triggers the OnComm event.

Opening The Serial Port

Before you can work with the serial port and call another computer, you have to open that port. There are three properties that you use with the communications control to do that:

- " CommPort sets and returns the communications port number.
- " Settings sets and returns the baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits as a string.
- " PortOpen sets and returns the state of a communications port. Also opens and closes a port.

Here's an example where we open COM2, which is usually the modem port, setting it to 9600 bps, no parity, 8 data bits, and 1 stop bit:

```
MSComm1.CommPort = 2
MSComm1.Settings = "9600,N,8,1"
MSComm1.PortOpen = True
```

That's all there is to it. When you're ready to close the port again, set the PortOpen property to False.

TIP: To close a connection with another computer, you usually do more than just set PortOpen to False. For example, if you're logged into a shell account on that computer, you should log off by sending the appropriate command (such as logoff), either by typing that command or having your program send it. To hang up, send your modem the ATH command, followed by carriage return Cr.

Working With A Modem

To dial another computer, you send command strings to the modem. How do you do

that? You can send standard Hayes-type commands to your modem using the communications control's Output property this way, where we're instructing the modem to dial a number:

```
MSComm1.Output = "ATDT 555-1234" & vbCr
```

In this case, the command AT starts the connection, D dials the number, and T specifies Touch-Tone instead of pulse dialing. Note that a carriage return character (vbCr) must be added when using text strings with Output. (You do not, however, need to add the return character when outputting byte arrays.)

If a command is successful, your modem will usually send back an OK result code, and you can look for that result with the Input property.

TIP: For a list of Hayes-compatible commands, check your modem documentation—the complete list of commands your modem understands should be there.

Reading Data With The Communications Control

You use the Input property to get data from a communication control's receive buffer. For example, if you wanted to retrieve data from the receive buffer and display it in a text box, you might use the following code:

```
Text1.Text = MSComm1.Input
```

To retrieve the entire contents of the receive buffer, you must first set the InputLen property to 0 at design time or runtime. Otherwise, you'll get the number of bytes specified in the InputLen property.

You can receive incoming data as either text or binary data by setting the InputMode property to either comInputModeText or comInputModeBinary. The data will be either formatted as string or as binary data in a byte array (the default is comInputModeText). Also, it's worth noting that when every byte of data is received, the BufferCount property is incremented by 1, which means that you can get the total number of bytes waiting for you by checking this property.

TIP: You can clear the receive buffer by setting the value of BufferCount to 0.

You usually use the Input property with the CommEvent property in the OnComm event handler (see Handling Communications Events later in this chapter). For example, here's how we read input data into a buffer in the OnComm event handler, after checking the CommEvent property to make sure we actually received data:

```
Private Static Sub MSComm1_OnComm( )
    Select Case MSComm1.CommEvent
        Case comEvReceive
            Dim Buffer As Variant
            Buffer = MSComm1.Input
    ...

```

Sending Data With The Communications Control

To send data with the communications control, you use the Output property in fact, you use this property to send both data to another computer and commands to your modem. If you set this property to a string, the data is sent as text; if you set it to binary data (a binary array), that data is sent in binary format.

Here are some examples. In this case, we're directing the modem to dial a number using a Hayes-compatible modem command:

```
MSComm1.Output = "ATDT 555-1234" & vbCr
```

In this case, we're sending a text string to another computer:

```
MSComm1.Output = "Here's the text!" & vbCr
```

And here we're reading records from a file and sending them through the modem to another computer:

```
FileBuffer = Space$(BufferSize)
Get #1, , FileBuffer
MSComm1.Output = FileBuffer
```

TIP: You can watch the number of bytes in the transmit buffer by using the OutBufferCount property, and you can clear the transmit buffer by setting this value to 0.

Setting Up Communications Handshaking

Handshaking invokes a data-transmission protocol (which, for example, makes sure that data is not sent too fast or doesn't overflow the receive buffer). The communications control can handle several different types of handshaking.

In particular, you set the `Handshaking` property to the handshaking protocol you want to use; the default value is to have no handshaking (`Handshaking = comNone`). Here are the possible handshaking protocols you can use with the handshaking protocol:

- " comNone0; no handshaking (the default)
- " comXOnXOff 1; XOn/XOff handshaking
- " comRTS2; RTS/CTS (Request To Send/Clear To Send) handshaking
- " comRTSXOnXOff 3; both Request To Send and XOn/XOff handshaking

Often the communications protocol itself handles handshaking, which means that setting this property to anything but `comNone` can result in conflicts.

WARNING! Here's an important note: If you set handshaking to either `comRTS` or `comRTSXOnXOff`, also set the `RTSEnabled` property to True. If you don't, you will be able to connect and send, but not receive, data.

Handling Communications Events

To handle communications events (and errors), you use the `OnComm` event and the `CommEvent` property. The `OnComm` event is very useful, because you can keep track of just about everything going on with the communications control. In the `OnComm` event, you can determine what happened by checking the `CommEvent` property, which will hold one of these values:

- " comEvSend1; there are fewer than `Threshold` number of characters in the transmit buffer.
- " comEvReceive2; received `Threshold` number of characters. This event is generated continuously until you use the `Put` property to remove the data from the receive buffer.
- " comEvCTS3; change in Clear To Send line.
- " comEvDSR4; change in Data Set Ready line. This event is only fired when DSR changes from 1 to 0.
- " comEvCD5; change in Carrier Detect line.

" comEvRing 6; ring detected. Some universal asynchronous receiver-transmitters (UARTs) may not support this event.

" comEvEOF 7; End Of File (ASCII character 26) character received.

The OnComm event also occurs for the following errors (these values will be in the CommEvent property):

" comEventBreak 1001; Break Signal. A break signal was received.

" comEventCTSTO 1002; Clear To Send Timeout. The Clear To Send line was low for CTSTimeout number of milliseconds while trying to transmit a character.

" comEventDSRTO 1003; Data Set Ready Timeout. The Data Set Ready line was low for DSRTIMEOUT number of milliseconds while trying to transmit a character.

" comEventFrame 1004; Framing Error. The hardware detected a framing error.

" comEventOverrun 1006; Port Overrun. A character was not read from the hardware before the next character arrived and was lost.

" comEventCDTO 1007; Carrier Detect Timeout. The Carrier Detect line was low for CDTIMEOUT number of milliseconds while trying to transmit a character. Carrier Detect is also known as the Receive Line Signal Detect (RLSD)

" comEventRxOver 1008; Receive Buffer Overflow. There is no room in the receive buffer.

" comEventRxParity 1009; Parity Error. The hardware detected a parity error in transmission.

" comEventTxFull 1010; Transmit Buffer Full. The transmit buffer was full while trying to queue a character.

" comEventDCB 1011; unexpected error retrieving Device Control Block (DCB) for the port.

Here's an example using OnComm. In this case, we check for a receive event, CommEvent = comEvReceive and use the Input property to store the received data in a buffer:

```
Private Static Sub MSComm1_OnComm()
```

```
    Select Case MSComm1.CommEvent
```

```
        Case comEvReceive
```

```
            Dim Buffer As Variant
```

```
            Buffer = MSComm1.Input
```

```
...
```

Closing The Serial Port

To close a serial port, you set the `PortOpen` property to False. Note that although doing so closes the serial port, you usually do more than just close the serial port to close a connection with another computer. For example, if you're connected to a shell account on another computer, you should log out first, then send the Hayes-compatible ATH command to your modem to hang up before setting `PortOpen` to False.

Here's an example. When the user clicks `command1`, we set up the serial port COM2 and dial a number:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MSComm1.CommPort = 2
    MSComm1.Settings = "9600,N,8,1"
    MSComm1.PortOpen = True

    MSComm1.Output = "ATDT 555-1234" & vbCrLf
End Sub
```

To hang up, we send the Hayes-compatible ATH command to the modem and set PortOpen to False to close the serial port:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    MSComm1.Output = "ATH" & vbCrLf
    MSComm1.PortOpen = False
End Sub
```

Adding A MonthView Control To Your Program

The Testing Department is on the line again. Your financial planning program, BigBucks4U, is great, but what about displaying a calendar so the user can plan dates far into the future. You start thinking about the algorithm for determining the day of the week for any date throughout history but there's a better way.

You can use a MonthView control. That control displays the current month and lets the user scroll through other months as well. Just think of it as a handy calendar, because that's what it's designed to be.

To add a MonthView control to your program, just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls-2 entry, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. This adds both the MonthView and DateTimePicker controls to the toolbox.
4. Just draw the control as you would any other control in your form.

Now that you've added this control, how do you use it? See the next topic.

Getting Dates From A MonthView Control

When the user clicks a date in a MonthView control, the control creates a DateClick event. We can take advantage of that event to display the date the user clicked in a text box, using the MonthView Day, Month, and Year properties:

```
Private Sub MonthView1_DateClick(ByVal DateClicked As Date)
    Text1.Text = MonthView1.Month & "/" & MonthView1.Day & _
                " / " & MonthView1.Year
End Sub
```

In fact, we've done too much here. You can do the same thing with the MonthView's Value property, which holds the current date in mm/dd/yy format:

```
Private Sub MonthView1_DateClick(ByVal DateClicked As Date)
    Text1.Text = MonthView1.Value
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 13.8 (the red circle indicates today's date).



Figure 13.8 Reading a date from a clicked MonthView control.

Notice also that we are passed a Visual Basic object in this procedure, corresponding to the date the user clicked. You can use the `Format$()` function as outlined earlier in this chapter to format the date held in that object in any way you wish.

The code for this example is located in the calendar folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: If you enable a MonthView's `MultiSelect` property by setting it to True, the user can select a number of dates in the MonthView (by using the Ctrl and Shift keys with the mouse). You can use the `SelStart` and `SelEnd` properties to determine the selected range.

Adding A DateTimePicker Control To Your Program

An easy way of letting the user select a date is to use a DateTimePicker control. The DateTimePicker control allows the user to specify a date or time. DateTimePickers can display a MonthView as a drop-down control, or the current time with an updown control to let the user select the time they want.

In particular, the control's `UpDown` property determines which mode the control is in:

- " `UpDown = False` means the control is in drop-down calendar mode (the default).
- " `UpDown = True` means the DateTimePicker is in time format mode.

To add a DateTimePicker control to your program, just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls-2 entry, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. This adds both the MonthView and DateTimePicker controls to the toolbox.
4. Just draw the control as you would any other control in your form.

5. Set the UpDown property as discussed in the preceding list to select calendar mode or time format mode.

Now that you've added the control, how do you use it? See the next topic.

Using A DateTimePicker Control

We'll see how to let the user select a time using a DateTimePicker control here. Just add a DateTimePicker to your program and set its UpDown property to True (which means we'll let the user set the time, not the date).

DateTimePicker controls have a Change event, and we'll make use of that event to catch new time settings as the user makes them. In this case, we'll just display the new time in a text box this way, using the DateTimePicker's Value property:

```
Private Sub DTPicker1_Change()
    Text1.Text = DTPicker1.Value
End Sub
```

That's all we need. Now the user can edit the hour, minute, and second of the time displayed in the DateTimePicker, and as soon as they make any change, we'll display the new value in the text box, as shown in Figure 13.9. Our DateTimePicker example is a success. The code for this example is located in the timepicker folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 13.9 Using a DateTimePicker control.

Chapter 14

The Frame, Label, Shape, And Line Controls

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding A Frame To A Program

Setting Frame Size And Location

Dragging And Dropping Controls

Grouping Controls In A Frame

Adding A Label To A Program

Using Labels Instead Of Text Boxes

Formatting Text In Labels

Aligning Text In Labels

Handling Label Control Events

Using Labels To Give Access Keys To Controls Without Captions

Adding A Shape Control To A Program

Drawing Rectangles

Drawing Squares

Drawing Ovals

Drawing Circles

Drawing Rounded Rectangles

Drawing Rounded Squares

Setting Shape Borders: Drawing Width, Dashes, And Dots

Filling Shapes

Drawing A Shape Without The IDE Grid

Moving Shapes At Runtime

Adding A Line Control To A Program

Drawing Thicker, Dotted, And Dashed Lines

Drawing A Line Without The IDE Grid

Changing A Line Control At Runtime

Using Form Methods To Draw Lines

Using Form Methods To Draw Circles

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to examine the controls you use to organize and label other controls in a form: the frame, label, shape, and line controls. You use the frame control to create a labeled box in which you can place the following types of controls:

- " Label controls to display noneditable text usually used to describe other controls or control groups
- " Shape controls to draw circles and boxes in a form
- " Line controls to draw lines

These controls are used primarily at design time, but they have their runtime uses as well, as we'll see. All these controls are intrinsic controls that is, they appear in the toolbox when Visual Basic starts and we'll take a closer look at all these controls now.

The Frame Control

You usually use the frame control to group controls together into a recognizable group. This control appears as a box with a label at upper left. You can make the controls in a frame into a functional group as well, such as when you group option buttons together. When you add option buttons to a frame, those buttons function in concert; when you click one, all the others are deselected. And those option buttons are separate from any other group of option buttons in the form.

The Frame Control tool appears as the third tool down on the left in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 14.1.



Figure 14.1 The Frame Control tool.

The Label Control

You use label controls to display text that you don't want the user to change directly. As their name implies, you can use these controls to display text that labels other parts of the form that don't have their own captions. For example, you might label a picture

box something like Current image , or a text box New setting .

Despite their name, label controls are not static. You can change the text in a label at runtime by setting its `Caption` property, and in fact that's often a very useful thing to do if you don't want the user to change that text. For example, we'll see how to build a stopwatch example in this chapter that displays the time in a label control. The label control in that example may be far from what you think of as a standard label, because the text in the label will change, and that text will be large 48 point. It's wise to remember that labels can indeed display any kind of text you can even format, word wrap, or size a label to fit its text. All in all, labels are one of the most useful Visual Basic controls. They can even have `Click` events and access keys, as we'll see in this chapter.

The Label Control tool appears in the toolbox in Figure 14.2 as the second tool down on the left. Just about every Visual Basic programmer is familiar with this control, but we'll see some new label tricks in this chapter.



Figure 14.2 The Label Control tool.

The Shape Control

The shape control is a graphical control. You can use this control to draw predefined colored and filled shapes, including rectangles, squares, ovals, circles, rounded rectangles, or rounded squares.

You use the shape control at design time to draw shapes in a form. There's no great programming complexity here; you just use this control as a design element to add rectangles, circles, and so on to your forms. In this way, the shape control is a little like the frame control; however, shapes can't act as control containers (for example, you can't group option buttons together with shapes or move the controls inside them en masse). Still, shapes certainly come in more varieties than frames do.

Although shape controls are one of the Visual Basic intrinsic controls, Visual Basic programmers remain largely ignorant of them. That's too bad, because you can create some nice effects with shapes, as we'll see here.

The Shape Control tool appears in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 14.3 as the ninth tool down on the left.



Figure 14.3 The Shape Control and Line Control tools.

The Line Control

Like the shape control, the line control is a graphical control. You use it to display

horizontal, vertical, or diagonal lines in a form. You can use these controls at design time as a design element or at runtime to alter the original line you drew.

Drawing lines is easy you just click the Line Control tool in the toolbox, press the mouse button when the cursor is at the line's start location on the form, and drag the mouse to the end position of the line. When you release the mouse, the line appears with sizing handles at each end that you can use to change the line as you like. You can also change a line at runtime by changing its X1, Y1, and X2, Y2 properties.

You can draw lines with this control in forms, picture boxes, and frames. In fact, lines drawn with the line control stay visible even if its `AutoRedraw` property is set to False. (The line control even has its `Visible` property, which means you can make lines appear and disappear.) The Line Control tool appears in the toolbox in Figure 14.3 as the ninth tool down on the right.

Form Drawing Methods

Besides using the preceding controls to draw lines and circles in forms, you can actually use methods into the form to do much the same thing. Because this is a chapter about designing and organizing controls on forms, we'll take a look at those methods as well.

That's it for the overview; it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Frame To A Program

The Testing Department is calling again. Do you really need 200 buttons in your program? Of course they say. They say, well, can you please organize them into groups? Hmm, you think, how do you do that?

You can use frames to group controls together in forms or picture boxes. To draw a frame, you just select the Frame Control tool in the toolbox as you would for any control. When you add a frame to a form or picture box, there are a few things you should know. To set the text that appears at upper left in a frame, you set its `sCaption` property (and you can change the caption at runtime by setting this property). You can make frames appear flat or 3D (the default) by setting their `Appearance` property. You can also give frames tool tips (the explanatory text that appears in a small yellow window when the mouse cursor rests over a control) by setting their `ToolTipText` property.

For example, we've given the left frame in Figure 14.4 the caption Day of the week and the tool tip for the day here.



Figure 14.4 Organizing controls with frames.

TIP: To group option buttons together in a frame, see Grouping Controls In A Frame later in this chapter.

Setting Frame Size And Location

Setting a frame's height and width is easy just set the `Height` and `Width` properties at design time or runtime. You can set the frame's location in its container (that is, a form or picture box) with its `Left` and `Top` properties, or by using its `Move` method.

TIP: The frame contains other controls, such as option buttons, they move with the frame.

For example, here's how you use a frame's `Move` method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```
Frame1.Move Frame1.Left + 1000
```

```
End Sub
```

For more on dragging frames, take a look at the next topic.

Dragging And Dropping Controls

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. The way you've set up your controls in your program is fine but what if users want to move them around at runtime? Shouldn't they be able to do that?

You drag and drop frames just as you do any other control, and dragging frames also drags all the controls within that frame, so we'll take a look at how to drag controls now.

To start a drag operation, you use the `Control.Drag` method:

`Control.Drag` action

Here, the `action` parameter can take these values:

- " vbCancel 0; cancels drag operation
- " vbBeginDrag 1; begins dragging object
- " vbEndDrag 2; ends dragging and drops object

Let's see this at work. For example, when the user drags a `Frame1`, in our program, we catch the `MouseDown` event first:

```
Private Sub Frame1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As _  
Single, Y As Single)
```

```
End Sub
```

When the control is dropped, we'll get the new mouse location at the upper left of the control. However, because the mouse was originally pressed at some location inside the control, and not at its upper left corner, we'll need to know that original mouse location before we move the control's upper left corner. We'll store that mouse location inside the control in `intXOffset, intYOffset`:

```
Private Sub Frame1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As _  
Single, Y As Single)  
    intXOffset = X  
    intYOffset = Y  
    ...  
End Sub
```

Declare these new variables as form-wide variables in the (General) section of the form:

```
Dim intXOffset As Integer
Dim intYOffset As Integer
```

Then we start the drag operation of the control itself with `Drag` method:

```
Private Sub Frame1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    intXOffset = X
    intYOffset = Y
    Frame1.Drag 1
End Sub
```

When the control is dropped on the form, we just move the upper left of the control to the mouse location minus the offset of the mouse in the control (this avoids making the control's upper left corner appear to jump to the mouse location). Doing so looks like this in code:

```
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Source.Move X - intXOffset, Y - intYOffset
End Sub
```

There's one more thing to consider here users may just move the frame a little distance, in which case they are actually dropping the control on top of itself. In this case, the new mouse position we're passed is relative to the upper left of the control, so we have to add `Left` and `Top` values to the mouse location to get final coordinates:

```
Private Sub Frame1_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Source.Move Source.Left + X - intXOffset, Source.Top + Y - intYOffset
End Sub
```

That's it when you run the program, you can drag `Frame1`, the left frame in Figure 14.5, as you like. Our drag and drop example is a success.



Figure 14.5 Dragging a frame control with all the controls in it.

The code for this example is located in the dragdrop folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Grouping Controls In A Frame

The Testing Department is calling again. Using option buttons to let users specify months and days of the week is OK, but why can they only click one option button at a time? Shouldn't they be able to specify both day of the week and the month?

You can make option buttons function together in separate groups. Unless you set up a frame (or picture box) to hold the option buttons, however, they'll all be on the form, which means they'll be in the same group.

WARNING! If you draw a control outside the frame and then try to move it inside, the control will be on top of the frame, not in it, which means the control will not be grouped with other controls in the frame.

To group controls like option buttons, first draw the frame control, and then draw the controls inside the frame.

TIP: At design time, you can also align the controls in a frame. Just select multiple controls by holding down the Ctrl key, and use the Format menu to align the controls or set their spacing uniformly.

We already developed a good example of grouping controls in our chapter on option buttons and checkboxes, and we'll review it here. In that example, we created a tour package program that lets users select from one of four tour packages. When they clicked one of the four option buttons representing each of the four packages, a series of checkboxes in another frame are checked to indicate what cities are in that tour package, as shown in Figure 14.6.



Figure 14.6 Grouping controls using frames.

As you can see in Figure 14.6, we've grouped the controls into two frames that have the captions **Tour** and **Cities**. The option buttons and checkboxes each function as a control group; when the user selects a tour package by clicking an option button, the program displays the cities in that tour in the checkboxes. Because the option buttons function as a group, only one option button may be selected at a time.

The code for this example is located in the tourpackage folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Adding A Label To A Program

The Testing Department is calling again. What are all those text boxes in your new program, SuperDuperDataCrunch? You explain patiently that they are there to help users with financial planning and let them enter current value, interest rate, time period, taxable base, and so on. Well, they say, you better label those text boxes so users know what they are. Hmm, you think, label them?

You can label controls without the `Caption` property, like text boxes, with the label control. You simply use the Label Control tool in the toolbox to add a label to your form and set its `Caption` property to display the label you want. You can size the label as desired at design time using the sizing handles that appear around a label when you select it, or at runtime using its `Top`, `Left`, `Width`, and `Height` properties.

As an example, take a look at Figure 14.7. There, we've used labels to describe what value each of six text boxes are supposed to hold. In this way, labels can make your program a great deal easier to work with.



Figure 14.7 Labeling text boxes with label controls.

WARNING! Don't forget that you can set labels' captions at runtime simply by changing their `Caption` property. In other words, labels can display text just like text boxes can, except that you can't edit it, and the text appears as though it's directly on the form. For more on this, see the next topic.

Using Labels Instead Of Text Boxes

There are several advantages to using labels instead of text boxes in a Visual Basic program. Labels display read-only text (although you can make text boxes read-only by setting their `Locked` property to `True`), and they give the appearance of text directly on the form, which can look much better than a text box on occasion.

Let's see an example. In the stopwatch program we created in our chapter on timers, we used a label to display elapsed time. When the user clicked one button, we set a form-wide variable `StartTime`, to the current time using the `Now` function, and we enabled a timer `Timer1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    StartTime = Now
    Timer1.Enabled = True
End Sub
```

When the user clicks another button, we stop the stopwatch by disabling the timer:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Timer1.Enabled = False
End Sub
```

In the `Timer1_Timer()` subroutine, which is called by the timer every second, we display the elapsed time in a label named `Display`:

```
Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Display.Caption = Format$(Now - StartTime, "hh:mm:ss")
End Sub
```

You might think it odd to display time in a label, but we set the label's font size to 48 point (and its font to Courier New), which makes a very satisfactory display, as you can see in Figure 14.8.



Figure 14.8 Displaying time in a label control.

In this way, we've used a label to display text instead of a text box, because the user can't edit the text in the label, and in this case the label looks like a more integral part of the program than a text box would. The code for this example is located in the stopwatch folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Formatting Text In Labels

When you add labels to a form, you can make the label match the text's size or wrap as needed by setting these label control properties:

- " `AutoSize` makes the label size itself to fit the text.
- " `WordWrap` enables word wrap if lines of text are too long.

In addition, you can format the text in a label with these properties, making the text appear in any font or font size, or with attributes like bold or underline:

- " `FontBold`
- " `FontItalic`
- " `FontName`
- " `FontStrikeThru`
- " `FontUnderline`

Keep in mind that you can use labels as a read-only text box, so formatting the text can be a very useful thing to do.

Aligning Text In Labels

As with text boxes, you can align text in labels. To do that, you just set the **Alignment** property at design time or runtime. Here are the possible values for the **Alignment** property:

- " VbLeftJustify 0 (the default); text is left-aligned
- " VbRightJustify 1; text is right-aligned
- " VbCenter 2; text is centered

For example, if you're writing a calculator program and have a column of right-justified text boxes above a label that displays a running sum, you can also right-justify the label to match the controls above it.

Handling Label Control Events

Here's something that even experienced Visual Basic programmers often don't know: labels have events like Click and DblClick (although they don't have any keystroke-handling events). Using these events can be a good thing if you're using a label control as more than just a label for example, to reset a setting of some kind.

Here's an example using the DblClick event. We developed a stopwatch program in our chapter on timers (Chapter 13) and displayed the elapsed time in a label named **Display** in that program. To make life easier for users, we can let them just double-click that label to reset the stopwatch to 00:00:00. Doing so is easy; we just add an event handle for the DblClick event:

```
Private Sub Display_DblClick()
```

```
End Sub
```

To reset the stopwatch, we just use the Visual Basic Now function to set the start time, held in a variable named **StartTime**, to the current time:

```
Private Sub Display_DblClick()
    StartTime = Now
End Sub
```

And that's it. Now when the user double-clicks the stopwatch's display, the stopwatch is reset to 00:00:00. We've made effective use of a label's DblClick event.

Using Labels To Give Access Keys To Controls Without Captions

The Testing Department is calling again. The old thorny issue of keyboard access has come up. Theoretically, they say, users should be able to use your program with just the keyboard. Fine, you say, we can add access keys to all the button captions so the user can click a button the focus just by pressing Alt + the access key (just like menu items). Don't forget to do this:

to all the text boxes, the testing department says. You think you give an access key to text box?

This is where a useful aspect of labels comes in handy. In fact, this aspect of the label control is just to handle this problem. You can give access keys to controls just by placing an ampersand (&) in the caption in front of the letter you want to make the access key bi can you do that if a control (like a text box) has no caption property?

Here's the way you do it: you give the access key to a label control and then make sure the control you want to give the focus to with that access key is next in the tab order (that is, has the next highest TabIndex property value). Because labels cannot accept the focus themselves, this is a neat feature: when the user presses Alt + the access key, the label passes the focus on to the next control. In fact, you can give even controls without caption properties access keys.

WARNING! When you use access keys, make sure you set the `Label1.Mnemonic` property to True (the default), or the access key won't be enabled.

As an example, we've given the two labels in Figure 14.9 access keys. When the user presses Alt + the access key above a text box, the focus is set to that text box, because those text boxes follow the individual labels in the tab order.



Figure 14.9 Using access keys in labels to give the focus to text boxes.

Now we're using access keys with text boxes.

Adding A Shape Control To A Program

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Can't you jazz up the appearance of your program little? How about something to give it a little pizzazz? Looking around, you happen to notice the `Shape` control. OK, you say, no problem.

You use the shape control at design time to draw shapes on a form or picture box. The shapes you draw are rectangles, squares, ovals, circles, rounded rectangles, and rounded squares.

At runtime, you can access and change the shape control's properties like `Top`, `Width`, `Height`, `BackColor`, `FillStyle`, or `FillColor`, and use its methods, like `Move` or `Refresh`. However, shape controls have no events, so they can't respond directly to user actions like clicks.

You draw a shape using the Shape Control tool, which appears in the Visual Basic toolbox when Visual Basic starts. Just draw the shape as you want it (it starts as a rectangle). To set the shape's type (for example, a rectangle, square, oval, and so on), you set the `Shape` property to one of the following values:

- " `VbShapeRectangle0` (the default); rectangle
- " `VbShapeSquare1`; square

- " VbShapeOval2; oval
- " VbShapeCircle3; circle
- " VbShapeRoundedRectangle4; rounded rectangle
- " VbShapeRoundedSquare5; rounded square

One important use of shape controls is to group other controls together. (Note, however, that shape controls can't act as true control containers in the way picture boxes or frames can. For example, you can't group option buttons together with shapes.) In Figure 14.10, we're using shape controls to visually group the buttons into two groups.



Figure 14.10 Using the shape control to group other controls.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with the `BorderWidth` property and fill the shape using the `FillColor` and `FillStyle` properties. The `BorderStyle` property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including using dots and dashes. For more on this control, see the other topics in this chapter.

To access the contents, click the chapter and section titles.

Visual Basic 6 Black Book
(Publisher: The Coriolis Group)
Author(s): Steven Holzner
ISBN: 1576102831
Publication Date: 08/01/98

[Bookmark It](#)

Search this book:

[Previous](#)[Table of Contents](#)[Next](#)

Drawing Rectangles

How do you draw rectangles with the shape control? You start by clicking the Shape Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox and drawing that control to match the size and location you want your new figure to have. To draw a rectangle, you simply set the control `sShapeproperty toVbShapeRectangle`(that's the default anyway).

That's all you have to do the shape control is very easy to work with. Using the shape control, you can draw in both forms and picture boxes.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with `BorderWidth` property and fill the shape using `FillColor` and `FillStyle` properties. The `BorderStyle` property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including using dots and dashes.

Drawing Squares

How do you draw squares with the shape control? You start by clicking the Shape Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox and drawing that control to match the size and location you want your new figure to have. To draw a square, you simply set the control `sShapeproperty toVbShapeSquare`

That's all you have to do the shape control is simple. Using the shape control, you can draw in both forms and picture boxes.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with `BorderWidth` property and fill the shape using `FillColor` and `FillStyle` properties. The `BorderStyle` property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including

using dots and dashes. For more on this control, see the other topics in this chapter.

Drawing Ovals

To draw ovals with the shape control, you start by clicking the Shape Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox and drawing that control to match the size and location you want your new figure to have. To draw an oval, you simply set the ~~control~~ ~~Shape~~ property to VbShapeOval

That's all you have to do the shape control is very easy. Using the shape control, you can draw in both forms and picture boxes.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with ~~BorderWidth~~ property and fill the shape using ~~FillColor~~ and ~~FillStyle~~ properties. The BorderStyle property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including using dots and dashes. For more on this control, see the other topics in this chapter.

Drawing Circles

To draw circles, you start by clicking the Shape Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox and drawing that control to match the size and location you want your new figure to have. To draw a circle, you simply set the ~~control~~ ~~Shape~~ property to VbShapeCircle

That's all you have to do the shape control is very easy to work with. Using the shape control, you can draw in both forms and picture boxes.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with ~~BorderWidth~~ property and fill the shape using ~~FillColor~~ and ~~FillStyle~~ properties. The BorderStyle property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including using dots and dashes. For more on this control, see the other topics in this chapter.

Drawing Rounded Rectangles

How do you draw rounded rectangles with the shape control? You start by clicking the Shape Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox and drawing that control to match the size and location you want your new figure to have. To draw a rounded rectangle, you simply set the ~~control~~ ~~Shape~~ property to VbShapeRoundedRectangle

That's all you have to do this control is very easy. Using the shape control, you can draw in both forms and picture boxes.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with ~~BorderWidth~~ property, and fill the shape using ~~FillColor~~ and ~~FillStyle~~ properties. The BorderStyle property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including using dots and dashes. For more on this control, see the other topics in this chapter.

Drawing Rounded Squares

To draw rounded squares with the shape control, you start by clicking the Shape Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox and drawing that control to match the size and location you want your new figure to have. To draw a rounded square, you simply set the control **Shapeproperty** to **VbShapeRoundedSquare**

That's all you have to do. The shape control is easy. Using the shape control, you can draw in both forms and picture boxes.

You can also set the width of the shape's drawing line with **BorderWidth** property and fill the shape using **FillColor** and **FillStyle** properties. The **BorderStyle** property lets you select the style of the shape's drawing line, including using dots and dashes. For more on this control, see the other topics in this chapter.

Setting Shape Borders: Drawing Width, Dashes, And Dots

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the line. Can't you do something about the shapes in your program? Maybe make them dotted? You thought?

Visual Basic can help here. Just set the shape control's **BorderStyle** property. Here are the possible values for the **BorderStyle** property:

- " vbTransparent 0; transparent
- " vbBSSolid1 (the default); solid (the border is centered on the edge of the shape)
- " vbBSDash2; dash
- " vbBSDot3; dot
- " vbBSDashDot4; dash-dot
- " vbBSDashDotDot5; dash-dot-dot
- " vbBSInsideSolid6; inside solid (the outer edge of the border is the outer edge of the shape)

Using this property, you can adjust the border of your shape control as you want it.

Here's another way to customize a shape control: you can set the shape control's border width (in other words, the drawing line width) using the shape control's **BorderWidth** property. Just set that property to the new value you want for the border thickness (the default value is 1).

Filling Shapes

You can fill shape controls using the `FillStyle` property with crosshatching, diagonal lines, and other fill patterns. Here's a list of the possible values for `FillStyle` property:

- `VbFSSolid`—0; solid
- `VbFSTransparent`—1 (the default); transparent
- `VbHorizontalLine`—2; horizontal line
- `VbVerticalLine`—3; vertical line
- `VbUpwardDiagonal`—4; upward diagonal
- `VbDownwardDiagonal`—5; downward diagonal
- `VbCross`—6; cross
- `VbDiagonalCross`—7; diagonal cross

You can see what each of these fill styles looks like in Figure 14.11. Note in particular the transparent style—which really just means that the shape control is not filled. That's usually the style you use when drawing shapes in a form to group controls together.



Figure 14.11 The Visual Basic fill styles.

TIP: To set the fill color in a shape control, you can use `FillColor` property at both design time and runtime. To place a value in the `FillColor` property at runtime, use the Visual Basic `RGB` function like this, where we fill a shape with red: `Shape1.FillColor = RGB(255, 0, 0)`

Drawing A Shape Without The IDE Grid

When you draw shapes in the Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment (IDE), the boundaries of those controls fall along the dotted grid you can see in forms. That grid can help in aligning controls and other controls, but there are times when you want finer control.

To turn off the automatic alignment of controls to the grid as you draw them, follow these steps:

1. Select the Tools|Options menu item.
2. Click the General tab in the Options dialog box.
3. Deselect the box marked Align Controls To Grid.
4. Click on OK to close the Options dialog box.

That's it. Now you're free to draw controls as you want them and where you want them, without having their boundaries fall on a grid line.

TIP: You can hide the grid by deselecting the Show Grid box in the Options dialog box, as well as reset its dimensions (the default size of each cell in the grid is 120x120 twips).

Moving Shapes At Runtime

Because shape controls are design elements, there are times you might want to move them around program runs, and you can do that with the `Move` method:

```
Shape.Move [left, [top, [width, height]]]
```

Besides using `Move`, you can change a shape's `Top`, `Left`, `Width`, and `Height` properties. Let's see an example. Here, we'll just move four shape controls showing circles around at random in a form. To random numbers in Visual Basic, we start with the `Randomize` statement when the form loads; this initializes the random number generator:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Randomize
End Sub
```

Next, add four shape controls, `Shape1` to `Shape4` showing circles, and a timer `Timer1`, to the program, setting the `Interval` property to 1000 (in other words, 1 second), and add a `Timer` event handler:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
End Sub
```

Now in `Timer1_Timer()`, we move the four circles around at random with the `Move` method:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Shape1.Move Shape1.Left + ScaleWidth * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50, Shape1.Top -
        + ScaleHeight * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50
    Shape2.Move Shape2.Left + ScaleWidth * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50, Shape2.Top -
        + ScaleHeight * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50
    Shape3.Move Shape3.Left + ScaleWidth * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50, Shape3.Top -
        + ScaleHeight * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50
    Shape4.Move Shape4.Left + ScaleWidth * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50, Shape4.Top -
        + ScaleHeight * (Rnd - 0.5) / 50
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes. The result of this code appears in Figure 14.12. When you run the program, the shapes move around at random. The code for this example is located in the `circles` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 14.12 Moving shape controls around at random.

TIP: Besides moving shapes, you can hide and show them by setting the `Visible` property to `False` and `True`, respectively.

Adding A Line Control To A Program

The shape control offers a number of predefined shapes for visual design, but sometimes that's not

(what if the Aesthetic Design Department were to start demanding octagons?). For other cases, the line control.

The line control does just as its name implies: it draws a line. You can draw lines at design time similarly to how you would any other control—just click the Line Control tool in the toolbox, press the mouse button at one end of the line you want, and drag the mouse to the other end.

The line control's primary properties are `X1`, `X2`, `Y1`, and `Y2`, and those values form the coordinates of the line segment: (X_1, Y_1) and (X_2, Y_2) . You can even change those values at runtime to move or resize the line (line controls do not have a `Move` method).

You can also draw lines with this control in forms, picture boxes, and in frames. In fact, lines drawn with the line control stay visible even if its container's `AutoRedraw` property is set to `False` (unless its `Visible` property is set to `False`).

As an example, we've drawn a few lines in the form in Figure 14.13 using the line control.



Figure 14.13 Lines drawn with the line control.

Drawing Thicker, Dotted, And Dashed Lines

Using the line control, you can select a line style with the `BorderStyle` property. Here are the possible values for the line control's `BorderStyle` property:

- `vbTransparent`—0; transparent
- `vbBSSolid`—1 (the default); solid
- `vbBSDash`—2; dash
- `vbBSDot`—3; dot
- `vbBSDashDot`—4; dash-dot
- `vbBSDashDotDot`—5; dash-dot-dot
- `vbBSInsideSolid`—6; inside solid

To set a line's width, you use the `BorderWidth` property (the default value is 1). It seems a little odd to call the line's style `BorderStyle` and its width `BorderWidth`—after all, what is the line a border to? However, those properties are named that way to be consistent with the shape control.

TIP: We might also note that the effect of setting `BorderStyle` property depends on the setting of the `BorderWidth` property; if `BorderWidth` isn't 1 and `BorderStyle` isn't 0 or 6, Visual Basic sets `BorderStyle` to 1.

Drawing A Line Without The IDE Grid

When you draw lines in the Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment (IDE), those lines fall along the dotted grid you can see in forms. That grid can help in aligning controls and lines, but there are times when you want finer control.

To turn off the automatic alignment of controls to the grid as you draw them, follow these steps:

1. Select the Tools|Options menu item.
2. Click the General tab in the Options dialog box.
3. Deselect the box marked Align Controls To Grid.
4. Click on OK to close the Options dialog box.

That's it. Now you're free to draw controls as you want them and where you want them, without having your controls' boundaries fall on a grid line.

TIP: You can hide the grid by deselecting the Show Grid box in the Options dialog box, as well as reset its dimensions (the default size of each cell in the grid is 120x120 twips).

Changing A Line Control At Runtime

You can move Visual Basic controls at runtime—why not line controls? You can't use the `Move` method to move a line control at runtime, but you can move or resize it by altering its `X1`, `X2`, `Y1`, and `Y2` properties.

Let's see an example. In this case, we've added four random line controls to a form in a control LineControl(0) to LineControl(3). When the user clicks a command button Command1, we loop over all four lines and arrange them horizontally.

Here's what the code looks like (the measurements are in the Visual Basic default, twips, or 1/16 of an inch):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 0 To 3
        LineControl(intLoopIndex).X1 = 1000
        LineControl(intLoopIndex).X2 = 3500
        LineControl(intLoopIndex).Y1 = 1000 + 100 * intLoopIndex
        LineControl(intLoopIndex).Y2 = LineControl(intLoopIndex).Y1
    Next intLoopIndex

End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 14.14. Now we're moving lines around at runtime.



Figure 14.14 Changing line controls at runtime.

Using Form Methods To Draw Lines

We've seen how to draw lines with the line control—but you can use a form method, the `Line` method, to draw lines directly. The `Line` method can be an important part of graphic design (especially if you want to draw lines in a loop and don't want to create a dozen or more line controls), and because covering that topic in this chapter, we'll look at the line control here.

Here's how you use the `Line` method:

```
[Form.]Line [(x1, y1)]&45;(x2, y2)[, color]
```

Let's see an example. Here, we'll just draw four lines with the `Line` method when a form first loads. A with other graphic methods, to use this method in the `Form_Load()` handler, you must set the form's AutoRedraw property to True.

Here's the code we add to the `Load` event, making use of the `Line` method:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 0 To 3
        Line (1000, 1000 + 400 * intLoopIndex)-(3500, 1000 + 400 _
```

```

    * intLoopIndex)
Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

The result of the preceding code appears in Figure 14.15—you can see the four lines we've drawn there.



Figure 14.15 Drawing lines with the Line method.

TIP: The Line method is often a better choice than line controls if you have a large number of evenly spaced lines to draw, such as when you need to draw a grid or rules. Note, however, that if the user resizes the containing form, you might have to redraw those lines.

Using Form Methods To Draw Circles

We've seen that you can use the shape control to draw circles, but there is also a form method to do the same thing: the Circle method.

Here's how you use the Circle method:

```
[Form.]Circle (x, y), radius[, color]
```

For example, here's how we draw a few circles in a form using the Circle method (note that as with all graphics methods used in the Form_Load() event handler, you must set the form's AutoRedraw property to True here):

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To 4
        Circle (2300, 500 + 400 * intLoopIndex), 400 * intLoopIndex
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

Running this code yields the result you see in Figure 14.16. Now we're drawing circles using the form's Circle method.



Figure 14.16 Drawing circles with the Circle method in a form.

Chapter 15

Toolbars, Status Bars, Progress Bars, And Coolbars

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding A Toolbar To A Form

Aligning Toolbars In A Form

Adding Buttons To A Toolbar

Handling Toolbar Buttons Clicks

Connecting Toolbar Buttons To Menu Items

Adding Separators To A Toolbar

Adding Images To Toolbar Buttons

Adding Check (Toggle) Buttons To A Toolbar

Creating Button Groups In A Toolbar

Adding Combo Boxes And Other Controls To A Toolbar

Setting Toolbar Button Tool Tips

Letting The User Customize The Toolbar

Adding Toolbar Buttons At Runtime

Adding A Status Bar To A Program

Aligning Status Bars In A Form

Adding Panels To A Status Bar

Displaying Text In A Status Bar

Displaying Time, Dates, And Key States In A Status Bar

Customizing A Status Bar Panel's Appearance

Displaying Images In A Status Bar

Handling Panel Clicks

Adding New Panels To A Status Bar At Runtime

Creating Simple Status Bars

Adding A Progress Bar To A Form

Using A Progress Bar

Adding A Coolbar To A Form

Aligning Coolbars In A Form

Adding Bands To A Coolbar

Adding Controls To Coolbar Bands

Handling Coolbar Control Events

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at ~~the~~ controls: toolbars, status bars, progress bars, and coolbars. All these controls have their uses in Visual Basic programs, and users are coming to expect them more and more. We'll start with an overview of these controls.

Toolbars

Every Windows user knows about toolbars: they're those bars at the top of a window (although they can appear other places as well) that are filled with buttons and, sometimes, other controls like edit boxes.

Often, a toolbar contains buttons that correspond to items in an application's menu, providing an interface for the user to reach frequently used functions and commands. In this way, toolbars can make life a lot easier for the user. The user can also customize toolbars: double-clicking a toolbar at runtime opens the Customize Toolbar dialog box, which allows the user to hide, display, or rearrange toolbar buttons.

You create a toolbar by adding a toolbar control to a form, and to do that, you select the Project|Components menu item, then click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box, select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. This adds the Toolbar Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox, as shown in Figure 15.1; the Toolbar tool is the twelfth tool down on the left.



Figure 15.1 The Toolbar Control tool.

To add buttons to a toolbar, you add Button objects to the Buttons collection, usually by working with the toolbar's property pages. Each button can have text and/or an image, (supplied by an associated ImageList control). Set text with the Caption property and an image with the Image property for each Button object. At runtime, you can add or remove buttons from the Buttons collection using Add and Remove methods.

Status Bars

Status bars appear at the bottom of windows and usually hold several panels in which you can display text. The status bar is there to give feedback to the user on program operation, as well as other information like time of day or key states (such as the Caps Lock or the Ins key). Although status bars usually display text in panels, there is a simple status bar style that makes the status bar function as one panel, as we'll see.

Status bars are built around the Panels collection, which holds the panels in the status bar. Up to 16 Panel objects can be contained in the collection. Each object can display an image and text, as described later in this chapter. You can change the text, images, or widths of any Panel object, using its Text, Picture, and Width properties. To add Panel objects at design time, right-click the status bar, and choose Properties to display the Property Pages dialog box. (We'll cover the procedure in more detail later in this chapter.)

the chapter.)

You add the Status Bar Control tool to the toolbox by following the same steps to add the Toolbar Control tool, because the status bar control is also part of the Microsoft Windows common controls. The Status Bar Control tool is the twelfth tool down on the right in Figure 15.2.



Figure 15.2 The Status Bar Control tool.

Progress Bars

Progress bars give the user some visual feedback on what's happening during a time-consuming operation. They present the user with a color bar that grows in the control to show how the operation is proceeding, usually from 0 to 100 percent. You can use a progress bar when an operation will take some time to finish. The progress bar's `Value` property (not available at design time) determines how much of the control has been filled. The `Min` and `Max` properties set the limits of the control.

You add the Progress Bar Control tool to the toolbox by following the same steps to add the Toolbar Control tool, because the progress bar control is also part of the Microsoft Windows common controls. The Progress Bar Control tool is the thirteenth tool down on the left in Figure 15.3.



Figure 15.3 The Progress Bar Control and the Coolbar Control tools.

Coolbars

Coolbars were first introduced in the Microsoft Internet Explorer, and they are toolbars that present controls in bands. Users can adjust these bands by dragging them, which appears at left in a band. In this way, users can configure the coolbar by sliding the bands around as they want. One popular use of coolbars is to display toolbars in the bands of that coolbar, allowing users to move those toolbars around as they want.

The Coolbar Control tool is on the bottom, at left, in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 15.3. These controls can act just as toolbars do, as we'll see.

That's it for the overview—it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding A Toolbar To A Form

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program's wonderful—but what about putting in a toolbar? That would make things easier for the program's users, because they click buttons in the toolbar instead of having to open menu items. So how do you add a toolbar to a form?

You use the toolbar control. In fact, probably the easiest way to add a toolbar to a program is to that program with the Visual Basic Application Wizard. We'll take a look at what the Application Wizard has to offer us, and then add a toolbar to a program ourselves.

When you use the Application Wizard to create a program, that program gets a toolbar automatically. You can arrange and configure the toolbar with the Application Wizard Customize Toolbar dialog, shown in Figure 15.4, which appears when you create a program with the Application Wizard.



Figure 15.4 The Application Wizard Customize Toolbar dialog box.

The Application Wizard takes care of all the details for us. When you run the program it generates a fully functional toolbar in that program, as shown in Figure 15.5.



Figure 15.5 An Application Wizard program, complete with toolbar.

However, most programmers will want to add their own toolbars to their programs, and you create a toolbar by adding a toolbar control to a form. Here's how that works:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box.

This adds the Toolbar Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox, as shown in Figure 15.1. To place a toolbar in your form, just double-click the Toolbar Control tool.

Now you've got a new toolbar—but how do you align it at the top of the window and add buttons to it? See the next couple of topics in this chapter.

Aligning Toolbars In A Form

Now that you've added a toolbar to your form, where does it go? By default, it aligns itself with the top of the client area of the form. You can set the alignment of the toolbar with its `Alignment` property, which can take these values:

- `vbAlignNone`—0
- `vbAlignTop`—1 (the default)
- `vbAlignBottom`—2
- `vbAlignLeft`—3
- `vbAlignRight`—4

Adding Buttons To A Toolbar

You've got your new toolbar in the form you want and aligned it correctly. How about adding some buttons?

You add buttons to a toolbar control at design time by right-clicking the control and clicking the Properties item in the menu that appears. When the toolbar's property pages open, click the Buttons tab, as shown in Figure 15.6.



Figure 15.6 Adding new buttons to a toolbar.

You insert new buttons by clicking the Insert Button button (and remove them with the Remove button). When you add a new button to a toolbar, you can associate a picture or caption with it. For example, to give a button a caption, just fill in the Caption box in Figure 15.6.

Each button gets a ~~new~~ index value, which will be passed to the ~~Click~~ event handler. You can also give each button a ~~key~~ value, which is a string that you can use to identify the button.

When you're done, click on the OK button to close the toolbar's property pages. Now that you've installed buttons in your toolbar, how do you handle button clicks? Take a look at the next topic.

Handling Toolbar Buttons Clicks

Now that you've set up your toolbar with the buttons you want, how can you make those buttons active? You do that with the toolbar control's ~~Button~~ Click event:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
End Sub
```

The button the user clicked is passed to us in this event handler procedure, and we can determine which button was clicked by checking either the ~~button~~ Index or Key properties. For example, we can indicate to users which button they clicked with a message box and the ~~Index~~ property this way:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    MsgBox "You clicked button " & Button.Index
End Sub
```

All buttons in a toolbar control have ~~an~~ index value by default (this value is 1-based), so this code is ready to go. When the user clicks a button, we report which button the user has clicked, as shown in Figure 15.7.



Figure 15.7 Determining which button the user has clicked.

Besides using the ~~Index~~ property, you can also give each button a ~~Key~~ property a text string (you do

that at design time in the toolbar control's property pages). Then you ~~Select Case~~ statement to determine which button was clicked, like this:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "OpenFile"
            OpenFile
        Case "SaveFile"
            SaveFile
        Case "CloseFile"
            CloseFile
    End Select
End Sub
```

The complete code for the preceding code where we used the ~~Select Case~~ property appears in the toolbars folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Connecting Toolbar Buttons To Menu Items

You often use buttons in a toolbar as shortcuts for menu items. How do you connect a toolbar button to a menu item? You just call the menu item's ~~Click~~ event handler when the button is clicked.

For example, if you have three items in the File menu, Open, Save, and Close, that you want to connect to toolbar buttons, you can set those buttons' ~~Key~~ properties to, say, "OpenFile", "SaveFile", and "CloseFile", testing for those button clicks this way:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "OpenFile"
        ...
        Case "SaveFile"
        ...
        Case "CloseFile"
    End Select
End Sub
```

If one of those buttons were clicked, you simply call the associated menu item's ~~Click~~ event handler function directly:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "OpenFile"
            mnuFileOpen_Click
        Case "SaveFile"
            mnuFileSave_Click
    End Select
End Sub
```

```
Case "CloseFile"
    mnuFileClose_Click
End Select
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes. Now we've connected toolbar buttons to menu items.

Adding Separators To A Toolbar

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Can't you group the buttons in your toolbar in logical groups as you do with items in a menu?

You can, and just in the same way—by using separators. In menus, separators appear as solid lines; in toolbars, separators just appear as blank spaces, setting groups of buttons apart.

Let's see an example. Insert a new button into a toolbar and set its `Style` property to `brSeparator`, as shown in Figure 15.8.



Figure 15.8 Adding a spacer to a toolbar.

Now add other buttons, and click on OK to close the toolbar's property pages. When you do, you will see that the separator puts some distance between the buttons, as shown in Figure 15.9.



Figure 15.9 Using a separator in a toolbar.

TIP: Although toolbar separators just look like blank space, they count as buttons, which means that they have their own `sIndex` value. That means that you have to take separators into account when figuring a button's `sIndex` value in your toolbar in order to handle it when it's clicked.

Adding Images To Toolbar Buttons

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling. Your new toolbar looks great, but it would look even better if you used images in the buttons and not text captions. How about it?

You can give toolbar buttons images if you place those images into an image list control. Image lists are Windows common controls just as toolbars are, so add an image list to a program now.

To place the images you want in the buttons in the image list, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the image list control.
2. Select the Properties menu item.
3. Click the Images tab in the image control's property pages.
4. Click the Insert Picture button to insert the first image (you can browse through your hard disks and select the images you want).
5. Keep going until all the images have been added to the image control, then click on OK to close the property pages.

Now you need to associate the image control with the toolbar, and you do that in the toolbar's property pages; just follow these steps:

1. Right-click the toolbar and select the Properties item to open the toolbar's property pages, as shown in Figure 15.10.



Figure 15.10 Adding images from an image control to a toolbar.

2. Next, click the Buttons tab in the property pages, as shown in Figure 15.11.

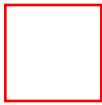


Figure 15.11 Connecting images from an image control to toolbar buttons.

3. Enter the index of the image in the image control you want to connect to the first button box labeled Image (image lists are 1-based).
4. Keep going for the other buttons, entering the image control indices of the images you connect to those buttons.
5. Click on OK to close the property pages.

When you run the program, the images appear in the toolbar.

You can also connect an image control to a toolbar at runtime, using the ~~ToolbarList~~ property:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Toolbar1.ImageList = ImageList1
End Sub
```

TIP: Visual Basic comes with the standard bitmaps you'll find in Windows toolbars—just check the common\graphics\bitmaps\offctlbr\small\color directory.

Adding Check (Toggle) Buttons To A Toolbar

The Testing Department is calling again: The toolbar you've added to your program, SuperDuperTextPr̄as terrific, but there's one problem. One of the menu items, the Insert item, displays a checkmark next to it when the user toggles that mode on. Can't you add a checkmark Insert button in the toolbar as well?

The way toolbars handle this problem instead of displaying checkmarks is to keep a button depressed once it's been pressed. In this way, you can show toggle states. Let's take a look at an example.

To make a toolbar button a "check" button, you must set its ~~Style~~ property to `tatbrCheck`, and you do that in the toolbar's property pages. Right-click the toolbar now and select the Properties item to the property pages. Click the Buttons tab in the property pages, as shown in Figure 15.12.



Figure 15.12 Making a toolbar button a check button.

Select the button you want to work with, and set its ~~Style~~ to `tatbrCheck`, as shown in Figure 15.12. That's it. Now when the user clicks the button, it stays clicked, as shown in Figure 15.13, until the user clicks it again.



Figure 15.13 A check toolbar button at work.

Creating Button Groups In A Toolbar

You may notice in some toolbars that a set of buttons are mutually exclusive—for example, if your word processor lets you align text to the right, left, and center with buttons in a toolbar, only one of those styles can be active at once. When the user clicks one, the others should toggle off.

You can set up groups of mutually exclusive buttons in toolbars, just as you can with groups of option buttons (in fact, that's just what button groups in a toolbar resemble: a group of ~~Style~~^{Style[1]} option buttons).

To create a button group, just follow these steps:

1. Open the toolbar's property pages by right-clicking the toolbar and selecting the Properties item.
2. Click the Buttons tab.
3. Select the button in the button group, and set its ~~Style~~^{ButtonGroup} in the Style box, as shown in Figure 15.14.



Figure 15.14 Creating a button group in a toolbar.

4. Repeat Step 3 for the other buttons in the button group.
5. Click on OK to close the property pages.

That's all it takes. Now the buttons you've placed together in a group will act together. When the user clicks one to select it, the others will toggle off (in other words, go back to their unselected position). Button groups can be very useful in a toolbar—any time option buttons would come in handy in a toolbar, just use a button group instead.

Adding Combo Boxes And Other Controls To A Toolbar

The Program Design Department is calling again. That shopping program you've written, SuperDuperGroceryStore4U is nice, but what about listing the available groceries in a combo box on the toolbar. You wonder, how can you do that?

You can add combo boxes or other controls to a toolbar easily; just set aside space in the toolbar by setting a button's ~~Style~~^{Style} property to `tbPlaceholder`. Here are the steps to follow to add a combo box to a toolbar:

1. Right-click the toolbar, and select Properties in the menu that appears.
2. Click the Buttons tab in the property pages that open, as shown in Figure 15.15.



Figure 15.15 The toolbar property pages.

3. Insert a new button where you want the combo box to go.

4. Set the new button's Style property to `brPlaceholder` in the box labeled Style. This means the button won't appear—there'll only be a blank space, and we'll place our combo box there.
5. Set the width of the space you want to leave for the combo box by entering a twip (1/144 of an inch) value in the box labeled Width: (Placeholder), as shown in Figure 15.15.
6. Close the property pages by clicking on OK.
7. Click the Combo Box Control tool in the toolbox, and draw a new combo box in the new space in the toolbar.
8. Add the items you want in the combo box in the Properties window's property (or add items to the combo box at runtime).
9. Connect the code you want to the combo box. For example, here we respond to `Combo1_Change` and `Combo1_Click` events by displaying a message box:

```
Private Sub Combo1_Change()
    MsgBox "You entered " & Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Combo1_Click()
    MsgBox "You selected " & Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

That's all we need—now run the program, as shown in Figure 15.16.



Figure 15.16 Adding a combo box to a toolbar.

When users make a selection with the combo box, we display a message box letting them know they've selected. Our combo box toolbar example is a success.

The code for this example appears in the combotoolbar folder on this book's accompanying CD.

Setting Toolbar Button Tool Tips

Giving toolbar buttons tool tips (those small yellow windows that display explanatory text when the mouse cursor rests on the underlying control) is an easy process. All you need to do to give a button a tool tip is to set its `ToolTipText` property.

To set the `ToolTipText` property, right-click the toolbar and select the Properties item in the menu that opens. Click the Buttons tab and select the button you want to add the tool tip to. Place the cursor in the box labeled `ToolTipText`, as shown in Figure 15.17. Finally, close the property pages by clicking OK. Now when you run the program, the button displays a tool tip, as shown in Figure 15.18.



Figure 15.17 Setting a toolbar button's tool tip text.



Figure 15.18 Toolbar buttons with tool tips.

Letting The User Customize The Toolbar

The Testing Department has sent you a memo. Some users of your new program want the Save button at left in the toolbar, but other users want the Create New Document button at left. What can we do?

You can let the user customize the toolbar. Just set the `AllowCustomize` property to True (the default). When the user double-clicks the toolbar, the Customize Toolbar dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 15.19. Users can customize the toolbar as they like using that dialog box.



Figure 15.19 Using the Customize Toolbar dialog box.

TIP: If you allow your end user to reconfigure the toolbar control, you can save and restore the toolbar by using the `SaveToolbar` and `RestoreToolbar` methods.

Adding Toolbar Buttons At Runtime

How do you add buttons to a toolbar at runtime? It's possible to add menu items to menus, so it is possible to add buttons to toolbars.

It is. To add a new button when the user clicks a button, we start by declaring a new Button object:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Button1 As Button
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, we add a new button to the toolbar's Buttons collection, which is how it stores its buttons internally. As with all collections, the Buttons collection has an Add method, and we use it here:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Button1 As Button
    Set Button1 = Toolbar1.Buttons.Add()
    ...
End Sub
```

Now we're free to set the button's style. Here, we make it a standard button by setting the Style property to tbrDefault (other options include tbrButtonGroup, tbrSeparator, tbrCheck, tbrPlaceHolder, and tbrDropDown):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Button1 As Button
    Set Button1 = Toolbar1.Buttons.Add()
    Button1.Style = tbrDefault
    ...
End Sub
```

We can also give the new button a caption:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Button1 As Button
    Set Button1 = Toolbar1.Buttons.Add()
    Button1.Style = tbrDefault
    Button1.Caption = "New button"
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, we give the new button a tool tip:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Button1 As Button
```

```

Set Button1 = Toolbar1.Buttons.Add()
Button1.Style = tbrDefault
Button1.Caption = "New button"
Button1.ToolTipText = "New button"
End Sub

```

And that's it—the new button is active. It's been added to the Buttons collection of the toolbar control, which means it has its own index value. That index value will be passed to the ButtonClick handler, and we can make use of the index this way (you can also set a button's key text from code by setting its Key property):

```

Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)
    MsgBox "You clicked button " & Button.Index
End Sub

```

Adding A Status Bar To A Program

The Testing Department is calling again. Your SuperDuperDataCrunch program looks good, but what about the status bar? You ask, what status bar? Exactly, they say.

How can you add a status bar to your program? You could design the program with the Visual Studio Application Wizard, which automatically adds a status bar (see “Adding A Toolbar To A Form” earlier in this chapter for more information). However, most programmers will want to add their own status bar to their programs, and you create a status bar by adding a status bar control to a form. Here's how that works:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box.

This adds the Status Bar Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox, as shown in Figure 15.2. To place a status bar in your form, just double-click the Status Bar Control.

Now you've got a new status bar—but how do you align it at the top of the window and display text? See the next couple of topics in this chapter.

Aligning Status Bars In A Form

Now that you've added a status bar to your form, where does it go? By default, it aligns itself with the bottom of the client area of the form. You can set the alignment of the status bar with the Align property, which can take these values:

- vbAlignNone—0
- vbAlignTop—1 (the default)
- vbAlignBottom—2
- vbAlignLeft—3

- vbAlignRight—4

Adding Panels To A Status Bar

Now that you've added a status bar to your program, it's time to take the next step: adding pane status bar. The text in a status bar is displayed in those panels.

A status bar control hasPanelscollection, and you add the panels you want to that collection. To that at design time, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the status bar, and select the Properties item in the menu that opens.
2. Click the Panels tab in the property pages, as shown in Figure 15.20.

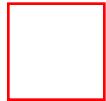


Figure 15.20 Adding a panel to a status bar.

3. Click the Insert Panel button as many times as you want panels in your status bar.
4. Close the property pages by clicking on OK.

It's also easy to add a new status bar panel at runtime—just use the `Panels` collection's `Add` method. Here's an example where we add a panel to a status bar when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim panel5 As Panel
    Set panel5 = StatusBar1.Panels.Add()
    Panel5.Text = "Status: OK"
End Sub
```

Now that you've added panels to the status bar, how do you display text in those panels? See the topic:

Displaying Text In A Status Bar

You've added a new status bar to your program and added the panels you want to the status bar. Now how do you display text? The status bar control you've added doesn't seem to have a `Text` property.

The text in a status bar is displayed in the status bar's panels (unless the status bar is a simple bar—see “Creating Simple Status Bars” later in this chapter—in which case you use the status bar's `SimpleText` property). Displaying text in a status bar's panels is easy—just select the panel you want to work with as the index into the status bar's `Panels` collection, and use that panel's `Text` property.

Here's an example—in this case, we'll display the program status, “OK”, in the first panel of the status bar (note that the `Panels` collection is 1-based) when the user clicks a command button `Command1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    StatusBar1.Panels(1).Text = "OK"
End Sub
```

That's it—the result of this code appears in Figure 15.21. Now we've displayed text in a status bar:



Figure 15.21 Displaying text in a status bar control.

The code for this example is located in the `statusbar` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Displaying Time, Dates, And Key States In A Status Bar

The Testing Department has sent you some email: the clock-watchers who use your `SuperDuperDataCrunch` program want a clock to watch. Can you add one to your program?

You can, and you can display it in the status bar. In fact, status bar controls are already set up to display common status items like key states and dates. To display one of those items, just right-click the status bar, select the Properties item in the menu that appears, click the Panels tab, select the panel you want to work with, and set the `Style` property in the box labeled Style to one of the following:

- `sbrText`—0 (the default); text and/or a bitmap. Displays text in the `Text` property.

- sbrCaps—1; Caps Lock key. Displays the letters “CAPS” in bold when Caps Lock is enabled, and dimmed when disabled.
- sbrNum—2; Num Lock key. Displays the letters “NUM” in bold when the Num Lock key is enabled, and dimmed when disabled.
- sbrIns—3; Insert key. Displays the letters “INS” in bold when the Insert key is enabled, and dimmed when disabled.
- sbrScrl—4; Scroll Lock key. Displays the letters “SCRL” in bold when Scroll Lock is enabled, and dimmed when disabled.
- sbrTime—5; time. Displays the current time in the system format.
- sbrDate—6; date. Displays the current date in the system format.
- sbrKana—7; Kana lock. Displays the letters “KANA” in bold when kana lock is enabled, and dimmed when disabled (this feature is enabled on Japanese operating systems only).

See Figure 15.22 for a status bar showing the time.

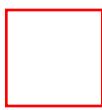


Figure 15.22 Displaying time in a status bar.

Customizing A Status Bar Panel's Appearance

You can customize the appearance of the panels in a status bar with the Bevel, AutoSize, and Alignment properties. The Bevel property specifies whether the panel will have an inset bevel (the default), raised, or none at all. Here's how you can set the Bevel property:

- sbrNoBevel—0; the Panel displays no bevel, and text looks like it is displayed right on the status bar.
- sbrInset—1; the Panel appears to be sunk into the status bar.
- sbrRaised—2; the Panel appears to be raised above the status bar.

The AutoSize property determines how a panel will resize itself when its container (usually a form) is resized by the user. Here are the settings for the AutoSize property:

- sbrNoAutoSize—0; None. No autosizing occurs. The width of the panel is always exactly what is specified by the Width property.
- sbrSpring—1; Spring. When the parent form resizes and there is extra space available, the panels with this setting divide the space and grow accordingly. (The panels' width never falls below that specified by the MinWidth property.)
- sbrContents—2; Content. The panel is resized to fit its contents.

The Alignment property indicates how the text or image in a panel will align in the panel. The settings for the Alignment property are as follows:

- sbrLeft—0; text appears left-justified and to the right of any bitmap.
- sbrCenter—1; text appears centered and to the right of any bitmap.
- sbrRight—2; text appears right-justified but to the left of any bitmap.

Displaying Images In A Status Bar

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. How about adding a few images to the status bar, how about some animation for the user to watch while the program does other things? You can do that possible?

Yes, it is, because status bar panels have a `Picture` property. To place an image in a status bar panel design time, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the status bar, and select the Properties item in the menu that appears.
2. Click the Panels tab in the property pages that open.
3. Select the panel you want to work with.
4. Set the panel's `Picture` property by clicking the Browse button in the box labeled Picture. You can set this property with an image file on disk.
5. Close the property pages by clicking on OK.

That's it—now when you run the program, the image you've selected appears in the panel you've chosen, as shown in Figure 15.23.



Figure 15.23 Displaying images in a status bar.

You can also set a status bar panel's image at runtime. For example, here's how we set the first panel of a status bar, using the image in a picture box when the user clicks a button (you can use the LoadPicture function to load images in directly):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    StatusBar1.Panels(1).Picture = Picture1.Picture
End Sub
```

TIP: You can even create animation in a status bar panel; just set up a timer and place a succession of images in the panel's Picture property.

Handling Panel Clicks

Are status bars static controls? Or can they handle events? Status bars certainly can handle events, the most common are PanelClick and PanelDblClick. The event handler procedures for those events are passed the panel that was clicked, as in this example:

```
Private Sub StatusBar1_PanelClick(ByVal Panel As ComctlLib.Panel)
End Sub
```

You can tell which panel was clicked by checking the argument's Index or Key properties. For example, here's how we use the Index property to report to the user which panel was clicked:

```
Private Sub StatusBar1_PanelClick(ByVal Panel As ComctlLib.Panel)
    MsgBox "You clicked panel " & Panel.Index
End Sub
```

If you've set the Key properties of the panels in your status bar (Key property holds a text string), you can set up a Select Case statement to see which panel was clicked and take the appropriate action:

```
Private Sub StatusBar1_PanelClick(ByVal Panel As ComctlLib.Panel)
    Select Case Panel.Key
        Case "Date"
            Panel.Text = Date$
        Case "Time"
            Panel.Text = Time$
    End Select
End Sub
```

Adding New Panels To A Status Bar At Runtime

It's easy to add a new status bar panel at runtime—just use the Panels collection's Add method. Here's an example where we add a panel to a status bar when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim panel5 As Panel
    Set panel5 = StatusBar1.Panels.Add()
    Panel5.Text = "Status: OK"
End Sub
```

Creating Simple Status Bars

There's a way of using a status bar without using panels: by making the status bar a simple status bar. How do you make a status bar into a simple status bar? You set its ~~Style~~ property to `sbrSimple` (which equals 1; the other option is `sbrNormal`, which equals 0). Simple status bars have only one panel, so you set the text in that panel with the `SimpleText` property.

Here's an example; in this case, we just display the message "Status: OK" in the simple status bar when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    StatusBar1.SimpleText = "Status: OK"
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 15.24.



Figure 15.24 Using a simple status bar.

TIP: One reason programmers used to use simple status bars was to show the progress of an operation by displaying a succession of dots (or other text) in the status bar's single long panel. However, you can use the progress bar control for that these days—see the next topic in this chapter.

Adding A Progress Bar To A Form

The Testing Department is calling again. Why does downloading the 200MB data file your program requires take so long? Well, you explain, the Internet is like that. They ask, but can't you at least tell the user what progress the downloading operation is making? You take a look at the Progress Bar Control tool in the Visual Basic toolbox. Sure, you say, no problem.

You can use progress bar controls to show the progress of a time-consuming operation. These controls display a colored band that can grow (or shrink) as time goes on. To add a progress bar to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls item, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. This adds the Progress Bar Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox, shown in Figure 15.3.

4. To place a progress bar in your form, just add it as you would any control, using the Progress Bar Control tool.
5. Set the progress bar's **Min** (default is 0) and **Max** (default is 100) properties as desired to match the range of the operation you're reporting on.

Now you've got a new progress bar in your form—but how do you use it? See the next topic.

Using A Progress Bar

Now that you've added a progress bar to your program and set its **Min**, **Max**, and **Value** properties, how do you actually use it to display data? You use a progress bar's **Value** property (available only at runtime) to specify how much of the progress bar is visible. As you might expect, setting **Value** to **Min** means none of the progress bar is visible, and setting **Value** to **Max** means all of it is.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll let the user click a button to display a progress bar which lengthens from **Min** to **Max** in 10 seconds. Add a progress bar, command button, and a timer control to a form now. Set the timer's **Interval** property to 1000 (in other words, 1000 milliseconds, or 1 second). We'll leave the progress bar's **Min** property at 0 and its **Max** property at 100, the defaults.

When the form loads, we disable the timer and set the progress bar's **Value** to 0:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Timer1.Enabled = False
    ProgressBar1.Value = 0
End Sub
```

When the user clicks the command button, we want to start the progress bar, so we enable the timer. We also set the progress bar back to 0 (even though we did that when the form loads, the user might want to restart the operation, which means he might click the button several times):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    ProgressBar1.Value = 0
    Timer1.Enabled = True
End Sub
```

Finally, in the timer event handler **Timer1_Timer**, we add a value of 10 to the progress bar's **Value** property every second. We also check if we've filled the progress bar, and if so, disable the timer:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    ProgressBar1.Value = ProgressBar1.Value + 10
    If ProgressBar1.Value >= 100 Then Timer1.Enabled = False
End Sub
```

That's all we need—now when the user clicks the command button, we start the progress bar in and it goes from 0 to 100 in 10 seconds, as shown in Figure 15.25.



Figure 15.25 Using a progress bar.

The code for this example is located in the progressbar folder on this book's accompanying CD.

Adding A Coolbar To A Form

Coolbars were first introduced in the Microsoft Internet Explorer, and they are toolbars that present controls in bands. The user can adjust these bands by dragging a gripper, which appears at left end of each band. In this way, users can configure the coolbar by sliding the bands around as they want.

To add a coolbar control to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
3. Select the Microsoft Windows Common Controls-3 item, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box. This adds the Coolbar Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox, as shown in Figure 15.3.
4. To place a coolbar in your form, just add it as you would any control, using the Coolbar Control tool.

Now that you've added a coolbar to your form, maybe you'll need to align it in that form? See the next topic for the details.

Aligning Coolbars In A Form

Now that you've added a coolbar to your form, how do you align it to the top, bottom, or wherever you want to place it? You use the Align property, setting it to one of these values:

- vbAlignNone—0 (the default)
- vbAlignTop—1
- vbAlignBottom—2
- vbAlignLeft—3
- vbAlignRight—4

Now that you've added a coolbar to your form and set its alignment as you want, how do you add bands to that coolbar? See the next topic for the details.

Adding Bands To A Coolbar

The controls in a coolbar are usually organized into bands (and note that those controls can themselves contain controls, as when you place toolbars in a band). To add a band to a coolbar, just follow these steps:

1. Right-click the coolbar and select the Properties item in the menu that appears.
2. Click the Bands tab in the coolbar's property pages, as shown in Figure 15.26.



Figure 15.26 The coolbar property pages.

3. Add new bands to the coolbar using the Insert Band button.
4. When finished, close the property pages by clicking on OK.

You can also add a band to a coolbar at runtime with the `Bands` collection, because that collection supports the usual collection methods `Add` and `Remove`. For example, here's how we add a new bar to a coolbar at runtime:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim band5 As Band
    Set band5 = CoolBar1.Bands.Add()
End Sub
```

Now that you've added bands to a coolbar, how do you install controls in those bands? Take a look at the next topic to get the details.

Adding Controls To Coolbar Bands

You add controls to coolbar bands by setting the `band1.Child` property. The `Child` property can only hold one child control, which you might think limits the power of coolbars, but in fact, that control can be a complete toolbar. If you fill a coolbar's bands with toolbar controls, users can arrange and resize those toolbars around as they like.

To add a control to a coolbar band, follow these steps:

1. Add the control (such as a toolbar) you want to place in a band to the coolbar by drawing it inside the coolbar.
2. Right-click the coolbar and select the Properties item in the menu that appears.
3. Click the Bands tab in the coolbar's property pages, as shown in Figure 15.27.



Figure 15.27 Adding a toolbar to a coolbar band.

4. Select the band you want to work with.
5. Set the band's `Child` property to the control you want to add to that band, such as `Toolbar1`, as shown in Figure 15.27.
6. Close the coolbar's property pages by clicking on OK.

You can also set a band's `Child` property at runtime, as in this example where we set the control in the coolbar's first band to `Toolbar1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Set CoolBar1.Bands(1).Child = Toolbar1
End Sub
```

Handling Coolbar Control Events

You've set up the coolbar you want and placed a few toolbars in the various bands of that coolbar. Now how do you handle button clicks in those toolbars (or other controls you've placed in a coolbar's toolbar bands)?

Handling events from controls in coolbar bands is easy—just connect event handlers to those controls as you normally would (in other words, if they weren't in a coolbar). Here's an example where we've added a toolbar, Toolbar1, to a coolbar. You can add buttons to the toolbar as you would normally—just open the toolbar's property pages and use the Insert Button button. To handle events for those buttons, you just double-click the toolbar's buttons at design time, which opens the matching Click event handler:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)  
End Sub
```

Then you just proceed as you would in a normal toolbar, such as adding this code where we indicate to the user which button they've clicked:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As ComctlLib.Button)  
    MsgBox "You clicked button " & Button.Index  
End Sub
```

Chapter 16

Image Lists, Tree Views, List Views, And Tab Strips

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding An Image List To A Form

Adding Images To Image Lists

Using The Images In Image Lists

Setting Image Keys In An Image List

Adding A Tree View To A Form

Selecting Tree View Styles

Adding Nodes To A Tree View

Adding Subnodes To A Tree View

Adding Images To A Tree View

Expanding And Collapsing Nodes (And Setting Node Images To Match)

Handling Tree View Node Clicks

Adding A List View To A Form

Adding Items To A List View

Adding Icons To List View Items

Adding Small Icons To List View Items

Selecting The View Type In List Views

Adding Column Headers To A List View

Adding Column Fields To A List View

Handling List View Item Clicks

Handling List View Column Header Clicks

Adding A Tab Strip To A Form

Inserting Tabs Into A Tab Strip Control

Setting Tab

Setting Tab Images

Using A Tab Strip To Display Other Controls

Handling Tab Clicks

In Depth

In this chapter, we're going to take a look at image list controls and some of the controls that use lists: tree views, list views, and tab strips. These controls are part of the Windows common control package and are being used more and more frequently in Windows programs.

We'll get an overview of each control before tackling the programming issues. You add all the controls in this chapter to the Visual Basic toolbox by selecting the Project|Components menu item, click the Controls tab in the dialog box that opens, selecting the entry marked Windows Common Controls, and clicking on OK to close the Components dialog box.

Image Lists

Image list controls are invisible controls that serve one purpose: to hold images that are used by other controls. Usually, you add images to an image list control at design time, using the Insert Picture command in the control's property pages. You can also add images to an image list at runtime, using the Add method of its internal image collection `ListImages`.

To use the images in the image list, you usually associate the image list with a Windows common control (which has an `ImageList` property). For each item in the common control, such as a tab in a tab strip control, you can then specify either an index into the `ImageList.ListImages` collection or an image's key value to associate that image with the item.

You can also reach the images in an image list with the `ListImages` collection's `Picture` property. For example, if you wanted to use an image list with a control that's not a Windows common control, such as a picture box, you can assign the first image in the image control to that picture box this way:

```
Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
```

The Image List Control tool appears in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 16.1 at bottom, on the



Figure 16.1 The Image List Control tool.

Tree Views

If you've used the Windows Explorer, you're familiar with tree views. Tree views present data in a hierarchical way, such as the view of directories that appears in the tree view at left in the Windows Explorer, as shown in Figure 16.2.



Figure 16.2 The Windows Explorer.

Trees are composed of cascading branches and nodes, and each node usually consists of an image (set with the `Image` property) and a label (set with the `Text` property). Images for the nodes are supplied by an image list control associated with the tree view control.

A node can be expanded or collapsed, depending on whether or not the node has child nodes. The topmost level are root nodes, and each root node can have any number of child nodes. Each node in a tree is actually a programmable `Node` object, which belongs to the `Nodes` collection. As with other collections, each member of the collection has a unique `Index` and `Key` property that allows you to

access the properties of the node.

The Tree View Control tool is the thirteenth tool down on the right in Figure 16.3.



Figure 16.3 The Tree View Control tool.

List Views

The list view control displays, as its name implies, lists of items. You can see a list view at right Windows Explorer in Figure 16.2. There, the list view is displaying a list of files. Each item in a list view control is itself a ListItem object and can have both text and an image associated with it. These ListItem objects are stored in the list view's `listItems` collection.

List views can display data in four different view modes:

- Icon mode—Can be manipulated with the mouse, allowing the user to drag and drop and rearrange objects.
- SmallIcon mode—Allows more ListItem objects to be viewed. Like the Icon view mode, objects can be rearranged by the user.
- List mode—Presents a sorted view of the ListItem objects.
- Report mode—Presents a sorted view, with sub-items, allowing extra information to be displayed.

The list view in the Windows Explorer in Figure 16.2 is displaying files in Report view mode (which is the only mode that has columns and column headers). In this mode, you add sub-items to each file, and the text in those sub-items will appear under the various column headings.

You usually associate two image list controls with a list view: one to hold the icons for the Icon view mode, and one to hold small icons for the other three modes. The size of the icons you use is determined by the image list control (the available sizes are 16 × 16, 32 × 32, 48 × 48, and Custom).

The List View Control tool is the fourteenth control down on the left in Figure 16.4.



Figure 16.4 The List View Control tool.

Tab Strips

A tab strip control presents the user with a row (or rows) of tabs that acts like the dividers in a notebook or the labels on a group of file folders. Like an increasing number of other controls (such as checkboxes and tree views), tab strips represent one of Microsoft's attempts to compact data into less and less space on the screen (because there's getting to be more and more data). Using tab strips, the user can click on a tab and see a whole new panel of data, like opening a file folder. In fact, we've already used tab strips in many parts of this book already to set Visual Basic options or to include ActiveX controls in our

programs.

The most common use of tab strips today is to organize dialog boxes—often those dialog boxes the user set program options—into many different panels, all hidden from view except the current one the user has selected. In this way, you can pack a great deal into a small space in a dialog box without the need for many dialog boxes.

From the programmer's point of view, a tab strip control consists of one or more Tab objects Tab in a collection. At both design time and runtime, you can set the Tab object's appearance by setting properties, and at runtime, by invoking methods to add and remove Tab objects.

The Tab Strip Control tool appears as the eleventh tool down on the right in the Visual Basic toolbar Figure 16.5.



Figure 16.5 The Tab Strip Control tool.

That's it for the overview. It's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding An Image List To A Form

To work with many Windows common controls, you need to use image lists. How do you add an image list control to a program? Just follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Windows Common Controls entry.
4. Close the Components dialog box by clicking on OK.
5. Double-click the Image List Control tool (see Figure 16.1 at bottom, on the right) to add image list control to a form. This control is invisible at runtime, so its size and location don't make much difference.

Now that you've added an image list to a form, how do you add images to that image list? See the next topic.

Adding Images To Image Lists

To add images to an image list, you can use the image list's property pages at design time. Just right-click the image list and select the Properties item in the menu that opens. Next, click the Images tab in the property pages, as shown in Figure 16.6.



Figure 16.6 Adding images to an image list.

To insert images into the image list control, just use the Insert Picture button; clicking that button

you search for image files on disk. Each successive image gets ~~the~~^{an} value, starting at 1 and counting up. If you wish, you can also give each image ~~a~~^{the} key value (a unique text string identifier) by entering text in the box labeled Key when you add an image.

When you're done adding images, close the property pages by clicking on OK.

You can also add images to an image list using ~~the~~^{the} ~~List~~^{Images} collection's Add method at runtime like this, where we give the image the key "tools":

```
ImageList1.ListImages.Add , "tools" , LoadPicture("c:\tools.bmp")
```

TIP: You should note that when the image list control is bound to another Windows common control, images of different sizes can be added to the control, but the size of the image displayed in the associate Windows common control will be constrained to the size of the image added to the image list.

Using The Images In Image Lists

The Testing Department is calling again. The 40 picture boxes you have hidden in your program taking up too much memory. Can't you do something else to store images?

You can. An image control can take up much less memory. Usually when you use an image control you're storing images for a Windows common control. Those controls have ~~an~~^{the} ImageList property, which you set to the name of the image list control you want to use (for example, ImageList1). From then on, you can associate the elements of the Windows common control with the images in the associated image list either by index or by key value.

However, you can also use image list controls with other controls, such as picture boxes. Here's an example taken from our earlier chapter on picture boxes that will create some graphics animation: store images in an image list and swap them into a picture box in this example.

Add a timer control with its Interval property set to 1000 (that is, 1 second), setting Enabled property to False; a picture box Picture1, with its AutoSize property set to True; an image list control, ImageList1, adding two images to the image list control (we used image1.bmp and image2.bmp, which are just bands of blue and red, in this example); and a command button, Command1, labeled Start Animation.

When the user clicks the Start Animation button, we enable the timer:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Timer1.Enabled = True
End Sub
```

Then we toggle a Boolean variable ~~bln~~^{the} Image1, and alternate images from the image list control every second:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean
```

```

If blnImage1 Then
    Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture
Else
    Picture1.Picture = ImageList1.ListImages(2).Picture
End If

blnImage1 = Not blnImage1

End Sub

```

Note how we refer to the images in the image control, using the ~~list~~^{list} collection this way:
`ImageList1.ListImages(1).Picture`

That's all we need—the result appears in Figure 16.7. Now we're using the images in an image. The code for this example is located in the coloranimation folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 16.7 Using the images in an image control for animation.

Setting Image Keys In An Image List

When you add an image to an image list control, that image gets a new index value automatically. However, you can also refer to images with the `Key` property. The key is a unique text string that identifies the image just as its index does, and in Windows common controls, you can refer to an image list by either its index or key.

You set an image's key in the image list's property pages. For example, set an `Image1`'s `Key` property to `Image1` by entering that text in the Key field.

Adding A Tree View To A Form

The Testing Department is calling again. There sure is a lot of data in your new program, SuperDuperDataCrunchYes, you agree, there is. How about using a tree view instead? Hmm, you think, how does that work?

To add a tree view control to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Windows Common Controls item.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. The preceding steps add the Tree View Control tool to the toolbox. Draw a tree view in form as you want it.
6. Set the tree view's properties, and add the code you want.

When you first add a tree view control, there are only sample nodes visible in it, and nothing at runtime. You're responsible for adding the nodes and setting up their relationships, text, and images yourself. We'll do that in the topics that follow in this chapter, but for reference, we list the program we'll develop here, so you can refer back to it as you like.

Running this example program yields the results you see in Figure 16.8; as you can see, we let expand and collapse nodes in the tree view, have associated both an image and text with each report which node was clicked in a text box at the bottom on the form. This program has the following controls in it: an image list `ImageList1`; a tree view control `TreeView1`, with its `Style` property set to 7 (the default); and a text box `Text1`.



Figure 16.8 Using a tree view in a form.

The code for this example is located in the `treeview` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Selecting Tree View Styles

There are many different styles for tree views—text nodes only, pictures and text nodes, showing or not showing the tree “lines” that connect nodes, showing or not showing the plus and minus symbols for expand or collapse nodes, and so on. You set the tree view’s style using the `Style` property. Here are the possible values (we’ll stick to the default, `tvwTreelinesPlusMinusPictureText`, in this chapter because that style offers the richest set of attributes):

- `tvwTextOnly`—0
- `tvwPictureText`—1
- `tvwPlusMinusText`—2
- `tvwPlusPictureText`—3
- `tvwTreelinesText`—4
- `tvwTreelinesPictureText`—5
- `tvwTreeLinesPlusMinusText`—6
- `tvwTreelinesPlusMinusPictureText`—7 (the default)

TIP: Note that you can set the tree view’s style at design time or runtime, which means you can allow users to customize the tree view’s appearance as they want.

Adding Nodes To A Tree View

The Testing Department is calling again. The tree view you’ve added to your program is fine, but isn’t there anything in it? Oops, you think, it’s time to add some nodes.

You actually add `Node` objects to a tree view by adding them to the `Nodes` collection. How does this work? Let’s see an example. Here, we’ll add a node `Node1`, to a tree view `TreeView1` (the tree view’s `Style` property is set to `tvwTreelinesPlusMinusPictureText`, the default).

First, we declare that node:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1 As Node
    ...

```

Next, we add the node to the tree view using `Nodes` collection's `Add` method (see the next topic for more information on this method):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1 As Node
    ...
    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add

```

Now we can refer to the node by name `Node1`, as we set its text:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1 As Node
    ...
    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add
    Node1.Text = "Node 1"
    ...

```

We can also refer to the node as a member of `Nodes` collection as here, where we set the node's `Key` property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1 As Node
    ...
    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add
    Node1.Text = "Node 1"
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Key = "Node 1"
End Sub
```

How does this look when you run it? You can see the result in Figure 16.9: not very spectacular just one node. You can add other nodes by duplicating the preceding code and naming the new `Node2`, `Node3` and so on, but they'll all appear at the same level. Aren't trees supposed to have that contain other nodes? They are, and we'll take a look at that in the next topic.



Figure 16.9 Placing a node in a tree view.

Adding Subnodes To A Tree View

The Testing Department is calling again. The new node you've put in your tree view is nice, but tree views usually display more than one node? What about other nodes and nodes that contain subnodes? Ok, you say, no problem.

When you add a new node to a tree view's `Nodes` collection using the `Add` method, you can specify how it is related to the nodes already there. Here's how you use the `Add` method in general:

```
Nodes.Add(relative, [relationship] [, key] [, text] [, image]
[, selectedimage])
```

The `relative` argument is another node that you're relating the new node to with the `relationship` argument. Here are the possible values for `relationship`:

- `tvwLast`—1; the node is placed after all other nodes at the same level of the node named `relative`.
- `tvwNext`—2; the node is placed after the node named `relative`.
- `tvwPrevious`—3; the node is placed before the node named `relative`.
- `tvwChild`—4; the node becomes a child node of the node named `relative`.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll set up the tree of text nodes, with one root node that has nodes—and the second of those subnodes has a subnode itself.

In this example, we'll use a tree view control `TreeView1`, (the tree view's `Style` property is set to `tvwTreelinesPlusMinusPictureText`, the default) and add four new nodes `Node1` to `Node4`:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1, Node2, Node3, Node4 As Node
    ...

```

We add the first node like this using the `Nodes` collection's `Add` method:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1, Node2, Node3, Node4 As Node

    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Text = "Node 1"
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Key = "Node 1"
    ...

```

Now we add two nodes, `Node2` and `Node3`, that are child nodes of the first node:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1, Node2, Node3, Node4 As Node

    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Text = "Node 1"
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Key = "Node 1"
```

```
Set Node2 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 1", tvwChild, "Node 2")
TreeView1.Nodes(2).Text = "Node 2"
TreeView1.Nodes(2).Key = "Node 2"

Set Node3 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 1", tvwChild, "Node 3")
TreeView1.Nodes(3).Text = "Node 3"
TreeView1.Nodes(3).Key = "Node 3"

...
```

Finally, we add a fourth node, Node4, which is the child of Node3:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1, Node2, Node3, Node4 As Node

    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Text = "Node 1"
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Key = "Node 1"

    Set Node2 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 1", tvwChild, "Node 2")
    TreeView1.Nodes(2).Text = "Node 2"
    TreeView1.Nodes(2).Key = "Node 2"

    Set Node3 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 1", tvwChild, "Node 3")
    TreeView1.Nodes(3).Text = "Node 3"
    TreeView1.Nodes(3).Key = "Node 3"

    Set Node4 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 3", tvwChild, "Node 4")
    TreeView1.Nodes(4).Text = "Node 4"
    TreeView1.Nodes(4).Key = "Node 4"

End Sub
```

And that's it—the result appears in Figure 16.10. Now we're adding nodes and subnodes to a tree control.



Figure 16.10 Nodes and subnodes in a tree view.

Adding Images To A Tree View

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. About that tree view control in your program—you give each node an image? All the other Windows programs seem to do that. You look around that the tree view Node objects have ~~image~~ property, and say, no problem.

To add an image to a node in a tree view, you just have to ~~set~~ property to an index or key in the tree view's associated image list control. Let's see an example. Here, we'll use an image list control, ImageList1, with two images taken from the Visual Basic common\graphics\bitmaps\out directory: closed.bmp and leaf.bmp, which we add to the image list control with properties "closed" and "leaf", respectively, as shown in Figure 16.11.



Figure 16.11 Adding images to an image list control.

Now we can add those images to the nodes in a tree view control `TreeView1`, by using the `Node` object's `Image` property, setting that property to `Key` values for the various images:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Node1, Node2, Node3, Node4 As Node

    Set Node1 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Text = "Node 1"
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Key = "Node 1"
    TreeView1.Nodes(1).Image = "closed"

    Set Node2 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 1", tvwChild, "Node 2")
    TreeView1.Nodes(2).Text = "Node 2"
    TreeView1.Nodes(2).Key = "Node 2"
    TreeView1.Nodes(2).Image = "leaf"

    Set Node3 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 1", tvwChild, "Node 3")
    TreeView1.Nodes(3).Text = "Node 3"
    TreeView1.Nodes(3).Key = "Node 3"
    TreeView1.Nodes(3).Image = "closed"

    Set Node4 = TreeView1.Nodes.Add("Node 3", tvwChild, "Node 4")
    TreeView1.Nodes(4).Text = "Node 4"
    TreeView1.Nodes(4).Key = "Node 4"
    TreeView1.Nodes(4).Image = "leaf"

End Sub

```

The result appears in Figure 16.12—now we're adding images to tree view nodes in Visual Basic



Figure 16.12 Using images in a tree view.

However, if you take a close look at Figure 16.12, you'll see that the folders there are closed, even when the node they represent is open. How can we change those images to an open folder when the user expands a node? For the details, see the next topic.

Expanding And Collapsing Nodes (And Setting Node Images To Match)

When the user clicks a plus or minus sign in a tree view to expand or contract a node, how can we make the node's image match? For example, when the node is closed, we can display a closed folder image, and when expanded, an open folder image. We'll take those images from the Visual Basic common\graphics\bitmaps\outline directory: open.bmp and closed.bmp. Add those images to a list, `ImageList1`, now, giving them the `Key` properties "open" and "closed". Next, connect the `ImageList` control to a tree view control `TreeView1`, by setting that control's `ImageList` property to

ImageList1.

When the user closes a node, the tree view control generates a ~~collapse~~ event:

```
Private Sub TreeView1_Collapse(ByVal Node As ComctlLib.Node)
End Sub
```

In that event's handler, we can set the node's image to the closed folder by referring to that image key:

```
Private Sub TreeView1_Collapse(ByVal Node As ComctlLib.Node)
    Node.Image = "closed"
End Sub
```

Similarly, when the user expands a node, the tree view control generates an ~~expand~~ event:

```
Private Sub TreeView1_Expand(ByVal Node As ComctlLib.Node)
End Sub
```

In that event's handler, we set the node's image to the open folder:

```
Private Sub TreeView1_Expand(ByVal Node As ComctlLib.Node)
    Node.Image = "open"
End Sub
```

That's all it takes—now the nodes in this program display open and closed folders when they are expanded and collapsed, as shown in Figure 16.13.



Figure 16.13 Expanded and collapsed node images in a tree view.

TIP: You can tell if a node is expanded or collapsed with the `Expanded` property.

Handling Tree View Node Clicks

How do you know which node in a tree view the user clicked? You can use the `NodeClick` event:

```
Private Sub TreeView1_NodeClick(ByVal Node As ComctlLib.Node)
End Sub
```

For example, we can display the text in the node that the user has clicked in a ~~Textbox~~ this way:

```
Private Sub TreeView1_NodeClick(ByVal Node As ComctlLib.Node)
    Text1.Text = "You clicked " & Node.Text
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 16.14—when the user clicks a node, the program indicates which node was clicked in the text box at the bottom. Now we're handling tree view node clicks in Visual Basic.



Figure 16.14 Handling node clicks in a tree view.

Adding A List View To A Form

The Testing Department is calling again. When you list all files on disk in a text box in your SuperDuperTextPrprogram, doesn't that text box seem pretty full? Of course, you say, there are hundreds of filenames to display. Try a list view control, they say.

To add a list view control to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Windows Common Controls item.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. The preceding steps add the List View Control tool to the toolbox. Draw a list view in the form as you want it.
6. Set the list view's properties, and add the code you want.

After the list view is in your program, it's up to you to add items, images, and select what kind of you want. There are four view types:

- Icon mode—Can be manipulated with the mouse, allowing the user to drag and drop and rearrange objects.
- SmallIcon mode—Allows more ListItem objects to be viewed. Like the icon view, objects can be rearranged by the user.
- List mode—Presents a sorted view of the ListItem objects.
- Report mode—Presents a sorted view, with sub-items allowing extra information to be displayed.

We'll set up the list view in the following topics in this chapter, creating the program listview, which is located on this book's accompanying CD-ROM. This program shows how to use a list view control that has the following controls in it: an image list control `ImageList1`, that holds the images we'll use for the items in the list view; a list view control `ListView1`, with its `ImageList` property set to `ImageList1`; a combo box `Combo1`; and a text box `Text1`.

Running the program yields the result you see in Figure 16.15; we've added four items to the list view in that program, and users can select what type of view they want in the list view with the combobox. When the user clicks an item in the list view, the program reports which item was clicked in a text box at the bottom on the form. The code for this example is located in the listview folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 16.15 Using a list view in a program.

Adding Items To A List View

You add items to a list view's `ListItems` collection, using its `Add` method. Each item you add is a `ListItem` object.

Let's see how this works in an example. In this case, we'll add three items to a `ListView1`. We start by declaring the first item `ListItem1`, as a `ListItem` object:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    ...

```

Next we add that item to the list view control with the `ListItems` collection's `Add` method:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ...

```

We can also give the new item some text to display in the list view:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem1.Text = "Item 1"
...

```

And we add the other two items in the same way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem1.Text = "Item 1"

    Dim ListItem2 As ListItem
    Set ListItem2 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem2.Text = "Item 2"

    Dim ListItem3 As ListItem
    Set ListItem3 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem3.Text = "Item 3"

```

End Sub

We set the `ListView1` control's `View` property `tdvwList` (= 2) and run the program, yielding the results you see in Figure 16.16.

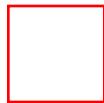


Figure 16.16 Adding items to a list view control.

That's fine as far as it goes—but what about adding icons to list view items? We'll take a look at the next topic.

Adding Icons To List View Items

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. Your new list view control is fine, but what about adding icons to the items in that list view? Hmm, you think, how do you do that?

Each item in a list view is a `ListItem` object, and each such object has a `Icon` property. You set this property to an image's index or key in an image list control.

Let's see an example. We add a list view control, `ListView1`, to a form, as well as an image list, `ImageList1`. We add one image to the image list, `new.bmp`, which is in the Visual Basic `common\graphics\bitmaps\offctlbr\large\color` directory.

To connect the image list with the list view, right-click the list view at design time, and select the

Properties item in the menu that appears. Click the Image Lists tab in the property pages, and select ImageList1 in the box labeled Normal, then click on OK to close the property pages.

Now we can add the image in the image list to the items in a list view, using the `Icon` property like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem1.Text = "Item 1"      ListItem1.Icon = 1

    Dim ListItem2 As ListItem
    Set ListItem2 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem2.Text = "Item 2"
    ListItem2.Icon = 1

    Dim ListItem3 As ListItem
    Set ListItem3 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem3.Text = "Item 3"
    ListItem3.Icon = 1
End Sub
```

Finally, we set the list view's `View` property to `Icon` (= 0) and run the program. The result appears in Figure 16.17.



Figure 16.17 Displaying icons in a list view control.

On the other hand, only the `Icon` view uses icons this way—the other three list view control views use small icons. We'll see how to add small icons in the next topic.

Adding Small Icons To List View Items

You usually use two icons for each item in a list view, a normal icon and a small icon. Let's see how to add small icons now.

Each set of icons is stored in its own image list control, so we add a new image list `ImageList2`, to a program now to hold small icons (we'll use `ImageList1` to store the large icons and the actual list view control will be `ListView1`). In this example, we'll just place one image in `ImageList2`—`leaf.bmp` from the Visual Basic common\graphics\bitmap\outline directory.

To connect the image list with the list view, right-click the list view at design time, and select the Properties item in the menu that appears. Click the Image Lists tab in the property pages, and select `ImageList2` in the box labeled Small, then click on OK to close the property pages.

Now we can add the image we've stored as the small icon of all the list items:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
```

```
    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem1.Text = "Item 1"
    ListItem1.Icon = 1
    ListItem1.SmallIcon = 1
```

```
    Dim ListItem2 As ListItem
    Set ListItem2 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem2.Text = "Item 2"
    ListItem2.Icon = 1
    ListItem2.SmallIcon = 1
```

```
    Dim ListItem3 As ListItem
    Set ListItem3 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem3.Text = "Item 3"
    ListItem3.Icon = 1
    ListItem3.SmallIcon = 1
```

```
End Sub
```

Finally, set the list view's View property `tdvwSmallIcon` (= 1) and run the program, as shown in Figure 16.18. You can see the icons we've selected for each item displayed in the list view in that figure. Our code is as follows:



Figure 16.18 Using small icons in a list view.

Selecting The View Type In List Views

List view controls support four different views:

- `IvwIcon`—0; can be manipulated with the mouse, allowing the user to drag and drop and rearrange items.
- `IvwSmallIcon`—1; allows more `ListItem` objects to be viewed. Like the icon view, objects can be rearranged by the user.
- `IvwList`—2; presents a sorted view of the `ListItem` objects.
- `IvwReport`—3; presents a sorted view, with sub-items, allowing extra information to be displayed.

You set the view type in a list view with the `View` property, which you can set at design time or runtime.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll display the various view types in a `ComboBox1`, and when the user selects one of them, we'll make that the current view type in the list `ListView1`.

When the form first loads, we place the view types in the combo box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    With ComboBox1
        .AddItem "Icon View"
        .AddItem "Small Icon View"
        .AddItem "List View"
        .AddItem "Report View"
    End With
End Sub
```

Then when the user makes a selection in the combo box, we install the corresponding view in the list view:

```
Private Sub ComboBox1_Change()
    ListView1.View = ComboBox1.ListIndex
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub ComboBox1_Click()
    ListView1.View = ComboBox1.ListIndex
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 16.19. Although we can now select all four view types in a list view, note that we haven't implemented the last type, the report view, which displays a list of columns. We'll take a look at that starting with the next topic in this chapter.



Figure 16.19 Selecting view types in a list view control.

Adding Column Headers To A List View

List views can display lists arranged in columns when you set their property `tdvwReport`. We'll take a look at using the report view in this and the next topic. Here, we'll see how to add multiple columns to a list view.

To add columns to a list view, you just need to add column headers, and you do that with the list view's `ColumnHeadersCollection`. For example, here's how we add four columns to a list view, giving each column caption "Field 1", "Field 2", and so on:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim colHeader As ColumnHeader
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To 4
        Set colHeader = ListView1.ColumnHeaders.Add()
        colHeader.Text = "Field " & intLoopIndex
    Next intLoopIndex

End Sub
```

This code works fine, but each column appears in a default width, which might not be right for the size of your view. To tailor the columns to your list view control, you can do something like this, where we set the `ColumnWidth` property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim colHeader As ColumnHeader
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To 4
        Set colHeader = ListView1.ColumnHeaders.Add()
        colHeader.Text = "Field " & intLoopIndex
        colHeader.Width = ListView1.Width / 4
    Next intLoopIndex

End Sub
```

After you set the `View` property of the list view control to `Report`, the result of this code appears in Figure 16.20 (where we've added a few items to the list view control itself, Items 1 through 3, as well).



Figure 16.20 Supporting column headers in a list view.

Now that we're using columns in a list view, how do you add text for each column, item by item? We'll look at that next.

Adding Column Fields To A List View

You've set up a list view and added the items you want to it. Now you want to set the list view up to use columns, setting its `View` property to `Report`. You've added headers to each column (see the previous topic in this chapter)—but how do you add text for each item in each column?

You use the `ListSubItems` collection's `Add` method to add column text to an item. Each `ListItem` object has a `ListSubItems` collection, and here's how you use that collection's `Add` method:

```
ListSubItems.Add [ index ] [, key ] [, text ] [, reporticon ] [, tooltiptext ]
```

For example, let's say that we add three items to a list view that has four columns. We can add text in each columns for each of the three items.

Here's how it works. The first column, `field`, holds the item's text (set with `Text` property). To add text for the following three columns of the first item (we'll display "Field 2" in field 2, "Field 3" in field 3, and so on), we use the `ListSubItems` collection's `Add` method this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()

    Dim colHeader As ColumnHeader
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To 4          'Label headers
        Set colHeader = ListView1.ColumnHeaders.Add()
        colHeader.Text = "Field " & intLoopIndex
        colHeader.Width = ListView1.Width / 4
    Next intLoopIndex

    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem1.Text = "Item 1"
    ListItem1.Icon = 1
    ListItem1.SmallIcon = 1
    ListView1.ListItems(1).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 2"
    ListView1.ListItems(1).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 3"
    ListView1.ListItems(1).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 4"
    ...

```

And we do the same for the remaining two items:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()

    Dim colHeader As ColumnHeader
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To 4          'Label headers
        Set colHeader = ListView1.ColumnHeaders.Add()
        colHeader.Text = "Field " & intLoopIndex
        colHeader.Width = ListView1.Width / 4
    Next intLoopIndex

    Dim ListItem1 As ListItem
    Set ListItem1 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem1.Text = "Item 1"
    ListItem1.Icon = 1
    ListItem1.SmallIcon = 1
    ListView1.ListItems(1).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 2"
    ListView1.ListItems(1).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 3"
    ListView1.ListItems(1).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 4"

    Dim ListItem2 As ListItem
    Set ListItem2 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem2.Text = "Item 2"
    ListItem2.Icon = 1
    ListItem2.SmallIcon = 1
    ListView1.ListItems(2).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 2"
    ListView1.ListItems(2).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 3"
    ListView1.ListItems(2).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 4"

    Dim ListItem3 As ListItem
    Set ListItem3 = ListView1.ListItems.Add()
    ListItem3.Text = "Item 3"
    ListItem3.Icon = 1
    ListItem3.SmallIcon = 1
    ListView1.ListItems(3).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 2"
    ListView1.ListItems(3).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 3"
    ListView1.ListItems(3).ListSubItems.Add , , "Field 4"

End Sub

```

That's it—when you set ListView1's View property to `lvwReport`, the preceding code gives us the results you see in Figure 16.21. Now we've added text to all the fields in our list view.



Figure 16.21 Adding column text to list view items.

Handling List View Item Clicks

Your list view is set up, and you've displayed the items you want in it in the view type you want. now what? How do you let the user use that list view?

When the user clicks an item in a list view, the control generates `ItemClick` event:

```
Private Sub ListView1_ItemClick(ByVal Item As ComctlLib.ListItem)
End Sub
```

The item that was clicked is passed to us as the argument `Item`, and you can access `Index` or `Key` properties to determine which item it is. As an example, here we display the item's index in box `Text1`, when the user clicks it:

```
Private Sub ListView1_ItemClick(ByVal Item As ComctlLib.ListItem)
    Text1.Text = "You clicked item " & Item.Index
End Sub
```

Adding this code to a program gives us the results you see in Figure 16.22—when the user click item, we report which item was clicked in the text box at bottom in that figure.



Figure 16.22 Handling list view clicks.

Besides item clicks, you can also handle column header clicks—see the next topic.

Handling List View Column Header Clicks

How do you know when the user clicks a column header in a list view? The control generates a `ColumnClick` event, which you can handle in its event handler:

```
Private Sub ListView1_ColumnClick(ByVal ColumnHeader As _
    ComctlLib.ColumnHeader)
End Sub
```

The column header the user clicked is passed to us as the `ColumnHeader` argument, and you can determine which column header was clicked with `Index` property. For example, here we display which column the user has clicked with a message in a `TextBox1`:

```
Private Sub ListView1_ColumnClick(ByVal ColumnHeader As _
ComctlLib.ColumnHeader)
Text1.Text = "You clicked column " & ColumnHeader.Index
End Sub
```

Now we can determine which column header the user clicked, as shown in Figure 16.23.



Figure 16.23 Determining which column was clicked in a list view.

Adding A Tab Strip To A Form

The Testing Department is calling again. There are just too many dialog boxes in your program. Can you fix that?

You can group the dialog boxes into one, using a tab strip; as the user selects tabs in the tab strip, it can display the contents that were separate dialog boxes in panels that appear when their tab is selected. For an example of how this works, select the Project Properties item in the Visual Basic Project menu.

To add a tab strip control to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Windows Common Controls item.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. The preceding steps add the Tab Strip Control tool to the toolbox. Draw a tab strip in the form as you want it.
6. Set the tab strip's properties, and add the code you want.

After you add a tab strip control to your program, it's up to you to tailor it the way you want it, by adding new tabs, text, and images to those tabs, and so on. We'll develop a tab strip example in the next topics in this chapter, and you can see that program at work in Figure 16.24. When the user selects one of the three tabs in the program, we display a new panel of the tab strip control, each of which displays a picture box with a different color.



Figure 16.24 Our tab strip example program at work.

This example has these controls: a tab strip `TabStrip1`; three picture boxes `Picture1` through `Picture3`, which each hold a solid-color picture (and with the `AutoSize` property set to True); a text box, `Text1`, so we can report which tab the user has clicked; and an image list `ImageList1`, which holds three images that we use in the tabs of the tab strip.

The code for this example is located in the tabstrip folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Inserting Tabs Into A Tab Strip Control

When you first add a tab strip control to a form, that control has one tab in it (and it can't have less than one—if you take that one tab out of the control, you'll find it back in place the next time you load the program into Visual Basic). How do you add others?

At design time, you use the tab strip's property pages. Just right-click the tab strip, select Properties from the menu that appears, and click the Tabs tab, as shown in Figure 16.25.



Figure 16.25 Adding tabs to a tab strip control.

You add new tabs by clicking the Insert Tab button, and at the same time you can set the tab's Text, Key , and other properties.

You can also add new tabs at runtime if you add them to the tab ~~Tab~~^{Strip} property, using the ~~Add~~^{Insert} method. For example, here's how we add two new tabs to a tab strip control and set their keys:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Tab2, Tab3 As ComctlLib.Tab

    Set Tab2 = TabStrip1.Tabs.Add()
    Tab2.Key = "Key2"

    Set Tab3 = TabStrip1.Tabs.Add()
    Tab3.Key = "key3"

End Sub
```

That's all there is to it. In the next topic, we'll take a look at adding text to the tabs.

Setting Tab Captions

You've added the tabs you want to your tab strip control—now how do you add text to those tabs?

At design time, you use the tab strip's property pages. Just right-click the tab strip, select Properties from the menu that appears, and click the Tabs tab, as shown in Figure 16.25. To enter the text for each tab, select the tab you want to work on, and enter the text for that tab in the box labeled Caption, shown in Figure 16.25. That's all it takes.

You can also set a tab ~~Caption~~^{Text} property at runtime. For example, here we set the captions of three tabs: "Tab 1", "Tab 2", and so on:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim Tab1, Tab2, Tab3 As ComctlLib.Tab

    Set Tab1 = TabStrip1.Tabs(1)
    Tab1.Key = "Key1"
    Tab1.Caption = "Tab 1"

    Set Tab2 = TabStrip1.Tabs.Add()
    Tab2.Key = "Key2"
    Tab2.Caption = "Tab 2"

    Set Tab3 = TabStrip1.Tabs.Add()
    Tab3.Key = "key3"
    Tab3.Caption = "Tab 3"
```

Adding this code to a program gives you the captions you see in Figure 16.26.



Figure 16.26 Making use of tab captions.

Setting Tab Images

The Aesthetic Design Department has sent you some email. How about adding some images to the strip control in your program? Hmm, you think, how does that work?

You can connect an image list control to a tab strip using the tab ~~strip~~^{ImageList} property, and you can connect the images in that image list to the tabs in the tab strip. At design time, you use the tab strip property pages. Just right-click the tab strip, select Properties from the menu that appears, and click the Tabs tab, as shown in Figure 16.25. Then select the tab you want to add an image to, and place the index or key in the image list into the box labeled Image, as shown in Figure 16.25. In addition, you connect the image list to the tab strip control; select the General tab, shown in Figure 16.25, and enter the name of the image list control that holds the images you'll use (for example, `ImageList1`) in the box labeled ImageList.

You can also connect images to tabs at runtime. Let's see an example in code. Here, we add images displaying large numerals, 1, 2, and 3, as stored in an ~~image~~^{Image} `List1`, which is connected to the tab strip with its `ImageList` property) to a tab strip's tabs this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
Dim Tab2, Tab3 As ComctlLib.Tab

Set Tab1 = TabStrip1.Tabs(1)
Tab1.Key = "Key1"
Tab1.Caption = "Tab 1"
Tab1.Image = 1

Set Tab2 = TabStrip1.Tabs.Add()
Tab2.Key = "Key2"
Tab2.Caption = "Tab 2"
Tab2.Image = 2

Set Tab3 = TabStrip1.Tabs.Add()
Tab3.Key = "key3"
Tab3.Caption = "Tab 3"
Tab3.Image = 3
```

Now those numerals appear as images in the tabs in the tab strip, as shown in Figure 16.27.



Figure 16.27 Displaying images in a tab strip's tabs.

Using A Tab Strip To Display Other Controls

You usually use tab strips to display other controls. Let's see how this works with an example. Here we use a tab strip to display three picture boxes.

After you've sized the tab strip control as you want it, you can move and size the picture boxes to its tab strip's client area (in other words, its display area). We do that for all three picture boxes like this where we've placed them in a control array named PictureControl (we use a With statement because that's what you usually use here if you want to add other code to initialize the controls you're displaying).

```
For intLoopIndex = 0 To PictureControl.Count - 1
    With PictureControl(intLoopIndex)
        .Move TabStrip1.ClientLeft, TabStrip1.ClientTop,
              TabStrip1.ClientWidth, TabStrip1.ClientHeight
    End With
Next intLoopIndex
```

This puts all the picture boxes on top of each other. How do you make sure only one is showing at a time? You set its ZOrder property to 0; for example, if we want to display the first picture box only, we'd use this code:

```
For intLoopIndex = 0 To PictureControl.Count - 1
    With PictureControl(intLoopIndex)
        .Move TabStrip1.ClientLeft, TabStrip1.ClientTop,
              TabStrip1.ClientWidth, TabStrip1.ClientHeight
    End With
Next intLoopIndex
```

PictureControl(0).ZOrder 0

Now we've installed our picture boxes and displayed one on top. But how do we display the others when the user clicks a tab? We'll look into that in the next topic.

Handling Tab Clicks

When the user clicks a tab in a tab strip, the control creates a Click event:

```
Private Sub TabStrip1_Click()
End Sub
```

We can display the control that matches the clicked tab by setting its ZOrder to 0. For example, if we use the three picture boxes we added to a tab strip in the previous topic in this chapter, we can bring the selected picture box to the front this way:

```
Private Sub TabStrip1_Click()
    PictureControl(TabStrip1.SelectedItem.Index - 1).ZOrder 0
End Sub
```

We can also indicate which tab the user clicked in a text box:

```
Private Sub TabStrip1_Click()
```

```
PictureControl(TabStrip1.SelectedItem.Index - 1).ZOrder 0  
Text1.Text = "You clicked tab " & Str$(TabStrip1.SelectedItem.Index)
```

```
End Sub
```

Adding this code to a program gives the results you see in Figure 16.28. Now we're letting the user click the tabs in a tab strip.



Figure 16.28 Clicking tabs in a tab strip.

Chapter 17

File Handling And File Controls

If you need an immediate solution to:

Using The Common Dialogs File Open And File Save As

Creating A File

Getting A File's Length

Opening A File

Writing To A Sequential File

Writing To A Random Access File

Writing To A Binary File

Reading From Sequential Files

Reading From Random Access Files

Reading From Binary Files

Accessing Any Record In A Random Access File

Closing A File

Saving Files From Rich Text Boxes

Opening Files In Rich Text Boxes

Saving Files From Picture Boxes

Opening Files In Picture Boxes

Using The Drive List Box Control

Using The Directory List Box Control

Using The File List Box Control

Creating And Deleting Directories

Changing Directories

Copying A File

Moving A File

Deleting A File

When Was A File Created? Last Modified? Last Accessed?

Creating A TextStream

Opening A TextStream

Writing To A TextStream

Reading From A TextStream

Closing A TextStream

In Depth

This chapter focuses on file handling and using the file controls in Visual Basic. Here, we'll see I to:

- Use the Common Dialogs File Open and File Save As (you can find more information or topic in Chapter 11).
- Create a file
- Open a file
- Read from a file
- Write to a file
- Close a file
- Read and write files with rich text boxes
- Use the file controls like the directory list box and drive list box
- Determine a file's creation date, last modified date, and more
- Move and copy files
- Use the TextStream object

There are three main ways to access files in Visual Basic: as sequential files, as random access and as binary files (you set the way you'll treat a file when you open it). We'll get an overview of types of files before turning to the Immediate Solutions.

Sequential Access Files

Sequential files are like tape cassettes—you read data from them in a sequential manner. If you data at the end of the file, you have to read all the intervening data first. Sequential files are often organized into text strings in Visual Basic. Here are the Visual Basic statements and functions you can use with sequential files (the # symbol refers to an open file, as we'll see):

- Open
- Line Input #
- Print #
- Write #
- Input\$
- Input #
- Close

In addition, Visual Basic supports TextStream objects to make working with sequential files easier. We'll see later in this chapter. Here are the major TextStream methods:

- Read
- ReadAll
- ReadLine
- Write

- WriteBlankLines
- WriteLine
- Close

When do you use sequential files? If you've got a text file full of variable-length strings, you usually treat that file as sequential. You can also use sequential files to store binary-format items like numbers.

Random Access Files

If sequential files are like cassettes, random access files are more like CDs. Random files are organized into records (usually of the same length), and you can read a particular record without having to skip over the intervening data—you can move to that record in a file directly, just as you can move to a CD track.

Here are the Visual Basic statements and functions you use with random access files:

- Type...End Type (to create and format records)
- Open
- Put #
- Len
- Seek
- LOC
- Get #
- Close

When do you use random access files? If you want to create your own database files, formatted or unformatted, you'd want them to be random access files. If you want to organize them into records, you'd want them, you'd organize them into records. In fact, any file that you want to organize into records is best formatted as a random access file.

Binary Files

Binary files are simply unformatted binary data, and Visual Basic does not interpret (such as look for text strings) or organize the contents (into records) of such files at all. These files are just byte streams to Visual Basic, and the statements and functions you usually use with these files include the following:

- Open
- Get
- Put
- Seek
- Close

Binary files include EXE files, graphics files, and so on.

The FileSystemObject

Besides the preceding file types, Visual Basic includes the FileSystemObject for easy file manipulation on disk. This object includes a number of methods for copying, moving, and deleting files such as.

these:

- GetFile
- CopyFile
- DeleteFile
- MoveFile
- FileExists
- CreateFolder
- CreateTextFile
- OpenTextFile

In fact, you use the FileSystemObject to create TextStream objects (with methods ~~CreateTextFile~~ and ~~OpenTextFile~~). We'll see more about this topic later in this chapter.

That's it for the overview of files and file handling. It's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Using The Common Dialogs File Open And File Save As

The usual way to start working with files is to get a file name from the user using the Common File Open or File Save As. We've covered these dialogs in depth in Chapter 11, but we'll provide a quick overview here.

You display the File Open and File Save As dialog boxes with the Common Dialog control's ShowOpen and ShowSave methods. These methods need no arguments passed to them—to set options, you set the Common Dialog control's Flags property (see Chapter 11). You can also set the Filter property so the dialog box displays only certain types of files, such as text files.

To find out what file the user wants to work with, you check the Common Dialog ~~Title~~~~Name~~ property after the user clicks on OK in the dialog box. That property holds the fully qualified (that is, with the path) name of the file to If you just want the file's name, use ~~Title~~~~Name~~ property.

Here's an example. In this case, we'll let the user select a file to open, and then display the file's name and path message box.

Add a Common Dialog control to a form and set the control's CancelError property to True so we can check if the user clicked the Cancel button. To check that, we use Error GoTo :

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Then we display the Open dialog box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    ...
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Finally, assuming the user clicked OK, we display the name of the file the user selected in a message box using the ~~FileName~~ property:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    MsgBox "File to open: " & CommonDialog1.FileName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

When you run this code and click the button, the Open dialog box appears, as in Figure 17.1.



Figure 17.1 The Open dialog box.

If you make a file selection and click on OK, the Open dialog box closes and the program displays the name of the file you selected, and its path, in a message box, as shown in Figure 17.2.



Figure 17.2 Getting a file to open from the user.

Creating A File

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Your SuperDuperTextProcessor-word-processing program is great, but shouldn't it offer users some way to save their text in a file? Hmm, you think, could be a good idea.

So how do you create a file in Visual Basic? The standard way is to use the `Open` statement (we'll see another way when we work with `TextStream` objects later in this chapter). Here's how the `Open` statement works:

```
Open pathname For mode [Access access] [lock] As [#] filenumber [Len= reclength]
```

Here are what the various arguments mean:

- pathname—A file name (may include directory or folder, and drive).
- mode—A keyword specifying the file mode Append, Binary, Input, Output, or Random (if unspecified, the file is opened for Random access).
- access—A keyword specifying the operations permitted on the open file Read, Write, or Read Write.
- lock—A keyword specifying the operations restricted on the open file by other processes Shared, Lock Read, Lock Write, and Lock Read Write.
- filenumber—A valid file number in the range 1 to 511, inclusive. Use `FreeFile` function to obtain the next available file number.
- reclength—A number less than or equal to 32,767 (bytes). For files opened for random access, this value record length. For sequential files, this value is the number of characters buffered.

If the file is already opened by another process and the specified type of access is not allowed, the `Open` operation fails and an error occurs. Also note that the `Len` clause is ignored if mode is Binary.

So how do you create a file with `Open`? If the file specified by `pathname` doesn't exist, it is created when a file is opened for Append, Binary, Output, or Random modes. After you've created the file, you refer to it using the file number.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll let users write the text in a text box, `Text1`, to a file on disk, `file.txt`, when they press a button. Because file operations are prone to error (we might run into missing diskettes, locked files, and so on), start by checking for errors:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Next, we create `file.txt` as file #1:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Now we write the text in `Text1` to the file with the `Print #` method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    Print #1, Text1.Text
    ...

```

```
FileError:
```

```
    MsgBox "File Error!"
```

```
End Sub
```

And finally we close the file:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    Print #1, Text1.Text
    Close #1
    Exit Sub
```

```
FileError:
```

```
    MsgBox "File Error!"
```

```
End Sub
```

When you add a text box `Text1`, to the form, and a command button `Command1`, labeled “Write text to file”, and run the program, you see the display much like that in Figure 17.3. When you click the command button, the new text is created and written.



Figure 17.3 Writing text to a file.

TIP: We should note that each open file needs its own unique file number; you can use the `FreeFile` function to return the next available free file number. You use `FreeFile` like this: `FreeFile[(rangenum)]`. Here, the optional `rangenum` argument is a variant that specifies the range from which the next free file number is to be returned. Pass a 0 (default) to return a file number in the range 1 to 255. Specify a 1 to return a file number in the range 256 to 511.

Getting A File's Length

When you start reading files in code, it can help to know the file's length (for one thing, it can tell you how many bytes to read in). There are two ways to determine file length: `FileLen` and the `LOF` functions.

The FileLen Function

The `FileLen` function returns the length of a file (in bytes) on disk. Here's an example in which we report the size of the file, `file.txt`, in a message box using `FileLen`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MsgBox "The file.txt file is" & Str(FileLen("c:\file.txt")) & _
        " bytes long."
End Sub
```

Running this code gives a result such as you see in Figure 17.4.



Figure 17.4 Reporting a file's length.

The LOF Function

The LOF function returns the length of a file (in bytes) opened with Open statement. You pass the LOF function an open file number. Here's an example in which we report the length of a file we've just written, using the LOF function:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
On Error GoTo FileError
Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
Print #1, Text1.Text
MsgBox "The file is" & Str(LOF(1)) & " bytes long."
Close #1
Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Opening A File

How do you open a file in Visual Basic? You use the Open statement. Here's how the Open statement works:

```
Open pathname For mode [Access access] [ lock] As [#] filenumber [Len= reclength]
```

Here are what the various arguments mean:

- pathname—A file name (may include directory or folder, and drive).
- mode—A keyword specifying the file mode Append, Binary, Input, Output, or Random (if unspecified, the file is opened for Random access).
- access—A keyword specifying the operations permitted on the open file Read, Write, or Read Write.
- lock—A keyword specifying the operations restricted on the open file by other processes Shared, Lock Read, Lock Write, and Lock Read Write.
- filenumber—A valid file number in the range 1 to 511, inclusive. Use the FreeFile function to obtain the next available file number.
- reclength—Number less than or equal to 32,767 (bytes). For files opened for random access, this value is record length. For sequential files, this value is the number of characters buffered.

If the file is already opened by another process and the specified type of access is not allowed, the Open operation fails and an error occurs. Also note that the Len clause is ignored if mode is Binary. If the file specified by pathname doesn't exist, it is created when a file is opened for Append, Binary, Output, or Random modes. If you open an existing file for Output, it is overwritten; if you open it for Append, new data is added to the end of the file. After you've created the file, you refer to it using the file number.

For example, here we open a file named file.txt and write the contents of a text box to that file:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
On Error GoTo FileError
Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
Print #1, Text1.Text
Close #1
Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
```

```
End Sub
```

Writing To A Sequential File

Sequential files are often text strings in Visual Basic, but they can also be combinations of text and numbers. You can use these standard statements to write to sequential files in Visual Basic (we'll also see how to use the TextStream methods later in this chapter):

```
Print # number, expressionlist
Write # number, expressionlist
```

Here, `number` is an open file number and `expressionlist` is a list of variables to write, separated by commas. Let's take a look at some examples.

The Print # Statement

If you want to store your data in text format, `Print #`. As an example, we'll store the text in a text box to a file named `file.txt` using `Print #`. We start by checking for errors:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Then we open a file for output:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Then we print the text in a text box `Text1`, to the file:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    Print #1, Text1.Text
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Finally we close the file:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    Print #1, Text1.Text
    Close #1
```

```
Exit Sub
```

```
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

And that's it—now the user can write the contents of a text box out to disk. The code for this is located in the file folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

The Write # Statement

You can also use the **Write #** statement to write text and other types of data to a file. You use this statement with a number and a comma-delimited list of the variables you want to write to that file. For example, here we open a file data.dat, and write two numbers that the user has entered in the text boxes Text1 and Text2 to that file:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Open "c:\data.dat" For Output As #1
    Write #1, Val(Text1.Text), Val(Text2.Text)
    Close #1
End Sub
```

To see how to read those values back in, take a look at “Reading From Sequential Files” coming up in this chapter.

Writing To A Random Access File

You usually write records to random access files using the **Put** statement:

```
Put [#] filenumber, [recnumber], varname
```

Here, **filenumber** is the number of a file to write to; **recnumber** is the number of the record to write (you set the record when you open the file), and **varname** is the name of the variable that holds the data to write to the file.

To work with records in a random access file, you define a record type first. For example, here we define a new type named **Record** in a module (you can only define types in modules; to add a new module to a program, use the Project menu’s Add Module item):

```
Type Record
    Name As String * 50
    Number As String * 50
End Type
```

Note that we use fixed-length strings here to make all our records the same size.

Now in a program, we can set up an array of such records in the (General) part of a form, as well as an integer to track of the total number of records:

```
Dim WriteData(1 To 50) As Record
Dim TotalRecords As Integer
```

In this example, we'll just have one record, which we fill from the text boxes **Text1** and **Text2** when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    WriteData(1).Name = Text1.Text
    WriteData(1).Number = Text2.Text
    TotalRecords = 1
    ...

```

Next, we create a file to store our record(s) in—note that we set the size of each record in the file using the **Len** keyword:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    WriteData(1).Name = Text1.Text
    WriteData(1).Number = Text2.Text
    TotalRecords = 1

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(WriteData(1))
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Finally, we use the **Put** statement to write the data to the file. We only have one record here, but if we had a number of records, we could loop like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    WriteData(1).Name = Text1.Text
    WriteData(1).Number = Text2.Text
    TotalRecords = 1

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(WriteData(1))
    For loop_index = 1 To TotalRecords
        Put #1, , WriteData(loop_index)
    Next loop_index
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"

End Sub
```

And that's it—we've written our data file. To see how to read records back in, see "Reading From A File".

Random Access Files" later in this chapter.

Writing To A Binary File

You usually write records to binary files using **Put** statement:

```
Put [#] filenumber, [reccnumber], varname
```

Here,filenumberis the number of a file to write to,recnumberis the number of the record to write for random files and the byte at which to start writing for binary files,varnameis the name of the variable that holds the data to write to the file.

Here's an example showing how to **Put** to write a floating point number the user has entered in text box,Text1, to a file—note that we open that fileBinary mode and don't use a record number with Put here:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim varOutput As Double
    varOutput = Val(Text1.Text)

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\binary.dat" For Binary As #1
    Put #1, , varOutput
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

To see how to read the binary data back in, see "Reading from Binary Files" later in this chapter

Reading From Sequential Files

To read from sequential file, you can use these standard statements (we'll see how to use Text\$ methods later in this chapter):

```
Input # number, expressionlist
Line Input # number, string
Input$ ( numberbytes, [#] number)
```

Here,numberis a file numberexpressionlists a list of variables the data will be stored instring is a string variable to store data in, andnumberbytes\$ the number of bytes you want to read. Let's see some examples.

The Input # Statement

You can use the `Input #` statement to read text and numbers from a sequential file. For example, if we write two integers the user has entered `Text1` and `Text2` to a file, `data.dat`, this way using `Write #` when the user click `Command1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Open "c:\data.dat" For Output As #1
    Write #1, Val(Text1.Text), Val(Text2.Text)
    Close #1
End Sub
```

then we can read those integers back using `Input #` this way when the user click `Command2`:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim int1, int2 As Integer

    Open "c:\data.dat" For Input As #1
    Input #1, int1, int2
    Text3.Text = Str(int1)
    Text4.Text = Str(int2)
    Close #1
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 17.5. When the user enters two integers in the text boxes and click Write Data button, we write them to disk. When the user clicks the Read data button, we read them back using `Input #`. In that way, we're able to write and read a sequential file. The code for this example is located in the `filedata` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 17.5 Using `Write #` and `Input #` to save and restore integers.

The Line Input Statement

Using the Line Input statement, you can read lines (text strings that end with a carriage return or carriage return/line feed pair) from a file. For example, say we had this set of lines, each separated by a carriage return/line feed pair in a file named `file.txt`:

```
Here is some
multi-line text
that we
will read in...
```

When the user clicks a button, we can read in the preceding text line by line using `Line Input`. First, we open the file:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Input As #1
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub

```

Now we need some way of looping over all the lines in the file—but how do we know when we've reached the end of the file? We use the Visual Basic (End Of File) function, which returns True when we reach the end of the file:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Input As #1
    Do Until EOF(1)
    ...
        Loop

    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub

```

Next we use Line Input to read lines of text from the file and append them to a multiline text box (is, a text box with its MultiLine property set to True), Text1, along with a carriage return line feed paragraph this way:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim NewLine As String

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Input As #1
    Do Until EOF(1)
        Line Input #1, NewLine
        Text1.Text = Text1.Text + NewLine + vbCrLf
    Loop

    Exit Sub
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub

```

The result of this code appears in Figure 17.6. When the user clicks the command button, we re the file.txt file line by line using `Line Input` and display it in the text box.

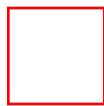


Figure 17.6 Reading text with `Line Input`.

The code for this is located in the fileread folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

The Input\$ Statement

The `Input$` statement lets you read in a string of a specified length. It might seem odd to have to specify the strings' lengths before reading them in, but `Input$` does have one very useful aspect: if you use it together with the `LOF` (Length Of File) function, you can read in a whole text file at once.

For example, here's how we read in the file from the previous example, `file.txt`, all at once, without having to work line by line:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim NewLine As String

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Input As #1

    Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)

    Exit Sub
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

This example produces the same result as the previous example that used `Input$`.

Reading From Random Access Files

The Testing Department is on the phone. Your new program, `SuperDuperDataCrunch`, is great for writing data to disk, but shouldn't you let the user read that data back in? Hmm, you think, good idea!

You use `Get` to read records from a random access file:

Get [#] filenumber, [recnumber], varname

Here, `filenumber` is the number of a file to read from, `recnumber` is the number of the record to read, and `varname` is the name of the variable that should receive the read-in data.

Let's see an example. Earlier in this chapter, we saw how to write records to a random access file. Now let's set up a new type named `Record` in a module:

```
Type Record
    Name As String * 50
    Number As String * 50
End Type
```

Then we set up two formwide arrays of records, `WriteData` and `ReadData`, and an integer named `TotalRecords` to keep track of how many records are total (these variables are stored in the `(Global)` section of the form):

```
Dim WriteData(1 To 50) As Record
Dim ReadData(1 To 50) As Record
Dim TotalRecords As Integer
```

When the user clicked a command button, we read the text from two text ~~Text1~~ and ~~Text2~~, placed that text in the first record of ~~the~~ ~~WriteData~~ array, and wrote that record out to a file named records.dat with the ~~Put~~ statement:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    WriteData(1).Name = Text1.Text
    WriteData(1).Number = Text2.Text
    TotalRecords = 1

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(WriteData(1))
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To TotalRecords
        Put #1, , WriteData(intLoopIndex)
    Next intLoopIndex
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"

End Sub
```

Now we'll see how to read that record back in. First, we open the file records.dat for random access setting the record size to the length of each array element:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(ReadData(1))
    ...

```

Then we use ~~Get~~ to read in the records:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(ReadData(1))
    For intLoopIndex = 1 To LOF(1) / Len(ReadData(1))
        Get #1, , ReadData(intLoopIndex)
    Next intLoopIndex
```

Next, we loop over all the records in the file (although we ~~LOF(1) / Len(ReadData(1))~~ to

determine the number of records in the file, we could also loop until EOF (function is True):

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(ReadData(1))

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To LOF(1) / Len(ReadData(1))
    ...
        Next intLoopIndex
    ...

```

Then we close the file and display Name and Number fields of the first (and only) record in two new text boxes Text3 and Text4:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    Open "c:\records.dat" For Random As #1 Len = Len(ReadData(1))

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To LOF(1) / Len(ReadData(1))
        Get #1, , ReadData(intLoopIndex)
    Next intLoopIndex

    Close #1

    Text3.Text = ReadData(1).Name
    Text4.Text = ReadData(1).Number

    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

When you run this program, as shown in Figure 17.7, the user can enter data into the two text boxes at left, click the Write To File button to write the data to a record in a file, then click the Read From File button to read the data back in and display that text in the two text boxes at right.



Figure 17.7 Writing and reading records to and from a random access file.

You can see the result in Figure 17.7. Now we're reading records from random access files in Visual Basic.

The code for this example is located in the filerecord folder on this book's accompanying CD-RW.

Reading From Binary Files

How do you read raw data from files that have been opened in **Binary** format with the **Open** statement? You usually use **Get** to read data from a binary file (although you can use **Put** # as well—see the previous topic on reading from sequential files):

```
Get [#] filenumber, [recnumber], varname
```

Here, **filenumber** is the number of a file to read from; **recnumber** is the number of the record to read for random files and the byte at which to start reading for binary files; **varname** is the name of the variable that will hold the read-in data.

Let's see an example. In this case, we first write some binary data—such as a floating point number—to a file, and then we'll read it back in. Here, we let the user enter the value in a text box, which we read in when the user clicks a command button, Command1:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim varOutput As Double
    varOutput = Val(Text1.Text)
    ...

```

Then we write that number out to a binary file, **binary.dat** (making it a binary file by opening it in **Binary** mode):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim varOutput As Double
    varOutput = Val(Text1.Text)

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\binary.dat" For Binary As #1
    Put #1, , varOutput
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Now it's up to us to read that number back in as binary data when the user clicks a new button, Command2. We start by opening the file again:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
```

```
Open "c:\binary.dat" For Binary As #1
```

```
...
```

```
FileError:
```

```
    MsgBox "File Error!"
```

```
End Sub
```

Next, we use `Get` to read in the number and store it in a new variable `varInput`:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim varInput As Double

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\binary.dat" For Binary As #1
    Get #1, , varInput
    ...
FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"

End Sub
```

Finally, we display the newly read-in variable in a text `Text2`, and close the file:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim varInput As Double

    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\binary.dat" For Binary As #1
    Get #1, , varInput
    Text2.Text = Str(varInput)
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"

End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 17.8, where we write the number 3.1415 out to disk in the file `binary.c` then read it in again. Now we're working with binary files in Visual Basic.



Figure 17.8 Writing and reading binary data.

The code for this example is located in the `filebinary` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM

Accessing Any Record In A Random Access File

When you've set up a file to hold records (by creating `Random` mode with the `Open` statement and passing the length of the records you want to open), you can `Get` or `Put` access any record in the file by record number:

`Get #1, recordnumber, variablename`

In this case, we're reading record number `recordnumber` from file 1 and placing the data read into a variable named `variablename`. In the same way, you can write any record `Put`:

`Put #1, recordnumber, variablename`

Using `Get` and `Put` in this way, you can read and write any record in the file.

TIP: Besides `Get` and `Put`, you can use the `Seek` function to set the position at which a record will next be read or written in a file—called the read/write position—and `Loc` function to determine the current read/write position.

Closing A File

How do you close a file in Visual Basic? It's simple—you just use `Close` statement:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    Open "c:\file.txt" For Output As #1
    Print #1, Text1.Text
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub
```

Closing a file writes all its data out to disk.

TIP: If you want to close all files your application has open, just use `Close` statement without any arguments.

Saving Files From Rich Text Boxes

You can use the `SaveFile()` method to save the text in a rich text box to disk, and doing that is really easy—you just use `SaveFile()` this way:

`RichTextBox1.SaveFile(pathname, [filetype])`

You can save text as plain or RTF text; the settings `filetype` are as follows:

- `rtfRTF`— 0 (the default); the rich text box control saves its contents as an RTF file.
- `rtfText`— 1; the rich text box control saves its contents as a text file.

Here's an example where we display some text in a rich text box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    RichTextBox1.Text = "This is the text in the file."
End Sub
```

Next, we save that text to a file this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.SaveFile ("c:\data.txt")
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes—now we've written RTF to a file. For more information on rich text boxes, see Chapter 6.

TIP: Many word processors, like Microsoft Word, support RTF files, so you can now write text formatted files that such word processors can read in and use.

Opening Files In Rich Text Boxes

You can write files to disk from a rich text box with `SaveFile()`; how can you read files back in? You use `LoadFile()`. Like `SaveFile()` `LoadFile()` is very easy to use:

```
RichTextBox1.LoadFile pathname, [filetype]
```

And you can load in plain text or RTF text files; the settings `filetype` are as follows:

- `rtfRTF`— 0 (the default); the rich text box control saves its contents as an RTF file.
- `rtfText`— 1; the rich text box control saves its contents as a text file.

Here's an example where we load in the file we wrote in the last topic on saving files, `data.txt`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    RichTextBox1.LoadFile "c:\data.txt"
End Sub
```

That's all there is to it—it's that easy to load in files. For more information on rich text boxes, see Chapter 6.

Saving Files From Picture Boxes

Can you save the images in picture boxes to disk files? Yes, you can with `SavePicture`. Here's how that statement works:

```
SavePicture picture, stringexpression
```

Here's what the arguments in that statement mean:

- `picture`—Picture or image control from which the graphics file is to be created
- `stringexpression`—File name of the graphics file to save

Note that `SavePicture` only saves images in BMP, WMF, and ICO formats (depending on the file type the image came from originally); if the image came from a GIF or JPEG file, it's saved in BMP format. Graphics in an `Image` property are always saved as bitmap (BMP) files no matter what their original

format.

Here's an example where we save the image `Picture1` to a file, `\image.bmp`, when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    SavePicture Picture1.Picture, "c:\image.bmp"
End Sub
```

Opening Files In Picture Boxes

How do you open image files in a picture box? You use `Picture` property. A picture box is very versatile and can display images from bitmap (.bmp), icon (.ico), metafile (.wmf), JPEG (.jpg), or G files—just load the file's name into `Picture` property.

You can use `LoadPicture()` to load in a picture like this, where we load in an image when the user clicks a command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture( "c:\vbbb\picturesandimages\image.bmp" )
End Sub
```

Using The Drive List Box Control

Usually you use the Common Dialogs File Open and File Save As to get file names and file path the user, but sometimes that just won't do. For example, you have a program where you want the user select files but don't want to use dialog boxes. In that and similar cases, you can use the Visual Basic file controls: the drive list box, the directory list box, and the file list box. These controls are intrinsic to Visual Basic (that is, they appear in the toolbox when you start Visual Basic).

The Drive List Box Control tool appears as the seventh tool down on the right in the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 17.9. Use this tool to draw a drive list box in a form, as shown at upper left in Figure 17.10.



Figure 17.9 The Drive List Box Control tool.



Figure 17.10 A program with a drive list box.

You get the currently selected drive in a drive list box by using the `Drive` property, and when the user changes the drive in that control, a `Change` event is generated. Here's an example—when the user selects a new drive, we pass that new drive on to a directory list box, using that drive as the new root directory in `Dir1`:

```
Sub Drive1_Change()
    Dir1.Path = Drive1.Drive
End Sub
```

Using The Directory List Box Control

The directory list box control displays directories as a hierarchical set of folders. This control is one of the file controls that are intrinsic to Visual Basic; its tool appears as the eighth tool down on the Visual Basic toolbox in Figure 17.11.



Figure 17.11 The Directory List Box Control tool.

To add a directory list box to a form, just use its tool in the toolbox. We've added a directory list box to the program in Figure 17.10 (see earlier), at lower left.

The important property of the directory list box is `Path`, which holds the path of the current directory. When the user changes the current path, a `Change` event is generated. For example, when the user makes a change in a directory list box, we can pass the new path to a file list box, `File1`, this way in the `Change` event handler:

```
Sub Dir1_Change()
    File1.Path = Dir1.Path
End Sub
```

Using The File List Box Control

The file list box control lets you display the files in a directory as a list of names. This control's tool appears as the eighth tool down on the right in Figure 17.12. To add this control to a form, just click it as you want it with its tool in the toolbox.



Figure 17.12 The File List Box Control tool.

The important properties of the file list box are `Path` and `FileName` properties. Let's see an example using the drive, directory, and file list boxes. When the user selects a file and clicks a command button labeled Display File, or double-clicks the file's name in the file list box, we'll display the contents of the selected file in a text box.

We start by adding the controls we'll need: a drive list box, `Drive1`; a directory list box, `Dir1`; a file list box, `File1`; a command button, `Command1`, which is labeled Display File; and a text box with its `MultiLine` property set to True and its `Scrollbars` property set to Both (if the file you are displaying is too long for a text box, use a rich text box).

When the user changes the drive, we pass that new drive to the directory list box as the new directory in `Drive1_Change()`:

```
Sub Drive1_Change()
    Dir1.Path = Drive1.Drive
End Sub
```

When the user changes the directory, we pass that new path to the file list box in `Dir1_Change()`:

```
Sub Dir1_Change()
    File1.Path = Dir1.Path
End Sub
```

When the user clicks the button, we want to display the contents of the selected file in the text box. We'll do that in the command button's Click event handler, `Command1_Click()`. We'll also call the button's Click event handler to let the user open a file by double-clicking it in the file control:

```
Sub File1_DblClick()
    Command1_Click
End Sub
```

When the user wants to open a file, we put together the file's name and path this way:

```

Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileName As String
    On Error GoTo FileError
    If (Right$(Dir1.Path, 1) = "\") Then
        FileName = File1.Path & File1.FileName
    Else
        FileName = File1.Path & "\" & File1.FileName
    End If
    ...

```

Then we simply open the file and display it in the text `Text1`:

```

Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileName As String
    On Error GoTo FileError
    If (Right$(Dir1.Path, 1) = "\") Then
        FileName = File1.Path & File1.FileName
    Else
        FileName = File1.Path & "\" & File1.FileName
    End If

    Open FileName For Input As #1
    Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
    Close #1
    Exit Sub

    FileError:
        MsgBox "File Error!"
End Sub

```

That's it—when you run the program, the user can use the file controls to open a file, as shown Figure 17.13. Now we're using the Visual Basic file controls.



Figure 17.13 Displaying a file using the Visual Basic file controls.

The code for this example is located in the `filecontrols` folder on this book's accompanying CD-F

Creating And Deleting Directories

You can create a new directory with `MkDir` statement and remove a directory with `RmDir` statement. For example, here's how we create a new directory, `C:\data\MyDir` when the user clicks a command button `Command1` (if the directory already exists, Visual Basic generates an er

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MkDir "c:\data"
End Sub
```

Here's another example. We remove the same directory `RmDir` when the user clicks another command button`Command2`

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    RmDir "c:\data"
End Sub
```

Changing Directories

To change the default directory (that is, the directory where Visual Basic will look for the files you want to work with if you don't specify a path), use `ChDir`. Here's an example where we change the default directory to C:\windows using `ChDir` when the user clicks a command button`Command1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    ChDir "c:\windows"
End Sub
```

Copying A File

You can copy files using the Visual Basic FileSystemObject. This object provides you with access to the computer's file system and has methods `CopyFile` to copy a file:

```
FileSystemObject.CopyFile source, destination [, overwrite]
```

Here, `source` is the source file name (including path), `destination` is the destination file name (also including path), and `overwrite` is a Boolean that, if True, means you want to overwrite the destination if it already exists. You can use wildcards (in other words, the asterisk [*]).

`CopyFile` solves a tedious problem for the programmer—if all you want to do is copy a file, why should you have to write all the code specifically to do that? You don't, using `CopyFile`. Here's an example where we copy a file, `file.txt`, to `file2.txt`. Notice that we must first create a `FileSystemObject`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    FileSystemObject.CopyFile "c:\file.txt", "c:\file2.txt"
End Sub
```

You can also do the same thing with the Visual Basic `FileObject`, where we use `GetFile` to get a `FileObject` object and then use the `FileObject.Copy` method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, FileObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set FileObject = FileSystemObject.GetFile("c:\file.txt")
    FileObject.Copy "c:\file2.txt"
End Sub
```

Moving A File

The Visual Basic `FileSystemObject` lets you move a file from one directory to another using the `MoveFile` method. This method takes only two arguments, the source and destination paths. Here's an example where we move a file, `file.txt`, from the C: to the D: drive; note that we must first create a `FileSystemObject`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    FileSystemObject.MoveFile "c:\file.txt", "d:\file.txt"
End Sub
```

You can also do the same thing with the Visual Basic `FileObject`, where we use `GetFile` to get a `FileObject` object and then use the `FileObject.Move` method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```

Dim FileSystemObject, FileObject As Object
Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
Set FileObject = FileSystemObject.GetFile("c:\file.txt")
FileObject.Move "d:\file.txt"
End Sub

```

Deleting A File

The Visual Basic FileSystemObject lets you delete a file using the **DeleteFile** method:

```
FileSystemObject.DeleteFile filespec [, force]
```

Here, **filespec** is the file you want to delete, and **force** is a Boolean that, if True, means you want to delete read-only files as well. Let's see an example. Here, we delete a file, file.txt, from the C: drive; note that you must first create a FileSystemObject:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    FileSystemObject.DeleteFile "c:\file.txt"
End Sub

```

You can also do the same thing with the Visual Basic FileObject, where we first get a FileObject and then use the FileObject's **Delete** method:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, FileObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set FileObject = FileSystemObject.GetFile("c:\file.txt")
    FileObject.Delete
End Sub

```

When Was A File Created? Last Modified? Last Accessed?

You can use Visual Basic FileObject to determine when a file was created, last modified, and last accessed. The properties that are important here are **DateCreated**, **DateLastModified**, and **DateLastAccessed**.

Let's see an example. Here, we use a multiline (the **MultiLine** = True) text box, Text1, to display when a file, file.dat, was created, last modified, and last accessed. First, we get a FileObject for the file:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, FileObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set FileObject = FileSystemObject.GetFile("c:\file.dat")
    ...

```

Then we display the file's created, last modified, and last accessed dates in the text box:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, FileObject As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set FileObject = FileSystemObject.GetFile("c:\file.dat")
    Text1.Text = "c:\file.dat:" & vbCrLf & "was created " & _
        FileObject.DateCreated & vbCrLf & "was last modified: " & _
        FileObject.DateLastModified & vbCrLf & "was last accessed: " & _
        FileObject.DateLastAccessed & vbCrLf
End Sub

```

The result of this code appears in Figure 17.14. Using the FileObject, you can find out quite a bit of information about a file.



Figure 17.14 Displaying a file's creation, last modified, and last accessed dates.

Creating A TextStream

You can use TextStream objects to work with text files in Visual Basic. We'll see how to work with TextStream objects in the next few topics in this chapter. For example, you create a text stream with the CreateTextFile method:

```
FileSystemObject.CreateTextFile( filename[, overwrite[, unicode]])
```

Here's what the arguments we pass to CreateTextFile mean:

- filename—String which identifies the file to create.
- overwrite—Boolean value that indicates if an existing file can be overwritten. The value is True if the file can be overwritten; False if it can't be overwritten. If omitted, existing files are not overwritten.
- unicode—Boolean value that indicates whether the file is created as a Unicode or an ASCII file. The value is True if the file is created as a Unicode file; False if it's created as an ASCII file. If omitted, an ASCII file is assumed.

Here's an example where we create a TextStream object corresponding to a file named file.txt:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object

    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.CreateTextFile("c:\file.txt", True)
End Sub

```

Now that we've created a TextStream, we can write to it, as we'll see later in this chapter.

Opening A TextStream

To open a TextStream, you use the `FileSystemObject.OpenTextFile` method:

```
FileSystemObject.OpenTextFile( filename[, iomode[, create[, format]]])
```

Here are what the arguments `OpenTextFile` mean:

- `filename`—The file to open.
- `iomode`—Indicates input/output mode. Can be one of two constants, `ForReading` or `ForAppending`.
- `create`—Boolean value that indicates whether a new file can be created if the specified file doesn't exist. The value is `True` if a new file is created; `False` if it isn't created. The default is `False`.
- `format`—One of three values used to indicate the format of the opened file. If omitted, the file is opened as ASCII.

Here's an example where we open a TextStream object corresponding to a file named `file.txt`:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object

    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.OpenTextFile("c:\file.txt")
End Sub
```

After you've opened a TextStream object, you can read from it, as we'll see later in this chapter.

Writing To A TextStream

To write to a TextStream object, you use one of these methods:

```
Write( string)
WriteLine([ string])
```

Here's an example where we create a file named `file.txt` and write a string, "Here is some text!" to it. First, we create a new TextStream:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object

    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.CreateTextFile("c:\file.txt", True)
    ...

    Then we write our line of text to the file and close that file:
```

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object

    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.CreateTextFile("c:\file.txt", True)
    TextStream.WriteLine ("Here is some text!")
    TextStream.Close
End Sub

```

Reading From A TextStream

To read from a TextStream object, you use one of these methods; note **ReadLine** method lets you specify how many characters to read:

Read(numbercharacters)
ReadAll
ReadLine

Each of these methods returns the text read. Let's see an example. In this case, we'll open a file, f and read one line from it, displaying that line in a text box. First, we create a TextStream object for file:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object

    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.OpenTextFile("c:\file.txt")
    ...

```

Next, we use the **ReadLine** method to read a line from the file and display it in a text **Text1**, and close the TextStream:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object

    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.OpenTextFile("c:\file.txt")

    Text1.Text = TextStream.ReadLine
    TextStream.Close
End Sub

```

Closing A TextStream

When you're finished working with a TextStream object, you close it using the **Close** method. In the following example, we write to a file, file.txt, using a TextStream object and then close that TextStream (and therefore the file) using **Close**(this method takes no arguments):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim FileSystemObject, TextStream As Object
    Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
    Set TextStream = FileSystemObject.CreateTextFile("c:\file.txt", True)

    TextStream.WriteLine ("Here is some text!")
    TextStream.Close
End Sub
```

Chapter 18

Working With Graphics

If you need an immediate solution to:

Redrawing Graphics In Windows AutoRedraw And Paint

Clearing The Drawing Area

Setting Colors

Drawing Text

Working With Fonts

Drawing Lines

Drawing Boxes

Drawing Circles

Drawing Ellipses

Drawing Arcs

Drawing Freehand With The Mouse

Filling Figures With Color

Filling Figures With Patterns

Setting Figure Drawing Style And Drawing Width

Drawing Points

Setting The Drawing Mode

Setting Drawing Scales

Using The Screen Object

Resizing Graphics When The Window Is Resized

Copying Pictures To And Pasting Pictures From The Clipboard

Printing Graphics

Layering Graphics With The AutoRedraw And ClipControls Properties

In Depth

This chapter is on one of the most popular topics in Visual Basic—graphics. Here, we'll cover drawing graphics in Visual Basic. (We won't, however, deal with handling bitmapped images until the next chapter.)

There's a great deal of graphics power in Visual Basic, and we'll see that power in this chapter. Here are some of the topics we'll cover:

- Drawing figures (boxes, circles, and so on)
- Filling figures with color
- Filling figures with patterns

- Setting the drawing mode (for example, XOR drawing)
- Setting the drawing width
- Setting the drawing style
- Using fonts
- Using the Screen object
- Using the Clipboard with graphics
- Printing graphics
- Resizing graphics
- Layering graphics

We've seen some of these techniques before when we worked with picture boxes, but we'll expand coverage in this chapter. And as a bonus, we'll see how to work with the structured graphics control that comes with the Internet Explorer, putting that control to work in Visual Basic.

Graphics Methods Vs. Graphics Controls

There are two principal ways of drawing graphics in Visual Basic: using graphics methods, such as the ones we'll see in this chapter, and using graphics controls (like the line and shape controls). Graphics methods work well in situations where using graphical controls requires too much work. For example, creating gridlines on a graph would require an array of line controls but only a small amount of code using the Line method. In addition, when you want an effect to appear temporarily, you can write a couple of lines of code for this temporary effect instead of using another control. Also, graphics methods offer some visual effects that are not available in the graphical controls. For example, you can only create arcs or paint individual pixels using the graphics methods.

All in all, the graphics methods we'll use in this chapter are usually preferred by programmers who want to create graphics at runtime, and the graphics controls are preferred to create design elements at design time.

About Visual Basic Coordinates

Because we'll be drawing figures in forms and controls like picture boxes, we should know how measurements and coordinates are set up in those objects. Visual Basic coordinate systems have an origin (0, 0) at upper left and are specified as (x, y), where x is horizontal and y is vertical (note that y is positive in the downwards direction). When we draw graphics in Visual Basic, we'll be using this coordinate system.

WARNING! Bear in mind that the origin is at upper left (for forms, that's the upper left of the form's client area—the part that excludes borders, menu bars, and so on); that fact more than any other is responsible for confusing Visual Basic programmers when they start working with graphics.

The default unit of measurement in Visual Basic is twips (or 1/1440s of an inch). That unit was originally chosen to be small enough to be device-independent, but if you don't like working with twips, you can change to other measurement units like millimeters, inches, and so on, as we'll see in this chapter. You can also define your own measurement units, as we'll also see.

That's it for the overview of graphics. It's time to turn to our Immediate Solutions to start digging the graphics power that Visual Basic has to offer.

Immediate Solutions

Redrawing Graphics In Windows: AutoRedraw And Paint

The Testing Department is on the phone. Did you test out your new program SuperDuperGraphicsPro in Windows? Of course, you say—why? Well, they say, when your program's window is uncov-

```
Private Sub Picture1_Click()
    Picture1.Cls
End Sub
```

Setting Colors

Here are some commonly used properties you can specify colors for and what they mean:

- BackColor—The background color of the control or form.
- ForeColor—The drawing color used to draw figures and text.
- BorderColor—The color of the border.
- FillColor —The color you want the figure filled in with.

To set color properties like these in Visual Basic, you need to know how to set colors in general are four ways to do that:

- Using theRGB function
- Using theQBColor function to choose one of 16 Microsoft QuickBasic colors
- Using one of the intrinsic Visual Basic color constants
- Entering a color value directly

We'll use theRGB function most often to specify colors. This function takes three colors values, 0 to 255, to specify the red, green, and blue values in the color you want like ~~RGB~~^{RGB}(*RRR, GGG, BBB*), where*RRR*, *GGG*, and*BBB* are the red, green, and blue color values, respectively.

Here are some examples showing how to use this function and the color created:

```
RGB( 255 , 0 , 0 )      'Red
RGB( 0 , 255 , 0 )      'Green
RGB( 0 , 0 , 255 )      'Blue
RGB( 0 , 0 , 0 )         'Black
RGB( 255 , 255 , 255 )  'White
RGB( 128 , 128 , 128 )  'Gray
```

The QBColor function returns one of these colors when you pass it the matching numbers, 0 to 15.

- Black—0
- Blue—1
- Green—2
- Cyan—3
- Red—4
- Magenta—5
- Yellow—6
- White—7
- Gray—8
- Light blue—9
- Light green—10
- Light cyan—11
- Light red—12

- Light magenta—13
- Light yellow—14
- Light white—15

You can also use one of the built-in Visual Basic color constants, `vbRed`, to specify a color. The standard Visual Basic color constants appear in Table 18.1. If you dig hard enough, you can even find the colors Visual Basic uses for system objects; these values appear in Table 18.2.

Table 18.1 Visual Basic color constants.

Constant	Value	Description
<code>vbBlack</code>	<code>&H0</code>	Black
<code>vbRed</code>	<code>&HFF</code>	Red
<code>vbGreen</code>	<code>&HFF00</code>	Green
<code>vbYellow</code>	<code>&HFFFF</code>	Yellow
<code>vbBlue</code>	<code>&HFF0000</code>	Blue
<code>vbMagenta</code>	<code>&HFF00FF</code>	Magenta
<code>vbCyan</code>	<code>&HFFFF00</code>	Cyan
<code>vbWhite</code>	<code>&HFFFFFF</code>	White

Table 18.2 System color constants.

Constant	Value	Description
<code>vbScrollBars</code>	<code>&H80000000</code>	Scroll bar color
<code>vbDesktop</code>	<code>&H80000001</code>	Desktop color
<code>vbActiveTitleBar</code>	<code>&H80000002</code>	Color of the title bar for the active window
<code>vbInactiveTitleBar</code>	<code>&H80000003</code>	Color of the title bar for the inactive window
<code>vbMenuBar</code>	<code>&H80000004</code>	Menu background color
<code>vbWindowBackground</code>	<code>&H80000005</code>	Window background color
<code>vbWindowFrame</code>	<code>&H80000006</code>	Window frame color
<code>vbMenuText</code>	<code>&H80000007</code>	Color of text on menus
<code>vbWindowText</code>	<code>&H80000008</code>	Color of text in windows
<code>vbTitleBarText</code>	<code>&H80000009</code>	Color of text in caption, size box, and scroll arrow
<code>vbActiveBorder</code>	<code>&H8000000A</code>	Border color of active window
<code>vbInactiveBorder</code>	<code>&H8000000B</code>	Border color of inactive window
<code>vbApplicationWorkspace</code>	<code>&H8000000C</code>	Background color of multiple document interface (MDI) applications

vbHighlight	&H8000000D	Background color of items selected in a control
vbHighlightText	&H8000000E	Text color of items selected in a control
vbButtonFace	&H8000000F	Color of shading on the face of command buttons
vbButtonShadow	&H80000010	Color of shading on the edge of command buttons
vbGrayText	&H80000011	Grayed (disabled) text
vbButtonText	&H80000012	Text color on push buttons
vbInactiveCaptionText	&H80000013	Color of text in an inactive caption
vb3DHighlight	&H80000014	Highlight color for 3D display elements
vb3DDKShadow	&H80000015	Darkest shadow color for 3D display elements
vb3DLight	&H80000016	Second lightest of the 3D colors after vb3Dhighlight
vb3DFace	&H8000000F	Color of text face
vb3DShadow	&H80000010	Color of text shadow
vbInfoText	&H80000017	Color of text in tool tips

You can also specify colors as 4-byte integers directly, if you want to. The range for full RGB colors is 0 to 16,777,215 (&HFFFFFF&). The high byte of a number in this range equals 0. The lower 3 bytes from least to most significant byte, determine the amount of red, green, and blue. The red, green, and blue components are each represented by a number between 0 and 255 (&HFF&). This means that you can specify a color as a hexadecimal number like &HRRGGBB& .

Drawing Text

You can display text in forms and picture boxes with `Print` method:

```
[object.]Print [ outputlist ] [{ ; | , }]
```

The upper-left corner of the text you print appears at the location `(CurrentX, CurrentY)` (`CurrentX` and `CurrentY` are properties of forms or picture boxes). If you want to print multiple items on different lines, separate them with commas. If you want to print multiple items on the same line, separate them with semicolons.

Let's see an example. Here, we draw text starting at the center of both a form and a picture box `Picture1` (note that to draw graphics from the Form Load event, you must set the form and picture box's `AutoRedraw` property to True):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    CurrentX = ScaleWidth / 2
    CurrentY = ScaleHeight / 2
    Print "Hello from Visual Basic"

    Picture1.CurrentX = Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2
    Picture1.CurrentY = Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2
    Picture1.Print "Hello from Visual Basic"
End Sub
```

The result of the preceding code appears in Figure 18.2. Now we're printing text in forms and picture boxes (we'll print on the printer later in this chapter).



Figure 18.2 Drawing text in a form and picture box.

TIP: You can format text when you print it to forms, picture boxes, or the Printer object by determining its width and height, and you do that with `TextWidth` and `TextHeight` methods.

Working With Fonts

You have a lot of formatting options when working with text. In particular, you can use these font properties in forms and picture boxes:

- `FontBold`
- `FontItalic`
- `FontName`
- `FontSize`
- `FontStrikeThru`

- FontTransparent
- FontUnderline

For example, we set the font in a form to bold and the font size to 12 in a picture box this way (note that to draw graphics from the Form Load event, you must set the form and picture box's AutoRedraw property to True):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    CurrentX = ScaleWidth / 2
    CurrentY = ScaleHeight / 2
    FontBold = True
    Print "Hello from Visual Basic"

    Picture1.CurrentX = Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2
    Picture1.CurrentY = Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2
    Picture1.FontSize = 12
    Picture1.Print "Hello from Visual Basic"
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 18.3.



Figure 18.3 Setting font properties in Visual Basic.

The Font Object

You can also create a Font object that holds all the properties of a font; here are the Font object properties (note that whereas the font property is `FontStrikeThru`, the Font object property is `StrikeThrough`, not `StrikeThru`):

- Bold
- Italic
- Name
- Size
- StrikeThrough
- Underline
- Weight

To create a Font object, you dimension it as a new object of type `StdFont`. For example, here's how we install 24-point Arial as the font in a text box, using a Font object:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim Font1 As New StdFont
    Font1.Size = 24
```

```

Font1.Name = "Arial"
Set Text1.Font = Font1
End Sub

```

Which Fonts Are Available?

You can also determine which fonts are available for either screen or printer by checking the `Font` property of the Visual Basic Printer and Screen objects. This property holds an array (0-based) of available font's names (note that this collection is a collection of Font objects).

Here's an example. To see all the fonts available on your display using Visual Basic, you can look at all fonts in the Screen object—the total number of fonts is stored in the `FontCount` property—and display the font names in message boxes this way (note that this code may display a lot of message boxes):

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 0 To Screen.FontCount
        MsgBox Screen.Fonts(intLoopIndex)
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

TIP: You can format text when you print it to forms, picture boxes, or the Printer object by determining its width and height, and you do that with `TextWidth` and `TextHeight` methods.

Drawing Lines

You draw lines in forms and picture boxes with the `Line` method:

```
object.Line [Step] ( x1, y1 ) [Step] ( x2, y2 ), [color], [B][F]
```

Here are the arguments you pass to:

- Step—Keyword specifying that the starting point coordinates are relative to the current graphics position given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties.
- `x1, y1`—Single values indicating the coordinates of the starting point for the line or rectangle. The `ScaleMode` property determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the line begins at the position indicated by `CurrentX` and `CurrentY`.
- Step—Keyword specifying that the end point coordinates are relative to the line starting point.
- `x2, y2`—Single values indicating the coordinates of the end point for the line being drawn.
- `color`—Long integer value indicating the RGB color used to draw the line. If omitted, the `ForeColor` property setting is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.
- `B`—If included, causes a box to be drawn using the coordinates to specify opposite corner points.

the box.

- F—if the B option is used, the E option specifies that the box is filled with the same color used to draw the box. You cannot use F without B. If B is used without F, the box is filled with the currentFillColor and FillStyle. The default value for FillStyle is transparent.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll draw lines crisscrossing a form and a picture box, Picture1, when the user clicks a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight)
    Line (ScaleWidth, 0)-(0, ScaleHeight)

    Picture1.Line (0, 0)-(Picture1.ScaleWidth, Picture1.ScaleHeight)
    Picture1.Line (Picture1.ScaleWidth, 0)-(0, Picture1.ScaleHeight)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 18.4. Now we're drawing lines in forms and picture boxes.



Figure 18.4 Drawing lines in forms and picture boxes.

Drawing Boxes

You draw boxes in forms and picture boxes with the `Line` method, using the `B` argument:

```
object.Line [Step] ( x1, y1 ) [Step] ( x2, y2 ), [color], [B][F]
```

Here are the arguments you pass:

- Step—Keyword specifying that the starting point coordinates are relative to the current graphics position given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties.
- `x1,y1`—Single values indicating the coordinates of the starting point for the line or rectangle. The `ScaleMode` property determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the line begins at the position indicated by `CurrentX` and `CurrentY`.
- Step—Keyword specifying that the end point coordinates are relative to the line starting point.
- `x2,y2`—Single values indicating the coordinates of the end point for the line being drawn.
- color—Long integer value indicating the RGB color used to draw the line. If omitted, the `ForeColor` property setting is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.
- B—if included, causes a box to be drawn using the coordinates to specify opposite corners of the box.
- F—if the B option is used, the F option specifies that the box is filled with the same color used to draw the box. You cannot use F without B. If B is used without F, the box is filled with the current `FillColor` and `FillStyle`. The default value for `FillStyle` is transparent.

Let's see an example showing how to draw boxes in forms and picture boxes when the user clicks a command button. In this case, we'll draw a box in a form

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```
    Line (ScaleWidth / 4, ScaleHeight / 4)-(3 * ScaleWidth / 4, 3 * _  
        ScaleHeight / 4), , B
```

...

and another box in a picture box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```
    Line (ScaleWidth / 4, ScaleHeight / 4)-(3 * ScaleWidth / 4, 3 * _  
        ScaleHeight / 4), , B
```

```
    Picture1.Line (Picture1.ScaleWidth / 4, Picture1.ScaleHeight / 4)-(_  
        (3 * Picture1.ScaleWidth / 4, 3 * Picture1.ScaleHeight / 4)), , B
```

End Sub

The result of this code appears in Figure 18.5. Now we're drawing boxes in Visual Basic.



Figure 18.5 Drawing boxes in forms and picture boxes.

Drawing Circles

You use the `Circle` method to draw circles in forms and picture boxes:

```
object.Circle [Step] (x, y), radius, [color, [start, end, [aspect]]]
```

Here are the arguments you pass `Circle`:

- Step—Keyword specifying that the center of the circle, ellipse, or arc is relative to the current coordinates given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties of `object`
- x, y—Single values indicating the coordinates for the center point of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The `ScaleMode` property of `object` determines the units of measure used.
- radius—Single value indicating the radius of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The `ScaleMode` property of `object` determines the unit of measure used.
- color—Long integer value indicating the RGB color of the circle's outline. If omitted, the value of the `ForeColor` property is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.
- start, end—Single-precision values. When an arc or a partial circle or ellipse is drawn, they specify (in radians) the beginning and end positions of the arc. The range for both is -2π radians to 2π radians. The default value for `start` is 0 radians; the default `end` is $2 * \pi$ radians.
- aspect—Single-precision value indicating the aspect ratio of the circle. The default value is 1.0, which yields a perfect (nonelliptical) circle on any screen.

As an example, we draw the biggest circle possible in both a form and a picture box. Picture 1, when the user clicks a command button Command1, using this code, and using a `Switch` function to determine if the form's width or height is larger:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Circle (ScaleWidth / 2, ScaleHeight / 2), _
        Switch(ScaleWidth >= ScaleHeight, ScaleHeight / 2, _
        ScaleWidth < ScaleHeight, ScaleWidth / 2)

    Picture1.Circle (Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2, Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2), _
        Switch(Picture1.ScaleWidth >= Picture1.ScaleHeight, _
        Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2, Picture1.ScaleWidth < _
        Picture1.ScaleHeight, Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2)
End Sub
```

Running this code gives us the result you see in Figure 18.6.



Figure 18.6 Drawing circles in forms and picture boxes.

The code for this example is located in the `drawcircle` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Drawing Ellipses

You use the `Circle` method to draw ellipses in picture boxes and forms, setting the `Aspect` argument to set the ellipse's aspect ratio:

```
object.Circle [Step] ( x, y), radius, [color, [start, end, [aspect]]]
```

Here are the arguments you pass `Circle`:

- Step—Keyword specifying that the center of the circle, ellipse, or arc is relative to the current coordinates given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties of `object`
- x, y—Single values indicating the coordinates for the center point of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The `ScaleMode` property of `object` determines the units of measure used.
- radius—Single value indicating the radius of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The `ScaleMode` property of `object` determines the unit of measure used.
- color—Long integer value indicating the RGB color of the circle's outline. If omitted, the value of the `ForeColor` property is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.
- start, end—Single-precision values. When an arc or a partial circle or ellipse is drawn, they specify (in radians) the beginning and end positions of the arc. The range for both is -2π radians to 2π radians. The default value for `start` is 0 radians; the default `end` is $2 * \pi$ radians.
- aspect—Single-precision value indicating the aspect ratio of the circle. The default value is 1.0, which yields a perfect (nonelliptical) circle on any screen.

Here's how it works: the aspect ratio is the ratio of the vertical to horizontal axes in the ellipse, and the ellipse's major (that is, longer) axis is the value you specify in the `Aspect` argument. As an example, we draw an ellipse in both a form and a picture box, `Picture1`, with this code when the user clicks a command button, `Command1`. In this case, we use a vertical to horizontal ratio of 0.8 for both ellipses:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Circle (ScaleWidth / 2, ScaleHeight / 2), _
        Switch(ScaleWidth >= ScaleHeight, ScaleHeight / 2, _
            ScaleWidth < ScaleHeight, ScaleWidth / 2), , , , 0.8

    Picture1.Circle (Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2, Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2), _
        Switch(Picture1.ScaleWidth >= Picture1.ScaleHeight, _
            Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2, Picture1.ScaleWidth < _
            Picture1.ScaleHeight, Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2), , , , 0.8
End Sub
```

Running the preceding code gives you the result you see in Figure 18.7. The program is a success. Now let's look at drawing ellipses in Visual Basic.



Figure 18.7 Drawing ellipses with Visual Basic.

Drawing Arcs

You use the `Circle` method to draw arcs, using `start`, `end` and `aspect` arguments:

```
object.Circle [Step] ( x, y), radius, [color, [start, end, [aspect]]]
```

Here are the arguments you pass `Circle`:

- Step—Keyword specifying that the center of the circle, ellipse, or arc is relative to the current coordinates given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties of `object`
- x, y—Single values indicating the coordinates for the center point of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The `ScaleMode` property of `object` determines the units of measure used.
- radius—Single value indicating the radius of the circle, ellipse, or arc. The `ScaleMode` property of `object` determines the unit of measure used.
- color—Long integer value indicating the RGB color of the circle's outline. If omitted, the value of the `ForeColor` property is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.
- start, end—Single-precision values. When an arc or a partial circle or ellipse is drawn, they specify (in radians) the beginning and end positions of the arc. The range for both is -2π radians to 2π radians. The default value for `start` is 0 radians; the default `end` is $2 * \pi$ radians.
- aspect—Single-precision value indicating the aspect ratio of the circle. The default value is 1.0, which yields a perfect (nonelliptical) circle on any screen.

In Visual Basic, an arc is part of an ellipse. To draw an arc, you proceed as though you were going to draw an ellipse, including specifying the origin, major radius (in the radius argument), color, and aspect ratio. Then you specify values for the beginning and end of the arc, in radians (in other words, radians go from 0 to $2 * \pi$ for a full circle).

Let's see an example. In this case, we draw a convex arc in a form and a concave arc in a picture box, when the user clicks a command button `Command1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Circle (ScaleWidth / 2, ScaleHeight / 2), _
        Switch(ScaleWidth >= ScaleHeight, ScaleHeight / 2, _
        ScaleWidth < ScaleHeight, ScaleWidth / 2), , 0, 3.14, 0.8

    Picture1.Circle (Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2, Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2), _
        Switch(Picture1.ScaleWidth >= Picture1.ScaleHeight, _
        Picture1.ScaleHeight / 2, Picture1.ScaleWidth < _
        Picture1.ScaleHeight, Picture1.ScaleWidth / 2), , 3.14, 6.28, 0.8
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 18.8. Now we're drawing arcs in Visual Basic.



Figure 18.8 Drawing ellipses in forms and picture boxes.

The code for this example is located in the `drawarcs` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Drawing Freehand With The Mouse

The Testing Department is on the phone. Your new program ~~SuperDuperGraphicsPro~~ is fine, but how about letting the user draw freehand with the mouse? Hmm, you think, how does that work?

As the user moves the mouse, you can use the `Line` statement to connect the mouse locations passed your program in the `MouseMove` event handler. Note that you are not passed every pixel the mouse travels over, so you must connect the dots, so to speak, rather than setting individual pixels as some programmers think.

Here's an example where we draw freehand with the mouse. Because we should only draw after the mouse button has gone down, we set up a Boolean flag, `blnDrawFlag`, in the (General) part of the form:

```
Dim blnDrawFlag As Boolean
```

We set that flag to False when the form first loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    blnDrawFlag = False
End Sub
```

When the user presses the mouse button, we set the current drawing location (`CurrentX`, `CurrentY`) to the location of the mouse (so we don't start drawing from the origin of the form by mistake), and `blnDrawFlag` to True in the `MouseDown` event handler:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    CurrentX = X
    CurrentY = Y
    blnDrawFlag = True
End Sub
```

When the user moves the mouse, we check if `blnDrawFlag` is True in the `MouseMove` event, and if so, draw a line from the current drawing location to the current (X, Y) position (if you omit the first coordinate of a line, Visual Basic uses the current drawing location):

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    If blnDrawFlag Then Line -(X, Y)
End Sub
```

When the mouse button goes up, we set `blnDrawFlag` to False in the `MouseUp` event:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, _
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    blnDrawFlag = False
```

```
End Sub
```

Running this program results in the kind of display you see in Figure 18.9, where we're letting the user draw with the mouse. Note that we've also changed the mouse cursor into a cross in this drawing example, by setting the form's `MousePointer` property to 2.



Figure 18.9 Drawing freehand with the mouse.

Now we're drawing freehand in Visual Basic. The code for this example is located in the `drawfre` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Filling Figures With Color

To fill figures with color, you can use the `FillColor` property of forms and picture boxes, along with the `FillStyle` property to set the type of fill you want.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll draw a circle and a box in a form in the default drawing color (black) and fill those figures with solid blue when the user clicks a button `Command1`. First, we set the form's `FillColor` property to blue:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    FillColor = RGB(0, 0, 255)
    ...

```

Then we specify we want figures colored in solidly by setting the `FillStyle` property to `vbSolid` (for more on `FillStyle`, see the next topic in this chapter):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    FillColor = RGB(0, 0, 255)
    FillStyle = vbFSSolid
    ...

```

Finally we draw the box and the circle:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    FillColor = RGB(0, 0, 255)
    FillStyle = vbFSSolid
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth / 2, ScaleHeight / 2), , B
    Circle (3 * ScaleWidth / 4, 3 * ScaleHeight / 4), ScaleHeight / 4
End Sub
```

That's it—now the preceding code will draw a box and a circle with a black border, filled in blue, shown in Figure 18.10.

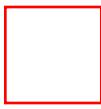


Figure 18.10 Filling figures with color.

TIP: If you use the `F` argument when drawing boxes with the `Line` method, Visual Basic will use the color you specify for the box's drawing color (and if you didn't specify a color, it will use the current ForeGround color) instead of the `FillColor`.

Filling Figures With Patterns

You can use the form and picture box `FillStyle` property to set the fill pattern in Visual Basic graphic. Here are the possibilities:

- `VbFSSolid`—0; solid
- `VbFSTransparent`—1 (the default); transparent
- `VbHorizontalLine`—2; horizontal line
- `VbVerticalLine`—3; vertical line
- `VbUpwardDiagonal`—4; upward diagonal
- `VbDownwardDiagonal`—5; downward diagonal
- `VbCross`—6; cross
- `VbDiagonalCross`—7; diagonal cross

Figure 18.11 shows what the fill patterns look like. The default, `VbFSTransparent`, means that by default figures are not filled in.

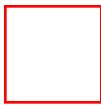


Figure 18.11 The Visual Basic fill patterns.

Setting Figure Drawing Style And Drawing Width

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. Can't you do something about the graphics in your program? Maybe make them—dotted? You thought?

Visual Basic can help: just set the `DrawStyle` property in forms or picture boxes. Here are the possible values for that property:

- `vbSolid`—1 (the default); solid (the border is centered on the edge of the shape)
- `vbDash`—2; dash
- `vbDot`—3; dot
- `vbDashDot`—4; dash-dot
- `vbDashDotDot`—5; dash-dot-dot
- `vblInvisible`—5; invisible
- `vblInsideSolid`—6; inside solid (the outer edge of the border is the outer edge of the figure)

You can also set the drawing width with `DrawWidth` property.

Here's an example where we set `DrawStyle` property to dashed and draw two figures in a form, a box and a circle:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    DrawStyle = vbDash
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth / 2, ScaleHeight / 2), , B
    Circle (3 * ScaleWidth / 4, 3 * ScaleHeight / 4), ScaleHeight / 4
End Sub
```

The result of the preceding code appears in Figure 18.12.

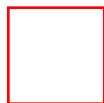


Figure 18.12 Drawing dashed figures.

TIP: You cannot use different drawing styles if the drawing width is not set to 1.

Drawing Points

To draw individual points, you use `PSet` in forms and picture boxes like this:

```
object.PSet [Step] ( x, y), [color]
```

Here are the arguments you pass `PSet`:

- Step—Keyword specifying that the coordinates are relative to the current graphics position given by the `CurrentX` and `CurrentY` properties.
- x, y—Single values indicating the horizontal (x-axis) and vertical (y-axis) coordinates of the point to set.
- color—Long integer value indicating the RGB color specified for the point. If omitted, the `ForeColor` property setting is used. You can use the `RGB` function or `QBColor` function to specify the color.

You can also use the `Point` method to retrieve the color of a point at a specific (x, y) location.

Setting The Drawing Mode

You draw with pens in Windows. Every drawing operation uses these pens. When you set the pen's width, you're really setting the width of the pen; when you set the drawing color, you're setting the color of the pen.

You can also use the `DrawMode` property to specify how the current pen interacts with the graphic already finds in a form or picture box. Here are the possible settings for the pen's drawing mode:

- `vbBlackness`—1, Blackness
- `vbNotMergePen`—2, Not Merge Pen; inverse of setting 15 (Merge Pen)
- `vbMaskNotPen`—3, Mask Not Pen; combination of the colors common to the background color and the inverse of the pen
- `vbNotCopyPen`—4, Not Copy Pen; inverse of setting 13 (Copy Pen)
- `vbMaskPenNot`—5, Mask Pen Not; combination of the colors common to both the pen and the inverse of the display
- `vbInvert`—6, Invert; inverse of the display color
- `vbXorPen`—7, XOR Pen; combination of the colors in the pen and in the display color, but in both
- `vbNotMaskPen`—8, Not Mask Pen; inverse of setting 9 (Mask Pen)
- `vbMaskPen`—9, Mask Pen; combination of the colors common to both the pen and the display
- `vbNotXorPen`—10, Not XOR Pen; inverse of setting 7 (XOR Pen)
- `vbNop`—11 Nop, No operation; output remains unchanged (in effect, this setting turns drawing off)
- `vbMergeNotPen`—12, Merge Not Pen; combination of the display color and the inverse of the pen color
- `vbCopyPen`—13, Copy Pen (the default); color specified by the `ForeColor` property

- vbMergePenNot—14, Merge Pen Not; combination of the pen color and the inverse of the display color
- vbMergePen—15, Merge Pen; combination of the pen color and the display color
- vbWhiteness—16, Whiteness

For example, we can set the pen to be an invert pen with this code and draw over some lines. It will invert the pixels it finds:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 1 To 9
        DrawWidth = intLoopIndex
        Line (0, intLoopIndex * ScaleHeight / 10)-(ScaleWidth, _
            intLoopIndex * ScaleHeight / 10)
    Next intLoopIndex

    DrawMode = vbInvert
    DrawWidth = 10
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight)
    Line (0, ScaleHeight)-(ScaleWidth, 0)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 18.13; the two diagonal lines are drawn with the invert pen.



Figure 18.13 Drawing with the Invert pen.

TIP: The XOR (exclusive OR) pen is a popular one, because when you draw with it twice in the same location, the display is restored to its original condition. This happens because if you XOR number A to number B twice, number B is restored. Programmers use this to draw figures they know they'll need to erase, such as when letting the user stretch a graphics figure with the mouse. In such a case, each figure you draw will have to be erased before you can draw the next one to give the illusion of stretching the figure. What programmers usually do is to draw the stretched figure with the XOR pen, and when it's time to erase it, they draw it again with the same pen, thereby restoring the screen.

The code for this example is located in the drawinvert folder on this book's accompanying CD-R.

Setting Drawing Scales

Forms and picture boxes have a number of scale properties, and perhaps the most popular one ScaleMode which sets the units of measurement in a picture box. Here are the possible values for ScaleMode(note that when you set the scale mode of a picture box, all measurements are in the units, including coordinates passed to your program, like mouse down locations):

- vbUser—0; indicates that one or more of ScaleHeight, ScaleWidth, ScaleLeft, and ScaleTop properties are set to custom values
- vbTwips—1 (the default); twip (1440 twips per logical inch; 567 twips per logical centimeter)
- vbPoints—2; point (72 points per logical inch)
- vbPixels—3; pixel (smallest unit of monitor or printer resolution)
- vbCharacters—4; character (horizontal equals 120 twips per unit; vertical equals 240 twips per unit)
- vbInches—5; inch
- vbMillimeters—6; millimeter
- vbCentimeters—7; centimeter
- vbHimetric—8; HiMetric
- vbContainerPosition—9; units used by the control's container to determine the control's position
- vbContainerSize—10; units used by the control's container to determine the control's size

For example, to report the mouse location in pixels in a form using two text boxes, Text1 and Text2, we set the form's ScaleMode property to vbPixels when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    ScaleMode = vbPixels
End Sub
```

This means that the X and Y values for the mouse location passed to us will be in pixels, so we display those coordinates in the text boxes this way:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseMove(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Text1.Text = "Mouse x location (in pixels): " & Str(X)
    Text2.Text = "Mouse y location (in pixels): " & Str(Y)
End Sub
```

The result of the preceding code appears in Figure 18.14.



Figure 18.14 Displaying mouse location in pixels.

If you set the scale mode vbUser, you can define your own units by setting the dimensions of the

picture box using the `ScaleLeft`, `ScaleTop`, `ScaleWidth`, and `ScaleHeight` properties. This can be very useful if you're plotting points and want to use a picture box as a graph.

TIP: The `ScaleWidth` and `ScaleHeight` properties of a picture box hold the image's actual dimensions (in units determined by the `SizeMode` property), not the `Width` and `Height` properties, which hold the control's width and height (including the border).

The code for this example is located in the `pixelmouse` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Using The Screen Object

The Visual Basic `Screen` object offers you a lot of information about the current display. Here are the object's properties:

- `TwipsPerPixelX`—Twips per pixel horizontally
- `TwipsPerPixelY`—Twips per pixel vertically
- `Height`—Screen height
- `Width`—Screen width
- `Fonts`—Collection of names of the available fonts
- `FontCount`—Total number of screen fonts available
- `ActiveControl`—Currently active control
- `ActiveForm`—Currently active form
- `MouseIcon`—Returns or sets a custom mouse icon
- `MousePointer`—Returns or sets a value indicating the type of mouse pointer displayed when the mouse is over a particular part of an object at runtime

Resizing Graphics When The Window Is Resized

The Testing Department is on the phone. When the user resizes the `SuperGraphics` program, the graphics in the program don't resize themselves. You ask, should they? They say, yes.

You can use the `Resize` event to catch window or picture box resizes. Let's see an example. Here, add a new subroutine, `DrawBox`, to a form. This subroutine draws a rectangle in a form:

```
Private Sub DrawBox()
    Line (ScaleWidth / 4, ScaleHeight / 4)-(3 * ScaleWidth / 4, _
        3 * ScaleHeight / 4), , B
End Sub
```

We can call `DrawBox` in the `Load` event to draw the box the first time (set the form's `AutoRedraw` property to True to draw graphics in the `Load` event):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    DrawBox
End Sub
```

When the user resizes the form, we clear the form and redraw the box.
For the Resize event:

```
Private Sub Form_Resize()
    Cls
    DrawBox
End Sub
```

Now the program resizes its graphics to match the user's actions. The code for this example is in the resizer folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Copying Pictures To And Pasting Pictures From The Clipboard

The users love your new graphics program SuperDuperGraphicsPro, but would like to export the images they create to other programs. How can you do that?

You can copy the images to the Clipboard, letting the user paste them into other programs. To put data in the Clipboard, you use `SetData` and to retrieve data from the Clipboard, you use `GetData`.

An example will make this clearer. Here, we'll paste a picture `Picture1` to `Picture2` using two buttons, `Command1` and `Command2`. When the user clicks `Command1`, we'll copy the picture from `Picture1` to the Clipboard; when the user clicks `Command2`, we'll paste the picture to `Picture2`.

To place the image in `Picture1` into the Clipboard, we use `SetData`

```
Clipboard.SetData [data, [format]]
```

Here are the possible values for the `format` parameter for images:

- `vbCFBitmap`—2; bitmap (BMP) files
- `vbCFMetafile`—3; metafile (WMF) files
- `vbCFDIB`—8; device-independent bitmap (DIB)
- `vbCFPalette`—9; color palette

If you omit the `format` parameter, Visual Basic will determine the correct format, so we'll just copy the picture from `Picture1.Picture` to the Clipboard this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Clipboard.SetData Picture1.Picture
End Sub
```

To paste the picture, use `GetData()`:

```
Clipboard.GetData ([format])
```

The `format` parameter here is the same as `SetData()`, and as before, if you don't specify the `format` parameter, Visual Basic will determine it, so when the user clicks the second button, we paste the image into `Picture2` this way:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Picture2.Picture = Clipboard.GetData()
End Sub
```

That's all it takes—when you run the program and click the Copy and then the Paste button, the image is copied to the Clipboard and then pasted into the second picture box. Now we're using the Clipboard with picture boxes.

Printing Graphics

Visual Basic has two ways of printing both text and graphics:

- Printing entire forms using the PrintForm method
- Printing with the Printer object and using graphical methods as well NewPage and EndDoc methods

The PrintForm Method

The PrintForm method sends an image of a given form to the printer, complete with menu bar, toolbar, and so on. To print information from your application PrintForm, you must first display that information on a form and then print that form with PrintForm method like this:

```
[form.]PrintForm
```

If you omit the form name, Visual Basic prints the current form. Note that if a form contains graphics print only if the form's AutoRedraw property is set to True.

The Printer Object

The Printer object represents the default printer and supports text and graphics methods like PSet Line, PaintPicture, and Circle. You use these methods on the Printer object just as you would on a form or picture box. The Printer object also has all the font properties we've seen earlier in chapter.

When you finish placing the information on the Printer object, you use the EndDoc method to send the output to the printer. You can also print multiple-page documents by using the NewPage method on the Printer object.

TIP: When applications close, they automatically use the EndDoc method to send any pending information on the Printer object.

The Printers Collection

The Printers collection is an object that contains all the printers that are available, and each printer in the collection has a unique (0-based) index for identification. Let's see an example. Here, we select the first printer from the Printers collection to be the current printer by loading that printer into the Printer object:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Set Printer = Printers(0)
End Sub
```

Using the Printers collection in this way lets you print to printers other than the default.

Layering Graphics With The AutoRedraw And ClipControls Properties

When you create graphics in Visual Basic, bear in mind that graphical controls and labels, nong controls, and graphics methods appear on different layers. The behavior of these layers depends on three things: the AutoRedraw property, the ClipControls property, and whether graphics methods appear inside or outside the Paint event. Usually the layers of a form or other container are as follows:

- Front layer—Nongraphical controls like command buttons, checkboxes, and file controls.
- Middle layer—Graphical controls and labels.
- Back layer—Drawing space for the form or container. This is where the results of graphic methods appear.

Anything in one layer covers anything in the layer behind it, so graphics you create with the graph controls appear behind the other controls on the form, and all graphics you create with the graph methods appear below all graphical and nongraphical controls. Combining settings for AutoRedraw and ClipControls and placing graphics methods inside or outside the Paint event affects layering and the performance of the application. You can find the effects created by different combinations of AutoRedraw and ClipControls and placement of graphics methods in Table 18.3.

Table 18.3 Layering with *AutoRedraw* and *ClipControls*.

AutoRedraw	ClipControls	Methods In/Out Paint Event	Description
True	True (default)	Paint event ignored	Normal layering.
True	False	Paint event ignored	Normal layering. Forms with many controls that do not overlap may paint faster because no clipping region is calculated or created.
False (default)	True (default)	In	Normal layering.
False	True	Out	Nongraphical controls in front. Graphics methods and graphical controls appear mixed in the middle and back layers. Not recommended by Microsoft.
False	False	In	Normal layering, affecting only pixels that were previously covered or that appear when resizing a form.
False	False	Out	Graphics methods and all controls appear mixed in the three layers. Not recommended by Microsoft.

Chapter 19

Working With Images

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding Images To Controls

Adding Images To Forms

Using Image Controls

Using Picture Boxes

AutoSizing Picture Boxes

Loading Images In At Runtime

Clearing (Erasing) Images

Storing Images In Memory Using The Picture Object

Using Arrays Of Picture Objects

Adding Picture Clip Controls To A Program

Selecting Images In A Picture Clip Control Using Coordinates

Selecting Images In A Picture Clip Control Using Rows And Columns

Flipping Images

Stretching Images

Creating Image Animation

Handling Images Bit By Bit

Creating Grayscale Images

Lightening Images

Creating "Embossed" Images

Creating "Engraved" Images

Sweeping Images

Blurring Images

Freeing Memory Used By Graphics

In Depth

Visual Basic has quite an array of techniques for dealing with images. In this chapter, we'll work with bitmapped images in our programs, creating some powerful effects. We'll see how to load images, display them in a variety of ways, including flipping them and stretching them, creating image effects, and saving them back to disk.

Images can be an asset to your program, enhancing the visual interface a great deal. We won't be creating images here—instead, we'll work on reading them in, working on them, and displaying them from image files on disk.

There are a number of different image formats that you use today: bitmap (.bmp), GIF, JPEG, WMF (Windows metafile format), enhanced WMF, icon (.ico), compressed bitmap (.rle), and more. Visual Basic can handle all these formats.

However, you'll notice some anachronisms that have crept in over the years that indicate Visual Basic's historical development—for example, the picture clip control, which we'll see in this chapter, can only handle bitmaps with a maximum of 16 colors. This control is still a useful one, but it has largely been superseded by the more powerful image list control (which we cover in its own chapter in this book).

Picture Boxes Vs. Image Controls

The main controls that programmers use to display images are image controls and picture boxes, not to say there aren't other ways to display, of course: you can load images into many controls like buttons, and even display them in forms, as we'll see in this chapter. However, when programmers think of displaying and working with images, they often think of picture boxes and image controls.

It's worth noting the difference between these controls. The image control really has one main purpose: to display images. If that's your goal, the image control is a good choice. On the other hand, picture boxes offer you a great deal more, if you need it. You can even think of picture boxes as mini-programmatic windows, because they include methods to let you draw text (on top of the current image in the box, which is good if you want to label elements in that image), draw circles, lines, boxes, and so on.

Note, however, that the added power of picture boxes comes with an added cost in terms of headroom on system resources. If you don't need a picture box's added functionality, use an image control instead. For more on this topic, take a look at Chapter 10.

Image Effects: Working With Images Bit By Bit

In this chapter, we'll have some fun seeing how to work with images bit by bit. There are two main ways of doing that in Visual Basic: sticking with the Visual Basic methods, and using Windows methods directly.

We'll stick with the Visual Basic methods, which, although slower, are vastly easier to use and get the job done well. However, you should know that we'll take a look at the Windows way of doing things later in the book, in the chapter on connecting to Windows directly. (And you may have noticed that the bitmapped menu item example in the chapter on menus works directly with Windows to create a bitmap object that it loads into a menu.)

We'll see quite a few image effects in this chapter: embossing images, engraving images, graying images, image lightening, blurring images, making an image seem to sweep from upper left to lower right, and more. All these effects are powerful techniques that you might not expect from Visual Basic.

That's it for the overview of images for the moment—it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions section.

Immediate Solutions

Adding Images To Controls

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Can't you add some images to the controls in your program? That would make it look so much nicer.

These days, you can add images to many Visual Basic controls. For example, you can now display images in checkboxes, command buttons, and option buttons if you first set the ~~Style~~ property to Graphical (Style = 1), then place the name of the image file you want to use in the ~~Picture~~ property. As an example, we display a bitmapped image in a command button in Figure 19.1.

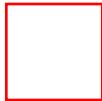


Figure 19.1 Displaying an image in a button.

At runtime, you can load a picture into the control's Picture property using the LoadPicture function:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```


The code for the example you see in Figure 19.2 is located in the imageform folder on this book accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: Note that if you just want to set the background color of a form to some uniform color, you should use the form's `BackColor` property instead of loading an image in.

Using Image Controls

You use image controls to display images. Although that might seem obvious, it's usually the de factor in whether or not to use an image control or a picture box. Image controls are simple controls that don't use many system resources, whereas picture boxes are more powerful controls that do. If you just have an image to display, this is the control to use.

You load an image into an image control using its `Picture` property at design time or runtime. When you load an image in at runtime, use the `LoadPicture` function this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Image1.Picture = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
End Sub
```

As you can see in the image control in Figure 19.3, image controls have no border by default, although you can add one using the `BorderStyle` property. In addition, image controls size themselves to the image they display automatically, unless you set the `Stretch` property to True, in which case they size the image to fit themselves.



Figure 19.3 An image control and a picture box.

Image controls support events like `Click`, `DblClick`, `MouseDown`, `MouseMove`, and `MouseUp`. However, they do not support all the events that picture boxes support, such as `KeyEvents`. In general, you use image controls for one purpose only: to display an image (which can include stretching the image). Both image controls and picture boxes can read in images in all the popular formats: GIF, JPEG, BMP, and so on.

For a lot more information on image controls, take a look at Chapter 10.

Using Picture Boxes

Picture boxes are like mini-paint programs. Not only can they display images—they can also create and modify them. You can use the built-in methods of picture boxes to draw text, ellipses, lines, boxes, and more, on top of the images they display.

You load an image into a picture box using its `Picture` property at design time or runtime. When you load an image in at runtime, use the `LoadPicture` function this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```
Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture( "c:\image.bmp" )
End Sub
```

As you can see in Figure 19.3, picture boxes display a border by default, although you can remove it with the control's `BorderStyle` property. By default, picture boxes display their images starting at the top-left corner of the picture box's upper-left corner (leaving uncovered space at the lower-right blank), but you can change that by setting the `AutoSize` property to True. When you set `AutoSize` to True, the picture box sizes itself to fit its displayed image.

You can use a picture box's `PaintPicture` method to draw an image at different locations in a picture box, and even flip it as we'll see in this chapter. Both image controls and picture boxes can read images in all the popular formats: GIF, JPEG, BMP, and so on.

For a lot more information on picture boxes, take a look at Chapter 10.

AutoSizing Picture Boxes

Image controls size themselves automatically to fit the image they're displaying—but picture boxes don't, by default. You can, however, make them resize themselves to fit the image they're displaying by setting the picture box's `AutoSize` property to True. You can set `AutoSize` to True either at design time or at runtime.

Loading Images In At Runtime

You know that you use the `Picture` property to load images into image controls and picture boxes, but how does that work at runtime? This code doesn't seem to work:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Image1.Picture = "c:\image.bmp"      'Error!
End Sub
```

You have to use the Visual Basic `LoadPicture` function here. That looks like this when we load an image into an image control:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Image1.Picture = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
End Sub
```

Here's how we load that image into a picture box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Picture1.Picture = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
End Sub
```

You can also load an image into a Visual Basic Picture object. Let's see an example of how that's done. First, we create a Picture object, `picObject1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim picObject1 As Picture
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, we load the image into that Picture object using LoadPicture:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim picObject1 As Picture
    Set picObject1 = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, we just set a picture box's Picture property to the Picture object, and that's it:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim picObject1 As Picture
    Set picObject1 = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
    Set Picture1.Picture = picObject1
End Sub
```

If, on the other hand, you want to save an image to disk, use the picture box's SavePicture method.

Clearing (Erasing) Images

One of the handiest things to know about handling images is how to clear an image in a form or box. You use the Cls method (which originally stood for "Clear Screen") to do that (image controls don't have a Cls method).

For example, here's how we erase an image in a picture box when the user clicks that picture box:

```
Private Sub Picture1_Click()
    Picture1.Cls
End Sub
```

Storing Images In Memory Using The Picture Object

You want to load a number of images into your program and store them in the background, invisibly. How do you do that?

Visual Basic offers a number of ways of loading in images and storing them unobserved (all of them covered in this book, of course). You can use the image list control to store images, or the picture controls (picture clips are covered in this chapter). You can even load images into picture boxes and make those picture boxes invisible (by setting their Visible properties to False). And you can use Picture objects. In fact, in some ways, you can think of the Picture object as an invisible picture that takes up far fewer system resources (although Picture objects don't have drawing methods like Line or Circle, like picture boxes). The Picture object supports bitmaps, GIF images, JPEG images,

metafiles, and icons.

Let's see an example to show how the Picture object works. First, we create a Picture object:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim picObject1 As Picture
    ...
End Sub
```

Then we load the image into that Picture object using LoadPicture:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim picObject1 As Picture
    Set picObject1 = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, we just set a picture box's Picture property to the Picture object, and that's it:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim picObject1 As Picture
    Set picObject1 = LoadPicture("c:\image.bmp")
    Set Picture1.Picture = picObject1
End Sub
```

You can also use the Render method to draw images with the Picture object (although RightPicture is Microsoft's preferred method these days).

The Render Method

Here's how you use the Render method to draw images with the Picture object:

```
PictureObject.Render(hdc, xdest, ydest, destwid, desthgt, xsrc, ysrc, _
srcwid, srchgt, wbounds)
```

Here are what the arguments Render mean:

- hdc—The handle to the destination object's device context, `Picture1.hDC`.
- xdest—The x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the drawing region in the destination object. This coordinate is in the scale units of the destination object.
- ydest—The y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the drawing region in the destination object. This coordinate is in the scale units of the destination object.
- destwid—The width of the drawing region in the destination object, expressed in the scale units of the destination object.
- desthgt—The height of the drawing region in the destination object, expressed in the scale units of the destination object.
- xsrc—The x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the drawing region in the source object. This coordinate is in HiMetric units.
- ysrc—The y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the drawing region in the source object. This coordinate is in HiMetric units.

- `srcwid`—The width of the drawing region in the source object, expressed in HiMetric units.
- `srchgt`—The height of the drawing region in the source object, expressed in HiMetric units.
- `wbounds`—The bounds of a metafile. This argument should be passed a value of Null unless directed to a metafile, in which case the argument is passed a user-defined type corresponding to a structure.

TIP: Note that some of the arguments must be in HiMetric units. Here's an important note: You can convert from one set of units to another using the `ScaleX` and `ScaleY` functions, so use those functions to convert from twips or pixels to HiMetric.

Using Arrays Of Picture Objects

You can use an array of Picture objects to keep a series of graphics in memory without using a form if your application contains multiple picture box or image controls. This is good for creating animation sequences or other applications where rapid image changes are required.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll create an array of Picture objects and load images into them. We start by setting up an array of two Picture objects as a form-wide array:

```
Dim picObjects(1 To 2) As Picture
```

Then when the form loads, we read in two image files into the array:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Set picObjects(1) = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\pictureanimation\image1.bmp")
    Set picObjects(2) = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\pictureanimation\image2.bmp")
End Sub
```

Now the images in the array will be available for use in our program (and we'll use them in a later top chapter—see “Creating Image Animation”).

Adding Picture Clip Controls To A Program

One way of storing images in a Visual Basic program is to use a picture clip control. This control stores a number of images as one large bitmap, and to get the image you want, you have to clip it out of that bitmap. That sounds a little less convenient to you than using an image list control or array of Picture objects, right—it is. Picture clips were first made available long ago in Visual Basic and don't support all the conveniences of more modern controls. However, programmers still use them, and we'll cover them here.

TIP: One excellent reason to use picture clip controls besides storing images is to edit existing images, because picture clip controls let you clip rectangular sections of image from existing images.

To add a picture clip control to a program, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
3. Select the Microsoft PictureClip Control item.
4. Close the Components dialog box by clicking on OK.

5. This adds the Picture Clip Control's tool to the Visual Basic toolbox; that tool is at the bottom in Figure 19.4. Use that tool to draw a picture clip control in your program; because the control is invisible at runtime, size and placement of the control don't matter.



Figure 19.4 The Picture Clip Control tool.

Now we add an image that consists of three images added together to the picture clip control, as you see in Figure 19.5. When you want to get a picture from a picture clip control, you specify the (x, y) coordinates of the bitmap section you want, and its height and width. You can also divide the image up into rows and columns, as we'll see in a few topics.

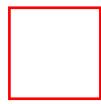


Figure 19.5 Adding a picture clip control to a program.

To put the picture clip control to work, see the next few topics in this chapter.

Selecting Images In A Picture Clip Control Using Coordinates

You've placed all the images you want to store into a picture clip control as one large bitmap. How can you get your images back out again?

There are two ways to get images out of a picture clip control (three, if you count accessing the whole bitmap with the control's Picture property): by specifying the image's coordinates in the whole bitmap, or by breaking the bitmap into rows and columns and accessing the image by row and column. After you select an image, you can retrieve it using the picture clip's Clip property. We'll see how to use bitmap coordinates in this topic, and rows and columns in the next topic.

An example will make this clearer. Here, we'll use a picture clip control to hold the three images from the previous topic in this chapter, and flip through them when the user clicks a command button. We'll use a picture clip control, PictureClip1; a command button, Command1, labeled "Clip next image"; and a picture box, Picture1, to display the images in (set Picture1's AutoSize property to True so it will resize itself to match the images).

We start by storing the dimensions of each of the three images in the entire bitmap as constants, and storing the currently displayed image in an index, intImageIndex:

```
Const intImageWidth = 137
Const intImageHeight = 70
Dim intImageIndex As Integer
```

To use coordinates to specify images in a picture clip control, you'll need ClipX and ClipY to indicate the upper-left point of the image, and ClipWidth and ClipHeight to indicate the image's width and height. When the form in our example loads, then, we can display the first image by setting these properties to match that image, and then set Picture1's Picture property to the picture clip control's Clip property:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    PictureClip1.ClipX = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipY = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipWidth = intImageWidth
    PictureClip1.ClipHeight = intImageHeight
    Picture1.Picture = PictureClip1.Clip
End Sub
```

Now the picture box displays the first image. When the user clicks the command button, Command1_Click, increment the image index, intImageIndex:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    intImageIndex = intImageIndex + 1
    If intImageIndex >= 3 Then intImageIndex = 0
...
End Sub
```

Then we reset the ClipX property to point to the new image and display it in the picture box (note that we're just working with a strip of images here; if you were working with a grid of images, you'd also have to calculate ClipY):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    intImageIndex = intImageIndex + 1
    If intImageIndex >= 3 Then intImageIndex = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipX = intImageIndex * intImageWidth
    Picture1.Picture = PictureClip1.Clip
End Sub
```

That's all we need. Run the program now, as shown in Figure 19.6. When the user clicks the Clip

Image button, the next image appears in the picture box. Our picture clip example is a success.



Figure 19.6 Using coordinates in a picture clip control to retrieve images.

The code for this example, picclip.frm version 1 (version 2, which appears on the CD-ROM, will illustrate the use of rows and columns and will be developed in the next topic), appears in Listing 19.1.

Listing 19.1 picclip.frm version 1

```

VERSION 6.00
Object = "{27395F88-0C0C-101B-A3C9-08002B2F49FB}#1.1#0"; "PICCLP32.OCX"
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption          =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight    =   2370
    ClientLeft      =   60
    ClientTop       =   345
    ClientWidth     =   4680
    LinkTopic       =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight     =   2370
    ScaleWidth      =   4680
    StartUpPosition =   3 'Windows Default
    Begin VB.CommandButton Command2
        Caption          =   "Get next cell"
        Height           =   495
        Left             =   3120
        TabIndex         =   2
        Top              =   1560
        Width            =   1215
    End
    Begin VB.CommandButton Command1
        Caption          =   "Clip next image"
        Height           =   495
        Left             =   240
        TabIndex         =   1
        Top              =   1560
        Width            =   1215
    End
    Begin VB.PictureBox Picture1
        AutoSize         =   -1  'True
        Height           =   975
        Left             =   1200
        ScaleHeight     =   915
        ScaleWidth      =   2235
        TabIndex         =   0
    End
End

```

```

Top = 240
Width = 2295
End
Begin PicClip.PictureClip PictureClip1
Left = 120
Top = 2040
_ExtentX = 10874
_ExtentY = 1852
_Version = 393216
Picture = "picclip.frx":0000
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Const intImageWidth = 137
Const intImageHeight = 70
Dim intImageIndex As Integer

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    intImageIndex = intImageIndex + 1
    If intImageIndex >= 3 Then intImageIndex = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipX = intImageIndex * intImageWidth
    Picture1.Picture = PictureClip1.Clip
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Load()
    PictureClip1.ClipX = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipY = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipWidth = intImageWidth
    PictureClip1.ClipHeight = intImageHeight
    Picture1.Picture = PictureClip1.Clip
End Sub

```

Selecting Images In A Picture Clip Control Using Rows And Columns

In the previous topic, we saw how to select images in a picture clip control using coordinates in the large bitmap that picture clip controls use to store images. You can also divide that bitmap up into rows and columns and access images that way.

In fact, using rows and columns is often much easier than using coordinates, because you don't have to figure things out using actual pixel values. Let's see an example. We'll just add some code to the picture clip control example we developed in the previous topic (picclip.frm). To start, we divide the picture control's bitmap into rows and columns with the `Rows` and `Columns` properties. Because there are three adjacent images in our bitmap (see Figure 19.5), we have one row and three columns, so `Rows`

andColumns properties this way when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    PictureClip1.ClipX = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipY = 0
    PictureClip1.ClipWidth = intImageWidth
    PictureClip1.ClipHeight = intImageHeight
    PictureClip1.Rows = 1
    PictureClip1.Cols = 3
    Picture1.Picture = PictureClip1.Clip
End Sub
```

Now we add a new command button Command2 to the form, and label it "Get next cell". When the user clicks this button, we can increment the image index intImageIndex:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    intImageIndex = intImageIndex + 1
    If intImageIndex >= 3 Then intImageIndex = 0
    ...
End Sub
```

Then we use the picture clip control's `GraphicCell` array to get the new image, placing that image in the picture control's `Picture` property:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    intImageIndex = intImageIndex + 1
    If intImageIndex >= 3 Then intImageIndex = 0
    Picture1.Picture = PictureClip1.GraphicCell(intImageIndex)
End Sub
```

That's all we need—now the user can click the new button, Get Next Cell, to cycle through the image picture clip control, as shown in Figure 19.7. Our picture clip control example is a success.



Figure 19.7 Using rows and columns in a picture clip control to retrieve images.

The code for this example is located in the picclip folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Flipping Images

You can gain a lot of control over how images are displayed by the `PaintPicture` method, which lets you flip, translate, or resize images:

```
object.PaintPicture picture, x1, y1, [width1, height1, [x2, y2, [width2, _  
height2, [opcode]]]]
```

You can use this method to stretch or flip images in forms, picture boxes, and the Printer object. Here the arguments passed to `PaintPicture` mean:

- picture—The source of the graphic to be drawn onto the object; should be a `Picture` property.
- x1, y1—Single-precision values indicating the destination coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) on the object for the picture to be drawn. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measurement used.
- width1—Single-precision value indicating the destination width of the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination width is larger or smaller than the source width (`width2`), the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source width is used.
- height1—Single-precision value indicating the destination height of the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination height is larger or smaller than the source height (`height2`), the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source height is used.
- x2, y2—Single-precision values indicating the coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) of a clipping region within the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, 0 is assumed.
- width2—Single-precision value indicating the source width of a clipping region within the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire width is used.
- height2—Single-precision value indicating the source height of a clipping region within the picture. The `ScaleMode` property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire height is used.

The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire height is used.

- **opcode**—Long value or code that is used only with bitmaps. It defines a bit-wise operation (such as `vbMergeCopy`) that is performed on the picture as it is drawn on the object.

You can flip a bitmap horizontally or vertically by using negative values for the destination `height1` and/or the destination width `width1`. Let's see an example. Here's how we flip the image in the current horizontally and display it in `Picture2`:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    PaintPicture Picture, Picture1.ScaleWidth, 0, _
        -1 * ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight
End Sub
```

If we load the image we used in Figure 19.2 into a form and use the preceding code, we'll get the result seen in Figure 19.8. Now we're flipping images.



Figure 19.8 Flipping an image in a form.

The code for this example appears in the `imageflip` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Stretching Images

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling. The image of the company founder you've put into your logo looks fine, but why is it so small? Can't you enlarge it?

You can use the `PaintPicture` method to stretch images in forms, picture boxes, and the Printer object. See how that method works:

```
object.PaintPicture picture, x1, y1, [width1, height1, [x2, y2, [width2, _  
height2, [opcode]]]]]
```

Here's what the arguments passed to `PaintPicture` mean:

- **picture**—The source of the graphic to be drawn onto the object; should be a `Picture` property.
- **x1, y1**—Single-precision values indicating the destination coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) on the object for the picture to be drawn. The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used.
- **width1**—Single-precision value indicating the destination width of the picture. The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination width is larger or smaller than the source width `width2`, the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source width is used.
- **height1**—Single-precision value indicating the destination height of the picture. The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If the destination height is larger or smaller than the source height `height2`, the picture is stretched or compressed to fit. If omitted, the source height is used.
- **x2, y2**—Single-precision values indicating the coordinates (x-axis and y-axis) of a clipping region.

within the picture. The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, 0 is assumed.

- **width2**—Single-precision value indicating the source width of a clipping region within the picture. The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire width is used.
- **height2**—Single-precision value indicating the source height of a clipping region within the picture. The **ScaleMode** property of the object determines the unit of measure used. If omitted, the entire height is used.
- **opcode**—Long value or code that is used only with bitmaps. It defines a bit-wise operation (such as **vbMergeCopy**) that is performed on the picture as it is drawn on the object.

For example, here's how we stretch an image to fill a picture box (here, the picture we're stretching is picture that already is displayed in the picture box—we're just sizing it to fill the picture box by making width and height the width and height of the picture box):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Picture1.PaintPicture Picture1.Picture, 0, 0, Picture1.ScaleWidth, _
        Picture1.ScaleHeight
End Sub
```

In Figure 19.9, we're applying this code to the picture in the picture box.



Figure 19.9 Stretching an image in an image control.

What About Image Controls?

You can stretch (or flip) an image in a picture box, form, or the Printer object using ~~PaintPicture~~ method, but you can't use ~~PaintPicture~~ with image controls. Is there still some way of producing interesting graph effects in an image control?

You can use the image control's ~~Stretch~~ property. By default, image controls shape themselves to fit the image inside them (after all, their primary purpose is to display images), but if you set ~~Stretch~~ property to True (the default is False), the image control will stretch the image to fit the control. As an example, we're stretching an image in the image control in Figure 19.9.

You can also stretch an image in an image control by resizing the control (using ~~Width~~ and ~~Height~~ properties) at runtime as long as the control's ~~Stretch~~ property is True. The code for the example is located in the `imagestretch` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Creating Image Animation

One way to create image animation is to use a picture box and keep changing its ~~Picture~~ property to display successive frames of an animation. You can store the images themselves in the program, such as using an image list control or an array of Picture objects. We've seen how to create animation earlier in this book chapter on Visual Basic timers using image lists; here, we can do the same thing using an array of Picture objects.

We add a timer control `Timer1`, to the program and set its `Interval` property to 1000 (the `Interval` property is measured in milliseconds, 1/1000s of a second), which means the `Timer1_Timer()` event handler will be called once a second. We also add a picture box `Picture1`, in which to display images and a command button `Command1`, with the caption "Start animation" to start the animation.

For the purposes of this example, we will just switch back and forth between two images in the picture box. These two images are the two images in the Picture object `picObjects`, which we store in the form's (General) section:

```
Dim picObjects(1 To 2) As Picture
```

We load those images when the form first loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Set picObjects(1) = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\pictureanimation\image1.bmp")
    Set picObjects(2) = LoadPicture("c:\vbbb\pictureanimation\image2.bmp")
End Sub
```

To switch back and forth, we use a static Boolean flag named `blnImage1` like this, alternating between images in the Picture object array `Timer1_Timer`:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean

    If blnImage1 Then
        Picture1.Picture = picObjects(1)
    Else
        Picture1.Picture = picObjects(2)
    End If
```

...

At the end of `Timer1_Timer`, we toggle the `blnImage1` flag this way:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Static blnImage1 As Boolean
    If blnImage1 Then
        Picture1.Picture = picObjects(1)
    Else
        Picture1.Picture = picObjects(2)
    End If

    blnImage1 = Not blnImage1
End Sub
```

All that's left is to start the animation when the user clicks the command button, and we do that like this by enabling the timer:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Timer1.Enabled = True
End Sub
```

And that's all we need—now we're supporting animation using picture boxes and Picture object array. The result of this code appears in Figure 19.10.



Figure 19.10 Image animation with a picture box.

The code for this example is located in the pictureanimation folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Handling Images Bit By Bit

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. How about adding some special effects to the images your program SuperDuperGraphics Pro? Doesn't that mean working with images bit by bit, you ask? Probably, they say.

We can use Visual Basic methods to work bit by bit with images. Does that mean we'll actually ~~RS~~ SetPixel (sets a pixel) and ~~P~~ GetPixel (reads a pixel) methods to handle whole images? Exactly.

We'll see this in action over the next few topics. In this topic, we'll see how to read an image in from a picture box, Picture1, and write it out to another ~~Picture2~~, when the user clicks a command button, Command1. To be able to work pixel by pixel, set each picture box's ScaleMode property to vbPixel (3).

We start by setting up an array ~~Pixels~~ to hold the colors of each pixel for an image up to 500 × 500 (to be more efficient, you can redimension your storage array ~~ReDim~~ when you know the actual size of the image you're to work with) in the (General) declarations area of the form:

```
Const intUpperBoundX = 500
Const intUpperBoundY = 500
Dim Pixels(1 To intUpperBoundX, 1 To intUpperBoundY) As Long
```

The first task is to read the pixels in from Picture1, and we start by setting up loops over all the pixels in the image:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            ...
            Next y
        Next x
    
```

Then we read each pixel from Picture1 using the ~~Point~~ method and store the pixels in ~~Pixels~~ array we've set up:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Pixels(x, y) = Picture1.Point(x, y)
        Next y
    Next x

```

Now we've stored the image in ~~Pixels~~ array. To copy that image Picture2, we just use that control's ~~PSet~~ method, pixel by pixel:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer
```

```
For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
    For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
        Pixels(x, y) = Picture1.Point(x, y)
    Next y
Next x

For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
    For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
        Picture2.PSet (x, y), Pixels(x, y)
    Next y
Next x

End Sub
```

Does this work? It certainly does (although it might take a little time to execute), as you can see in Figure 19.11, where we copy the image in the top picture box (Picture1) to the bottom picture box (Picture2).



Figure 19.11 Copying an image bit by bit.

The code for this example is located in the imagecopy folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM. Now that we've seen how to work with an image bit by bit, we'll see how to implement some image effects in the next few topics.

Creating Grayscale Images

We've seen how to work with images bit by bit in the previous topic. We'll augment that in this topic where we see how to convert color images to grayscale images.

We do this by reading an image into a pixel array, then by converting each of those pixels to grayscale, and then writing the pixel array out to a new image. Let's see how this works. We'll convert the image in a picture box, Picture1, to grayscale, and display it in a new picture box, Picture2, when the user clicks a command button, Command1. To be able to work pixel by pixel, set each picture box's ScaleMode property to vbPixel (3).

First, we set up storage space for the image in an array `Pixels` declared in the form's (General) section:

```
Const intUpperBoundX = 300
Const intUpperBoundY = 300
Dim Pixels(1 To intUpperBoundX, 1 To intUpperBoundY) As Long
```

When the user clicks the command button, we store the image in Picture1 into the array `Pixels`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Pixels(x, y) = Picture1.Point(x, y)
        Next y
    Next x
```

Now we're free to work with the image's pixels in a new loop (to be efficient, this new loop should be incorporated into the first loop where we read the pixels in, but here we'll use a new loop to make the image-handling process clear). In that new loop, we first separate out the color values (red, green, blue) for each pixel. To create a grayscale image, you average those color values and then use the resulting average as the red, green, and blue color values in the new image.

The `Point` method returns a long integer holding the red, green, and blue color values (which range from 0 to 255) in hexadecimal &HBBGGR . That means we can separate out the red, green, and blue

values, storing them as the bytRed, bytGreen, and bytBlue this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer
    Dim bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue As Integer

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Pixels(x, y) = Picture1.Point(x, y)
        Next y
    Next x

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            bytRed = Pixels(x, y) And &HFF
            bytGreen = ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod &H100
            bytBlue = ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) Mod &H100
        ...
    Next x
```

To convert each pixel to grayscale, we just average its color values. Finally, we display the new image in a second picture box Picture2:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer
    Dim bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue, bytAverage As Integer
    ...

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            bytRed = Pixels(x, y) And &HFF
            bytGreen = ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod &H100
            bytBlue = ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) Mod &H100

            bytAverage = (bytRed + bytGreen + bytBlue) / 3
            Pixels(x, y) = RGB(bytAverage, bytAverage, bytAverage)
        Next y
    Next x

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Picture2.PSet (x, y), Pixels(x, y)
        Next y
    Next x

End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 19.12. Although the effect is not terribly obvious in a book

black-and-white images, we're converting an image from color to grayscale in that figure.



Figure 19.12 Converting an image to grayscale.

The code for this example is located in the imagegrayscale folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Lightening Images

The Testing Department is calling. Some of the users of SuperDuperGraphicsPrprogram are saying the images in that program are too dark—can you let them lighten them? Hmm, you think—does that work?

You can lighten images by adding the same positive number to each color value (red, green, and blue) for each pixel. Let's see how this works in an example. Here, we'll take the image in a picture box Picture1, and add a value specified by the user to each color value when the user clicks a command button Command1, displaying the result in a second picture box Picture2. To be able to work pixel by pixel, set each picture box's ScaleMode property to vbPixel (3). We'll also have a text box Text1, that will hold the value the user wants to add to each color value to lighten it.

We start by setting up the storage we'll need for the image:

```
Const intUpperBoundX = 200
Const intUpperBoundY = 200
Dim Pixels(1 To intUpperBoundX, 1 To intUpperBoundY) As Long
```

Next, we place the value the user wants added to each color value in a new variable intAddOn when the user clicks the command button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intAddOn As Integer
    intAddOn = Val(Text1.Text)
```

Now we read the image Picture1 into the array named Pixels

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y, intAddOn As Integer
    intAddOn = Val(Text1.Text)

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Pixels(x, y) = Picture1.Point(x, y)
        Next y
```

Next x

Next, we get the red, green, and blue color values for each pixel and add the `intAddOn` to those color values, making sure they don't go higher than 255 (of course, you can also darken images by subtracting `intAddOn` here, although you should make sure the resulting color values don't go below 0):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y, intAddOn As Integer
    Dim bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue As Integer
    ...
    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            bytRed = Pixels(x, y) And &HFF
            bytGreen = ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod &H100
            bytBlue = ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) Mod &H100

            bytRed = bytRed + intAddOn
            If bytRed > 255 Then bytRed = 255
            bytGreen = bytGreen + intAddOn
            If bytGreen > 255 Then bytGreen = 255
            bytBlue = bytBlue + intAddOn
            If bytBlue > 255 Then bytBlue = 255

            Pixels(x, y) = RGB(bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue)
        Next y
    Next x
End Sub
```

Finally, we just copy the new pixels to the second picture `Picture2`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y, intAddOn As Integer
    ...
    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Picture2.PSet (x, y), Pixels(x, y)
        Next y
    Next x
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 19.13. Now we're lightening images pixel by pixel in Visual Basic.



Figure 19.13 Lightening an image pixel by pixel.

The code for this example is located in the `imageLighten` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Creating “Embossed” Images

You can create a striking visual effect by **embossing** an image, which makes it appear to be raised in 3D. Using technique developed in the previous few topics, we can work pixel by pixel in an image to emboss it.

Let's see how this works in an example. Here, we'll take the image in a picture **Picture1**, and emboss the image in it when the user clicks a button **Command1**, displaying the result in a second picture **Picture2**. To be able to work pixel by pixel, set each picture box's **SizeMode** property to **vbPixel** (3).

We start by storing the image **Picture1** in an array named **Pixels**:

```
Const intUpperBoundX = 300
Const intUpperBoundY = 300
Dim Pixels(1 To intUpperBoundX, 1 To intUpperBoundY) As Long
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim x, y As Integer

    For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
        For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
            Pixels(x, y) = Picture1.Point(x, y)
        Next y
    Next x
    ...

```

Now we'll emboss the image in the **Pixels** array. Embossing is the process of plotting the difference between a pixel and a pixel above and to the left of it; this difference is added to 128 to make the whole image appear gray. One important note: when we're setting a pixel, we use both it and the pixel to the upper-left of it, which means we avoid incorporating pixels we've already set; we will proceed from the bottom-right of the array, not the top-left. Here's how that process looks in code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue, bytAverage As Integer
    ...
    For x = intUpperBoundX To 2 Step -1
        For y = intUpperBoundY To 2 Step -1
            bytRed = ((Pixels(x - 1, y - 1) And &HFF) - (Pixels(x, y) And _
                &HFF)) + 128
            bytGreen = (((Pixels(x - 1, y - 1) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod _
                &H100 - ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod &H100) + 128
            bytBlue = (((Pixels(x - 1, y - 1) And &HFF0000) / &H1000) Mod _
                &H100 - ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H1000) Mod &H100)_
                + 128

            bytAverage = (bytRed + bytGreen + bytBlue) / 3
            Pixels(x, y) = RGB(bytAverage, bytAverage, bytAverage)
        Next y
    Next x
End Sub
```

Note that we also average all the color values together so that the resulting image is a grayscale image. When done, we just copy the image to the second picture **Picture2**:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue, bytAverage As Integer
    ...

```

```

For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX
    For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
        Picture2.PSet (x - 2, y - 2), Pixels(x, y)
    Next y
Next x

End Sub

```

Running this program gives the result you see in Figure 19.14. Now we're embossing images in Visual Basic.



Figure 19.14 Embossing an image pixel by pixel.

The code for this example is located in the imageemboss folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Creating “Engraved” Images

In the previous topic, we created embossed images by taking the difference between a pixel and the pixel one upper-left of it and adding 128 to the result to create a grayscale image. We can also engrave images by taking the difference between a pixel and the pixel to the lower-right and adding 128 to the result.

The code to create engraved images is the same as that to create embossed images, except that we work in reverse direction and use the pixel to the lower-right, not the upper-left. Here's the new image effect loop:

```

For x = 2 To intUpperBoundX - 1
    For y = 2 To intUpperBoundY - 1
        bytRed = ((Pixels(x + 1, y + 1) And &HFF) - (Pixels(x, y) And _ 
            &HFF)) + 128
        bytGreen = (((Pixels(x + 1, y + 1) And &HFF00) / &H100) _ 
            Mod &H100 - ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod &H100)_ 
            + 128
        bytBlue = (((Pixels(x + 1, y + 1) And &HFF0000) / &H10000)_
            Mod &H100 - ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) Mod_ 
            &H100) + 128

        bytAverage = (bytRed + bytGreen + bytBlue) / 3
        Pixels(x, y) = RGB(bytAverage, bytAverage, bytAverage)
    Next y
Next x

```

When you put this code to work, you see the result as in Figure 19.15. Now we're engraving images in Visual Basic. (To be able to work pixel by pixel, make sure you set each picture's **SizeMode** property to **bPixel (3)**.)



Figure 19.15 Engraving images by working pixel by pixel.

The code for this example is located in the imageengrave folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Sweeping Images

When we created embossed and engraved images in the previous two topics, we were careful to set up our embossing or engraving loop so that when setting a pixel, we did not make use of other pixels that we had set in the same loop. The reason for that is that we only wanted to plot the difference between adjacent pixels, the difference between two pixels only—to create embossed or engraved images.

If we had not restricted our operation to two pixels we had not already worked on, and instead worked on all the pixels we had already set earlier, we could ~~propagate~~ a pixel's color values among several other pixels. That one pixel's setting could affect many other pixels.

In fact, there are times when you want to have that happen—for example, you might want to make an image appear as though it is sweeping from upper-left to lower-right, giving the illusion of motion. In that case, you copy pixels with the ones to the upper-left over and over, progressively blending them together to create the effect you see in Figure 19.16, where it looks as though the text has a fading trail of color behind it.



Figure 19.16 Sweeping an image by working pixel by pixel.

Seeing the code that gives us the image in Figure 19.16 will help make this effect easier to understand. A few topics in this chapter, we load the image in a picture ~~Picture1~~, into an array named ~~Pixels~~. Then we move from lower-right to upper-left, averaging each pixel with the one to the lower-right:

```

For x = intUpperBoundX - 1 To 1 Step -1
    For y = intUpperBoundY - 1 To 1 Step -1
        bytRed = Abs((Pixels(x + 1, y + 1) And &HFF) + (Pixels(x, y)_
            And &HFF)) / 2
        bytGreen = Abs(((Pixels(x + 1, y + 1) And &HFF00) / &H100)_
            Mod &H100 + ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod_
            &H100) / 2
        bytBlue = Abs(((Pixels(x + 1, y + 1) And &HFF0000) / &H10000)_
            Mod &H100 + ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) Mod_
            &H100) / 2
        Pixels(x, y) = RGB(bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue)
    Next y
Next x

```

That's all it takes—now we copy the image into the second picture ~~Picture2~~. (To be able to work pixel by pixel, make sure you set each picture box's ~~ScaleMode~~ property to ~~vbPixel~~ (3).) By combining successive pixels as we do in this example, we create the sweeping effect you see in Figure 19.16. Now we're creating cool images using image handling techniques.

The complete code for this example is located in the imagesweep folder on this book's accompanying CD.

Blurring Images

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. If you're going to add image effects to your program, SuperDuperGraphicsPro why not let the user blur images?

You can blur images by averaging pixels. To see how this works, we load the pixels from a picture ~~Picture1~~, and blur them, then display the result in another picture ~~Picture2~~. To be able to work pixel by pixel, set each

picture box's ScaleMode property to vbPixel (3).

As with the code in the previous few topics in this chapter, we load the pixels from Picture1 into an array named Pixels. To blur the pixels, you average them together; here, we just average each pixel with the next pixel right, but you can set up any blurring region you like (such as all eight pixels that surround the current pixel). This is the way our blurring process looks in code:

```

For x = 1 To intUpperBoundX - 1
    For y = 1 To intUpperBoundY
        bytRed = Abs((Pixels(x + 1, y) And &HFF) + (Pixels(x, y) _
                     And &HFF)) / 2
        bytGreen = Abs(((Pixels(x + 1, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod _
                       &H100 + ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF00) / &H100) Mod &H100) / 2
        bytBlue = Abs(((Pixels(x + 1, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) _
                      Mod &H100 + ((Pixels(x, y) And &HFF0000) / &H10000) _
                      Mod &H100) / 2
        Pixels(x, y) = RGB(bytRed, bytGreen, bytBlue)
    Next y
Next x

```

After the pixels have been blurred, we display the result in Picture2, as shown in Figure 19.17. As you can see, the blurring produced with this algorithm is slight; to blur the image more, you can apply the same algorithm and increase the number of pixels over which you average.



Figure 19.17 Blurring an image by working pixel by pixel.

The code for this example is located in the imageblur folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Freeing Memory Used By Graphics

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program is using up a lot of memory. Is there any way to free some memory when you're not using it anymore?

Yes, there is. When you are no longer using a picture in the Picture property of a form, picture box, or image control, set the Picture property to the Visual Basic Nothing keyword to empty it:

```
Set Picture1.Picture = Nothing
```

In addition, if you use the Image property of a picture box or form, Visual Basic creates an AutoRedraw bitmap (this happens even if the AutoRedraw property for that form or picture box is False). When you've finished using the Image property, you can empty the memory used by that bitmap with the Cls method before you set AutoRedraw to False, as in this example:

```

Picture1.AutoRedraw = True
Picture1.Cls
Picture1.AutoRedraw = False

```


Chapter 20

Creating ActiveX Controls And Documents

If you need an immediate solution to:

Creating An ActiveX Control

Designing An ActiveX Control From Scratch

Giving ActiveX Controls Persistent Graphics

Basing An ActiveX Control On An Existing Visual Basic Control

Handling Constituent Control Events In An ActiveX Control

Adding Controls To An ActiveX Control (A Calculator ActiveX Control)

Testing An ActiveX Control

Creating A Visual Basic Project Group To Test An ActiveX Control

Registering An ActiveX Control

Using A Custom ActiveX Control In A Visual Basic Program

Adding A Property To An ActiveX Control

Making ActiveX Control Properties Persistent (PropertyBag Object)

Adding A Method To An ActiveX Control

Adding An Event To An ActiveX Control

Adding Design Time Property Pages

Creating An ActiveX Document

ActiveX Document DLLs Vs. EXEs

Adding Controls To An ActiveX Document (A Tic-Tac-Toe Example)

Handling Constituent Control Events In An ActiveX Document

Testing An ActiveX Document

Creating ActiveX Documents That Run Outside Visual Basic

Distributed Computing: ActiveX Documents And Integrated Browsers

Making ActiveX Document Properties Persistent (PropertyBag Object)

In Depth

ActiveX controls and ActiveX documents are two of the ActiveX components you can build with Visual Basic. In fact, the ActiveX part of Visual Basic has exploded in scope lately, along with many changes in terminology, and will surely do so again. We'll start this chapter with an overview of ActiveX and ActiveX controls and documents in particular.

All About ActiveX Components

The whole ActiveX field started originally to differentiate controls designed for Internet usage from general OLE (Object Linking and Embedding) controls. In time, however, all OLE controls have

to be referred to as ActiveX controls. In fact, the field has taken off so vigorously that now Visual Basic can build not just ActiveX controls in Visual Basic (you used to have to build ActiveX controls for use in Visual Basic in other programming packages, like Visual C++), but ActiveX components.

What is an ActiveX component? In programming terms, all ActiveX components are really OLE servers, but that doesn't help us understand what's going on. It's better to break things down and look at the three types of ActiveX components:

- ActiveX controls
- ActiveX documents
- Code components (OLE automation servers)

Let's take a look at these types now.

ActiveX Controls

We have seen ActiveX controls throughout the book—those are the controls you can add to the Visual Basic toolbox using the Components dialog box. You can add those controls to a Visual Basic program like any other control. You can also use ActiveX controls on the Internet, embedding them in your Web pages, as we'll see when we work on creating ActiveX controls. ActiveX controls can support properties, methods, and events.

Your ActiveX control can be built entirely from scratch (in other words, you're responsible for its appearance), it can be built on another control (such as a list box), or it can contain multiple existing controls (these ActiveX controls are said to contain constituent controls). Visual Basic ActiveX controls are based on the Visual Basic UserControl object. When you create an ActiveX control, you create a control class file with the extension .ctl. Visual Basic uses that file to create the actual control, which has the extension .ocx. After you register that control with Windows (you can use Windows utilities like regsvr32.exe to register a control, as we'll see in this chapter), the control will appear in the Visual Basic Components dialog box, ready for you to add to a program. You can also use these controls in Web pages.

ActiveX Documents

ActiveX documents are new to many programmers, but the idea is simple. Instead of restricting yourself to a single control in a Web page, now you can create the whole page. ActiveX documents can include as many controls as any other Visual Basic program, and as we'll see when we start creating ActiveX documents, the result is just like running a Visual Basic program in your Web browser or in another application.

Visual Basic ActiveX documents are based on the Visual Basic UserDocument object. When you create an ActiveX document, you save it with the extension .dob. Visual Basic uses that DOB file to create the EXE or DLL file that holds the actual code for the ActiveX document. In addition, Visual Basic produces a specification file, with the extension .vbd, that describes the ActiveX document. It's that file that you actually open in the host application, such as the Microsoft Internet Explorer. With ActiveX documents, you can let users save data (using the PropertyBag property); that data is stored in the VBD file.

Code Components

Code components were formerly called OLE automation servers. These objects let you use them in other programs. For example, you might have a calculation routine that exposes a code component; doing so makes that routine available to other programs. Code components can support properties and methods. We'll see more about code components in Chapter 27.

If you take a look at the kind of ActiveX components you can build with Visual Basic in the New Project window, you'll see all kinds:

- ActiveX document DLL, ActiveX EXE
- ActiveX control
- ActiveX EXE, ActiveX DLL (these are code components)

There's still quite a confusion of terms here—what's the difference between a DLL and EXE ActiveX component? Let's explore further.

In-Process Vs. Out-Of-Process Components

If an ActiveX component has been implemented as part of an executable file (EXE file), it is an out-of-process server and runs in its own process. If it has been implemented as a dynamic link library (DLL file), it is an in-process server and runs in the same process as the client application.

If your ActiveX component is an out-of-process server, it is an EXE file, and can run standalone. Applications that use in-process servers usually run faster than those that use out-of-process servers because the application doesn't have to cross process boundaries to use an object's properties, and events.

There are a few reasons why you may want to create your ActiveX document as an in-process component (DLL file). The performance of an in-process component surpasses that of the same component compiled as an EXE. In addition, multiple programs accessing the same EXE can share global data; that doesn't happen if they each have their own in-process server.

Which ActiveX Component Do I Want To Build?

With all the different types of ActiveX components to choose from, how do you decide which type of component you want to create? Take a look at this list:

- To build an invisible component that provides routines in code that you can call, build an ActiveX component (ActiveX EXE or an ActiveX DLL).
- To build a component that can run in the same process with your application, build an ActiveX DLL.
- To build a component that can serve multiple applications and can run on a remote computer, build an ActiveX EXE.
- To build a visible component that can be dropped into an application at design time, build an ActiveX control.
- To build a visible component that can take over an application window at runtime, build an ActiveX document.

That's it for the overview of ActiveX controls and documents for the moment—it's time to turn to Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Creating An ActiveX Control

The Testing Department is calling again. Wouldn't it be great if you built a new ActiveX control that displayed a digital clock? That control could be reused in many other programs. Hmm, you think, do you create an ActiveX control?

Select the New Project menu item in the Visual Basic File menu to open the New Project dialog shown in Figure 20.1.



Figure 20.1 The New Project dialog box.

Select the ActiveX Control item in the New Project dialog box and click on OK. This creates a new empty ActiveX control, as shown in Figure 20.2.



Figure 20.2 A new ActiveX control.

Believe it or not, you've created your first ActiveX control, `UserControl1`. You can even run the

control with the Run menu's Start item, which would display the control by launching the Microsoft Internet Explorer if you have it installed in your computer; however, there would be nothing to see because the control is empty.

The default name of the control is Project1, but we can change that to, say, FirstControl . To do that, select the Project1 Properties item in the Project menu, and type "FirstControl" into the Project Name box in the Project Properties dialog box, then click on OK. Also, save the project as firstcontrol.vbp. Instead of a FRM file, you save ActiveX controls in CTL files. Select the Save UserControl1 item in the file menu to save the control as firstcontrol.ctl. Here's what appears in that file on disk:

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.UserControl  UserControl1
    ClientHeight      =   3600
    ClientLeft        =   0
    ClientTop         =   0
    ClientWidth       =   4800
    ScaleHeight       =   3600
    ScaleWidth        =   4800
End
Attribute VB_Name = "UserControl1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
```

Now that we've seen how to create a new ActiveX control, it's time to make it do something. We'll show that works in the next topic.

Designing An ActiveX Control From Scratch

The testing department is on the phone. Your new ActiveX control looks fine, but why doesn't it do anything? Should it? you ask. Yes, they say.

You can design the appearance of your ActiveX control entirely from scratch, creating an entirely new control, never seen before. In that case, you're responsible for creating the control's appearance from scratch. Later, you can add events to your control, as well as methods and properties, as we'll see in this chapter.

To design the appearance of your entirely new control, you can use the Visual Basic graphics methods that the UserControl object supports, such as Circle, Line, PSet, Print, Cls, and Point. You can also display an image in the UserControl object by setting Picture property.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll just draw two lines to crisscross an ActiveX control and draw a rectangle in the middle. Create a new ActiveX control now, and double-click it at design time to open its code window to the UserControl_Initialize function:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Initialize()
```

```
End Sub
```

This function is just like the Form Load procedure that we're familiar with. Set the control's AutoRedraw property to True so we can draw graphics ~~from~~ UserControl_Initialize, and then draw the lines to crisscross the control, using the method and ScaleWidth and ScaleHeight just as you would in a Visual Basic form:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Initialize()
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight)
    Line (0, ScaleHeight)-(ScaleWidth, 0)
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, we draw a filled-in black box in the center of the control this way:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Initialize()
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight)
    Line (0, ScaleHeight)-(ScaleWidth, 0)
    Line (ScaleWidth / 4, ScaleHeight / 4)-(3 * ScaleWidth / 4, _
        3 * ScaleHeight / 4), , BF
End Sub
```

Let's test this new ActiveX control now in the Microsoft Internet Explorer (assuming you have the browser installed). To do that, just select the Run menu's Start item now. Doing so opens the Project Properties dialog box, shown in Figure 20.3.



Figure 20.3 The Project Properties window.

Leave UserControl1 in the Start Component box, and make sure the Use Existing Browser box is checked, then click on OK. This registers our control with Windows, creates a temporary HTML page with the control embedded in it, and starts the Internet Explorer, as you see in Figure 20.4.



Figure 20.4 Our first ActiveX control.

You can see our new ActiveX control in Figure 20.4. Now we've created our first ActiveX control; designed its appearance from scratch. If we wanted to, we could add events, properties, and methods to this control (we'll see how to do so later in this chapter).

Here's the temporary HTML page that Visual Basic creates to display our ActiveX control; note that our control is registered with Windows and has its own ID, so this page can use the HTML <OBJECT> tag to embed one of our controls in the page:

```
<HTML>
<BODY>
<OBJECT classid="clsid:B2A69D3B-D38C-11D1-8881-E45E08C10000">
</OBJECT>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Note, however, that when you select End in the Run menu, Visual Basic unregisters our control Windows. To register it permanently, use a Windows utility like regsvr32.exe.

Giving ActiveX Controls Persistent Graphics

Visual Basic ActiveX controls are much like Visual Basic forms when it comes to graphics. If you want your control to be automatically redrawn when needed (such as when the program contains needs to be redrawn), just set the control's `AutoRedraw` property to True, just as you would for a Visual Basic form or intrinsic control.

If you prefer not to set `AutoRedraw` to True (to save memory, for example), you can add your draw code to the control's `Paint` event (just as you can with a Visual Basic form).

Basing An ActiveX Control On An Existing Visual Basic Control

As we saw in the previous topic, you can design your ActiveX controls from scratch, creating the control's appearance yourself. However, you can also base your ActiveX on an existing Visual Basic control.

Let's see an example to make this clearer. In this case, we'll base an ActiveX control on a Visual Basic text box. Create a new ActiveX control now by selecting the ActiveX control item in the New Project dialog box. Now draw a text box, `Text1`, in the control (its size and position don't matter because we will set that ourselves when the control runs); add this new text box just as you would any text box to a form—just use the Text Box tool. Now set the text box's `ScrollBars` property to `Both` (3), and set its `MultiLine` property to True.

When the control is first displayed, we stretch the text box to cover the control this way in the `ControlInitialize` event handler:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Initialize()
    Text1.Left = 0
    Text1.Top = 0
    Text1.Width = ScaleWidth
    Text1.Height = ScaleHeight
End Sub
```

That's it—now select the Start item in the Run menu, click on OK if the Project Properties dialog appears (it only appears when you run the control for the first time) to open the control in the Internet Explorer, as shown in Figure 20.5. You can type text into the text box, as also shown in Figure 20.5.



Figure 20.5 Basing an ActiveX control on a text box.

As you can see in Figure 20.5, our ActiveX control displays a text box complete with scroll bars, for use. We've based our ActiveX control on an existing Visual Basic control.

Of course, as it stands, our ActiveX control is exactly like a Visual Basic text box, so it's hard to

why you'd make an ActiveX control out of it. However, you can tailor that control the way you want—for example, you can do a lot of processing behind the scenes on the text in the text box (just as you could in any Visual Basic program). You can also change the way the control interacts with the user, which we'll see in the next topic.

Handling Constituent Control Events In An ActiveX Control

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling. It's nearly Christmas and they've come up with a great idea for a new ActiveX control based on Visual Basic text box. This new Christmas text box control will not display the letter "L"—no "L", get it? Oh, you say. They ask, when can you have it ready?

The controls you use in an ActiveX control are called constituent controls, and you can handle events from those controls just as you would in a standard Visual Basic program. Let's see an example. We'll set up the no "L" text box. Create a new ActiveX control by selecting the ActiveX Control item in the New Project dialog box. Now draw a text box, `Text1`, in the control (its size and position don't matter because we'll set that ourselves when the control runs); add this new text box just as you would any text box to a form—just use the Text Box tool. Now set the text box's `ScrollBars` property to `Both` (3), and set its `MultiLine` property to `True`.

Add this code to the `Initialize` event handler to stretch the text box over the entire ActiveX control when the control first appears:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Initialize()
    Text1.Left = 0
    Text1.Top = 0
    Text1.Width = ScaleWidth
    Text1.Height = ScaleHeight
End Sub
```

Now add a `KeyPress` event handler to the text box in the same way as you would in a standard Visual Basic program (that is, using the drop-down list boxes in the code window):

```
Private Sub Text1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
End Sub
```

Here, we'll just watch for the letter "L":

```
Private Sub Text1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    If KeyAscii = Asc("L") Then
    ...
    End If
End Sub
```

If the user does press the letter "L", we can cancel that letter by setting the `KeyAscii` argument to 0, and we can also have the computer beep to indicate that we've canceled this letter:

```
Private Sub Text1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    If KeyAscii = Asc("L") Then
        KeyAscii = 0
        Beep
    End If
End Sub
```

And that's it—now this ActiveX control will display a text box, but it won't let the user type the letter "L". In this way, we've handled an event from a constituent control in our ActiveX control.

The code for this example is located in the activetextcontrol folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Adding Controls To An ActiveX Control (A Calculator ActiveX Control)

In the previous topics, we've seen how to design an ActiveX control's appearance from scratch and how to base an ActiveX control on a Visual Basic control (or other ActiveX controls). However, ActiveX controls frequently contain more than one constituent control. For example, what if you wanted to create a calculator ActiveX control? How would you design that control in Visual Basic?

Let's see how this works; here we'll create an ActiveX control that is really a calculator that the user can use to add numbers. Create a new ActiveX project now, giving it the project name "calculator" (select the Project1 Properties item in the Project menu to open the Project Properties dialog box and enter "calculator" in the Project Name box). In addition, change the name of the control itself from UserControl1 to CalculatorControl in the Properties window (just set the controlName property). Now when we add this control to another program using the Components dialog box, this control will be listed as "calculator", and when we create controls of this type in that program, the first one will be called CalculatorControl1, the next CalculatorControl2, and so on.

To design the calculator, add these controls in a vertical line in the ActiveX control: a text box, a label with the caption “+”; another text box; a command button Command1, with the caption “=”; and a third text box Text3. The result appears in Figure 20.6.



Figure 20.6 Designing the calculator ActiveX control.

Now double-click the command button to open its Click event handler:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```
End Sub
```

When the user clicks the = button, we'll just add the two values Text1 and Text2, and place the sum in Text3 at the bottom. That looks like this in code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text3.Text = Str(Val(Text1.Text) + Val(Text2.Text))
End Sub
```

And that's it—we've created a new calculator ActiveX control. How can we test it out? See the next topic.

Testing An ActiveX Control

You can test, and even debug, ActiveX controls in the Microsoft Internet Explorer, as long as you're using version 3 or later. Just select the Start item in the Visual Basic Run menu to see the ActiveX control you're designing at work.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll run the ActiveX control we developed in the previous topic, the calculator control. To open this control in the Internet Explorer, select the Project menu's Calculate Properties item, opening the Project Properties dialog box, as shown in Figure 20.7. Click the Debugging tab now, as also shown in Figure 20.7.



Figure 20.7 Setting Visual Basic debugging options.

Leave the entry CalculatorControl in the Start Component box, and make sure the Use Existing Browser box is clicked, then click on OK. To run the control, just select the Run menu's Start item now. This registers our control with Windows, creates a temporary HTML page with the control embedded in it, and starts the Internet Explorer, as you see in Figure 20.8.



Figure 20.8 Testing the calculator control in the Internet Explorer.

That's it—now you can use the ActiveX control. In Figure 20.8, we're adding numbers with the calculator. Our calculator ActiveX control is a success.

Creating A Visual Basic Project Group To Test An ActiveX Control

In the previous topic, we saw how to test an ActiveX control in a Web browser, but you can use ActiveX controls in Visual Basic programs too. Can you test an ActiveX control in Visual Basic?

Yes, you can, by creating a project group. How does that process work? As an example, we'll see how to add our calculator ActiveX control (developed in the last two topics) to a program group. Just these steps:

1. Create a new Visual Basic standard EXE project, Project1.
2. Select the Add Project item in the File menu.
3. Click the Existing tab in the Add Project dialog box, select the name of the ActiveX calculator project (we used activexcalculatorcontrol.vbp in the previous topic), and click OK.
4. This adds the calculator ActiveX project to the current project and creates a program group. Select the Select Project Group As item in the File menu, accepting all default file names (although you can give those files the names you want), including the group file itself, group1.vbg.
5. Close the calculator project's window (that is, the window in which you design the calculator by adding text boxes and so on—its designer window); that makes the calculator ActiveX control available to us in the other project, and it will appear in the toolbox.
6. Add a new calculator control to Form1 of Project1.
7. Select the Run menu's Start item to start Project1.

Following these steps creates the running program you see in Figure 20.9. Now we're testing ActiveX controls in Visual Basic.



Figure 20.9 Testing an ActiveX control in a program group.

Registering An ActiveX Control

The Testing Department is calling again. It's all very well to be able to run ActiveX controls in a Visual Basic project group (see the previous topic), but wouldn't it be nice to let other users use ActiveX controls too?

To install an ActiveX control in Windows, you must register it with Windows, and you can do that either with the setup program (such as the ones we'll create in Chapter 30), or with the Windows regsvr32.exe utility. Let's see an example. Here, we'll see how to register an ActiveX control named say, activex.ocx with Windows. First, use the File menu's Make activex.ocx menu item to create activex.ocx. Next, we'll use regsvr32.exe, which is usually found in the C:\windows\system directory.

to register that control with Windows. Here's how to register our ActiveX control:

```
c:\windows\system>regsvr32 c:\vbbb\activex.ocx
```

After the ActiveX control is registered, it will appear in the Visual Basic Components dialog box (which you open with the Project menu's Components item), and you can add it to the Visual Basic toolbox.

Using A Custom ActiveX Control In A Visual Basic Program

Now that we've registered our Visual Basic control with Windows (see the previous topic), how do we add it to a form in a Visual Basic project? You add ActiveX controls that you build to Visual Basic projects just as you add any other ActiveX controls, such as the ones that come with Visual Basic.

Let's see an example. After we register the calculator ActiveX control that we've developed over the previous few topics, that control will appear in the Visual Basic Components dialog box. Start a new standard EXE project now and open the Visual Basic Components dialog box by selecting the Project|Components item. Next, click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box, as shown in Figure 20.10.



Figure 20.10 Our ActiveX control appears in the Components dialog box.

Click the entry labeled calculator ("calculator" was the name we gave to the project when we created this control) in the Components dialog box to add our calculator, and close that dialog box to add the calculator to the Visual Basic toolbox. Now draw a new calculator ActiveX control in the program's main form, creating the new control `CalculatorControl1` (`CalculatorControl` was the name we gave to the `UserControl` object when we created this control), and run the program, as shown in Figure 20.11.



Figure 20.11 Running our ActiveX control in a Visual Basic program.

That's it—now we've created, registered, and added a functioning ActiveX control to a Visual Basic program.

Adding A Property To An ActiveX Control

When we add our new custom calculator ActiveX control to a Visual Basic program, as we did in previous topic, you can see that the control already has quite a number of controls built into it, as shown in the Properties window in Figure 20.12. Besides that standard set of properties (labeled properties and stored in AmbientProperties objects, which you get from the `Ambient` property), we can also add our own properties to an ActiveX control (stored in Extender objects, which you get from the `Extender` property).

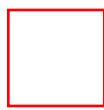


Figure 20.12 The Visual Basic Properties window.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add two properties to the calculator ActiveX control, `Operand1` and `Operand2`, which will hold the text in the top two text boxes in the calculator, operand 1 and operand 2, which we add when the user clicks the = button. After we add those properties, you can access them in programs that make use of our ActiveX control just as you would any other ActiveX control's properties. Here's an example where we set operand 1 in the calculator after you add a calculator control, `CalculatorControl1`, to a standard Visual Basic program; as you can see, this is just like setting the text in a text box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    CalculatorControl1.Operand1 = 100/
End Sub
```

To add the `Operand1` and `Operand2` properties to the calculator ActiveX project, open that project in Visual Basic, open the code window, and select the Add Procedure item in the Tools menu. This opens the Add Procedure box, as shown in Figure 20.13.

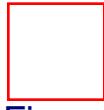


Figure 20.13 Adding a property to an ActiveX control.

Put the name of the first property, `Operand1`, in the Name box, and select the option button labeled Property, then click on OK. Doing so creates two procedures, `Get` and `Set`, and a `Get` procedure for the property.

```
Public Property Get Operand1() As Variant
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let Operand1(ByVal vNewValue As Variant)
```

```
End Property
```

In the same way, add the `Operand2` property, creating the procedures for that property as well:

```
Public Property Get Operand2() As Variant
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let Operand2(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
```

```
End Property
```

When Operand1 is set in code or by Visual Basic, the Operand1 Let procedure is called; when other code or Visual Basic wants to retrieve the current value of Operand1, the Operand1 Get procedure is called. That means that we return the text in the two text boxes corresponding to the calculator's operands in the Get procedures:

```
Public Property Get Operand1() As Variant
```

```
    Operand1 = Text1.Text
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Get Operand2() As Variant
```

```
    Operand2 = Text2.Text
```

```
End Property
```

And we set the text in the operand text boxes from the value passed to the Set procedures:

```
Public Property Let Operand1(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
```

```
    Text1.Text = vnewValue
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let Operand2(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
```

```
    Text2.Text = vnewValue
```

```
End Property
```

That's all it takes. Now when you create a control of this type in another Visual Basic program, you see that the new control has two new properties, Operand1 and Operand2. You can set those properties in the Properties window at design time, as shown in Figure 20.14, or in code:



Figure 20.14 Setting a property to an ActiveX control.

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    CalculatorControl1.Operand1 = 100
End Sub
```

However, there is a problem. When you set the Operand1 and Operand2 properties at design time in a program that has a calculator control embedded in it and then run the program, nothing appears in the operand text boxes. Why not? It turns out that we have to make the properties persistent if we want them to hold their values across program runs.

let the user set them at design time, and we'll look into that in the next topic.

The code for this example, activexcalculatorcontrol.ctl version 1 (version 2 will have persistent properties), appears in Listing 20.1.

TIP: Another way to set up the Set and Get procedures for your properties in an ActiveX control is to use the ActiveX Control Interface Wizard in the Add-Ins menu (if that wizard does not appear in your Add-ins menu, select the Add-In Manager item in the Add-Ins menu and add the ActiveX Control Interface Wizard).

Listing 20.1 activexcalculatorcontrol.ctl version 1

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.UserControl CalculatorControl
    ClientHeight      =   3600
    ClientLeft        =   0
    ClientTop         =   0
    ClientWidth       =   4500
    ScaleHeight       =   3600
    ScaleWidth        =   4500
    Begin VB.TextBox Text2
        Height          =   495
        Left             =   1680
        TabIndex         =   4
        Top              =   1200
        Width            =   1215
    End
    Begin VB.CommandButton Command1
        Caption          =   "="
        Height           =   495
        Left             =   1680
        TabIndex         =   3
        Top              =   1920
        Width            =   1215
    End
    Begin VB.TextBox Text3
        Height           =   495
        Left             =   1680
        TabIndex         =   1
        Top              =   2640
        Width            =   1215
    End
    Begin VB.TextBox Text1
        Height           =   495
        Left             =   1680
        TabIndex         =   0
    End
End
```

```
Top = 300
Width = 1215
End
Begin VB.Label Label1
    Caption = "+"
    Height = 255
    Left = 2160
   TabIndex = 2
    Top = 840
    Width = 375
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "CalculatorControl"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text3.Text = Str(Val(Text1.Text) + Val(Text2.Text))
End Sub

Public Property Get Operand1() As Variant
    Operand1 = Text1.Text
End Property

Public Property Let Operand1(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text1.Text = vnewValue
End Property

Public Property Get Operand2() As Variant
    Operand2 = Text2.Text
End Property

Public Property Let Operand2(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text2.Text = vnewValue
End Property
```

Making ActiveX Control Properties Persistent (PropertyBag Object)

There's a way of storing property settings in ActiveX controls that uses the PropertyBag object. For example, if you want the property settings the user makes in your control at design time to apply when the program runs, you must make the properties persistent. A persistent property is one whose value is stored and restored as needed.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll make the Operand1 and Operand2 properties of the calculator ActiveX control we've developed in the previous few topics persistent. To do that, we first call the VisualBasic.PropertyChanged procedure whenever Operand1 or Operand2 is changed in its Set procedure. You pass the name of the property that's been changed to the PropertyChanged like this:

```
Public Property Let Operand1(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text1.Text = vnewValue
    PropertyChanged "Operand1"
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let Operand2(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text2.Text = vnewValue
    PropertyChanged "Operand2"
End Property
```

When you call PropertyChanged, the control creates a WriteProperties event, and you can write the new settings of properties to the PropertyBag object, which stores them on disk. Here's how you use WriteProperty :

```
UserControl.WriteProperty( propertyname, value [,default] )
```

For example, to write the current settings of the calculator's operands, we add this code to the WriteProperties event handler:

```
Private Sub UserControl_WriteProperties(PropBag As PropertyBag)
    PropBag.WriteProperty "Operand1", Text1.Text
    PropBag.WriteProperty "Operand2", Text2.Text
End Sub
```

When the control needs to read its stored properties, it creates a ReadProperties event, and in that event's handler, we can use ReadProperty.

```
UserControl.ReadProperty( propertyname [, default] )
```

Here's how we use ReadProperty to read stored properties:

```
Private Sub UserControl_ReadProperties(PropBag As PropertyBag)
    Text1.Text = PropBag.ReadProperty( "Operand1" )
    Text2.Text = PropBag.ReadProperty( "Operand2" )
```

```
End Sub
```

Now the Operand1 and Operand2 properties are persistent. The code for this example, activexcalculatorcontrol.ctl version 2, appears in Listing 20.2.

Listing 20.2 activexcalculatorcontrol.ctl version 2

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.UserControl CalculatorControl
    ClientHeight      =     3600
    ClientLeft        =      0
    ClientTop         =      0
    ClientWidth       =     4500
    ScaleHeight       =     3600
    ScaleWidth        =     4500
    Begin VB.TextBox Text2
        Height          =     495
        Left             =    1680
        TabIndex         =      4
        Top              =    1200
        Width            =    1215
    End
    Begin VB.CommandButton Command1
        Caption          =      "= "
        Height           =     495
        Left             =    1680
        TabIndex         =      3
        Top              =    1920
        Width            =    1215
    End
    Begin VB.TextBox Text3
        Height           =     495
        Left             =    1680
        TabIndex         =      1
        Top              =    2640
        Width            =    1215
    End
    Begin VB.TextBox Text1
        Height           =     495
        Left             =    1680
        TabIndex         =      0
        Top              =     300
        Width            =    1215
    End
    Begin VB.Label Label1
        Caption          =      "+"
    End
End
```

```

Height           = 255
Left            = 2160
TabIndex        = 2
Top             = 840
Width           = 375
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "CalculatorControl"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text3.Text = Str(Val(Text1.Text) + Val(Text2.Text))
End Sub

Public Property Get Operand1() As Variant
    Operand1 = Text1.Text
End Property

Public Property Let Operand1(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text1.Text = vnewValue
    PropertyChanged "Operand1"
End Property

Public Property Get Operand2() As Variant
    Operand2 = Text2.Text
End Property

Public Property Let Operand2(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text2.Text = vnewValue
    PropertyChanged "Operand2"
End Property
Private Sub UserControl_ReadProperties(PropBag As PropertyBag)
    Text1.Text = PropBag.ReadProperty("Operand1")
    Text2.Text = PropBag.ReadProperty("Operand2")
End Sub

Private Sub UserControl_WriteProperties(PropBag As PropertyBag)
    PropBag.WriteProperty "Operand1", Text1.Text
    PropBag.WriteProperty "Operand2", Text2.Text
End Sub

```

Besides the WriteProperties and ReadProperties events, user controls also have initialize events that occur when the control is opened at design time and terminate events that occur when you switch to runtime from design time (in other words, the design time—instance of the control is terminated).

Here's the order of events that occur when you switch from design time to runtime:

- WriteProperties
- Terminate
- ReadProperties

And here's the order of events that occur when you switch from runtime to design time:

- Initialize
- ReadProperties

Adding A Method To An ActiveX Control

In the previous topic, we saw how to add a property to an ActiveX control—but how do you add method? You add a method to an ActiveX control in much the same way you add a property—w Tool menu's Add Procedure dialog box.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll add a new method to the calculator ActiveX control that developed in the previous few topics: ~~Calculate~~ calculate method. When the control's calculate method is called, we can add the values in the top two text boxes in the calculator and display the result in bottom text box (just like clicking the equal (=) button in the calculator).

Open the calculator ActiveX project in Visual Basic now and open the code window as well. Next select the Add Procedure item in the Tools menu, opening the Add Procedure dialog box, as sh Figure 20.15. Give this new method the name ~~Calculate~~ calculate.



Figure 20.15 The Add Procedure dialog box.

Select the entry labeled Sub to make our new method a Sub procedure, and make sure the entry labe Public in the Scope box is selected (making this method available outside the ActiveX control to container programs). Then click on OK to close the Add Procedure dialog box.

Following these steps creates a new procedure ~~Calculate~~, in the calculator ActiveX control:

```
Public Sub Calculate()
End Sub
```

If you have arguments you want passed to this method, just add them to the argument list between parentheses as you would for any subroutine. In this case, we want to calculate the sum of the two operands now in ~~Text1~~ and ~~Text2~~ in this method, storing the sum ~~Text3~~, and we do that with this code:

```
Public Sub Calculate()
    Text3.Text = Str(Val(Text1.Text) + Val(Text2.Text))
End Sub
```

That's all we need; now create the calculator control and embed it in another program as, say, CalculatorControl1. When you do, you can use the control's ~~Calculate~~ method like this: CalculatorControl1.Calculate.

For example, we've added a new button with the caption Calculate to the project in Figure 20.16. We added this code to the command button's Click event:



Figure 20.16 Calling a custom ActiveX control method.

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    CalculatorControl1.Calculate
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 20.16. When the user clicks the Calculate button, we execute the control's Calculate method. Our ActiveX method example is a success. The code for this example, activexcalculatorcontrol.ctl version 3, appears in Listing 20.3.

TIP: Another way to set up methods in an ActiveX control is to use the ActiveX Control Interface Wizard in the Add-Ins menu (if that wizard does not appear in your Add-ins menu, select the Add-In Manager item in the Add-Ins menu and add the ActiveX Control Interface Wizard).

Listing 20.3 activexcalculatorcontrol.ctl version 3

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.UserControl CalculatorControl
    ClientHeight      =   3600
    ClientLeft        =   0
    ClientTop         =   0
    ClientWidth       =   4500
```

```
ScaleHeight      = 3600
ScaleWidth       = 4500
Begin VB.TextBox Text2
    Height        = 495
    Left          = 1680
    TabIndex      = 4
    Top           = 1200
    Width         = 1215
End
Begin VB.CommandButton Command1
    Caption        = "="
    Height        = 495
    Left          = 1680
    TabIndex      = 3
    Top           = 1920
    Width         = 1215
End
Begin VB.TextBox Text3
    Height        = 495
    Left          = 1680
    TabIndex      = 1
    Top           = 2640
    Width         = 1215
End
Begin VB.TextBox Text1
    Height        = 495
    Left          = 1680
    TabIndex      = 0
    Top           = 300
    Width         = 1215
End
Begin VB.Label Label1
    Caption        = "+"
    Height        = 255
    Left          = 2160
    TabIndex      = 2
    Top           = 840
    Width         = 375
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "CalculatorControl"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```

Text3.Text = Str(Val(Text1.Text) + Val(Text2.Text))
End Sub

Public Property Get Operand1() As Variant
    Operand1 = Text1.Text
End Property

Public Property Let Operand1(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text1.Text = vnewValue
    PropertyChanged "Operand1"
End Property

Public Property Get Operand2() As Variant
    Operand2 = Text2.Text
End Property

Public Property Let Operand2(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
    Text2.Text = vnewValue
    PropertyChanged "Operand2"
End Property

Private Sub UserControl_ReadProperties(PropBag As PropertyBag)
    Text1.Text = PropBag.ReadProperty("Operand1")
    Text2.Text = PropBag.ReadProperty("Operand2")
End Sub

Private Sub UserControl_WriteProperties(PropBag As PropertyBag)
    PropBag.WriteProperty "Operand1", Text1.Text
    PropBag.WriteProperty "Operand2", Text2.Text
End Sub

Public Sub Calculate()
    Text3.Text = Str(Val(Text1.Text) + Val(Text2.Text))
End Sub

```

Adding An Event To An ActiveX Control

ActiveX controls can support events, of course, and the custom ActiveX controls you design with Visual Basic are no exception. You add events much like you add properties and methods—with Add Procedure item in the Tools menu. After you create a new event, it's up to you to raise that event with the `RaiseEvent` method.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add an event named `CalculatorClick` to the calculator ActiveX control we've developed in the previous few topics. When the user clicks the calculator control, the `CalculatorClick` event will occur.

To add this event to the calculator ActiveX control, open the calculator ActiveX project in Visual

Basic, and open the code window as well. Next, select the Add Procedure item in the Tools menu to open the Add Procedure dialog box, as shown in Figure 20.17.



Figure 20.17 Adding an event to an ActiveX control.

Type the name of this event, “CalculatorClick”, into the Name box in the Add Procedure dialog box. Select the option button labeled Event to indicate that we want to create a new event, and click OK. This creates the new event by declaring it in the ActiveX control’s (General) section:

```
Public Event CalculatorClick()
```

If you want to add arguments to this event’s handler procedures, just list them in the parentheses, as you would for any procedure.

How do we make this new event active? It’s up to us to raise this event when appropriate, using the RaiseEvent method. In this case, that’s particularly easy—we’ll just use the user control’s Click event. Add a Click event handler to the calculator ActiveX control now:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Click()
```

```
End Sub
```

This is the event handler that will be called when the calculator control is clicked, and we’ll raise the CalculatorClick event here:

```
Private Sub UserControl_Click()
    RaiseEvent CalculatorClick
End Sub
```

TIP: If your event supports arguments, you raise it and pass the arguments to it like this

RaiseEvent *eventname([argumentlist])*

just as you would pass arguments to any procedure.

That’s all we need. Now when you embed the calculator control in a Visual Basic program, you’ll see that it has a CalculatorClick event that you can add text to:

```
Private Sub CalculatorControl1_CalculatorClick()
    CalculatorControl1.Calculate
End Sub
```


For example, we can call the calculator control's calculate method when the user clicks that control, like this:

```
Private Sub CalculatorControl1_CalculatorClick()
    CalculatorControl1.Calculate
End Sub
```

In this way, we've added a new event to our ActiveX control. The code for the new version of the ActiveX calculator control is located in the activexcalculatorcontrol folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: Another way to set up events in an ActiveX control is to use the ActiveX Control Interface Wizard in the Add-Ins menu (if that wizard does not appear in your Add-Ins menu, select the Add-In Manager item in the Add-Ins menu and add the ActiveX Control Interface Wizard).

Adding Design Time Property Pages

The Testing Department is calling again. Can't you add property pages to your new ActiveX control? The programmers who use your control are used to setting properties using property pages at design time.

You can add property pages to your control with the Visual Basic Property Page Wizard in the Add-Ins menu. If that wizard does not appear in your Add-ins menu, select the Add-In Manager item in the Add-Ins menu and add the Property Page Wizard. After you've added properties to an ActiveX control, you can use the Property Page Wizard to add property pages for those properties.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add a set of property pages for our ActiveX calculator control that we've developed in the previous few topics. Start the Property Page Wizard by selecting that item in the Add-Ins menu now; a welcome screen will appear. Click the Next button until you get to the The Property Pages screen, as shown in Figure 20.18.

Here's where you set up the property pages your control will have. You can add property pages by clicking the Add button and name them with the Rename button. In this case, the calculator control only has properties Operand1 and Operand2, and we'll set up a separate property page for each, as shown in Figure 20.18.



Figure 20.18 Creating property pages.

Click Next to go to the next screen, Add Properties, as shown in Figure 20.19. Here you add properties from the list of all the available properties on the left to the property pages you've set up. Just click the tab matching the property page you want to add a property to, select the property in the list box, and click the right-pointing arrow button to add that property to the property page (or click the left-pointing arrow button to remove a button from a property page). In this way, you can organize which property appears on which page.



Figure 20.19 Adding properties to property pages.

Finally, click Next to go to the Property Page Wizard's screen labeled Finished and click the Fin button. In this case, this creates two new property page documents, PropertyPage1.pag and PropertyPage2.pag, for your control, and adds them to your project. Save those files to disk and your control.

Now embed our ActiveX control in another program and open its property pages at design time, shown in Figure 20.20. Now we're supporting property pages for custom ActiveX controls.

The code for the example property page files are located in the PropertyPage1 and PropertyPage2 folders on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 20.20 Our control's custom property pages

Creating An ActiveX Document

The Testing Department is calling again. The ActiveX controls you've been building are fine, but about going on to the next step? How about creating an ActiveX document? You ask, why are ActiveX documents the next step? Because, they say, although ActiveX controls can appear in Web pages, ActiveX documents can't be Web pages. That is, an entire Visual Basic form with all its controls can now appear in your Web browser or other application.

Let's see an example. To create a new ActiveX document, open the Visual Basic New Project dialog box, select the ActiveX document EXE entry, and click on OK (you can create either ActiveX document EXEs or DLLs—see the next topic for a discussion of the difference). This creates a new ActiveX document in Visual Basic, as shown in Figure 20.21.



Figure 20.21 Creating a new ActiveX document.

To get our start with ActiveX documents, just double-click the document and add this code to the Initialize procedure that opens to draw a set of crisscrossing lines and a black box in the center of the document:

```

Private Sub UserDocument_Initialize()
    Line (0, 0)-(ScaleWidth, ScaleHeight)
    Line (0, ScaleHeight)-(ScaleWidth, 0)
    Line (ScaleWidth / 4, ScaleHeight / 4)-(3 * ScaleWidth / 4, _
        3 * ScaleHeight / 4), , BF
End Sub

```

This is the procedure that's run when the ActiveX document is first opened. Because we're drawing from the Initialize event handler, set the document's AutoRedraw property to True (just as you would for a form).

Let's see our new ActiveX document at work in a Web browser (you can use ActiveX documents in other applications that support them, but Web browsers are particularly handy for testing ActiveX documents in an interactive way). Select the Project1 Properties item in the Project menu, and click the Debugging tab in the Project Properties dialog box that opens. Make sure that the option button Start Component is selected (the start component should be given as Document1) and the box labeled Use Existing Browser is checked. Then close the dialog box by clicking on OK, and run the document with the Start item in the Run menu.

Starting the document loads the document's specification, a VBD file, into the browser, which (if it supports ActiveX documents) runs the document's EXE file or adds the document's DLL file to its own process, as shown in Figure 20.22.



Figure 20.22 Opening our new ActiveX document in the Microsoft Internet Explorer.

That's all there is to it. Now we've created our first ActiveX document. Still, not much is going on yet. In the following topics, we'll develop our ActiveX documents further.

TIP: Oh great, you're thinking, I've developed an extensive standard Visual Basic program based on forms, and now I've got to convert it into an ActiveX document? Visual Basic includes a wizard to help you in just this case: the ActiveX Document Migration Wizard. Just select that wizard in the Add-Ins menu (if the wizard does not appear in your Add-ins menu, select the Add-In Manager item in the Add-Ins menu and add the ActiveX Document Migration Wizard).

ActiveX Document DLLs Vs. EXEs

You can create both ActiveX document EXEs and DLLs. Here's the difference: if an ActiveX document is written as an executable file (EXE file), it is ~~an~~ out-of-process server and runs in its own process; if it has been implemented as a dynamic link library (DLL file), it is ~~an~~ in-process server and runs in the same process as the client application.

Although ActiveX documents are usually built as EXE projects, the benefit of DLLs is that applications that use in-process servers usually run faster than those that use out-of-process servers because the application doesn't have to cross process boundaries to use an object's properties, methods, or events. In addition, the performance of an in-process component, or DLL file, surpasses that of the same component compiled as an EXE. Also, multiple programs accessing the same EXE can overwrite global data, but that doesn't happen if they each have their own in-process server.

Adding Controls To An ActiveX Document (A Tic-Tac-Toe Example)

The Testing Department is on the phone. The ActiveX document you've created is very nice, but can't you do anything with it? Well, you say, I was just about to add controls to it and create a Web browser game.

Using ActiveX documents, you can display entire forms in Web browsers. To see this at work, we'll create a mini tic-tac-toe game. This game will let users click buttons to display alternate x's and o's (although it won't include the logic to actually play tic-tac-toe). Working with multiple controls in one way will demonstrate how to display entire programs as Web pages.

Create a new ActiveX document (EXE or DLL), and add nine command buttons to it arranged in a grid in classic tic-tac-toe fashion. Give each button the same CommandName, clear each button's caption (that is, select the text in the caption and press the backspace key), and when Visual Basic asks if you want to create a control array, click Yes, because a control array will make the code shorter and easier to handle.

To alternate x's and o's as the user clicks buttons, we'll need a Boolean flag, which we'll call blnXFlag. If this flag is true, the next caption to set will be "x"; otherwise, "o". Add the declaration of blnXFlag to the (General) section:

```
Dim blnXFlag As Boolean
```

We also initialize blnXFlag to True when the document first loads by adding this code to the Initialize event handler:

```
Private Sub UserDocument_Initialize()
    blnXFlag = True
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks a button, we alternate between setting the clicked buttons' captions to "x" and "o" this way:

```

Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If blnXFlag Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If
...
End Sub

```

At the end of the code, we toggle the state of blnXFlag for the next time the user clicks a button:

```

Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If blnXFlag Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If
    blnXFlag = Not blnXFlag
End Sub

```

Let's see our new ActiveX document game at work. Select the Project1 Properties item in the Project menu, and click the Debugging tab in the Project Properties dialog box that opens. Make sure the Start Type option button labeled Start Component is selected (the start component should be given as UserDocument1), and the box labeled Use Existing Browser is checked. Then close the dialog by clicking on OK, and run the game with the Start item in the Run menu.

The result appears in Figure 20.23. As you can see, our entire game appears in the Microsoft Internet Explorer. The user can alternate button captions just by clicking the buttons. Our ActiveX document example is a success.



Figure 20.23 Our tic-tac-toe ActiveX document.

We'll save the document as activextictactoe.dob (ActiveX documents have the extension .dob when saved in Visual Basic, just as form files have the extension .frm), and the project as activextictactoe.vbp. The default name for the document is UserDocument1, as you can see in the Visual Basic Properties window; if you want to use a different name for the document, set it in the Properties window. We'll change the document name to activextictactoedoc. When we create the specification file for this document, then, that file will be activextictactoedoc.vbd, and that's the file we open in your Web browser.

The code for this example, activextictactoedoc.dob version 1 (version 2 will support persistent documents) appears in Listing 20.4.

Listing 20.4 activextictactoedoc.dob version 1

VERSION 6.00

Begin VB.UserDocument activextictactoedoc

AutoRedraw = -1 'True

ClientHeight = 2865

ClientLeft = 0

ClientTop = 0

ClientWidth = 4800

HScrollSmallChange= 225

ScaleHeight = 2865

ScaleWidth = 4800

VScrollSmallChange= 225

Begin VB.CommandButton Command

Height = 495

Index = 8

Left = 3360

TabIndex = 8

Top = 1920

Width = 1215

End

Begin VB.CommandButton Command

Height = 495

Index = 7

Left = 3360

TabIndex = 7

Top = 1080

Width = 1215

End

Begin VB.CommandButton Command

Height = 495

Index = 6

Left = 3360

TabIndex = 6

Top = 360

Width = 1215

End

Begin VB.CommandButton Command

Height = 495

Index = 5

Left = 1800

TabIndex = 5

Top = 1920

Width = 1215

End

Begin VB.CommandButton Command

Height = 495

Index = 4

```
Left          = 1800
TabIndex      = 4
Top           = 1080
Width          = 1215
End
Begin VB.CommandButton Command
    Height        = 495
    Index          = 3
    Left           = 1800
    TabIndex        = 3
    Top            = 360
    Width          = 1215
End
Begin VB.CommandButton Command
    Height        = 495
    Index          = 2
    Left           = 240
    TabIndex        = 2
    Top            = 1920
    Width          = 1215
End
Begin VB.CommandButton Command
    Height        = 495
    Index          = 1
    Left           = 240
    TabIndex        = 1
    Top            = 1080
    Width          = 1215
End
Begin VB.CommandButton Command
    Height        = 495
    Index          = 0
    Left           = 240
    TabIndex        = 0
    Top            = 360
    Width          = 1215
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "activextictactoedoc"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Option Explicit
Dim blnXFlag As Boolean
```

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If blnXFlag Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If
    blnXFlag = Not blnXFlag
End Sub

Private Sub UserDocument_Initialize()
    blnXFlag = True
End Sub
```

Handling Constituent Control Events In An ActiveX Document

After you add controls to an ActiveX document, how do you handle the events those controls create? That's the beauty of it all—you handle such events just as you would in a standard Visual Basic program, so designing an ActiveX document is really just like designing a standard form in Visual Basic.

If you haven't already done so, take a look at the tic-tac-toe game we developed in the previous chapter. There, we set up a control array of nine buttons and handled the button clicks just as you would in a standard Visual Basic form:

```
Private Sub Command_Click(Index As Integer)
    If blnXFlag Then
        Command(Index).Caption = "x"
    Else
        Command(Index).Caption = "o"
    End If
    blnXFlag = Not blnXFlag
End Sub
```

Microsoft has worked hard to make sure that creating ActiveX documents is as easy as creating standard Visual Basic EXE programs in the hopes that ActiveX documents will become popular, and the programmer is the winner.

Testing An ActiveX Document

To test an ActiveX document—and even debug it—while in the design process using your ActiveX document-supporting Web browser (such as the Microsoft Internet Explorer), just follow these steps:

1. Select the **ProjectNameProperties** item in the Project menu (where **ProjectName** is the name of your project).
2. Click the Debugging tab in the Project Properties dialog box that opens.
3. Make sure that the option button labeled Start Component is selected (the start component should be given as the name of your document, such as **Document1**).
4. To use your existing browser, make sure the box labeled Use Existing Browser is checked.
5. Close the dialog box by clicking on OK.
6. Start the document with the Start item in the Run menu.

When you follow these steps, Visual Basic creates a VBD file for your document and opens that file in your Web browser (VBD files hold the ActiveX document's specification and tell the browser where to find the document's EXE or DLL file).

Creating ActiveX Documents That Run Outside Visual Basic

The Testing Department is calling again. Your new ActiveX document is a winner, but how come it can only launch it from Visual Basic? Hmm, you say, I'll look into it.

ActiveX documents need either an EXE or a DLL file and a VBD file. (You select either EXE or DLL when you create the document—see “ActiveX Document DLLs Vs. EXEs,” earlier in this chapter.) How do you create these files?

When you create an ActiveX document, you save it with the extension .dob. Visual Basic uses this DOB file to create the EXE or DLL file that holds the actual code for the ActiveX document. To create the EXE or DLL file, just select the MakeProjectName.exe item in the File menu (where ProjectName is your project’s name).

In addition, Visual Basic produces the specification file, with the extension .vbd, that describes the ActiveX document, and it’s that file that you actually open in the host application, such as the Microsoft Internet Explorer. To open the ActiveX document in the Internet Explorer, you just open the VBD file directly (use the File menu’s Open item), as shown in Figure 20.24, where we’ve opened the VBD file for the tic-tac-toe document we developed in the previous few topics.



Figure 20.24 Displaying a VBD file in the Microsoft Internet Explorer.

Distributed Computing: ActiveX Documents And Integrated Browsers

The Testing Department is calling. Now that the company’s grown so huge (thanks to the success of your programs), we need to start using the Internet for the company reps in the field. Can’t we download updated programs in a transparent way over the Internet? You think about ActiveX documents and say, no problem.

If you integrate a Web browser into a program, you can have that browser download ActiveX documents in a seamless way that makes those documents look like part of the program itself. In this way, users can download ActiveX documents filled with current data into a program in a way that seems transparent to them.

Let’s see an example. Here, we’ll add a Web browser to a program and use it to open the tic-tac-toe ActiveX document we’ve developed in the previous few topics. To create a program with a built-in Web browser, use the Visual Basic Application Wizard. When the Application Wizard asks you about Internet connectivity, as shown in Figure 20.25, click the option button labeled Yes, and enter the URL of your document’s VBD file (which can be on the Internet) in the startup URL box; here, we’ll use the disk location of our VBD file, which is C:\vbbb\activexticctactoedoc\activexticctactoedoc.vbd. Then click the Finish button to create the program.



Figure 20.25 Setting Internet connectivity with the Application Wizard.

At design time, we can customize the program even more by changing the caption of the menu that opens the game from “Web browser” to “Tic Tac Toe”, and editing the browser form, frmBrowser, by removing the combo box that shows the URL and all the buttons. We can also set the Web browser control (wWebBrowser) so it covers the whole frmBrowser form.

Customizing the browser form this way prevents it from appearing as a Web browser at all. Instead, it will look like a part of your program; the fact that it comes from the Internet is entirely transparent to the user. (You can also remove the form's title bar so the name of the displayed ActiveX document is not displayed, but we won't go that far here.)

Running this program and selecting the Tic Tac Toe menu item opens that ActiveX document in the program, as shown in Figure 20.26. The ActiveX document looks just like any other part of the program, which is the idea behind distributed computing.



Figure 20.26 Opening an ActiveX document in a program with a Web browser.

Making ActiveX Document Properties Persistent (PropertyBag Object)

Just as with ActiveX controls, you can make the data in ActiveX documents persistent, which means the data is stored when you close the document and restored in the display when you open the document. How does this work? To make the data in an ActiveX document persistent, you use the `PropertyChanged` method as you do with ActiveX controls, and use `ReadProperty` and `WriteProperty` methods.

Chapter 21

Visual Basic And The Internet: Web Browsing, Email, HTTP, FTP, And DHTML

If you need an immediate solution to:

Creating A Web Browser

Specifying URLs In A Web Browser

Adding Back And Forward Buttons To A Web Browser

Adding Refresh, Home, And Stop Buttons To A Web Browser

Creating DHTML Pages

Adding Text To DHTML Pages

Adding Images To DHTML Pages

Adding HTML Controls To DHTML Pages

Adding ActiveX Controls To DHTML Pages

Adding Tables To DHTML Pages

Adding Hyperlinks To DHTML Pages

Using MAPI Controls To Support Email

Sending Email From Visual Basic

Reading Email In Visual Basic

Using The Internet Transfer Control For FTP And HTTP Operations

Handling FTP Operations In Visual Basic

Handling HTTP Operations In Visual Basic

In Depth

In this chapter, we'll see how to create a Web browser, create a dynamic HTML page (DHTML), work with email and the HTTP and FTP protocols. Not surprisingly, these are all hot topics in Visual Basic.

Creating A Web Browser

If you have the Microsoft Internet Explorer installed, you can build Web browsers using Visual Basic. Microsoft has packaged the Internet Explorer in a control, the WebBrowser control, and we'll be able to use that control to create a Web browser in this chapter that supports such browser functionality as Back, Forward, Home, Stop, and Refresh buttons. We'll also let the user specify what URL to navigate to with a combo box—as well as keeping track of recently visited URLs in that combo box.

Building a Web browser can be a worthwhile project in itself, but another popular use of the WebBrowser control is to add a Web browser to your existing program for added power. In fact, you can use the WebBrowser control to open ActiveX documents (as we did in Chapter 20) in a way

makes them look like a seamless part of the program—even though that document may have come from the Internet.

Creating A Dynamic HTML Page

Dynamic HTML is the new, although amorphous, Web page standard (that is, Netscape and Microsoft think of dynamic HTML as entirely different things). The Microsoft standard for DHTML makes a lot of the tags in a Web page active elements in the sense that they have properties you can change at runtime, as well as events like `OnClick`. The DirectAnimation and DirectShow Internet Explorer packages are part of Microsoft DHTML as well.

Visual Basic can write dynamic HTML—in fact, you can now use Visual Basic as an HTML editor by adding text, images, hyperlinks, and tables. We'll see how to do that in this chapter. There's more to it too. You can add ActiveX controls directly to your Web pages when designing them in the DHTML Designer. We'll see how to create Web pages using that designer and how to test them out in the Internet Explorer immediately, from Visual Basic.

Working With Email

Visual Basic includes support for working with email as well. That support is based on the Microsoft Exchange utility that's installed with Windows (and usually appears on the Windows desktop as an `Inbox` icon). In this chapter, we'll see how to connect Visual Basic to the Microsoft Exchange to work with email. To do that, we'll use the ActiveX MAPI controls (Messaging Applications Programming Interface) that come with Visual Basic.

To connect to the email system, you create a new MAPI session using the `MAPI Session` control. Once the session is created, you use the `MAPI Messages` control to work with individual messages. Note that these controls are interfaces to the Microsoft Exchange package, which means that we'll be using that package to send and receive email.

Using FTP

FTP (File Transfer Protocol) is a very popular Internet protocol for, as its name implies, transferring files. Visual Basic has good support for FTP work, and that support is contained in the Visual Basic Internet transfer control. That control has two approaches to working with FTP. You can use the `OpenURL` method to easily download a file from an FTP site. In addition, you can execute standard FTP commands with the control's `Execute` method. Using `Execute`, you can make use of the standard FTP commands like `CD`, `GET`, `CLOSE`, `QUIT`, `SEND`, and so on.

Using HTTP

HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) is the protocol on which the World Wide Web is based. As programmers know, this is the protocol used for Web pages on the Internet. Because we're going to build a functioning Web browser in this chapter, you may wonder why we want to work with the HTTP protocol directly. The answer is that although Web browsers do indeed download and display Web pages, there's a lot more you can do with the HTTP protocol. When you download a file using the Internet transfer control's `OpenURL` method, you get access to the file's HTML directly, which is

important if you want to interpret that HTML in a way different from how the Internet Explorer works. You can also use that control's Executemethod to execute HTTP commands directly.

You can even write your own Web browser or use emerging Web languages like XML (Extensible Markup Language). XML, intended to be a successor to HTML, allows you to create your own XML tags in a well-defined way, on a document-by-document basis. When reading those tags, it's up to the browser to interpret them, and you can write such XML browser programs in Visual Basic.

TIP: Microsoft has made an XML parser available on its Web site in two versions: a Java version and a Visual C++ version. (Its URL keeps changing, though, so search the site for "XML parser".) This parser breaks XML documents down tag by tag in a way that makes reading XML documents more systematic. You can connect the Visual C++ version to Visual Basic if you place your Visual C++ code in a dynamic link library that Visual Basic can link in, but the Visual C++ parser is so complex to use that it may not be worth the bother. One aspect of the Microsoft parser is, however, very useful: it can tell you if an XML document meets the XML specification for being valid and well formed.

Besides using the Internet transfer control's OpenURL method, you can also use the Executemethod to execute such common HTTP commands as GET, POST, and PUT.

That's it for the overview of Visual Basic and the Internet for the moment—it's time to turn to our Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Creating A Web Browser

The Testing Department is calling again. They need a new Web browser program right away. What's wrong with the old one? you ask. They say, it doesn't display the founder's picture. Oh, you say.

It's easy to build a Web browser in Visual Basic—you just use the Microsoft WebBrowser control. In this and the next few topics, we'll put together the functioning Web browser that you see in Figure 21.1. Our browser will support Back, Next, Home, Stop, and Refresh buttons, as you can see in the figure. In addition, the browser will have all the power of the Microsoft Internet Explorer (largely because it's the Internet Explorer; we use the WebBrowser control, which is the Internet Explorer control). To let the user navigate, we'll include a combo box, as you see in Figure 21.1. When the user types a new URL in the combo box and presses the Enter key, we'll navigate to that URL (and keep a record of the URLs we've been to in the combo box's drop-down list).



Figure 21.1 Our Web browser.

To create our Web browser, follow these steps:

1. Create a new standard Visual Basic project.
2. Select the Project|Components item.
3. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box.
4. Select the Microsoft Internet Controls and Microsoft Windows Common Controls entries, click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. Add a WebBrowser control and a toolbar to the form, stretching the WebBrowser control to WebBrowser1, to fill the space under the toolbar.
6. Add five buttons to the toolbar (right-click the toolbar, select the Properties item, click the Buttons tab, and use the Insert Button button to add the buttons).
7. Give the buttons the same captions ~~Key~~ properties: Back, Next, Home, Stop, and Refresh (for example, the button with the caption "Back" will also have ~~Key~~ property set to Back so we can identify which button in the toolbar was clicked).
8. Add a combo box ~~combo1~~, to the end of the toolbar (draw the combo box in the toolbar to make sure it's part of the toolbar; don't double-click to create a combo box and then move the toolbar).

That sets up the Web browser—but how do we work with it in code? We'll take a look at that in the next few topics.

Specifying URLs In A Web Browser

Now that you've set up the controls we'll need in a Web browser (see the previous topic), how do we let the user navigate?

You use the WebBrowser control's `Navigate` method. Let's see this at work. For example, when our Web browser first loads, we can navigate to the Microsoft Web page this way (note that you can specify URLs with or without the "http://" part in the Internet Explorer, and although we omit it here you can include that prefix if you prefer):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    WebBrowser1.Navigate "www.microsoft.com"
...
End Sub
```

We also want the user to be able to navigate to a new URL, and that's usually done with a control like the one we added to our Web browser in the previous topic, `Combo1`. We start working with `Combo1` by displaying the present URL and adding it to the combo box's drop-down list:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    WebBrowser1.Navigate "www.microsoft.com"
    Combo1.Text = "www.microsoft.com"
    Combo1.AddItem Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

Users can select past URLs from the combo box's drop-down list. When they do select a URL this way, a `Click` event is generated, and we can navigate to the newly selected URL this way:

```
Private Sub Combo1_Click()
    WebBrowser1.Navigate Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

In addition, users can type a new URL into the combo box and press Enter, just as they can in commercial browsers. When they press Enter, we can navigate to the new URL simply by calling the `Combo1_KeyPress` event handler directly from the `KeyPress` event handler:

```
Private Sub Combo1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    If KeyAscii = vbKeyReturn Then
        Combo1_Click
    End If
End Sub
```

Finally, when the downloading process is complete, the WebBrowser control fires a `DownloadComplete` event, and we can display the present URL in the browser's title bar, just as a commercial browser might. To do that, we get the browser's present URL from the `LocationName` property:

```
Private Sub WebBrowser1_DownloadComplete()
    Me.Caption = WebBrowser1.LocationName
...
End Sub
```

In addition, we can add that URL to the top of the combo box's list this way:

```
Private Sub WebBrowser1_DownloadComplete()
    Me.Caption = WebBrowser1.LocationName
    Combo1.AddItem WebBrowser1.LocationURL, 0
End Sub
```

And that's it—now the user can navigate around using the combo box. However, we have yet to add all the buttons, such as Back, Forward, and Home, active, and we'll do that in the next two topics. The code for the browser, browser.frm version 1 (version 2, which is included on the accompanying CD-ROM, will include support for the browser buttons), appears in Listing 21.1.

TIP: In our example, we made the Web browser navigate to the Microsoft home page when the browser is first opened. However, you can make the browser start with the user's home page (as recorded by the Internet Explorer) with the browser control's GoHome method.

Listing 21.1 browser.frm version 1

```

VERSION 6.00
Object = "{EAB22AC0-30C1-11CF-A7EB-0000C05BAE0B}\#1.1#0"; "SHDOCVW.DLL"
Object = "{6B7E6392-850A-101B-AFC0-4210102A8DA7}\#2.0#0"; "MSCOMCTL.OCX"
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption          =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight    =   3195
    ClientLeft      =   60
    ClientTop       =   345
    ClientWidth     =   7560
    LinkTopic       =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight     =   3195
    ScaleWidth      =   7560
    StartUpPosition =   3  'Windows Default
Begin ComctlLib.Toolbar Toolbar1
    Align            =   1  'Align Top
    Height           =   630
    Left             =   0
    TabIndex         =   1
    Top              =   0
    Width            =   7560
    _ExtentX        =   13335
    _ExtentY        =   1111
    ButtonWidth     =   1164
    ButtonHeight    =   953
    Appearance       =   1
    _Version         =   393216
BeginProperty Buttons {66833FE8-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
    NumButtons      =   6
    BeginProperty Button1 {66833FEA-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
        Caption          =   "Back"
        Key              =   "Back"
    EndProperty
    BeginProperty Button2 {66833FEA-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
        Caption          =   "Next"
        Key              =   "Next"
    EndProperty
    BeginProperty Button3 {66833FEA-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
        Caption          =   "Home"
        Key              =   "Home"
    EndProperty
    BeginProperty Button4 {66833FEA-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
        Caption          =   "Stop"
        Key              =   "Stop"
    EndProperty
EndProperty

```

```
BeginProperty Button5 {66833FEA-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
    Caption      = "Refresh"
    Key         = "Refresh"
EndProperty
BeginProperty Button6 {66833FEA-8583-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628}
    Style       = 4
    Object.Width = 100
EndProperty
EndProperty
Begin VB.ComboBox ComboBox1
    Height      = 315
    Left         = 3480
    TabIndex     = 2
    Top          = 120
    Width        = 3975
End
End
Begin SHDocVwCtl.WebBrowser WebBrowser1
    Height      = 2295
    Left         = 120
    TabIndex     = 0
    Top          = 840
    Width        = 7335
    ExtentX     = 12938
    ExtentY     = 4048
    ViewMode    = 1
    Offline      = 0
    Silent       = 0
    RegisterAsBrowser= 0
    RegisterAsDropTarget= 1
    AutoArrange   = -1  'True
    NoClientEdge  = 0  'False
    AlignLeft     = 0  'False
    ViewID        = "{0057D0E0-3573-11CF-AE69-08002B2E1262}"
    Location      =
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Private Sub Form_Load()
    WebBrowser1.Navigate "www.microsoft.com"
    ComboBox1.Text = "www.microsoft.com"
    ComboBox1.AddItem ComboBox1.Text
End Sub
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub WebBrowser1_DownloadComplete()
    Me.Caption = WebBrowser1.LocationName
    Combo1.AddItem WebBrowser1.LocationURL, 0
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Combo1_Click()
    WebBrowser1.Navigate Combo1.Text
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Combo1_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    If KeyAscii = vbKeyReturn Then
        Combo1_Click
    End If
End Sub
```

Adding Back And Forward Buttons To A Web Browser

Now that we've set up a Web browser in which the user can navigate by typing URLs into the control (see the previous topic), we'll enable the Back and Forward buttons in the browser.

That's easier than you might expect—you just use the ~~browser~~ GoBack or GoForward methods. We do that like this, where we determine which button in the toolbar has been clicked by checking the value we've added to those buttons:

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As Button)
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "Back"
            WebBrowser1.GoBack
        Case "Forward"
            WebBrowser1.GoForward
    End Select
End Sub
```

And that's all there is to it—now the user can navigate forwards and backwards in the browser's toolbar. We've added Back and Forward buttons now, but the user also expects Refresh, Home, and Stop buttons in Web browsers, and we'll add those buttons next.

Adding Refresh, Home, And Stop Buttons To A Web Browser

In the previous few topics, we've set up a Web browser complete with combo box to let the user select URLs, as well as a Back and Forward button to let the user navigate through the browser's history. However, we still have a few more buttons to implement: the Refresh, Home, and Stop buttons.

We can implement those buttons with the Web browser controls' Refresh, GoHome, and Stop methods. We've given the Refresh, Home, and Stop buttons the keys "Refresh", "Home", and "Stop", so we call the appropriate Web browser method when the matching button is clicked (note that if the user

the Stop button, we also update the current URL as displayed in the browser's title bar using the browser's `LocationName` property):

```
Private Sub Toolbar1_ButtonClick(ByVal Button As Button)
    Select Case Button.Key
        Case "Back"
            WebBrowser1.GoBack
        Case "Forward"
            WebBrowser1.GoForward
        Case "Refresh"
            WebBrowser1.Refresh
        Case "Home"
            WebBrowser1.GoHome
        Case "Stop"
            WebBrowser1.Stop
            Me.Caption = WebBrowser1.LocationName
    End Select
End Sub
```

Now the user can use the new buttons, Refresh, Home, and Stop. The code for the finished Web is located in the browser folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: You used to be able to specify the browser's search page in the Internet Explorer, but as of Internet Explorer version 4, you are taken to a page of Microsoft's choosing. If you still want to implement a Search button, however, just use the `WebBrowser` control's `Search` method.

Creating DHTML Pages

The Testing Department is on the phone. You may have heard of the company's Web site crash—the redesign the company Web page. From scratch. Can you do it? You start up Visual Basic—sure, you problem.

You can use Visual Basic to design dynamic HTML pages. To do that, just select the Dynamic HTML Application item in the Visual Basic New Project dialog box. This opens the DHTML Page Designer shown in Figure 21.2.



Figure 21.2 The Visual Basic DHTML Page Designer.

In the following few topics, we'll see how to use the DHTML Page Designer to implement DHTML pages. In general, you add the elements you want in your page to the right window in the Page Designer, and it shows you an idea of how the page will look in the browser. The window on the left in the Page Designer shows the logical structure of the page by indicating which HTML elements are contained in other HTML elements. Using the Page Designer, then, you can get an idea of both how your page will look and how it's organized in terms of HTML.

Note that you can use Visual Basic in the DHTML pages designed with Visual Basic. How is this possible? It's possible because what you're really creating is an ActiveX DLL project that will be loaded into the Internet Explorer when you open the Web page. This DLL runs in the Internet Explorer's process (and you have to place the DLL file for the project on your Web site so it can be downloaded). To make the new DLL file, just select the **MakeProjectName.dll** item in the File menu.

You might just want to create an HTML Web page, without any DLL files at all, and you can do that too. Just don't add any code to the page; stick to standard HTML elements. Usually, the HTML page is stored in a separate HTM file within the same Visual Basic project. To store it in a separate HTM file, click the DHTML Page Designer Properties icon in the upper left in the DHTML Page Designer, opening the Properties dialog box, as shown in Figure 21.3.



Figure 21.3 The DHTML Page Designer Properties dialog box.

Select the Save HTML in an external file option, and give an HTM file name to save your Web page as. Then test the Web page, select the DHTMLProject Properties item in the Project menu, clicking the Debug tab in the Properties pages that open. Make sure the Start Component option button is clicked and the start component is set to DHTMLPage1, then click on OK. Now select the Start item in the Run menu to open the Web page.

Now that we've started designing our DHTML Web page, we'll add text, images, tables, and other elements—including ActiveX controls—to the page in the next few topics. For reference, the Web page we create, page1.htm, appears in Listing 21.2.

Listing 21.2 page1.htm

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
```

```
<META content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1" http-equiv=Content-Type>
<META content=' "MSHTML 4.72.3007.2" ' name=GENERATOR>
</HEAD>

<BODY>
<P>Here's some text!</P>
<P>Here's an image:</P>

<P>&nbsp;</P>

<P>Here's <INPUT id=SubmitButton1 name=SubmitButton1 style="LEFT: 17px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 170px; Z-INDEX: 103" type=submit value=SubmitButton1>a  
Submit button:</P>
<P>&nbsp;</P>
<P><IMG id=Image1 name=Image1 src="c:\vbbb\dhtml\image1.bmp" style="LEFT: 40px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 107px; Z-INDEX: 100"></P>
<P>
<OBJECT classid=CLSID:35053A22-8589-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628 height=24 id=ProgressBar1 style="HEIGHT: 24px; LEFT: 127px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 248px; WIDTH: 100px; Z-INDEX: 101" width=100>
  <PARAM NAME="_ExtentX" VALUE="2646">
  <PARAM NAME="_ExtentY" VALUE="635">
  <PARAM NAME="_Version" VALUE="393216">
  <PARAM NAME="BorderStyle" VALUE="0">
  <PARAM NAME="Appearance" VALUE="1">
  <PARAM NAME="MousePointer" VALUE="0">
  <PARAM NAME="Enabled" VALUE="1">
  <PARAM NAME="OLEDropMode" VALUE="0">
  <PARAM NAME="Min" VALUE="0">
  <PARAM NAME="Max" VALUE="100">
  <PARAM NAME="Orientation" VALUE="0">
  <PARAM NAME="Scrolling" VALUE="0">
</OBJECT>
<INPUT id=Button1 name=Button1 style="LEFT: 26px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 248px; Z-INDEX: 102" type=button value="Click Me!">
</P>
<P>Here's an ActiveX control:</P>
<P align=center>&nbsp;</P>
<P>Here's a table:</P>
<P>
<TABLE border=1 id=Table1 name = Table1>
```

```

<TR>
  <TD>This
  <TD>is
  <TD>a
<TR>
  <TD>3x3
  <TD>HTML
  <TD>table
<TR>
  <TD>ready
  <TD>to
  <TD>use.</TD></TR></TABLE></P>
<P>Here's a hyperlink:
<A href="http://www.microsoft.com"
id=Hyperlink11 name=Hyperlink1>Microsoft
</A>
</P>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Adding Text To DHTML Pages

Adding text to a DHTML page is easy: just click the right window in the DHTML Page Designer (which represents the way your page will look when it runs). Just use the mouse to place the blinking insertion point where you want the text to appear, and type the text you want there. For example, we've added the text "Here's some text!" in the Web page in the Page Designer in Figure 21.4.



Figure 21.4 Adding text to a DHTML page.

Adding the text we've placed in our Web page adds this HTML to the Web page itself—note the Page Designer uses the `<P>` paragraph HTML tag for each paragraph of text:

```

<HTML>
<HEAD>

<META content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1" http-equiv=Content-Type>
<META content=' "MSHTML 4.72.3007.2" ' name=GENERATOR>
</HEAD>

<BODY>
<P>Here's some text!</P>

```

You can format the text by selecting the text font, size, and style (bold, italic, or underlined) with the controls at the top of the Page Designer. Besides being able to format the text, you can also specify its alignment—right, center, or left—with the buttons in the Page Designer's toolbar.

TIP: You can break DHTML Web pages into sections using and <DIV> tags, which you insert using buttons in the DHTML Page Designer toolbar. These HTML elements are especially important in DHTML because you can specify dynamic HTML styles and properties that apply specifically to or <DIV>.

Adding Images To DHTML Pages

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Your new Web page is fine, but what about adding Can you do that? you ask. Sure, they say, that's half of what the Web is all about.

To add an image to a DHTML page in the Visual Basic DHTML Page Designer, you click the Image tool which is the sixth tool down on the left in the Page Designer toolbox in Figure 21.5. Doing so adds an image to the page; move that image to the position you want and size it appropriately.



Figure 21.5 Adding an image to a DHTML Web page.

To add an image to this DHTML control, set its `src` property (the name of this and other DHTML control properties are intended to match the corresponding HTML tag attributes; this property matches the tag's `src` attribute). In this case, we set the `src` property to an image on disk: file:///C:/vbbb/dhtml/image1.bmp, although of course you can use a URL here.

Here's how the image is added to the HTML of our Web page—note that the Page Designer sets the tag's `position` attribute to `absolute`, which is how it can let you position the image anywhere you want it on the Web page:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>

<META content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1" http-equiv=Content-Type>
<META content='MSHTML 4.72.3007.2' name=GENERATOR>
</HEAD>

<BODY>
<P>Here's some text!</P>

<P>Here's an image:</P>

<P>&nbsp;</P>

<P><IMG id=Image1 name=Image1
src="c:\vbbb\dhtml\image1.bmp"
style="LEFT: 40px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 107px; Z-INDEX: 100">
</P>
```

Because we're using dynamic HTML, the `image` element is an active element: you can click it, for example, and add code to react to that click like this, where we display a message box indicating that the user clicked the image:

```
Private Function Image1_onclick() As Boolean
    MsgBox "You clicked the image!"
End Function
```

Adding HTML Controls To DHTML Pages

Using the Visual Basic DHTML Page Designer, you can add the standard HTML controls to a Web page. These controls include buttons, Submit buttons, Reset buttons, text fields, text areas, password fields, option buttons, checkboxes, select controls, file upload controls, hidden fields, and lists. As you can see, the whole HTML control set is here, and you can use these controls with Visual Basic just as you would in a standard form if you created a DLL file for your DHTML page (see “Creating DHTML Pages” earlier in this chapter), or with a scripting language such as VBScript or JavaScript.

Adding these controls to your Web page is just like adding them to a standard Visual Basic project. You use the control’s tool in the Page Designer’s toolbox in the same way you’d use a tool in the Visual Basic toolbox. For example, we’ve added a Submit button to the DHTML Web page in Figure 21.6.



Figure 21.6 Adding a Submit button to a DHTML page.

The code that the Page Designer adds to our Web page for the Submit button looks like this:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>

<META content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1" http-equiv=Content-Type>
<META content=' "MSHTML 4.72.3007.2"' name=GENERATOR>
</HEAD>

<BODY>
<P>Here's some text!</P>

<P>Here's an image:</P>

<P>&nbsp;</P>
<P><IMG id=Image1 name=Image1
src="c:\vbbb\dhtml\image1.bmp"
style="LEFT: 40px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 107px; Z-INDEX: 100">
</P>

<P>&nbsp;</P>
<P>Here's a Submit button:
<INPUT id=SubmitButton1 name=SubmitButton1 style="LEFT: 17px;
POSITION: absolute; TOP: 170px; Z-INDEX: 103" type=submit
value=SubmitButton1>
</P>
```

To add code to the Submit button, you double-click it in the Page Designer just as you would when creating a standard Visual Basic. Doing so adds an event handler procedure to the page’s code:

```
Private Function SubmitButton1_onclick() As Boolean
```

```
End Function
```

For example, here's how we display a message box when the user clicks the Submit button:

```
Private Function SubmitButton1_onclick() As Boolean
    MsgBox "You clicked the Submit button!"
End Function
```

Adding ActiveX Controls To DHTML Pages

You can add ActiveX controls to DHTML pages just as you can to standard Visual Basic projects—just use the Project|Components menu item to open the Components dialog box and select the ActiveX control you want to add. Then just add that control to the Web page as you would in any standard Visual Basic project.

For example, we add a standard HTML button and a progress bar ActiveX control to the Web page, as shown in Figure 21.7.



Figure 21.7 Adding ActiveX controls to DHTML pages.

Here's the HTML code that the Page Designer adds to our Web page when we add those two new controls—the progress bar and the HTML button:

```
<P>Here's an ActiveX control:</P>
<OBJECT classid=CLSID:35053A22-8589-11D1-B16A-00C0F0283628 height=24
id=ProgressBar1
style="HEIGHT: 24px; LEFT: 127px; POSITION: absolute; TOP: 248px; WIDTH:
100px; Z-INDEX: 101"
width=100>
    <PARAM NAME="_ExtentX" VALUE=264>
    <PARAM NAME="_ExtentY" VALUE="635">
    <PARAM NAME="_Version" VALUE="393216">
    <PARAM NAME="BorderStyle" VALUE="0">
    <PARAM NAME="Appearance" VALUE="1">
    <PARAM NAME="MousePointer" VALUE="0">
    <PARAM NAME="Enabled" VALUE="1">
    <PARAM NAME="OLEDropMode" VALUE="0">
    <PARAM NAME="Min" VALUE="0">
    <PARAM NAME="Max" VALUE="100">
    <PARAM NAME="Orientation" VALUE="0">
    <PARAM NAME="Scrolling" VALUE="0">
</OBJECT>
<INPUT id=Button1 name=Button1 style="LEFT: 26px; POSITION: absolute; TOP:
248px; Z-INDEX: 102" type=button value="Click Me!">
```

Now we're free to use the HTML button to set the progress bar's value like this, just as you would in a standard Visual Basic project:

```
Private Function Button1_onclick() As Boolean
    ProgressBar1.Value = 20
End Function
```

Adding Tables To DHTML Pages

One popular HTML element is the table. Tables can present data in tabular form, but savvy programmers use them for much more. They use tables to format the elements in a Web page, those elements at locations they want by inserting them into a table—for example, you can add and format image placement with hidden tables. Although the dynamic `HTML` `position` attribute helps you place HTML elements where you want them, that attribute is not yet supported by all brows

To add a table to a DHTML page, you use the Table Operation drop-down box that you see in Figure 21.8. To insert a table, use the Insert Table entry in that drop-down box. When you do, the Page Designer adds a 2x2 table to the page. To add a row, select the Insert Row entry in the Table C drop-down box; to add a column, select the Insert Column entry.



Figure 21.8 Adding a table to a DHTML page.

As an example, we've added a 3x3 table to our Web page, as shown in Figure 21.8. To add text in the table, just position the insertion point there with the mouse and type the text you want.

Adding Hyperlinks To DHTML Pages

To add a hyperlink to a DHTML page, you use the Hyperlink tool in the DHTML Page Designer's toolbox, which is the sixth tool down on the right in Figure 21.9. When you double-click the Hyperlink tool, a hyperlink object is added to the Web page with the caption Hyperlink1. Move that hyperlink to the location you want in the Web page, and change its caption to the text you want simply by changing the text in the hyperlink object directly (just click the hyperlink and type the text as you would in a word processor).



Figure 21.9 Adding a hyperlink to a Web page.

To set the hyperlink's target URL, right-click the hyperlink and select the Properties item in the menu that opens. Next, place the target URL in the box labeled link, as shown in Figure 21.10.



Figure 21.10 Setting hyperlink properties.

TIP: Note that you can also set a frame as the target of a hyperlink, which means that the target URL will be loaded into the specified frame. See Figure 21.10.

Here's the code that the Page Designer adds to our Web page for our hyperlink:

<P>Here's a hyperlink:

```
<A href="http://www.microsoft.com"
id=Hyperlink11 name=Hyperlink1>Microsoft
</A>
</P>
```

That's it—to run the Web page, select the DHTMLProject Properties item in the Project menu, click the Debugging tab in the Properties pages that open. Make sure the Start Component option button is clicked and the start component is set to DHTMLPage1, then click on OK. Now select the Start item in the Run menu to open the Web page, as shown in Figure 21.11. As you can see, our new Web page was a success.



Figure 21.11 Our completed Web page.

Using MAPI Controls To Support Email

The testing department is calling again. How about adding email capabilities to your new program SuperDuperDataCrunch? Why? you ask. If nothing else, they say, it can provide an automatic way for the user to register their new program. Hmm, you think—how do you add email to a program?

You use the MAPI (Messaging Applications Programming Interface) controls that come with Visual Basic.

WARNING! Note that if you want to run a program that uses the MAPI controls, make sure that you have the 32-bit MAPI DLLs installed properly or you may not be able to perform simple MAPI functions such as SignOn. For example, on Windows 95, you must install Mail during the operating system setup or install it separately from the control panel to correctly use MAPI functions or MAPI custom controls from Visual Basic. The Visual Basic email support is based on the Microsoft Exchange utility that's installed with Windows (and usually appears on the Windows desktop as the Inbox icon). If you want to use the MAPI controls, make sure your desktop Inbox is configured to send and receive email.

There are two MAPI controls, the MAPISession control and the MAPIMessages control. To add these controls to a program, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the entry labeled Microsoft MAPI Controls, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
4. Step 3 adds both the MAPISession control and the MAPIMessages control to the Visual Basic toolbox. You'll need to add one of each of those controls to your program to use email.

You use the MAPISession control to open a new MAPI session, which is the first step to sending and receiving email, and the MAPIMessages control lets you compose, send, and examine downloaded messages.

The MAPIMessages control is the primary control you use in your code (the MAPISession control is only used to connect to the Inbox). To work with the MAPIMessages control, you keep track of t

buffers, the read buffer and the compose buffer

The read buffer is made up of a set of messages read from a user's Inbox. The `MsgIndex` property is used to address individual messages within this set, starting with a value of 0 for the first message and incrementing by one for each message. You get the actual email's text from the control's `MsgNoteText` property.

Messages can be created or edited in the compose buffer. The compose buffer is automatically the active buffer when the `MsgIndex` property is set to -1.

The MAPIMessages control's message set is built with the `Fetch` method. This set includes all messages of type specified by the `FetchMsgType` property and is sorted as indicated by the `FetchSorted` property. (Previously read messages can be included or left out of the message set by the `FetchUnreadOnly` property.) Messages in the read buffer can't be altered by the user but can be copied to the compose buffer for alteration using the `Copy` method.

You can see an overview of the MAPIMessages control's methods in Table 21.1, and its properties appear in Table 21.2. We'll put this control to work in the following few topics.

Table 21.1MAPIMessages control email methods.

Function	Method
Get email from Inbox	Fetch
Send email with Compose box	Send
Send email	Send
Save a message	Save
Copy a message for reply	Copy
Compose email	Compose
Reply to a message	Reply
Reply to all messages	ReplyAll
Forward a message	Forward
Delete a message	Delete
Show address book	Show
Show message details	Show
Resolve recipient name	ResolveName
Delete recipient	Delete
Delete attachment	Delete

Table 21.2MAPIMessages control properties.

Property	Description
Action	Obsolete. Performs actions now performed by methods.
AddressCaption	Sets caption of the address book.
AddressEditFieldCount	Sets which address book edit controls to display.
AddressLabel	Sets appearance of "To" edit control in address book.
AddressModifiable	Sets whether address book can be modified by user.
AttachmentCount	Gets total number of attachments for current message.
AttachmentIndex	Sets currently indexed attachment.
AttachmentName	Sets name of the currently indexed attachment.
AttachmentPathName	Sets full path name of the currently indexed attachment.
AttachmentPosition	Sets position of indexed attachment in the message body.
AttachmentType	Sets type of currently indexed attachment.
FetchSorted	Sets message order when creating message set.
MsgConversationID	Sets the conversation thread identification value.
MsgCount	Gets the total number of messages in message set.
MsgDateReceived	Gets date on which current indexed message was received.

MsgID	Gets string identifier of current message.
MsgIndex	Sets index number of current message.
MsgNoteText	Text of current message.
MsgOrigAddress	Gets email address of originator of current message.
MsgOrigDisplayName	Gets originator's name for current message.
MsgRead	True or False depending on whether message has been read.
MsgReceiptRequested	Indicates if return receipt is requested for message.
MsgSent	Indicates if message has been sent to mail server.
MsgSubject	Message's subject.
MsgType	Sets type of current message.

Sending Email From Visual Basic

Now that you've added the MAPISession and MAPIMessages control to your program (see the previous topic), how do you use them to send email? Let's see an example. Create a new stand project, and add the MAPISession and MAPIMessages controls. Next add two command buttons, Command1 and Command2, with the captions "Send email" and "Read email". We'll enable Command1, the Send Email button, in this topic, and Command2, the Read Email button, in the next topic. In addition, we'll need some place to display the email we've read, so add a text box, Text1, to the form, setting its MultiLine property to True and its ScrollBars property to Both (3).

When users click Command1, they want to send email, and we let them do so by using the MAPIMessages control's Compose and Send methods. Our first task, however, is to start a new MAPI session, and we do that with the MAPISession control's SignOn method, after indicating that we don't want to download email by setting its DownLoadMail property to False:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MAPISession1.DownLoadMail = False
    MAPISession1.SignOn
    ...
End Sub
```

After signing on to the Microsoft Exchange email system, we set the MAPIMessages control's SessionID to the MAPISession control's SessionID property to initialize MAPIMessages1

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MAPISession1.DownLoadMail = False
    MAPISession1.SignOn
    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPISession1.SessionID
End Sub
```

...

To compose a new email message, we have to set ~~MAPI~~Messages1control's MsgIndex property to -1 and call its Compose method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MAPISession1.DownLoadMail = False
    MAPISession1.SignOn
    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPISession1.SessionID
    MAPIMessages1.MsgIndex = -1
    MAPIMessages1.Compose
    ...

```

This code displays the Compose dialog box, as shown in Figure 21.12. Users can enter the email address they want to use in that dialog box and click the Send button (the Send button displays an envelope in Figure 21.12) to send their email.



Figure 21.12 Composing an email message.

When the user is done composing the email, we send it with ~~MAPI~~Messages1control's Send method and sign off the MAPI session using ~~MAPI~~Session1control's SignOff method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    MAPISession1.DownLoadMail = False
    MAPISession1.SignOn

    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPISession1.SessionID
    MAPIMessages1.MsgIndex = -1
    MAPIMessages1.Compose
    MAPIMessages1.Send True

    MAPISession1.SignOff
End Sub
```

That's it—we've sent our email. What actually happens is that the program sends the new email message to the user's Outbox (which is also opened when you open the Inbox), and the Outbox is usually set to send email automatically. In fact, that's the way the Microsoft Exchange usually works by logging into the mail server you've specified at regular intervals. When it logs in, it sends the messages waiting in the Outbox and reads any waiting email, placing it in the Inbox. (In fact, now that we've sent our email, we'll see how to read that email in the next topic.)

The code for this example, email.frm version 1 (version 2, which is located on this book's accompanying CD-ROM, will let the user read email as well), appears in Listing 21.3.

Listing 21.3 email.frm version 1

```
VERSION 6.00
Object = "{20C62CAE-15DA-101B-B9A8-444553540000}\#1.1#0"; "MSMAPI32.OCX"
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption          =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight    =   3405
    ClientLeft      =   60
    ClientTop       =   345
    ClientWidth     =   5970
    LinkTopic       =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight     =   3405
    ScaleWidth      =   5970
    StartUpPosition =   3  'Windows Default
    Begin VB.TextBox Text1
        Height         =   2175
        Left           =   240
        MultiLine      =   -1  'True
        ScrollBars     =   3  'Both
        TabIndex       =   2
        Top            =   120
        Width          =   5415
    End
    Begin VB.CommandButton Command2
        Caption         =   "Read email"
        Height          =   495
        Left            =   360
        TabIndex        =   1
        Top             =   2520
        Width           =   1215
    End
    Begin MSMAPI.MAPISession MAPISession1
        Left            =   1440
        Top             =   1920
        _ExtentX        =   1005
        _ExtentY        =   1005
        _Version        =   393216
        DownloadMail    =   -1  'True
        LogonUI         =   -1  'True
        NewSession      =   0  'False
    End
    Begin MSMAPI.MAPIMessages MAPIMessages1
        Left            =   2640
        Top             =   1920
        _ExtentX        =   1005
        _ExtentY        =   1005
    End
End
```

```
_Version      = 393216
AddressEditFieldCount= 1
AddressModifiable= 0  'False
AddressResolveUI= 0  'False
FetchSorted    = 0  'False
FetchUnreadOnly = 0  'False
End
Begin VB.CommandButton Command1
    Caption      = "Send email"
    Height       = 495
    Left         = 4320
    TabIndex     = 0
    Top          = 2520
    Width        = 1215
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Private Sub Command1_Click()

    MAPISession1.DownLoadMail = False
    MAPISession1.SignOn

    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPISession1.SessionID
    MAPIMessages1.MsgIndex = -1
    MAPIMessages1.Compose
    MAPIMessages1.Send True

    MAPISession1.SignOff
End Sub
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    MAPISession1.DownLoadMail = True
    MAPISession1.SignOn

    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPISession1.SessionID
    MAPIMessages1.Fetch

    MAPIMessages1.MsgIndex = 0
    Text1.Text = MAPIMessages1.MsgNoteText

    MAPISession1.SignOff
End Sub
```

Reading Email In Visual Basic

Now that we've seen how to send email (see the previous topic), how do you read email? You set the MAPI Session control's DownLoadMail property to True.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll download any waiting email into the user's Inbox and then display the first message in a text box. We'll use the program we started in the previous topic and code we need to the Read Email button's event handler. First, we set the MAPI Session control's DownLoadMail property to True, then we use that control's SignOn method to start the MAPI session and download any waiting email into the Inbox:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    MAPI_Session1.DownLoadMail = True
    MAPI_Session1.SignOn
    ...

```

Now that the email is in the Inbox, how do we reach it? We use the MAPIMessages control's SessionID property to create a message set (you can find out how many messages are in the SessionCount property). To do that, we first set the MAPIMessages control's SessionID property to the MAPI Session control's SessionID property and then use its Fetch:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    MAPI_Session1.DownLoadMail = True
    MAPI_Session1.SignOn

    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPI_Session1.SessionID
    MAPIMessages1.Fetch
    ...

```

Next, we display the text of the first email message now in the Inbox by setting the MAPIMessages control's MsgIndex to 0 and using the MsgNoteText property. (Note that in a real email program, you should check to make sure there really are messages waiting here, but in this case we assume there because we just sent one using the Send Email button—note that if your system takes significant time to deliver email messages, you might have to alter this code.) Finally we sign off the MAPI session:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    MAPI_Session1.DownLoadMail = True
    MAPI_Session1.SignOn

    MAPIMessages1.SessionID = MAPI_Session1.SessionID
    MAPIMessages1.Fetch

    MAPIMessages1.MsgIndex = 0
    Text1.Text = MAPIMessages1.MsgNoteText

    MAPI_Session1.SignOff

```

End Sub

And that's it—we can now receive email, as you see in Figure 21.13. Now we're sending and receiving email with Visual Basic.

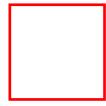


Figure 21.13 Receiving email.

The code for this example is located in the email folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Using The Internet Transfer Control For FTP And HTTP Operations

You use the Microsoft Internet transfer control to handle FTP and HTTP operations in Visual Basic. Using the HTTP protocol, you can connect to World Wide Web servers to retrieve HTML documents. With the FTP protocol, you can log on to FTP servers to download and upload files.

The `UserName` and `Password` properties allow you to log on to private servers that require authentication. Otherwise, you can connect to public FTP servers and download files. The common FTP commands, such as `CD` and `GET`, are supported through the `Execute` method. You can keep track of the Internet transfer control's operations with the `StillExecuting` property. If this property is True, the control is working on a transfer and will not respond to other actions.

The Internet transfer control performs asynchronous Internet transfers, so besides the `StillExecuting` property, Microsoft has given the control a `StateChanged` event. In this event's handler procedure, you are kept up-to-date on what's going on with the Internet transfer control:

```
Private Sub object_StateChanged(ByVal State As Integer)
```

```
End Sub
```

The `State` argument can take these values:

- `icNone`—0; no state to report.
- `icHostResolvingHost`—1; the control is looking up the IP address of the specified host computer.
- `icHostResolved`—2; the control successfully found the IP address of the specified host computer.
- `icConnecting`—3; the control is connecting to the host computer.
- `icConnected`—4; the control successfully connected to the host computer.
- `icRequesting`—5; the control is sending a request to the host computer.
- `icRequestSent`—6; the control successfully sent the request.
- `icReceivingResponse`—7; the control is receiving a response from the host computer.
- `icResponseReceived`—8; the control successfully received a response from the host computer.
- `icDisconnecting`—9; the control is disconnecting from the host computer.
- `icDisconnected`—10; the control successfully disconnected from the host computer.
- `icError`—11; an error occurred in communicating with the host computer.
- `icResponseCompleted`—12; the request has completed and all data has been received.

Note that when a request is finished, the `State` argument in the `StateChanged` event will be set to `icResponseCompleted`, and it's safe to execute another command with the Internet transfer control.

To add an Internet transfer control to a program, follow these steps:

1. Select the `Project|Components` menu item.
2. Click the `Controls` tab in the Components dialog box that opens.

3. Select the entry labeled Microsoft Internet Transfer Control.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box to add the Microsoft Internet Transfer Control tool to the toolbox.
5. Double-click the Microsoft Internet Transfer Control tool to the toolbox and add that control to your form. This control is invisible at runtime, so its size and location are not important.
6. Add the code you want to use with the control to your program.

When you start an FTP or HTTP operation with the Internet transfer control, the control will connect to the Internet (using the user's system defaults) if the computer is not already connected.

TIP: For a complete FTP file upload example, including using the `StateChange` event, see our online application registration example in Chapter 30.

Now that we've added an Internet transfer control to a program, we'll put that control to work in the next few topics.

Handling FTP Operations In Visual Basic

There are two ways of handling FTP operations with the Microsoft Internet transfer control: using the `OpenUrl` method and using the `Execute` method. The `OpenUrl` method lets you download files and uses the FTP protocol if the URL you specify begins with `ftp://` (for example, "<ftp://ftp.microsoft.com/file.txt>"); here's how you use `OpenUrl`:

```
InetControl.OpenUrl url [, datatype]
```

The `datatype` argument can either be `String` (the default) for text data or `ByteArray` for binary data. If you use `String`, `OpenUrl` returns a string; if you use `ByteArray`, `OpenUrl` returns a byte array.

The `Execute` method can execute FTP commands. Here's how you use `Execute`:

```
InetControl.Execute url, operation, data, requestHeaders
```

Here's what the arguments to `Execute` mean:

- `url`—String that specifies the URL to which the control should connect. If no URL is specified here, the URL specified in the `URL` property will be used.
- `operation`—String that specifies the type of operation to be executed.
- `data`—String that specifies the data for operations.
- `requestHeaders`—String that specifies additional headers to be sent from the remote server. The format for these headers is header name: header value vbCrLf.

The FTP commands that you can use with the Internet transfer control and what they do appear in Table 21.3.

Handling HTTP Operations In Visual Basic

There are two ways of handling HTTP operations with the Microsoft Internet transfer control: using the `OpenUrl` method and using the `Execute` method. The `OpenUrl` method lets you download files and uses the HTTP protocol if the URL you specify begins with `http://` (for example, "<http://www.microsoft.com>"). Here's how you use `OpenUrl`:

```
InetControl.OpenUrl url [, datatype]
```

The `datatype` argument can either be `String` (the default) for text data or `ByteArray` for binary data. If you use `String`, `OpenUrl` returns a string; if you use `ByteArray`, `OpenUrl` returns a byte array.

The `Execute` method can execute HTTP commands. Here's how you use `Execute`:

```
InetControl.Execute url, operation, data, requestHeaders
```

The arguments for the `Execute` method are as follows:

- `url`—String that specifies the URL to which the control should connect. If no URL is specified here, the URL specified in the `URL` property will be used.
- `operation`—String that specifies the type of operation to be executed.
- `data`—String that specifies the data for operations.
- `requestHeaders`—String that specifies additional headers to be sent from the remote server. The format for these is header name: header value `vbCrLf`.

The HTTP commands that you can use with the Internet transfer control and what they do appear in Table 21.4.

Table 21.4 HTTP commands of the Internet transfer control `Execute` method.

Command	Description
GET	Gets the file named in URL (for example, <code>Execute "http://www.server.com/index.htm", "GET"</code>)
HEAD	Gets headers of file given in URL property (for example, <code>Execute , "HEAD"</code>)
POST	Provides additional data to support request to host (for example, <code>Execute , "POST", strFormData</code>)
PUT	Replaces data at URL (for example, <code>Execute , "PUT", "new.htm"</code>)

Let's see an example. Add an Internet transfer control `inet1`, to a program, as well as a text box `Text1`. We'll download the HTML of the Microsoft Visual Basic Web page using the HTTP protocol and display that page in the text box, so `Text1`'s `MultiLine` property to True and its `Scrollbars` property to Both (3). In addition, we can download a binary file—an image file, for example—using the `Http` protocol and store that image file on disk. To let the user perform these actions, add two buttons to the program: `Command1`, with the caption "Read HTML", and `Command2`, with the caption "Read binary".

When the user click Command1, the Read HTML button, we just download the raw HTML of the Microsoft Visual Basic Web page and display it in the text `Text1` using the `OpenURL` method (note that by the time you read this, Microsoft may possibly have renamed this file):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text1.Text = _
        Inet1.OpenURL( "http://www.microsoft.com/vbasic/default.htm" )
End Sub
```

When the user click Command2, the Read Binary button, we can read a binary file using the HTTP protocol. In this case, we'll read a GIF file from the Microsoft Web site, `home.gif`, which just disp the word "Microsoft". We load that image file into a byte array `bytData`:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim bytData() As Byte

    bytData() = Inet1.OpenURL(_
    "http://www.microsoft.com/library/images/gifs/toolbar/home.gif", _
    icByteArray)
    ...
End Sub
```

All that's left is to write the file out to disk and to inform the user that the operation is complete, \ we do with a message box:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Dim bytData() As Byte

    bytData() = Inet1.OpenURL(_
    "http://www.microsoft.com/library/images/gifs/toolbar/home.gif", _
    icByteArray)

    Open "c:\vbbb\http\home.gif" For Binary Access Write As #1
    Put #1, , bytData()
    Close #1

    MsgBox "home.gif downloaded"
End Sub
```

That's it. Run the program now, as shown in Figure 21.16. When you click the Read HTML button, the program downloads the Microsoft Visual Basic Web page and displays it in the text box, as shown in Figure 21.16. When you click the Read Binary button, the program downloads the `home.gif` file to disk. Our http program is a success.



Figure 21.16 Downloading a Web page's HTML using the HTTP protocol.

The code for this example is located in the http folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Chapter 22

Multimedia

If you need an immediate solution to:

- Using The Animation Control
- Adding A Multimedia Control To A Program
- Setting The Device Type And Opening The Device
- Setting File Information And Opening Files
- Setting A Multimedia Control's Time Format
- Controlling The Multimedia Control From Code
- Stopping And Pausing The Multimedia Control
- Displaying The Multimedia Control's Status
- Closing The Multimedia Control
- Playing CDs From Your CD-ROM Drive
- Playing WAV Files
- Playing MID Files
- Playing AVI Files
- Playing MPG Files
- Keeping Track Of Multimedia Command Execution Using Notification
- Handling Multimedia Errors
- Stepping A Multimedia Control Forward Or Backward Frame By Frame
- Starting From And To In A Multimedia Control
- Making The Multimedia Control Wait
- Multimedia Without Multimedia Controls

In Depth

Multimedia has become a hot topic in recent years, and rightly so. Programs with interactive sound, images, and animations can be very effective—more so than static ones—and computers are increasingly well equipped to handle multimedia.

What do we mean by multimedia? For the purposes of this chapter, multimedia refers to supporting sound and animated images. There are endless devices and programs to work with multimedia, from simple programs that can display simple animations to VCR and videodisc players and advanced MIDI devices. Visual Basic provides a great deal of multimedia support, and that support is wrapped up in the multimedia control. This chapter is about the multimedia control, although we'll also see a few additional techniques, such as using the animation control and interacting with Windows directly to support multimedia.

The Multimedia MCI Control

The multimedia MCI control we'll use in Visual Basic manages the recording and playback of multimedia files on Media Control Interface (MCI) devices. This control issues commands to devices like audio boards, MIDI sequencers, CD-ROM drives, audio CD players, videodisc players, video recorder/players, and more. The multimedia control also lets you play WAV and MID sound files and display video files like AVI and MPG.

The actual control displays a bar of buttons, as shown in Figure 22.1. The buttons are named Previous, Next, Play, Pause, Back, Step, Stop, Record, and Eject, in that order. As you can see, the multimedia control is designed to let the user control multimedia presentations, rather than present them itself.



Figure 22.1 The Visual Basic multimedia control.

To use the multimedia control, your application should already have the MCI device open (and the appropriate buttons in the multimedia MCI control enabled) before the user chooses a button in the control. To make sure a device is open, you usually place the `Open` command in the `Form_Load` event.

Using The Multimedia Control From Code

The multimedia control can be visible or invisible at runtime, and if it's invisible, you can use it in code. If the control is visible, the user can click buttons to operate the control; if the control is invisible, you can use it from your program's code by using its `Command` property to execute Open, Play, Record, Close and other commands. In this way, you can play audio and display video (in controls like picture boxes) even though the user doesn't know you're using a multimedia control.

From code, you set various properties of the multimedia control, such as the time format the device uses, the file it is to open and play or record to, and other aspects, as we'll see in this chapter.

You can keep track of the multimedia control through two events: `Done` and the `StatusUpdate`. The `Done` event is fired to indicate that various multimedia operations are completed (if you have set the `ctrlNotify` property to True), and the `StatusUpdate` occurs when the status of the control changes (such as when the user clicks the Play button and the control begins playback). The `Done` event handler is passed a notification code that you can check, and in the `StatusUpdate` event handler, you can check the `ctrlMode` property to see if the control is playing, is paused, is stopped, and so forth. You can also redefine the buttons in a multimedia control in code if you want to by developing code for the control's button events, which occur when the user clicks a button.

TIP: When you create and distribute applications that use the multimedia MCI control, you should install and register the appropriate files in the customer's Microsoft Windows System (or System32 directory). The Package and Deployment Wizard included with Visual Basic (see Chapter 30) provides tools to help you write setup programs that install your applications correctly.

That's it for the overview of multimedia for the moment. It's time to turn to our Immediate Solution.

Immediate Solutions

Using The Animation Control

Visual Basic comes with an animation control, and we'll start our multimedia operations by taking a look at this control. This control is smaller than the multimedia control and takes up fewer system resources. It's very restricted. The animation control can only play AVI files, and those without sound at that. In addition, the animation control can display only uncompressed AVI files or AVI files that have been compressed using run-length encoding (RLE).

WARNING! The animation control is pretty picky: if you try to load an AVI file into an animation control that includes sound data or that is in a format not supported by the control, an error (error 35752) is returned.

This control is useful because you can play AVI files in it directly, without using another control (for example, the multimedia control uses a picture box to play animations). The control allows you to create buttons or other objects that display animations when clicked. For example, the File Copy progress bar in Windows 95 uses an animation control; as you've probably seen, pieces of paper "fly" from one folder to another while the copy operation is in progress, and that's supported with an animation control.

Here's how you add an animation control to a program:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the entry labeled Microsoft Windows Common Controls-2, and click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
4. The previous steps add the Animation Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox; draw the control you like in your program.

To display an AVI file, you use the control's `Open` method to open that file, passing the file name as the single argument to `Open`. After you've opened the file to play, you can use the `Play` method to play the file:

```
AnimationControl1.Play ([ varRepeatCount ] [,varStartFrame] [,varEndFrame])
```

You can also set the control's `AutoPlay` property to True to make the control play the AVI file as soon as it opens that file. Here's an example in which we set `AutoPlay` to True for an animation control named `Animation1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Animation1.AutoPlay = True
    ...
End Sub
```

Then we open and play an AVI file, `animation3.avi`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Animation1.AutoPlay = True
    Animation1.Open "animation3.avi"
End Sub
```

The animation control is relatively lightweight, so you can add it to your programs without taking up system resources, but the limits of this control are severe. If you want to play AVI files with sound or types of files, look into the multimedia control topics coming up in this chapter.

Adding A Multimedia Control To A Program

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Users of your program DuperDataCrunch get pretty tense around tax time while computing their taxes using that program. Wouldn't it be great if your program could play some soothing music in the background? Well, you say dubiously, if you really v

You can let your program play sounds (WAV files, MID files, or even the CD in the computer's CD d using the multimedia control, and we'll see how to add that control to a program now. Just follow the steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the entry labeled Microsoft Multimedia Control, and click on OK to close the Compor dialog box.
4. The previous steps add the Multimedia Control tool to the Visual Basic toolbox; draw the cc as you like in your program.
5. The multimedia control can be oriented horizontally or vertically—to orient it horizontally (th default), set the control's Orientation property to mciOrientHorz (0); to orient it vertically, set it to mciOrientVertical .
6. Set the control's DeviceType, FileName, and TimeFormat properties as needed—see the following topics in this chapter.

Now that you've added a multimedia control to your program, see the following few topics on how to configure and use it in code.

Setting The Device Type And Opening The Device

Now that you've added a multimedia control, how do you indicate what kind of multimedia device yo to open? And how do you open it? Does opening the device make the buttons in the multimedia cor active?

You can use the control's DeviceType property to set the type of device you want to work with. You set property when you're opening an actual device such as a CD drive, or when the name of the file you working with (see the following topic, "Setting File Information") does not indicate the format of the multimedia data. Note that you do not need to set DeviceType property when playing files in recognize file formats like WAV, MID, AVI, MPG, and so on.

Here are the different strings you can set DeviceType property to, one for all the device types the multimedia control supports:

- AVIVideo
- CDAudio
- DAT
- DigitalVideo
- MMMovie

- Other
- Overlay
- Scanner
- Sequencer
- VCR
- Videodisc
- WaveAudio

You set the `DeviceType` property before opening the device with `Open` command. To use the `Open` command, you set the multimedia control's `Command` property to "Open".

Let's see an example. Here, we open a music CD in the computer's CD-ROM drive, connecting it to multimedia control `MMControl1` when in the `Form_Load` event and then opening that device:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.TimeFormat = MCI_FORMAT_TMSF
    MMControl1.DeviceType = "CDAudio"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

If there is a CD in the CD drive, the multimedia control's buttons become active after executing this code and the user can play the CD (if your version of Windows has AutoPlay enabled, you might have to press down the shift key while inserting the CD to make sure the Windows CD player does not come up automatically).

Setting File Information And Opening Files

The Testing Department is calling again. The new multimedia control you've added to your program looks really fine—but how about that music you were going to play?

Besides physical devices like MIDI devices and CD players, the multimedia control can play files on disk, such as AVI, MPG, WAV, and MID files. If you want to play or record a file in a recognized multimedia format, you can specify the file name the control is to work with without specifying the device type in the `DeviceType` property (the control gets the data format from the file name's extension).

To specify which file you want to use with a multimedia control, you set that control's `FileName` property, and to open that file (and so make the multimedia control's buttons active so the user can work with the file), you set the control's `Command` property to "Open". Let's see an example. Here, we set the multimedia control to work with the file C:\windows\media\ding.wav (which comes with Windows) and then open that file, making the buttons of the multimedia control `MMControl1` active:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.Notify = False
    MMControl1.Wait = True
    MMControl1.Shareable = False
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\WINDOWS\MEDIA\DING.WAV"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

When the multimedia control's buttons are active, users can work with the file—for example, to play the file, they click the Play button.

Setting A Multimedia Control's Time Format

Now that we're working with animations and sound playback, timing information becomes important, and we can set the time format (such as milliseconds) used in the multimedia control to specify timing information. In particular, the multimedia control supports these properties that access or send information in the current time format: `From`, `Length`, `Position`, `Start`, `To`, `TrackLength`, and `TrackPosition`.

To set the time format for a multimedia control, use the `TimeFormat` property; this property indicates the timing units used by the control. This property can take these values:

- `mciFormatMilliseconds`—0; milliseconds are stored as a 4-byte integer variable.
- `mciFormatHms`—1; hours, minutes, and seconds are packed into a 4-byte integer. From least significant byte to most significant byte, the individual data values are as follows: Hours/Minutes/Seconds/Unused.
- `mciFormatMsf`—2; minutes, seconds, and frames are packed into a 4-byte integer. From least significant byte to most significant byte, the individual data values are as follows: Minutes/Seconds/ Frames/Unused.
- `mciFormatFrames`—3; frames are stored as a 4-byte integer variable.

- mciFormatSmpte24—4; 24-frame SMPTE packs the following values in a 4-byte variable from least significant byte to most significant byte: Hours/ Minutes/Seconds/ Frames. SMF (Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers) time is an absolute time format expressed in hours, minutes, seconds, and frames. The standard SMPTE division types are 24, 25, and 30 frames per second.
- mciFormatSmpte25—5; 25-frame SMPTE packs data into the 4-byte variable in the same order as 24-frame SMPTE.
- mciFormatSmpte30—6; 30-frame SMPTE packs data into the 4-byte variable in the same order as 24-frame SMPTE.
- mciFormatSmpte30Drop—7; 30-drop-frame SMPTE packs data into the 4-byte variable in the same order as 24-frame SMPTE.
- mciFormatBytes—8; bytes are stored as a 4-byte integer variable.
- mciFormatSamples—9; samples are stored as a 4-byte integer variable.
- mciFormatTmsf—10; tracks, minutes, seconds, and frames are packed in the 4-byte variable from least significant byte to most significant byte: Tracks/Minutes/Seconds/Frames.

WARNING! As you might expect, not all formats are supported by every device. In practice, this means that if you try to set an invalid format, it is ignored.

Let's see an example. Here, we set the time format in a multimedia control that opens the file C:\windows\media\canyon.mid (which comes with Windows) to FormatMilliseconds:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.TimeFormat = mciFormatMilliseconds
    MMControl1.FileName = "c:\windows\media\canyon.mid"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Then we can report where we are in the MID file with ~~the~~ StatusUpdate event (see “Displaying the Multimedia Control’s Status” later in this chapter) and Position property, which holds the time that’s elapsed from the beginning of the file, displaying that time in a ~~label~~ Label1.

You should know that although we’ve set the time to milliseconds, it’s actually only reported in ticks of a second (probably because the computer Timer event can only occur 18.2 times a second), so display the current time location in the MID file this way:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Label1.Caption = Str(MMControl1.Position / 10)
End Sub
```

Controlling The Multimedia Control From Code

The multimedia control displays buttons for the user to control what's going on with a particular multimedia device, but there are times when you don't want the control to be visible. For example, you may want to play sounds under program control using the multimedia control, in which case you want your multimedia control to be visible. In such a case, you should issue commands to the control directly using its `Command` property.

TIP: If you really just want to play sounds under program control, you can avoid the heavy drain on system resources by interfacing directly to Windows to play sounds instead of using a multimedia control. See "Multimedia Without Multimedia Controls" near the end of this chapter.

Every action that you can perform with a multimedia control you can perform with the `Command` property. Here are the possible commands that you set (as text strings) on the `Command` property:

- Open—Opens a device using the `MCI_OPEN` command. Uses the `DeviceType` and/or `FileName` properties.
- Close—Closes a device using the `MCI_CLOSE` command.
- Play—Plays a device using the `MCI_PLAY` command. Can use the `From` and `To` properties if they are set.
- Pause—Pauses playing or recording using the `MCI_PAUSE` command. If executed while the device is paused, tries to resume playing or recording using the `MCI_RESUME` command.
- Stop—Stops playing or recording using the `MCI_STOP` command.
- Back—Steps backward using the `MCI_STEP` command. Uses the `Frames` property.
- Step—Steps forward using the `MCI_STEP` command. Uses the `Frames` property.
- Prev—Goes to the beginning of the current track using the `Seek` command. If executed within three seconds of the previous `Prev` command, it goes to the beginning of the previous track or the beginning of the first track if at the first track.
- Next—Goes to the beginning of the next track (if at the last track, it goes to beginning of last track) using the `Seek` command.
- Seek—if not playing, seeks a position using the `MCI_SEEK` command. If playing, continues playing from the given position using the `MCI_PLAY` command. Can use the `To` property if set.
- Record—Records using the `MCI_RECORD` command. Can use the `From` and `To` properties if they are set.
- Eject—Ejects media using the `MCI_SET` command.
- Sound—Plays a sound using the `MCI_SOUND` command. Uses the `FileName` property.
- Save—Saves an open file using the `MCI_SAVE` command. Uses the `FileName` property.

Let's see an example. Here, we open and play the file C:\windows\media\ding.wav (which comes with Windows) when a form loads, using the `Open` and `Play` commands:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.Notify = False
```

```

MMControl1.Wait = True
MMControl1.Shareable = False

MMControl1.FileName = "C:\WINDOWS\MEDIA\DING.WAV"
MMControl1.Command = "Open"
MMControl1.Command = "Play"

```

End Sub

If you don't want the multimedia control in this code, MMControl1, to be visible, set its `Visible` property to False.

Stopping And Pausing The Multimedia Control

The Testing Department is calling again. Beethoven's Fifth Symphony is really fine, but does your program have to play it continuously? You explain that you like Beethoven. Fine, they say, add Stop and Pause buttons to your program.

Although the multimedia control has Stop and Pause buttons, those buttons won't be accessible if you're running the control from code and have made the control invisible. To stop the control, you set its `Command` property to "Stop" this way:

```

Private Sub Stop_Click()
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
End Sub

```

To pause the control, you set `Command` property to "Pause":

```

Private Sub Pause_Click()
    MMControl1.Command = "Pause"
End Sub

```

Executing this line of code if the control is paused makes it try to resume again, but note that most devices don't support pause and resume. For example, if you're using the computer's CD-ROM to play music and try to pause it, you'll find that most drives stop and the multimedia control's `Command` property (see the next topic in this chapter) will be `mcimodeStop`, not `mcimodePause`. If you try to resume the CD-ROM music with another `Play` command, nothing will happen—you have to use the `Play` command to restart playback.

Displaying The Multimedia Control's Status

The Testing Department is calling again. Your multimedia program SuperDuperSounds4U is terrific, but how about a control panel that shows the current operation—play, stop, pause, and so on? I think, how can you do that?

You can use the `Mode` property to determine the current operation in a multimedia control. Here are the possible values for that property:

- `mciModeNotOpen`—524; device is not open
- `mciModeStop`—525; device is stopped
- `mciModePlay`—526; device is playing
- `mciModeRecord`—527; device is recording
- `mciModeSeek`—528; device is seeking
- `mciModePause`—529; device is paused
- `mciModeReady`—530; device is ready

As you can see, the `Mode` property tells you what's going on with the multimedia control—but where do you use the `Mode` property? You usually use that property in the multimedia control's `StatusUpdateEvent` handler. The `StatusUpdateEvent` occurs at regular intervals as specified in the `UpdateInterval` property (this property is set in milliseconds). You can take advantage of the `StatusUpdateEvent` to keep the user apprised of the status of multimedia operations.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll display the status of a multimedia control, `MMControl1`, in a label control, `Label1`. We start with a `Select Case` statement in the `StatusUpdateEvent` handler, which uses the control's `Mode` property as the selection criterion:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Select Case MMControl1.Mode
    ...
    End Select

End Sub
```

Now we check for the various possible multimedia operations by setting up case statements for possible values of the `Mode` property:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Select Case MMControl1.Mode

        Case mciModeReady

        Case mciModeStop

        Case mciModeSeek
```

```

Case mciModePlay

Case mciModeRecord

Case mciModePause

End Select

End Sub

```

Next we set up a string strMode, to hold the current multimedia mode, and display that mode in a label control in the program, label1, this way:

```

Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Dim strMode As String
    strMode = ""

Select Case MMControl1.Mode

    Case mciModeReady
        strMode = "Ready."

    Case mciModeStop
        strMode = "Stopped."

    Case mciModeSeek
        strMode = "Seeking."

    Case mciModePlay
        strMode = "Playing."

    Case mciModeRecord
        strMode = "Recording."

    Case mciModePause
        strMode = "Paused."

End Select

Label1.Caption = strMode

End Sub

```

Adding this code to a multimedia control program, such as the CD player program in Figure 22.1 (the program is developed later in this chapter), indicates to the user the current status of that control.



Figure 22.2 Showing the status of the multimedia control.

You can also display the time that's elapsed in the current operation. Let's see an example. Here the time format in a multimedia control that opens the file C:\windows\media\canyon.mid (which comes with Windows) to mciFormatMilliseconds:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.TimeFormat = mciFormatMilliseconds
    MMControl1.FileName = "c:\windows\media\canyon.mid"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Then we can report where we are in the MID file with the StatusUpdate event and the Position property, which holds the time that's elapsed from the beginning of the file, displaying that time in label1. Although we've set the time to milliseconds, it's actually only reported in tenths of a second (probably because the computer timer event can only occur 18.2 times a second), so we display the current time in the MID file this way:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Label1.Caption = Str(MMControl1.Position / 10)
End Sub
```

Closing The Multimedia Control

When you're finished with the multimedia control, you usually close it, typically in the Form_Unload event. Here, for example, we close the multimedia control when the form unloads using the command:

```
Private Sub Form_Unload (Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
End Sub
```

In fact, it's a good idea to execute a Stop command before closing the control, because closing the control does not necessarily stop operations like audio playback (for example, your CD will keep playing even if you exit your multimedia control CD player program, unless you explicitly stop the CD):

```
Private Sub Form_Unload (Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
End Sub
```

TIP: If you're recording data with the multimedia control Record command, you should use the Save

command before closing the control to save the recorded data to disk (in the file whose name you've specified in the `FileName` property).

Playing CDs From Your CD-ROM Drive

The Testing Department is calling again. Where's that program to play CDs from the user's CD-drive? On its way, you say.

It's easy to create a program that will play music CDs in your computer's CD-ROM drive. Just add a multimedia control `MMControl1`, to a form, and a label `Label1`, which we'll use to display the player's current operation (for example, playing, stopped, and so on).

When the form loads, we just set the multimedia control's `DeviceType` property to `CDAudio` and open the device:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.DeviceType = "CDAudio"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

That's all it takes. Now the user can play the CD in the computer's CD-ROM drive by using the buttons in the multimedia control.

Besides playing the CD, we can display what the multimedia control is doing in `Label1`, by adding this code to the multimedia control's `StatusUpdate` event handler:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Dim strMode As String
    strMode = ""

    Select Case MMControl1.Mode

        Case mciModeReady
            strMode = "Ready."

        Case mciModeStop
            strMode = "Stopped."

        Case mciModeSeek
            strMode = "Seeking."

        Case mciModePlay
            strMode = "Playing."

        Case mciModeRecord
            strMode = "Recording."

        Case mciModePause
            strMode = "Paused."
```

```

End Select

Label1.Caption = strMode

End Sub

```

Finally, we stop the CD (if it hasn't already been stopped) and close the multimedia control when the form is unloaded:

```

Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
End Sub

```

TIP: You can even eject a CD with the multimedia control's **Eject** command, if the CD drive supports that command.

The program is ready to run—run it now as shown in Figure 22.3 (we've added a few more label captions like "CD Player" and so on in the program there). If you have loaded a music CD in your CD-ROM drive, you should be able to play that CD using the CD player program.

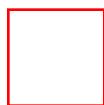


Figure 22.3 Our Visual Basic CD player.

The code for this program is located in the **cdplayer** folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: If you don't have a sound card in your computer (and so no speakers) but still want to play CDs with our CD player program, don't despair just yet—most modern CD-ROM drives come with an earphone jack in the front. Just plug your headphones right in.

Playing WAV Files

The Testing Department is calling again. How's that program that plays WAV sound files coming along? Coming right up, you say.

It's easy to write a program to play WAV files using the multimedia control—just set the control's **FileName** property to the name of the file to open, and open it with the **Open** command. The multimedia control's buttons will become active at that point, and users can play the file as they see fit, or, if you've hidden the multimedia control, you can use the **Command** property to play the file with the **Play** command.

TIP: If you really just want to play sounds under program control, you can avoid the heavy drain on system resources by interfacing directly to Windows to play sounds instead of using a multimedia control. See "Multimedia Without Multimedia Controls" near the end of this chapter.

Let's see an example. Here, we set the file to work with to C:\windows\media\ding.wav (which comes with Windows) and then open that file, making the buttons of the multimedia control MMControl1 , active when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\WINDOWS\MEDIA\DING.WAV"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Now the user can play the WAV file using the multimedia control's buttons.

Besides playing the WAV file, we can display what the multimedia control is doing in allabel1, by adding this code to the multimedia control's StatusUpdate event handler:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Dim strMode As String
    strMode = ""

    Select Case MMControl1.Mode

        Case mciModeReady
            strMode = "Ready."

        Case mciModeStop
            strMode = "Stopped."

        Case mciModeSeek
            strMode = "Seeking."

        Case mciModePlay
            strMode = "Playing."

        Case mciModeRecord
            strMode = "Recording."

        Case mciModePause
            strMode = "Paused."

    End Select

    Label1.Caption = strMode

End Sub
```

Finally, we stop playback (if it hasn't already been stopped), and close the multimedia control when the form is unloaded:

```
Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
End Sub
```

That's all we need. Now run the program as shown in Figure 22.4 (we've added a label to the project to display a caption). When you click the Play button, the WAV file will be played. Our program is successful.

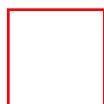


Figure 22.4 Playing WAV files from Visual Basic.

The code for this example is located in the wavplayer folder on this book's accompanying CD-R.

Playing MID Files

Can you play MID format sound files from Visual Basic? You sure can, using the multimedia control.

TIP: If you really just want to play sounds under program control, you can avoid the heavy drain on system resources by interfacing directly to Windows to play sounds instead of using a multimedia control. See "Multimedia Without Multimedia Controls" near the end of this chapter.

For example, we can play the C:\windows\media\canyon.mid file that comes with Windows. To do that, add a multimedia control, MMControl1, to a form, as well as a label, Label1, in which we can display the multimedia control's current operation (such as playing, stopped, and so on).

When the form first loads, we can open the canyon.mid file this way in the multimedia control:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\windows\media\canyon.mid"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Besides playing the MID file, we can display what the multimedia control is doing in allabel1, by adding this code to the multimedia control's StatusUpdate event handler:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Dim strMode As String
    strMode = ""
    Select Case MMControl1.Mode

        Case mciModeReady
            strMode = "Ready."

        Case mciModeStop
            strMode = "Stopped."

        Case mciModeSeek
            strMode = "Seeking."

        Case mciModePlay
            strMode = "Playing."

        Case mciModeRecord
            strMode = "Recording."

        Case mciModePause
            strMode = "Paused."

    End Select
End Sub
```

```
Label1.Caption = strMode
```

```
End Sub
```

Finally, we stop playback (if it hasn't already been stopped) and close the multimedia control when the form is unloaded:

```
Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
```

```
End Sub
```

That's all we need. Now run the program as shown in Figure 22.5 (we've added a label to the program to display a caption). When you click the Play button, the MID file will be played. Our program works as we've designed it.



Figure 22.5 Playing MID files from Visual Basic.

The code for this example is located in the midplayer folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Playing AVI Files

The Testing Department is calling again. The company's glorious founder has made an inspirational speech, which they've been lucky enough to capture in an AVI file. Oh good, you say. They ask your program play that speech on demand?

You can play AVI files with the multimedia control. That control just displays a bar of control buttons however—how can you display images? You can connect the multimedia control to a picture box control by setting the multimedia control's hWndDisplay property to the picture box's hWnd property (the hWnd property is a handle to the window that actually makes up the picture box's display).

Let's see how this works in an example. Here, we'll play the AVI file C:\windows\help\scroll.avi, which comes with Windows as one of the Windows tutorial animations—this one shows how to scroll bars. Add a picture box, Picture1, to your form, as well as a multimedia control, MMControl1, and a label, Label1, in which we'll display the status of the multimedia control.

When the form first loads, we'll open scroll.avi and connect the multimedia control to the picture box Picture1 this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\windows\help\scroll.avi"
    MMControl1.hWndDisplay = Picture1(hWnd)
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Now when users click the buttons in the multimedia control, they can play, stop, and restart the file as they like. The animation appears in the picture ~~Picture1~~ Picture1.

Besides playing the AVI file, we can display what the multimedia control is doing (for example, playing, stopped, and so on) in a label ~~Label1~~, by adding this code to the multimedia control's StatusUpdate event handler:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
    Dim strMode As String
    strMode = ""

    Select Case MMControl1.Mode

        Case mciModeReady
            strMode = "Ready."

        Case mciModeStop
            strMode = "Stopped."

        Case mciModeSeek
            strMode = "Seeking."

        Case mciModePlay
            strMode = "Playing."

        Case mciModeRecord
            strMode = "Recording."

        Case mciModePause
            strMode = "Paused."

    End Select

    Label1.Caption = strMode
End Sub
```

Finally, we stop and close the multimedia control when the form is unloaded:

```
Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
End Sub
```

That's it—now run the program as shown in Figure 22.6. As you can see in that figure, the program plays the AVI in the picture box. Our multimedia animation example is a success.

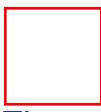


Figure 22.6 Playing AVI files with the multimedia control.

The code for this example is located in the aviplayer folder on this book's accompanying CD-R/C

Playing MPG Files

The Testing Department is calling again. Your new program SuperDuperMultimedia4Us is terrific—but how about playing MPG format files? No problem, you say.

You can play MPG format files with the multimedia control. How do you display the images in the MPG file? You connect the multimedia control to a picture box using the picturebox1.hWnd property, placing that handle in the multimedia control's hWndDisplay property. Opening the file itself makes the buttons in the multimedia control active.

Let's see an example; here, we'll play an MPG file named, say, demo.mpg. Add a multimedia control, MMControl1, to a program now, as well as a picture box, Picture1, in which we'll play demo.mpg. We also add a label, label1, to display the multimedia control's status.

When the form loads, we load the multimedia control's FileName property with the name of the file we want to open:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "c:\demo.mpg"
    ...
End Sub
```

Next we connect the picture box's hWnd property to the multimedia control's hWndDisplay property to connect the picture box to the multimedia control:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "c:\demo.mpg"
    MMControl1(hWndDisplay = Picture1(hWnd
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, we open the file, which enables the buttons in the multimedia control:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "c:\demo.mpg"
    MMControl1(hWndDisplay = Picture1(hWnd
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Now when users click the buttons in the multimedia control, they can play, stop, and restart the file as they like. The animation appears in the picture box, Picture1.

Besides playing the MPG file, we can display what the multimedia control is doing (for example, playing, stopped, and so forth) in a label, label1, by adding this code to the multimedia control's StatusUpdate event handler:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_StatusUpdate()
```

```

Dim strMode As String
strMode = ""

Select Case MMControl1.Mode

    Case mciModeReady
        strMode = "Ready."

    Case mciModeStop
        strMode = "Stopped."

    Case mciModeSeek
        strMode = "Seeking."

    Case mciModePlay
        strMode = "Playing."

    Case mciModeRecord
        strMode = "Recording."

    Case mciModePause
        strMode = "Paused."

End Select

Label1.Caption = strMode

End Sub

```

Finally, we stop and close the multimedia control when the form is unloaded:

```

Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    MMControl1.Command = "Stop"
    MMControl1.Command = "Close"
End Sub

```

That's it—multimedia controls can play files in this format just as they can play AVI files; our MP player is a success. The code for this example is located in the mpgplayer folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Keeping Track Of Multimedia Command Execution Using Notification

You can gain more control over the multimedia control using the `Notify` property and the `Done` event. When you set a multimedia control's `Notify` property to True, you'll get notification when the control finishes executing commands. How does it notify you? It generates a `Done` event.

In fact, when you set `Notify` to True, your program is only supposed to be notified when the

multimedia control is finished with the next command, but in ~~fact~~ the events appear to be generated for every command as long ~~as~~ Notify is True.

Let's see an example. Here, we add a multimedia control MMControl1 , to a program and set its Notify property to True when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\WINDOWS\MEDIA\DING.WAV"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
    MMControl1.Notify = True
End Sub
```

When the control finishes executing a command, it fires the Done event, which we catch in an event handler procedure:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_Done(NotifyCode As Integer)
End Sub
```

Here, the event handler procedure is passed a notification ~~Notify~~ code, which can take these values:

- mciSuccessful—1; command completed successfully
- mciSuperseded—2; command was superseded by another command
- mciAborted—4; command was aborted by the user
- mciFailure—8; command failed

In this example, we just display a message box, indicating to the user that the multimedia command finished:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_Done(NotifyCode As Integer)
    MsgBox "Finished the multimedia command."
End Sub
```

Using multimedia notification, you can coordinate your multimedia actions—for example, if you have two multimedia controls, you might not want to start playing sounds with one until the other is finished playing its own sounds.

Handling Multimedia Errors

Multimedia operations, which can involve working with files and physical devices, are inherently error-prone. To handle multimedia errors, you can use the `Error` and `ErrorMessages` properties. The multimedia control errors returned in the `Error` property and the error string IDs returned in the `ErrorMessages` property appear in Table 22.1.

Table 22.1 The multimedia control errors and error string IDs.

MCI Error Strings	MCI Error Numbers
MCIERR_BASE	256
MCIERR_INVALID_DEVICE_ID	257
MCIERR_UNRECOGNIZED_KEYWORD	259
MCIERR_UNRECOGNIZED_COMMAND	261
MCIERR_HARDWARE	262
MCIERR_INVALID_DEVICE_NAME	263
MCIERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY	264
MCIERR_DEVICE_OPEN	265
MCIERR_CANNOT_LOAD_DRIVER	266
MCIERR_MISSING_COMMAND_STRING	267
MCIERR_PARAM_OVERFLOW	268
MCIERR_MISSING_STRING_ARGUMENT	269
MCIERR_BAD_INTEGER	270
MCIERR_PARSER_INTERNAL	271
MCIERR_DRIVER_INTERNAL	272
MCIERR_MISSING_PARAMETER	273
MCIERR_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION	274
MCIERR_FILE_NOT_FOUND	275
MCIERR_DEVICE_NOT_READY	276
MCIERR_INTERNAL	277
MCIERR_DRIVER	278
MCIERR_CANNOT_USE_ALL	279
MCIERR_MULTIPLE	280
MCIERR_EXTENSION_NOT_FOUND	281
MCIERR_OUTOFRANGE	282
MCIERR_FLAGS_NOT_COMPATIBLE	283
MCIERR_FILE_NOT_SAVED	286
MCIERR_DEVICE_TYPE_REQUIRED	287

MCIERR_DEVICE_LOCKED	288
MCIERR_DUPLICATE_ALIAS	289
MCIERR_BAD_CONSTANT	290
MCIERR_MUST_USE_SHAREABLE	291
MCIERR_MISSING_DEVICE_NAME	292
MCIERR_BAD_TIME_FORMAT	293
MCIERR_NO_CLOSING_QUOTE	294
MCIERR_DUPLICATE_FLAGS	295
MCIERR_INVALID_FILE	296
MCIERR_NULL_PARAMETER_BLOCK	297
MCIERR_UNNAMED_RESOURCE	298
MCIERR_NEWQUIRES_ALIAS	299
MCIERR_NOTIFY_ON_AUTO_OPEN	300
MCIERR_NO_ELEMENT_ALLOWED	301
MCIERR_NONAPPLICABLE_FUNCTION	302
MCIERR_ILLEGAL_FOR_AUTO_OPEN	303
MCIERR_FILENAME_REQUIRED	304
MCIERR_EXTRA_CHARACTERS	305
MCIERR_DEVICE_NOT_INSTALLED	306
MCIERR_GET_CD	307
MCIERR_SET_CD	308
MCIERR_SET_DRIVE	309
MCIERR_DEVICE_LENGTH	310
MCIERR_DEVICE_ORD_LENGTH	311
MCIERR_NO_INTEGER	312
MCIERR_WAVE_OUTPUTSINUSE	320
MCIERR_WAVE_SETOPUTPUTINUSE	321
MCIERR_WAVE_INPUTSINUSE	323
MCIERR_WAVE_SETINPUTINUSE	324
MCIERR_WAVE_OUTPUTUNSPECIFIED	325
MCIERR_WAVE_INPUTUNSPECIFIED	326
MCIERR_WAVE_OUTPUTUNSUITABLE	327
MCIERR_WAVE_SETOPUTPUTUNSUITABLE	328
MCIERR_WAVE_INPUTUNSUITABLE	329
MCIERR_WAVE_SETINPUTUNSUITABLE	336

MCIERR_SEQ_DIV_INCOMPATIBLE	336
MCIERR_SEQ_PORT_INUSE	337
MCIERR_SEQ_PORT_NONEXISTENT	338
MCIERR_SEQ_PORT_MAPNODEVICE	339
MCIERR_SEQ_PORT_MISCERROR	340
MCIERR_SEQ_TIMER	341
MCIERR_SEQ_PORTUNSPECIFIED	342
MCIERR_SEQ_NOMIDIPRESENT	343
MCIERR_NO_WINDOW	346
MCIERR_CREATEWINDOW	347
MCIERR_FILE_READ	348
MCIERR_FILE_WRITE	349
MCIERR_CUSTOM_DRIVER_BASE	512

In addition, the multimedia control supports several trappable errors (which you can use with the Visual Basic On Error GoTo statement). These appear in Table 22.2.

Table 22.2 The multimedia control trappable errors.

Constant	Value	Description
mciInvalidProcedureCall	5	Invalid procedure call
mciInvalidPropertyValue	380	Invalid property value
mciSetNotSupported	383	Property is read-only
mciGetNotSupported	394	Property is write-only
mciInvalidObjectUse	425	Invalid object use
mciWrongClipboardFormat	461	Specified format doesn't match format of data
mciObjectLocked	672	DataObject formats list may not be cleared or expanded outside of the OLEStartDrag event
mciExpectedArgument	673	Expected at least one argument
mciRecursiveOleDrag	674	Illegal recursive invocation of OLE drag and drop
mciFormatNotByteArray	675	Non-intrinsic OLE drag-and-drop formats used with SetData require byte array data. GetData may return more bytes than were given to SetData
mciDataNotSetForFormat	676	Requested data was not supplied to the DataObject during the OLESetData event
mciCantCreateButton	30001	Can't create button
mciCantCreateTimer	30002	Can't create timer resource

mciUnsupportedFunction	30004	Unsupported function
------------------------	-------	----------------------

Let's see an example. Here, we set the **Notify** property of a multimedia control **MMControl1**, to True, then open a WAV file:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.Notify = True
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\WINDOWS\MEDIA\DING.WAV"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
    ...
End Sub
```

Then we add code to the **Done** event to display the error message for the current error, if there is one, using the **Error** and **ErrorMessage** properties:

```
Private Sub MMControl1_Done(NotifyCode As Integer)
    If MMControl1.Error <> 0 Then
        MsgBox MMControl1.ErrorMessage
    End If
End Sub
```

Now, if we execute an illegal command, we'll be notified of the fact. For example, we might try to eject the WAV file, which is an illegal multimedia operation:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.Notify = True
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\WINDOWS\MEDIA\DING.WAV"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
    MMControl1.Command = "Eject"
End Sub
```

In this case, we get the error message you see in Figure 22.7.



Figure 22.7 A multimedia control error message.

Stepping A Multimedia Control Forward Or Backward Frame By Frame

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program that plays the inspirational speech by the company's founder is a big hit—but can't you let the user move through it frame by frame for maximum impact? Hmm, you think, how do you do that?

You can use the **Step** and **Back** multimedia control commands to step through animations frame by frame. Each time you use these commands, you move forward or back by the number of frames specified in the **Frames** property (the default is 1). To check if a multimedia control is connected to a device that can step this way, check the **CanStep** property—if it's set to True, you can use **Step** and **Back** commands.

Let's see an example. We might connect a multimedia control, MMControl1, to a picture box, Picture1 this way so that it plays the file C:\windows\help\scroll.avi (which comes with Windows):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "C:\windows\help\scroll.avi"
    MMControl1.hWndDisplay = Picture1(hWnd)
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks a command button, Command1, we will advance MMControl1 by, say, five frames (after checking to make sure it can step):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    If MMControl1.CanStep Then
        MMControl1.Frames = 5
        MMControl1.Command = "Step"
    End If
End Sub
```

When the user clicks another button, Command2, we can step back five frames:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    If MMControl1.CanStep Then
        MMControl1.Frames = 5
        MMControl1.Command = "Back"
    End If
End Sub
```

That's it—now the user can step forwards and backwards in the animation.

Starting From And To In A Multimedia Control

The Testing Department is calling again. The sound file you play in the opening screen of your program, SuperDuperMultimedia4, is 10 minutes long. Yes, you say, but it's a good one. Can't you play just part of it? they ask.

You can specify the start and end point of play and record multimedia operations with the **From** and **To** properties. You set these properties in the same time format you've specified in the multimedia control's **TimeFormat** property (see “Setting a Multimedia Control's Time Format” earlier in this chapter).

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll just play the first 10 seconds of a MID file, C:\windows\media\canyon.mid, which comes with Windows. First, we open that file when the form first loads, using a multimedia control, MMControl1, and set the control's time format to **mciFormatMilliseconds**:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
```

```
MMControl1.TimeFormat = mciFormatMilliseconds  
MMControl1.FileName = "c:\windows\media\canyon.mid"  
MMControl1.Command = "Open"  
End Sub
```

Now, when the user clicks a command button like Command1, we play the first 10 seconds of the file like this (although we've set the control's time format to mciFormatMilliseconds, times in this format are actually measured in tenths of a second, which means that we set the From property to 100 for 10 seconds):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()  
    MMControl1.From = 0  
    MMControl1.To = 100  
    MMControl1.Command = "Play"  
End Sub
```

And that's it—now you can set the To and From locations in a multimedia file.

Making The Multimedia Control Wait

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling again. Users are flipping through your program too fast even waiting until the company's theme song finishes playing. Can't you do something about that?

You can set a multimedia control's `Wait` property to True (the default is False) if you want to make the control finish its current operation before continuing on to another. Note that this property is not available at design time.

Let's see an example; here, we open a file, C:\windows\media\canyon.mid, with a multimedia control `MMControl1`, and set its `Wait` property to True:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    MMControl1.FileName = "c:\windows\media\canyon.mid"
    MMControl1.Command = "Open"
    MMControl1.Wait = True
End Sub
```

Now when the user performs an operation with the control, such as playing the file, the control waits until that operation is complete before letting the user select another operation.

Multimedia Without Multimedia Controls

The Testing Department is calling again. The multimedia control in your program takes up more than 100K—can't you use something else? Hmm, you say, I'll look into it.

If you just want to play sounds, you can use the Windows API function `PlaySound`. Using this built-in function instead of a multimedia control can save you a lot of memory space. Let's see an example. Here, we'll play the Windows c:\windows\media\Tada.wav file (which comes with Windows) using `PlaySound`. First, we declare the `PlaySound` function in a program; here's how you `PlaySound`

```
Declare Function PlaySound Lib "winmm.dll" Alias "PlaySoundA" (ByVal _
    lpszName As String, ByVal hModule As Long, ByVal dwFlags As Long) _
    As Long
```

Declaring this function as `Private` lets us declare this in the (General) section of a form (without the `Private` keyword, we'd have to declare this function in a module):

```
Private Declare Function PlaySound Lib "winmm.dll" Alias _ _
    "PlaySoundA" (ByVal lpszName As String, ByVal hModule As Long, _ _
    ByVal dwFlags As Long) As Long
```

Now we can call `PlaySound` directly when the user clicks a command button `Command1`; here, we pass it a value of &H20000 to indicate that we're reading the sound from a file and ignore the function return value this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
```

```
    retVal = PlaySound( "c:\windows\media\Tada.wav" , 0& , &H20000 )
End Sub
```

Here are the flags you can use in the Flags parameter of the PlaySound function:

- SND_SYNC—&H0 (the default); play the sound synchronously
- SND_ASYNC—&H1; play the sound asynchronously
- SND_NODEFAULT—&H2; silence is not the default, if sound is not found
- SND_MEMORY—&H4; lpszName points to a memory file
- SND_ALIAS—&H10000; name is a win.ini [sounds] entry
- SND_FILENAME —&H20000; name is a file name
- SND_RESOURCE—&H40004; name is a resource name or atom
- SND_ALIAS_ID—&H110000; name is a win.ini [sounds] entry identifier
- SND_ALIAS_START—0; must be > 4096 to keep strings in same section of resource file
- SND_LOOP—&H8; loop the sound until next PlaySound
- SND_NOSTOP—&H10; don't stop any currently playing sound
- SND_NOWAIT—&H2000; don't wait if the driver is busy

And that's it—now we're playing sounds without multimedia controls.

TIP: For lots more information on interfacing directly to the Windows API, see the next chapter.

Chapter 23

Connecting To The Windows API And Visual C++

If you need an immediate solution to:

Getting Or Creating A Device Context (Including The Whole Screen)

Drawing Lines In A Device Context

Drawing Ellipses In A Device Context

Drawing Rectangles In A Device Context

Setting Drawing Colors And Styles (Using Pens)

Setting Drawing Modes (ROP2)

Handling The Mouse Outside Your Program's Window

Copying Bitmaps Between Device Contexts Quickly

Capturing Images From The Screen

Getting A Window Handle For Any Window On The Screen

Getting A Window's Text

Playing Sounds With API Functions

Allocating Memory And Storing Data

Reading Data From Memory And Deallocating Memory

Making A Window Topmost

Determining Free And Total Disk Space

Determining The Windows Directory

Connecting To Visual C++

In Depth

This is our chapter on connecting Visual Basic directly to the Windows Application Programming Interface (API) and to Visual C++. There are literally thousands of functions and subroutines waiting for us to use in Windows, and we can reach them with the techniques in this chapter. With these Windows procedures, you can do things you just can't do in Visual Basic any other way. For example, we'll see how to draw anywhere on the screen (including outside our program's window), capture the screen, capture the mouse (so we get all mouse events even when the mouse is outside our window), play sounds directly, allocate and use memory, make fast bitmap copies, interrogate other windows about their contents, determine free space on a disk drive, make a window "topmost" (so it stays on top of all other windows), and much more.

We can connect to the Windows API because the procedures that make up that API are in dynamic link libraries in the windows\system directory, and we can call them directly from those DLLs. Here's a list of the core Windows DLLs of the kind we'll be using in this chapter:

- Advapi32.dll—Advanced API Services library supporting numerous APIs including many security and Registry calls

- Comdlg32.dll—Common Dialog API library
- Gdi32.dll—Graphics Device Interface API library
- Kernel32.dll—Core Windows 32-bit base API support
- Lz32.dll—32-bit compression routines
- Mpr.dll—Multiple Provider Router library
- Netapi32.dll—32-bit Network API library
- Shell32.dll—32-bit Shell API library
- User32.dll—Library for user interface routines
- Version.dll—Version library
- Winmm.dll—Windows Multimedia library

Besides connecting our code to the Windows API, we'll also see how to connect our code to Visual C++. In fact, that process works much like connecting to the Windows API, because in order to call Visual C++ code, you place that code into a dynamic link library and then call it in the same way you call Windows API code.

So how do you actually connect code in a DLL to Visual Basic? We'll find out in the next section

Declaring And Using DLL Procedures In Visual Basic

Let's say you want to play sounds directly, without using the Visual Basic multimedia control. You can do that with the Windows API `PlaySound` function. To inform Visual Basic where to find this function (it's stored in the `winmm.dll` dynamic link library), what arguments it takes, and what arguments it returns, you declare that function like this in the (General) declarations section of a form:

```
Private Declare Function PlaySound Lib "winmm.dll" Alias _
    "PlaySoundA" (ByVal lpszName As String, ByVal hModule As Long,
    ByVal dwFlags As Long) As Long
```

Note that we've declared this function `Private` to be able to declare it in a form. If you omit the `Private` keyword, you must make declarations in a module. After you've declared the function, you're free to use it, like this where we play the file `C:\windows\media\Tada.wav` (which is one of the files that come with Windows):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    retVal = PlaySound("c:\windows\media\Tada.wav", 0&, &H20000)
End Sub
```

There are a number of points to notice here; because most Windows procedures are functions, we provide a way to handle the return value, which we do by storing it in the `retVal` variable shown in the preceding code. We'll discard most of these return values, but Visual Basic will give you an error unless you handle functions as we've done in the preceding code. For subroutines, which do not return a value, you use the `Call` keyword like this:

```
Call MoveMemory(hMemoryPointer, outbuffer, DataLength)
```

Now look at the declaration we've made `PlaySound`

```
Private Declare Function PlaySound Lib "winmm.dll" Alias _  
    "PlaySoundA" (ByVal lpszName As String, ByVal hModule As Long, _  
    ByVal dwFlags As Long) As Long
```

This declaration comes from a file that comes with Visual Basic (in the Common\tools\winapi directory) named win32api.txt, which we'll see more about in a minute. Here, that declaration indicates to Visual Basic that this function is to be found in the winmm.dll file (which is in the windows\sys directory).

The Alias clause, if there is one, gives the actual name of the Windows function. Here, what Visual Basic declares as `PlaySound` is actually the Windows function `PlaySoundA`. This function, `PlaySoundA`, uses ANSI text strings (as opposed to other versions `PlaySound` which can use other text formats like Unicode), which is what you need to work with Visual Basic. In general, you should use the Windows functions as declared in the win32api.txt file, because the designers of Visual Basic have already selected the functions that will work with Visual Basic in that file.

Handling C/C++ And Windows Data Types

Notice also that the `PlaySound` arguments that use Windows C/C++ Hungarian prefix notation (for instance, the prefix of the variable name `pszName`) means this variable is a long pointer to a zero-terminated string. You'll find a list of Hungarian notation prefixes in Table 23.1, which will let you unravel what the variable types in Windows API calls really are. The argument `PlaySound` is also passed with the `ByVal` keyword. What does this mean?

Table 23.1 Windows C/C++ Hungarian notation.

Prefix	Meaning
a	array
b	bool (int)
by	unsigned char (byte)
c	char
cb	count of bytes
cr	color reference value
cx, cy	short (count of x, y length)
dw	unsigned long (dword)
fn	function
h	handle
l	integer
m_	data member of a class
n	short or int
np	near pointer
p	pointer
l	long
lp	long pointer
s	string
sz	string terminated with a zero
tm	text metric
w	unsigned int (word)
x, y	short (x or y coordinate)

The standard Windows calling convention is actually the Pascal calling convention, which is not the same as the Visual Basic calling convention. When you pass a variable to a procedure in Visual Basic, Visual Basic passes a reference to the variable, and the called procedure then uses that reference to read (and possibly change) the value in the passed variable. That process is called `passing arguments by reference`. On the other hand, when you pass variables to the Windows API, you should often pass the variable directly, not a reference to the variable. That process is called `passing arguments by value`. You specify which way to pass variables using the `ByRef` and `ByVal` keywords.

As you can see, there are a few interface issues that we have to face when connecting to the Windows

Take a look at the first argument `PlaySound`. This is a long C/C++ pointer to a zero-terminate string buffer—how do we construct one of those in Visual Basic, which doesn't even use pointers? It turns out that all we have to do is to pass a standard Visual Basic string for this argument, as we've done when we used `PlaySound` in Visual Basic:

```
retval = PlaySound( "c:\windows\media\Tada.wav" , 0& , &H20000 )
```

In fact, you can handle the C/C++ data types needed when you use the Windows API by using Visual Basic data types, as shown in Table 23.2. It may look complex, but don't worry—we'll get practical experience passing variables using the conversions in Table 23.2 in the examples throughout this chapter. It's easier than you think—for example, when you need to pass a long integer variable to the Windows API, you just use a Visual Basic long variable, passing it by value.

Table 23.2C/C++ and Visual Basic variable types.

C/C++ Type	Passed As
handle	ByVal Long
int	ByVal Integer
long	ByVal Long
lpoint	ByRef Integer
lplong	ByRef Long
lpstr	ByVal String
lpsz	ByVal String
lpvoid	ByRef Any

Sometimes, a Windows API procedure takes an argument of a Windows-defined type. For example, the `MoveToEx` function, which moves the current drawing position (we'll see this function in this chapter), takes an argument of type `POINTAPI`:

```
Private Declare Function MoveToEx Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, ByVal x _  
As Long, ByVal y As Long, lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long
```

You'll find the declarations of types like `POINTAPI` in the `win32api.txt` file, and you can copy them and put them in a module in your own program (data types need to be declared in a module):

```
Type POINTAPI  
    x As Long  
    y As Long  
End Type
```

Now you're free to use that type in your Visual Basic programs like this:

```
Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI  
  
ptPoint.x = 0  
ptPoint.y = 0
```

```
lngRetVal = MoveToEx(intHandle, intX, intY, ptPoint)
```

In this way, you can handle the data types and data structures needed by Windows procedures. We'll experience with this throughout the chapter.

Now that we've gotten an overview of how to connect to the Windows API and Visual C++ through dynamic link libraries, the next question is, what's in those DLLs for us to use?

NOTE: Depending on your version of Windows, you may have to use longs for handles instead of integers. If you get overflows when assigning handles to integers, switch to longs.

What's Available In The Windows API?

You'll find the procedures, constants, and types used in the Windows API in the file win32api.txt. You can open that file in a text editor like the Windows WordPad and copy and paste the declarations you need into your Visual Basic program, as we'll do in this chapter. However, the win32api.txt file only includes the raw declarations for procedures, constants, and types, but it doesn't tell you what all the variables mean. To get reference information on the Windows API set, refer to the Microsoft Win32 Software Development Kit which, depending on your version of Visual Basic, may be included on the Microsoft Developer Network Library CD.

You can also use the Visual Basic API Viewer add-in tool to work with win32api.txt. This tool appears in Visual Basic's Add-Ins menu (if it doesn't appear in your Add-Ins menu, you can add the API Viewer to Visual Basic with the Add-Ins menu's Add-In Manager item). You can open win32api.txt in the API Viewer, as in Figure 23.1.



Figure 23.1 The Visual Basic API Viewer.

The API Viewer makes it easy to work with the procedures in the Windows API and add them to your Visual Basic program. To add a declaration to your program, just select the procedure you want to add, set its declaration to Public or Private with the option buttons in the API Viewer, click the Add button to add it to the Selected Items box, and click the Insert button to add those items to your program.

That's it for the overview of connecting to Windows and Visual C++. We've seen how the process works in overview, now it's time to turn to our Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Getting Or Creating A Device Context (Including The Whole Screen)

Before you can draw with the Windows API graphics functions, you need a device context. Visual Basic control picture boxes have `hDC` property, which holds their device context, but you can also get device contexts for any window.

To get a device context for a window, you can `GetDC`, which returns a handle to a device context, or 0 if unsuccessful:

```
Declare Function GetDC Lib "user32" Alias "GetDC" (ByVal hwnd As Long)_
As Long
```

Here's the parameter for `GetDC`:

- `hwnd`—Handle to the window you want a device context for.

You can also get a device context for a particular device with `CreateDC` function, which returns a handle to a device context, or 0 if unsuccessful:

```
Declare Function CreateDC Lib "gdi32" Alias "CreateDCA" (ByVal _  
lpszDriverName As String, ByVal lpszDeviceName As String, ByVal _  
lpszOutput As String, lpInitData As DEVMODE) As Long
```

Here are the parameters for `CreateDC`:

- `lpszDriverName`—String that specifies the file name (without extension) of the device driver (for example, “EPSON”).
- `lpszDeviceName`—String that specifies the name of the specific device to be supported (for example, “Epson LQ-80”). The `lpszDeviceName` parameter is used if the module supports more than one device.
- `lpszOutput`—String that specifies the file or device name for the physical output medium (file or output port).
- `lpInitData`—A `DEVMODE` structure containing device-specific initialization data for the device driver. The `WindowsDocumentProperties` function retrieves this structure filled in for a given device. The `lpInitData` parameter must be `NULL` if the device driver is to use the default initialization (if any) specified by the user through the Control Panel.

This function, `CreateDC`, may seem a little abstract, but it has one very powerful use—you can get a device context for the entire screen using this function, which means you can then use Windows functions to draw anywhere in the screen. To get a device context for the screen, you declare the `DEVMODE` type, as declared in `win32api.txt`, in a module:

```
Type DEVMODE
    dmDeviceName As String * CCHDEVICENAME
    dmSpecVersion As Integer
    dmDriverVersion As Integer
    dmSize As Integer
    dmDriverExtra As Integer
    dmFields As Long
    dmOrientation As Integer
    dmPaperSize As Integer
    dmPaperLength As Integer
    dmPaperWidth As Integer
```

```

dmScale As Integer
dmCopies As Integer
dmDefaultSource As Integer
dmPrintQuality As Integer
dmColor As Integer
dmDuplex As Integer
dmYResolution As Integer
dmTTOption As Integer
dmCollate As Integer
dmFormName As String * CCHFORMNAME
dmUnusedPadding As Integer
dmBitsPerPel As Integer
dmPelsWidth As Long
dmPelsHeight As Long
dmDisplayFlags As Long
dmDisplayFrequency As Long

```

End Type

Next, you pass the string "DISPLAY" as the device type to CreateDC to get a device context for the entire screen, a do here when a form loads:

```

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim devDevMode As DEVMODE
    Dim intHandleDisplay As Integer

    intHandleDisplay = CreateDC("DISPLAY", 0&, 0&, devDevMode)
End Sub

```

Now you can draw anywhere in the screen, using the screen device context and the Windows API drawing fun the next topics in this chapter).

TIP: When you're done with a device context, you can delete it and reclaim its memory with the DeleteDC function.

Drawing Lines In A Device Context

Now that you have a device context (see the previous topic), how do you draw in it? There are many, many draw functions in the Windows API. For example, you can use the LineTo function to draw lines. This function draws a line from the current drawing position to the position you specify. You set the current drawing position with the MoveToEx function:

```
Declare Function MoveToEx Lib "gdi32" Alias "MoveToEx" (ByVal hdc As _  
Long, ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long, lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to MoveToEx mean:

- hdc—The device context to draw in
- x—The x-coordinate of the new position
- y—The y-coordinate of the new position
- lpPoint—POINTAPI variable which will be filled with the old location

After setting the current drawing position, you use LineTo to draw a line to a new position:

```
Declare Function LineTo Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, ByVal x As _
```

```
Long, ByVal y As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments mean:

- hdc—The device context to draw in
- x—The x-coordinate of the end of the line
- y—The y-coordinate of the end of the line

Both MoveToEx and LineTo return non-zero values if successful.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll draw a line in a picture box. We start by adding a module to a program and define the POINTAPI type that MoveToEx needs:

```
Type POINTAPI
    x As Long
    y As Long
End Type
```

Next, we declare MoveToEx and LineTo as Private in the form's (General) section:

```
Private Declare Function MoveToEx Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
    ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long, lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long

Private Declare Function LineTo Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
    ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long) As Long
```

Add a picture box to the form now Picture1, and a command button Command1; when the user clicks the command button, we can draw a line:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI

    retval = MoveToEx(Picture1.hdc, 20, 20, ptPoint)
    retval = LineTo(Picture1.hdc, 100, 50)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 23.2. Now we're drawing lines with the Windows API.



Figure 23.2 Drawing lines with the Windows API.

Drawing Ellipses In A Device Context

You draw ellipses in the Windows API with the `Ellipse` function:

```
Declare Function Ellipse Lib "gdi32" Alias "Ellipse" (ByVal      hdc As _
Long, ByVal      X1 As Long, ByVal      Y1 As Long, ByVal      X2 As Long, ByVal      _
Y2 As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments mean:

- `hdc`—The device context to draw in
- `X1`—The x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the ellipse's bounding rectangle
- `Y1`—The y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the ellipse's bounding rectangle
- `X2`—The x-coordinate of the lower-right corner of the ellipse's bounding rectangle
- `Y2`—The y-coordinate of the lower-right corner of the ellipse's bounding rectangle

Let's see an example. Here, we can draw an ellipse in a picture box's device context by ~~Elliptics~~^{Ellipses} ~~Private~~^{Elliptics} in a form:

```
Private Declare Function Ellipse Lib "gdi32" Alias "Ellipse" (ByVal hdc _  
As Long, ByVal X1 As Long, ByVal Y1 As Long, ByVal X2 As Long, _  
ByVal Y2 As Long) As Long
```

Then we draw the ellipse in a picture box `Picture1`, when the user clicks a command button `Command1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()  
    retval = Ellipse(Picture1.hdc, 10, 10, 160, 70)  
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 23.3. Now we're drawing ellipses with the Windows API functions.



Figure 23.3 Drawing ellipses with the Windows API.

Drawing Rectangles In A Device Context

You draw rectangles in the Windows API with the `Rectangle` function:

```
Public Declare Function Rectangle Lib "gdi32" Alias "Rectangle" (ByVal      _
hdc As Long, ByVal      X1 As Long, ByVal      Y1 As Long, ByVal      X2 As Long, _
ByVal Y2 As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments in this function mean:

- `hdc`—The device context to draw in
- `X1`—The x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangle
- `Y1`—The y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangle
- `X2`—The x-coordinate of the lower-right corner of the rectangle
- `Y2`—The y-coordinate of the lower-right corner of the rectangle

Let's see an example. Here, we'll draw a rectangle in a picture box `Picture1`, when the user clicks a command button, `Command1`. We declare `Rectangle` in the form as ~~Private~~^{Rectangle}:

```
Private Declare Function Rectangle Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
    ByVal X1 As Long, ByVal Y1 As Long, ByVal X2 As Long, ByVal Y2 As _
    Long) As Long
```

Then we're free to draw our rectangle, like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    retval = Rectangle(Picture1.hdc, 10, 10, 160, 70)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 23.4. Now we're drawing rectangles with the Windows API functions.



Figure 23.4 Drawing rectangles with the Windows API.

Setting Drawing Colors And Styles (Using Pens)

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. The figures you're drawing with the Windows API are nice, but they really wanted was a dotted blue ellipse. Can you create one?

Yes, you can, using device context pens. A pen sets the drawing color and style for the device context it's loaded in. You create a pen with CreatePen.

```
Declare Function CreatePen Lib "gdi32" Alias "CreatePen" (ByVal_
    nPenStyle As Long, ByVal           nWidth As Long, ByVal       crColor As Long) _
```

As Long

Here's what the arguments to this function mean:

- nPenStyle—The style for the pen. Here are the possibilities: PS_SOLID(0), PS_DASH(1), PS_DOT(2), PS_DASHDOT(3), PS_DASHDOTDOT(4), PS_NULL(5), PS_INSIDEFRAME(6), PS_USERSTYLE(7), PS_ALTERNATE(8), and PS_STYLE_MASK(&HF).
- nWidth—Specifies the width of the pen. Note that if this is not 1, the pen will draw solid lines only.
- crColor—An RGB color for the pen.

To install the new pen in a device context, you use SelectObject, which you use to install graphics objects like pens and brushes in device context:

```
Private Declare Function SelectObject Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
    ByVal hObject As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to that function mean:

- hdc—The device context to install the object in
- hObject—The handle to the object to install

This function returns the handle of the device context object you're replacing. Let's see an example in which we'll replace that dotted blue ellipse in a picture box Picture1, when the user clicks a command button Command1. We add the declarations we'll need in the program in the form's (General) section:

```
Private Declare Function CreatePen Lib "gdi32" (ByVal nPenStyle As Long, _
    ByVal nWidth As Long, ByVal crColor As Long) As Long
Private Const PS_SOLID = 0
Private Const PS_DASH = 1
Private Const PS_DOT = 2
```

```
Private Const PS_DASHDOT = 3
Private Const PS_DASHDOTDOT = 4
Private Const PS_NULL = 5
Private Const PS_INSIDEFRAME = 6
Private Const PS_USERSTYLE = 7
Private Const PS_ALTERNATE = 8
Private Const PS_STYLE_MASK = &HF
Private Declare Function SelectObject Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
    ByVal hObject As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function Ellipse Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
    ByVal X1 As Long, ByVal Y1 As Long, ByVal X2 As Long, ByVal Y2 As _
    Long) As Long
```

Next, we create the new pen when the user clicks the command `Command1`, saving the pen's handle `hPen`. Note that we specify the pen should be dotted by passing `PS_DOT` constant, and we can use the Visual Basic `RGB` function to set colors:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim hPen As Long

    hPen = CreatePen(PS_DOT, 1, RGB(0, 0, 255))
    ...

```

Next, we install that pen in the device context of the picture `Picture1`, using `SelectObject`

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim hPen As Long

    hPen = CreatePen(PS_DOT, 1, RGB(0, 0, 255))
    retval = SelectObject(Picture1.hdc, hPen)
    ...

```

Finally, we draw the dotted blue ellipse:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim hPen As Long

    hPen = CreatePen(PS_DOT, 1, RGB(0, 0, 255))
    retval = SelectObject(Picture1.hdc, hPen)
    retval = Ellipse(Picture1.hdc, 10, 10, 160, 70)
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 23.5. Now we can set the color and style in Window API drawing operations.



Figure 23.5 Drawing a dotted blue ellipse with Windows API functions.

TIP: Besides pens, you can also ~~brushes~~ to fill figures in when you use a device context. To create a brush, you use the CreateBrush function.

The code for this example is located in the dottedblue folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Setting Drawing Modes (ROP2)

Besides setting what color and style to draw with, you can specify how a pen draws in a device context by the device context's binary raster operation ROP2 mode. For example, if you want to draw using the inverse screen color at each point, you can set the ROP2 mode ~~R2_INVERSE~~ **R2_NOT**. The available ROP2 modes appear in Table 23.3—take a look at that table to see what kinds of drawing effects you can create.

Table 23.3 ROP2 modes.

ROP2 Mode	Meaning
R2_BLACK (= 1)	Pixel is always black
R2_COPYPEN (= 13)	Pixel is the pen color
R2_MASKNOTPEN (= 12)	Pixel = (NOT pen) AND screen pixel
R2_MASKPEN (= 9)	Pixel = pen AND screen pixel
R2_MASKPENNOT (= 5)	Pixel = (NOT screen pixel) AND pen
R2_MERGENOTPEN (= 12)	Pixel = (NOT pen) OR screen pixel
R2_MERGEPPEN (= 15)	Pixel = pen OR screen pixel
R2_MERGEPPENNOT (= 14)	Pixel = (NOT screen pixel) OR pen
R2_NOP (= 11)	Pixel remains unchanged
R2_NOT (= 6)	Pixel is the inverse of the screen color
R2_NOTCOPYPEN (= 4)	Pixel is the inverse of the pen color
R2_NOTMASKPEN (= 8)	Pixel = NOT(pen AND screen pixel)
R2_NOTMERGEPPEN (= 2)	Pixel = NOT(pen OR screen pixel)
R2_NOTXORPEN (= 10)	Pixel = NOT(pen XOR screen pixel)
R2_WHITE (= 16)	Pixel is always white

R2_XORPEN (= 7)

Pixel = (pen XOR screen pixel)

We'll see more about ROP2 modes in "Capturing Images From The Screen" later in this chapter.

You set the ROP2 mode with the `SetROP2` function:

```
Declare Function SetROP2 Lib "gdi32" Alias "SetROP2" (ByVal hdc As _  
Long, ByVal nDrawMode As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to that function mean:

- `hdc`—The device context to set the ROP2 mode in
- `nDrawMode`—New drawing mode

Handling The Mouse Outside Your Program's Window

Sometimes you want to work with the mouse no matter where it is on the screen. To do that, you can use the `SetCapture` and `ReleaseCapture` functions:

```
Private Declare Function SetCapture Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long) _  
As Long
```

```
Private Declare Function ReleaseCapture Lib "user32" () As Long
```

Here, `hwnd` is the handle of the window that the mouse should send mouse events to, no matter where it is. `SetCapture` captures the mouse, and `ReleaseCapture` releases it.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll capture the mouse when the user clicks a command button, and let the user drag the mouse anywhere in the screen—reporting the mouse's current x and y locations in `Text1` and `Text2`. Set the form's `ScaleMode` to Pixels(3) so that we get our mouse locations in pixels.

We'll use two Boolean flags here: `blnStartCapture`, which we set to True when the user clicks the command button, and `blnAmCapturing`, which we'll set to True when the user starts dragging the mouse (which means we should start reporting the mouse location in the two text boxes). Also, `SetCapture` and `ReleaseCapture`; then, we add all the declarations to the form's (General) section:

```
Dim blnStartCapture As Boolean  
Dim blnAmCapturing As Boolean
```

```
Private Declare Function SetCapture Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long) _  
As Long  
Private Declare Function ClientToScreen Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As_  
Long, lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long  
Private Declare Function ReleaseCapture Lib "user32" () As Long
```

Note also that we include the `ClientToScreen` function. You use this function to translate coordinates from window coordinates to the whole screen. We'll need to do that: the mouse coordinates passed to our mouse event are in window coordinates, but we'll need screen coordinates because we're using the mouse with the whole screen.

You pass a variable of type `POINTAPI` to `ClientToScreen`, so we include that type's declaration in a new module. Then, we add to the program:

```
Type POINTAPI
```

```
x As Long
y As Long
End Type
```

To start the program, we set our Boolean flags to False when the program's form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    blnStartCapture = False
    blnAmCapturing = False
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks the command button `Command1`, we capture the mouse with `SetCapture` and set the `blnStartCapture` flag to True:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    blnStartCapture = True
    intRetVal = SetCapture(hwnd)
    Command1.Caption = "Drag the mouse"
End Sub
```

When the mouse next goes down, we'll set the `blnAmCapturing` flag to True and start reporting the mouse location to the two text boxes `Text1` and `Text2`:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x _
    As Single, y As Single)
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI

    If blnStartCapture Then
        ptPoint.x = x
        ptPoint.y = y
        retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
        Text1.Text = Str(ptPoint.x)
        Text2.Text = Str(ptPoint.y)

        blnAmCapturing = True
    End If
End Sub
```

Similarly, in the `MouseMove` event, we check to see if we're capturing the mouse, and if so, we display the mouse location in the text boxes:

```
Sub Form_MouseMove(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As Single, _
    y As Single)
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI

    If blnAmCapturing Then
        ptPoint.x = x
        ptPoint.y = y
        retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
        Text1.Text = Str(ptPoint.x)
```

```
Text2.Text = Str(ptPoint.y)
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

Finally, when the user releases the mouse button, we release the mouse **ReleaseCapture** and reset the Boolean flags:

```
Sub Form_MouseUp(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As Single, _  
y As Single)  
  
    If blnAmCapturing Then  
  
        ReleaseCapture  
        blnStartCapture = False  
        blnAmCapturing = False  
        Command1.Caption = "Start capture"  
  
    End If  
End Sub
```

That's it—now run the program, as shown in Figure 23.6. Click the button in the program and drag the mouse. No matter where you drag the mouse, the mouse location is displayed in the text boxes in the program. We've captured the mouse! Just release the mouse, just release the mouse button.



Figure 23.6 Using the mouse outside a program.

There's one peculiarity you should know about here: starting with Windows 95, you can only capture the mouse for mouse operation; when you finish with the mouse, it is released. That means if you start the mouse drag by pressing the mouse button while inside the program's window, everything is fine—the program retains control of the mouse while you drag. If, on the other hand, you press the mouse button outside the program's window and start to drag, the mouse is released.

You can remedy this problem, as we do in our screen capture program later in this chapter, by using the right mouse button for mouse operations. In that program, we have the users drag the mouse by pressing the mouse button in the program's window, dragging the mouse to the top left of the rectangle they want to capture, then use the right mouse button (while holding the left one down) to capture that rectangle.

The code for this program is located in the mousecap folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Copying Bitmaps Between Device Contexts Quickly

One of the most common reasons to use Windows API functions is to make fast bitmap transfers, which you can do with the BitBlt function. This function lets you copy a bitmap from one device context to another very quickly:

```
Declare Function BitBlt Lib "gdi32" Alias "BitBlt" (ByVal hDestDC As _  
Long, ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long, ByVal nWidth As Long, ByVal _  
nHeight As Long, ByVal hSrcDC As Long, ByVal xSrc As Long, ByVal _  
ySrc As Long, ByVal dwRop As Long) As Long
```

Here's what this function's arguments mean:

- **hDestDG**—The destination device context to copy to
- **x**—The x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the destination rectangle
- **y**—The y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the destination rectangle
- **nWidth**—The width of the destination rectangle and source bitmap
- **nHeight**—The height of the destination rectangle and source bitmap
- **hSrcDG**—The source device context to copy from
- **xSrc**—The logical x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the source bitmap
- **ySrc**—The logical y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the source bitmap

- dwRop—The raster operation to be performed

You can find the possible values for the Rop argument in Table 23.4.

Table 23.4 BitBlt raster operations.

dwRop Constant	Operation
SRCCOPY = &HCC0020	destination = source
SRCPAINT = &HEE0086	destination = source OR destination
SRCAND = &H8800C6	destination = source AND destination
SRCINVERT = &H660046	destination = source XOR destination
SRCERASE = &H440328	destination = source AND (NOT destination)
NOTSRCCOPY = &H330008	destination = (NOT source)
NOTSRCERASE = &H1100A6	destination = (NOT src) AND (NOT destination)
MERGECOPY = &HC000CA	destination = (source AND pattern)
MERGEPAINT = &HBB0226	destination = (NOT source) OR destination
PATCOPY = &HF00021	destination = pattern
PATPAINT = &HFB0A09	destination = pattern OR source
PATINVERT = &H5A0049	destination = pattern XOR destination
DSTINVERT = &H550009	destination = (NOT destination)
BLACKNESS = &H42	destination = BLACK
WHITENESS = &HFF0062	destination = WHITE

We'll put BitBlt to work when we capture the screen in the next topic.

Capturing Images From The Screen

We'll put together the previous topics in this chapter into one substantial screen capture example: screencap. Using this program, you can capture sections of the screen and display them in a picture box.

When you run this program, press the left mouse button on the program's form, then drag the mouse to the top left rectangular region you want to capture. Then, using the right mouse button (while holding the left one down) draw the rectangle you want to capture. A box outlining that region will appear on the screen as you move the mouse, as shown in Figure 23.7.



Figure 23.7 Outlining a region on the screen.

When you release the mouse buttons, the region you've outlined appears in the picture box in the program, as shown in Figure 23.8. You've captured an image from the screen.



Figure 23.8 Capturing a region of the screen.

Why do we have to drag the mouse before making the screen capture? There's a peculiarity in mouse capture starting in Windows 95: when you capture the mouse, you can only hold it until you finish with a mouse operation; when you release the mouse, the mouse is released. To hold the mouse, we start the dragging process in the program's form itself and only release the mouse buttons when we're done capturing the image we want.

This program is a fairly complex one, involving lots of Visual Basic code, and it appears in Listing 23 reference. This program, screencap, puts together almost all of the Windows API operations we've seen so far in this chapter, so it's worth taking a look at as an example of a substantial program that uses the Windows API.

Listing 23.1 screencap.frm

```

VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption      = "Form1"
    ClientHeight = 4755
    ClientLeft   = 1425
    ClientTop    = 2175
    ClientWidth  = 6495
    LinkTopic    = "Form1"
    PaletteMode  = 1 'UseZOrder
    ScaleHeight  = 317
    ScaleMode    = 3 'Pixel
    ScaleWidth   = 433
    Begin VB.PictureBox Picture1
        AutoRedraw  = -1 'True
        BackColor   = &H00FFFFFF&
        Height      = 3735
        Left         = 480
        ScaleHeight  = 3675
        ScaleWidth   = 5595
        TabIndex     = 0
        Top          = 120
        Width        = 5655
    End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Dim blnStartCapture As Boolean
Dim blnAmCapturing As Boolean
Dim intHandleDisplay As Integer
Dim intStartX As Integer
Dim intStartY As Integer
Dim intMouseX As Integer
Dim intMouseY As Integer
Dim intOldMouseX As Integer
Dim intOldMouseY As Integer

Private Declare Function SetCapture Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long) _

```

```
As Long
```

```
Private Declare Function CreateDC Lib "gdi32" Alias "CreateDCA" (ByVal _
lpDriverName As String, ByVal lpDeviceName As String, ByVal _
lpOutput As String, lpInitData As DEVMODE) As Long
Private Declare Function SetROP2 Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, ByVal_ _
nDrawMode As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function MoveToEx Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, _
ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long, lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long
Private Declare Function LineTo Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long, ByVal x _ 
As Long, ByVal y As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function DeleteDC Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hdc As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function BitBlt Lib "gdi32" (ByVal hDestDC As Long, _ 
ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long, ByVal nWidth As Long, ByVal _ 
nHeight As Long, ByVal hSrcDC As Long, ByVal xSrc As Long, ByVal _ 
ySrc As Long, ByVal dwRop As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function ReleaseCapture Lib "user32" () As Long
Private Declare Function ClientToScreen Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As _ 
Long, lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long
```

```
Const SRCCOPY = &HCC0020
```

```
Const R2_NOT = 6
```

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim devDevMode As DEVMODE
```

```
    blnStartCapture = False
    blnAmCapturing = False
```

```
    intHandleDisplay = CreateDC("DISPLAY", 0&, 0&, devDevMode)
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As _ 
Single, y As Single)
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI
```

```
If Button = 1 Then
    blnStartCapture = True
    intRetVal = SetCapture(hwnd)
End If
```

```
If blnStartCapture And Button = 2 Then
```

```
    ptPoint.x = x
    ptPoint.y = y
    retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
    intStartX = ptPoint.x
    intStartY = ptPoint.y
```

```
    intOldMouseX = intStartX
    intOldMouseY = intStartY

    blnAmCapturing = True
End If
End Sub
Sub Form_MouseMove(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As Single, y _
As Single)

If blnAmCapturing Then

    EraseOld x, y

    intOldMouseX = intMouseX
    intOldMouseY = intMouseY

    DrawNew x, y

End If
End Sub

Sub Form_MouseUp(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As Single, y As_
Single)
Dim intLeftX As Integer
Dim intLeftY As Integer

If blnAmCapturing Then
    ReleaseCapture
    blnStartCapture = False
    blnAmCapturing = False

    EraseOld x, y

    intLeftX = intMouseX
    If intStartX < intMouseX Then
        intLeftX = intStartX
    End If

    intLeftY = intMouseY
    If intStartY < intMouseY Then
        intLeftY = intStartY
    End If

    Picture1.Cls
    intRetVal = BitBlt(Picture1.hdc, 0, 0, Abs(intStartX - _
        intMouseX), Abs(intStartY - intMouseY), intHandleDisplay, _
```

```
    intLeftX, intLeftY, SRCCOPY)
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub EraseOld(ByVal x As Integer, ByVal y As Integer)
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI

    intRetVal = SetROP2(intHandleDisplay, R2_NOT)

    ptPoint.x = x
    ptPoint.y = y
    retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
    intMouseX = ptPoint.x
    intMouseY = ptPoint.y

    lngRetVal = MoveToEx(intHandleDisplay, intOldMouseX, intOldMouseY, _
        ptPoint)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intStartX, intOldMouseY)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intStartX, intStartY)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intOldMouseX, intStartY)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intOldMouseX, intOldMouseY)
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DrawNew(ByVal x As Integer, ByVal y As Integer)
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI
```

```
    intRetVal = SetROP2(intHandleDisplay, R2_NOT)
```

```
    ptPoint.x = x
    ptPoint.y = y
    retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
    intMouseX = ptPoint.x
    intMouseY = ptPoint.y
```

```
    lngRetVal = MoveToEx(intHandleDisplay, intMouseX, intMouseY, _
        ptPoint)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intStartX, intMouseY)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intStartX, intStartY)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intMouseX, intStartY)
    intRetVal = LineTo(intHandleDisplay, intMouseX, intMouseY)
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    intRetVal = DeleteDC(intHandleDisplay)
```

```
End Sub
```

Getting A Window Handle For Any Window On The Screen

To work with windows in the Windows API, you need a window handle. One way of getting a handle any window on the screen is to use `WindowFromPoint` function. You just pass that function the x- ar y-coordinates (in screen coordinates) of a point inside the window for which you want the handle:

```
Private Declare Function WindowFromPoint Lib "user32" (ByVal xPoint As _  
Long, ByVal yPoint As Long) As Long
```

Let's see an example. Here, we'll let the users click a command button `bCommand1`, with the caption Choose Window. When they do, they can move the mouse to any window on the screen, click the w and get a handle for that window.

When the users click the Choose Window button, we'll set up a form-wide Boolean variable `blnChoose` to True, so we know the next time the users click the mouse, they're indicating the window for which th a handle:

```
Dim blnChoose As Boolean
```

We set `bInChoose` to False when the form first loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    bInChoose = False
End Sub
```

To capture the mouse, we'll need `SetCapture` and `ReleaseCapture`. To convert from window to screen coordinates, we need `ClientToScreen` so we declare those functions as well:

```
Private Declare Function SetCapture Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long) As _
    Long
Private Declare Function ReleaseCapture Lib "user32" () As Long
Private Declare Function WindowFromPoint Lib "user32" (ByVal xPoint As _
    Long, ByVal yPoint As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function ClientToScreen Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long,_
    lpPoint As POINTAPI) As Long
```

We also need to declare `POINTAPI` type because `ClientToScreen` uses that type, so we add that declaration to a module we add to the program:

```
Type POINTAPI
    x As Long
    y As Long
End Type
```

Now when the user clicks the command button, we capture the mouse and set `bInChoose` flag to True:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    bInChoose = True
    intRetVal = SetCapture(hwnd)
End Sub
```

When the user clicks a window, our program's `MouseDown` event handler will be called. To determine the screen location at which the mouse went down, we use `ClientToScreen`:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As _
    Single, y As Single)
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI

    If bInChoose Then

        ptPoint.x = x
        ptPoint.y = y
        retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
    ...
    End If
End Sub
```

Now we can get a window handle for the window the user clicked with `WindowFromPoint`:

```
Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As Single, y_
    As Single)
    Dim window As Long
    Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI
```

```

If blnChoose Then

    ptPoint.x = x
    ptPoint.y = y
    retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)
    window = WindowFromPoint(ptPoint.x, ptPoint.y)
.

.

End If
End Sub

```

And that's it—now we've gotten a window handle for any window on the screen the user wants to click. Using this you can perform all kinds of operations on the window—resizing it, closing it, changing its style, and more, using . functions. As an example, we'll see how to get a window's title bar text in the next topic.

Getting A Window's Text

In the previous topic, we saw how to get a handle for any window on the screen when the user clicks that window we'll use theGetWindowText function to get the title bar text of a window:

```
Function GetWindowText Lib "user32" Alias "GetWindowTextA" (ByVal hwnd _  
As Long, ByVal lpszString As String, ByVal cch As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to this function mean:

- hwnd—The handle of the window you want to get the text from.
- lpszString—The buffer that is to receive the copied string of the window's title.
- cch—The maximum number of characters to be copied to the buffer. If the string is longer than the number of characters specified in ch, it is truncated.

This function returns the length of the text it retrieved. Let's see an example. Here, we use the window handle we previous topic withGetWindowText to get the title bar text of any window the user clicks and display that text in a text box, Text1:

```

Private Sub Form_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, x As _  
Single, y As Single)
Dim window As Long
Dim buffer As String * 1024
Dim ptPoint As POINTAPI

If blnChoose Then
    ptPoint.x = x
    ptPoint.y = y
    retval = ClientToScreen(hwnd, ptPoint)

    window = WindowFromPoint(ptPoint.x, ptPoint.y)
    lngRetVal = GetWindowText(window, buffer, 1024)
    Text1.Text = buffer
End If
End Sub

```

Run the program now, as shown in Figure 23.9. When you click the Choose Window button and then click another the program reads the text in the clicked program's title bar and displays it in a text box, as shown in Figure 23.9. program is a success—now we can work with any window on the screen.



Figure 23.9 Getting a window's title bar text.

The code for this example is located in the windowinfo folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Playing Sounds With API Functions

You can use the Windows API `PlaySound` function to play sounds:

```
Function PlaySound Lib "winmm.dll" Alias "PlaySoundA" (ByVal lpszName As _  
String, ByVal hModule As Long, ByVal dwFlags As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to `PlaySound` mean:

- `lpszName`—The path and name of the file to play
- `hModule`—The module handle of the program, which you usually set to 0
- `dwFlags`—Flag settings; see the following explanation for the settings

Here are the flags you can use in the `dwFlags` parameter of the `PlaySound` function:

- `SND_SYNC`—&H0; play the sound synchronously (the default)
- `SND_ASYNC`—&H1; play the sound asynchronously
- `SND_NODEFAULT`—&H2; silence is not the default, if sound is not found
- `SND_MEMORY`—&H4; `lpszName` points to a memory file
- `SND_ALIAS`—&H10000; name is a win.ini [sounds] entry
- `SND_FILENAME`—&H20000; name is a file name
- `SND_RESOURCE`—&H40004; name is a resource name or atom
- `SND_ALIAS_ID`—&H110000; name is a win.ini [sounds] entry identifier
- `SND_ALIAS_START`—0; must be > 4096 to keep strings in same section of resource file
- `SND_LOOP`—&H8; loop the sound until next `PlaySound`
- `SND_NOSTOP`—&H10; don't stop any currently playing sound
- `SND_NOWAIT`—&H2000; don't wait if the driver is busy

Declaring this function as a private function lets us declare this in the (General) section of a form:

```
Private Declare Function PlaySound Lib "winmm.dll" Alias _  
"PlaySoundA" (ByVal lpszName As String, ByVal hModule As Long, _  
ByVal dwFlags As Long) As Long
```

Now we can call `PlaySound` directly when the user clicks a command button `Command1`; here, we pass it a value of `&H20000` to indicate that we're reading the sound from a file and ignore the function's return value way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    retVal = PlaySound("c:\windows\media\Tada.wav", 0&, &H20000)
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we're playing sounds with a Windows API function.

Allocating Memory And Storing Data

One reason programmers use Windows API calls is to work with a lot of memory, and you can use the `GlobalAlloc` (allocate memory), `GlobalLock` (lock the memory and get a pointer to it), `GlobalUnlock` (unlock the memory), and `GlobalFree` (deallocate the memory) functions for that. We'll take a look at the first two of the functions in this topic, and the last two in the following topic. We'll also see how to copy data into and out of newly allocated memory with the `MoveMemory` function.

Here's how you use `GlobalAlloc` to allocate memory; this function returns a non-zero handle to the memory if successful:

```
Function GlobalAlloc Lib "kernel32" (ByVal wFlags As Long, ByVal
dwBytes As Long) As Long
```

You set the flags you want to use with `wFlags`, and the number of memory bytes you want with `dwBytes`. Here are the possible flags to use with `GlobalAlloc`:

- `GMEM_FIXED` —`&H0`
- `GMEM_MOVEABLE` —`&H2`
- `GMEM_NOCOMPACT` —`&H10`
- `GMEM_NODISCARD` —`&H20`
- `GMEM_ZEROINIT` —`&H40`
- `GMEM_MODIFY` —`&H80`
- `GMEM_DISCARDABLE` —`&H100`
- `GMEM_NOT_BANKED` —`&H1000`
- `GMEM_SHARE` —`&H2000`
- `GMEM_DDESHARE` —`&H2000`
- `GMEM_NOTIFY` —`&H4000`
- `GMEM_LOWER` —`GMEM_NOT_BANKED`
- `GMEM_VALID_FLAGS` —`&H7F72`
- `GMEM_INVALID_HANDLE` —`&H8000`

To get a pointer to the memory and so put it to use, you call `GlobalLock`, passing it the memory handle you got from `GlobalAlloc`. `GlobalLock` returns a non-zero pointer to the memory if successful:

```
Function GlobalLock Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) As Long
```

Besides `GlobalAlloc` and `GlobalLock`, you can move data into the memory you've allocated with `MoveMemory`:

```
Sub MoveMemory Lib "kernel32" Alias "RtlMoveMemory" (ByVal dest As _
    Any, ByVal src As Any, ByVal length As Long)
```

Here are what the arguments to `MoveMemory` mean:

- `dest`—Pointer to the destination buffer
- `src`—Pointer to the source buffer
- `length`—Number of bytes to move

Let's see an example. Here, we'll store a string of text that the user types into a text box in memory; in the topic in this chapter, we'll read that string back. This example will give us a good general overview of working with memory and memory buffers.

We start by setting up a 40-character-long buffer for the string to store in the form's (General) declaration:

```
Const DataLength = 40
```

```
Dim outbuffer As String * DataLength
```

```
...
```

We also declare the memory handle and pointer we'll use:

```
Const DataLength = 40
```

```
Dim outbuffer As String * DataLength
```

```
Dim hMemory As Long
```

```
Dim hMemoryPointer As Long
```

```
...
```

Finally, we declare the functions we'll use, `GlobalAlloc`, `GlobalLock`, and `MoveMemory`, as well as the memory flag we'll use, `GMEM_MOVEABLE`, which means that Windows can move the memory we are using if it needs to as part of its memory-handling operations:

```
Const DataLength = 40
```

```
Dim outbuffer As String * DataLength
```

```
Dim hMemory As Long
```

```
Dim hMemoryPointer As Long
```

```
Private Declare Function GlobalAlloc Lib "kernel32" (ByVal wFlags As _
    Long, ByVal dwBytes As Long) As Long
```

```
Private Declare Function GlobalLock Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) _ 
    As Long
```

```
Private Declare Sub MoveMemory Lib "kernel32" Alias "RtlMoveMemory" _ 
    (ByVal dest As Any, ByVal src As Any, ByVal length As Long)
```

```
Const GMEM_MOVEABLE = &H2
```

When the user clicks a command button `Command1`, we will allocate and lock the memory, and store the text string now in `Text1` in it. We start by storing the text from the text box in the buffer we've named `outbuffer`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    outbuffer = Text1.Text
    ...

```

Next, we use `GlobalAlloc` to allocate the memory we'll use:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    outbuffer = Text1.Text
    hMemory = GlobalAlloc(GMEM_MOVEABLE, DataLength)
    ...

```

Next, we pass the memory handle from `GlobalAlloc` to `GlobalLock` to get a pointer to the memory we've allocated:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    outbuffer = Text1.Text
    hMemory = GlobalAlloc(GMEM_MOVEABLE, DataLength)
    hMemoryPointer = GlobalLock(hMemory)
    ...

```

Finally, we copy the data from our buffer to our newly allocated memory `MoveMemory` (note that because `MoveMemory` is a subroutine, we use `Call` keyword instead of assigning a return value to a variable):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    outbuffer = Text1.Text
    hMemory = GlobalAlloc(GMEM_MOVEABLE, DataLength)
    hMemoryPointer = GlobalLock(hMemory)

    Call MoveMemory(hMemoryPointer, outbuffer, DataLength)
End Sub
```

And that's it—when the user clicks `Command1`, we copy the text string to our allocated memory.

We've stored data in allocated memory now—how do we read it back? We'll take a look at that in the next section.

Reading Data From Memory And Deallocating Memory

In the previous topic, we stored a text string from a text box `Text1` in memory when the user clicked a button, `Command1`. In this topic, we'll read the string back when the user clicks another button `Command2`, and display that string in a new text box `Text2`. We'll also free and deallocate the memory we've used.

We'll use `MoveMemory` to read the data from memory:

```
Sub MoveMemory Lib "kernel32" Alias "RtlMoveMemory" (ByVal dest As _  
Any, ByVal      src As Any, ByVal      length As Long)
```

Here are what the arguments `MoveMemory` mean:

- `dest`—Pointer to the destination buffer
- `src`—Pointer to the source buffer
- `length`—Number of bytes to move

To allocate memory, we used `GlobalAlloc` to get a handle to a memory area; to use that memory, we used `GlobalLock` to get a pointer to the memory area. To unlock memory, you pass a pointer to that memory to `GlobalUnlock`:

```
Function GlobalUnlock Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) As Long
```

To free memory, you pass a memory handle to `GlobalFree`:

```
Function GlobalFree Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) As Long
```

Let's see this at work. Here, we add the declarations of the functions we'll use to the program we developed in the previous topic, as well as a buffer `outbuffer`, to store the data we read:

```
Const DataLength = 40
Const GMEM_MOVEABLE = &H2

Dim outbuffer As String * DataLength
Dim inbuffer As String * DataLength

Dim memHandle As Long
Dim memPointer As Long

Private Declare Function GlobalAlloc Lib "kernel32" (ByVal wFlags As Long,_
    ByVal dwBytes As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function GlobalLock Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) _ 
    As Long
Private Declare Sub MoveMemory Lib "kernel32" Alias "RtlMoveMemory"_
    (ByVal dest As Any, ByVal src As Any, ByVal length As Long)
Private Declare Function GlobalFree Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) _ 
    As Long
Private Declare Function GlobalUnlock Lib "kernel32" (ByVal hMem As Long) _ 
    As Long
```

Then, when the user clicks `Command2`, we can use the memory pointer we created in the program in the previous topic, `hMemoryPointer`, with `MoveMemory`, to copy the string to the buffer:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    Call MoveMemory(inbuffer, hMemoryPointer, DataLength)
    ...

```

Now we can move the string `Text2` from `inbuffer`:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
```

```
Call MoveMemory(inbuffer, hMemoryPointer, DataLength)
```

```
Text2.Text = inbuffer
```

```
...
```

Finally, we unlock and free the memory we've used:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
```

```
Call MoveMemory(inbuffer, hMemoryPointer, DataLength)
```

```
Text2.Text = inbuffer
```

```
GlobalUnlock(hMemoryPointer)
```

```
GlobalFree(hMemory)
```

```
End Sub
```

That's it—when you run the program, as shown in Figure 23.10, and click the Store Text In Memory button, the text in the top text box, Text1, is stored in memory. When you click the Read Text From Memory button, the string is read back and displayed in the bottom text box, Text2, as you see in Figure 23.10. Now we're using memory with the Windows API.



Figure 23.10 Storing and reading memory data.

The code for this example is located in the winmemory folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Making A Window Topmost

You can use SetWindowPos to make a window "topmost," which means it'll always stay on top of other windows:

```
Function SetWindowPos Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long, ByVal _  
hWndInsertAfter As Long, ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long, ByVal _  
cx As Long, ByVal cy As Long, ByVal wFlags As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to this function mean:

- **hwnd**—Handle of the window to work with.
- **hWndInsertAfter**—Handle to the window that will precede this window in the Z-order. This parameter must be a window handle set to one of the following values: **HWND_BOTTOM** (= 1; places the window at the bottom of the Z-order), **HWND_TOP** (= 0; places the window at the top of the Z-order), **HWND_TOPMOST** (= -1; places the window above all non-topmost windows), or **HWND_NOTOPMOST** (= -2; repositions the window to the top of all non-topmost windows).
- **x**—Specifies the new position of the left side of the window.
- **y**—Specifies the new position of the top of the window.
- **cx**—Specifies the new width of the window.
- **cy**—Specifies the new height of the window.

- **wFlags**—Specifies sizing and positioning options, as shown in Table 23.5.

Table 23.5 SetWindowPos flags.

Constant	Meaning
SWP_DRAWFRAME (= &H20)	Draws a frame (defined when the window was created) around the window.
SWP_FRAMECHANGED (= &H20)	Sends a WM_NCCALCSIZE message to the window, even if the window's size is not being changed. If this flag is not specified, WM_NCCALCSIZE is sent only when the window's size is being changed.
SWP_HIDEWINDOW (= &H80)	Hides the window.
SWP_NOACTIVATE (= &H10)	Does not activate the window. If this flag is not set, the window is activated and moved to the top of either the topmost or the non-topmost group (depending on the setting of the hWndInsertAfter parameter).
SWP_NOCOPYBITS (= &H100)	Discards the entire contents of the client area. If this flag is not specified, the valid contents of the client area are saved and copied back into the client area after the window is sized or repositioned.
SWP_NOMOVE (= 2)	Retains current position (ignores the x and y parameters).
SWP_NOOWNERZORDER (= &H200)	Does not change the owner window's position in Z-order.
SWP_NOREDRAW (= 8)	Does not redraw changes. If this flag is set, no repainting of any kind occurs.
SWP_NOREPOSITION (= &H200)	Same as SWP_NOOWNERZORDER.
SWP_NOSIZE (= 1)	Retains current size (ignores the cx and cy parameters).
SWP_NOZORDER (= 4)	Retains current ordering (ignores hWndInsertAfter).
SWP_SHOWWINDOW (= &H40)	Displays the window.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll size a window to 100 x 100 pixels and make it a topmost window. We're declaring SetWindowPos in our program, as well as the constants we'll use: SWP_SHOWWINDOW, SWP_DRAWFRAME, and HWND_TOPMOST:

```
Private Declare Function SetWindowPos Lib "user32" (ByVal hwnd As Long, _
    ByVal hWndInsertAfter As Long, ByVal x As Long, ByVal y As Long,
    ByVal cx As Long, ByVal cy As Long, ByVal wFlags As Long) As Long
```

```
Const HWND_TOPMOST = -1
Const SWP_SHOWWINDOW = &H40
Const SWP_DRAWFRAME = &H20
```


Now when the window loads, we can make the window topmost this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    retVal = SetWindowPos(Me.hwnd, HWND_TOPMOST, 100, 100, _
        100, 100, SWP_DRAWFRAME Or SWP_SHOWWINDOW)
End Sub
```

That's all it takes. Now the window will stay on top of other windows, as you see in Figure 23.11. Our top program is a success.



Figure 23.11 Making a window topmost.

Determining Free And Total Disk Space

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program SuperDuperDataCrunch is overflowing users' disks. Can't you check how much disk space is available before writing out your 800MB database? Hmm, you tell me how would that work?

You can use the `GetDiskFreeSpace` function to check how much space there is on a disk:

```
Private Declare Function GetDiskFreeSpace Lib "kernel32" Alias _
    "GetDiskFreeSpaceA" (ByVal lpRootPathName As String, _
    lpSectorsPerCluster As Long, lpBytesPerSector As Long, _
    lpNumberOfFreeClusters As Long, lpTotalNumberOfClusters As Long) _
    As Long
```

Here's what this function's arguments mean:

- `lpRootPathName`-The disk you want to check (for example, "c:\")
- `lpSectorsPerCluster`-The number of sectors per cluster on the disk
- `lpBytesPerSector`-The number of bytes per sector
- `lpNumberOfFreeClusters`-The number of free clusters
- `lpTotalNumberOfClusters`-The total number of clusters

To find the total free space, you multiply `SectorsPerCluster * BytesPerSector * NumberOfFreeClusters`. To find the total space on the drive, you multiply `SectorsPerCluster * BytesPerSector * TotalNumberOfClusters`.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll determine the free space on the c: drive. We start by declaring `GetDiskFreeSpace`:

```
Private Declare Function GetDiskFreeSpace Lib "kernel32" Alias _
    "GetDiskFreeSpaceA" (ByVal lpRootPathName As String,_
    lngSectorsPerCluster As Long, lngBytesPerSector As Long, _
    lngNumberOfFreeClusters As Long, lngTotalNumberOfClusters As Long)_
    As Long
```

Next, when the form loads, we fill the variables `lpSectorsPerCluster`, `lpBytesPerSector`,

Introducing GetDiskFreeSpace for drive C:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim lngSectorsPerCluster As Long
    Dim lngBytesPerSector As Long
    Dim lngNumberOfFreeClusters As Long
    Dim lngTotalNumberOfClusters As Long

    retVal = GetDiskFreeSpace( "c:\", lngSectorsPerCluster, _
        lngBytesPerSector, lngNumberOfFreeClusters, lngTotalNumberOfClusters)
    ...

```

Finally, we can display the total number of free bytes in a `Label1`, this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim lngSectorsPerCluster As Long
    Dim lngBytesPerSector As Long
    Dim lngNumberOfFreeClusters As Long
    Dim lngTotalNumberOfClusters As Long

    retVal = GetDiskFreeSpace( "c:\", lngSectorsPerCluster, _
        lngBytesPerSector, lngNumberOfFreeClusters, _
        lngTotalNumberOfClusters)

    Label1.Caption = "Free space on drive c: " & _
        Str(lngSectorsPerCluster * lngBytesPerSector * _
        lngNumberOfFreeClusters) & " bytes"
End Sub
```

When you run the program, you'll see the number of free bytes on the computer's C: drive, something like this:



Figure 23.12 Determining free disk space.

Determining The Windows Directory

Sometimes you want to determine where Windows is installed on a system to be able to install files such as initialization files or DLLs. You can use the `GetWindowsDirectory` function to find the Windows directory:

```
Private Declare Function GetWindowsDirectory Lib "kernel32" Alias _
    "GetWindowsDirectoryA" (ByVal      lpBuffer As String, ByVal  nSize As _
    Long) As Long
```

Here are the arguments for the `GetWindowsDirectory` function:

- `lpBuffer`—Pointer to a buffer to store the Windows directory
- `nSize`—Size of the buffer in bytes.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add some code to the example we started in the previous topic that displays disk space. We add the declaration we'll need `GetWindowsDirectory`:

```
Private Declare Function GetDiskFreeSpace Lib "kernel32" Alias _
    "GetDiskFreeSpaceA" (ByVal lpRootPathName As String, _
    lpSectorsPerCluster As Long, lpBytesPerSector As Long, _
    lpNumberOfFreeClusters As Long, lpTotalNumberOfClusters As Long)
    As Long

Private Declare Function GetWindowsDirectory Lib "kernel32" Alias _
    "GetWindowsDirectoryA" (ByVal lpBuffer As String, ByVal nSize As _
    Long) As Long
```

Next, we set up a text buffer, get the Windows directory `GetWindowsDirectory`, and display the Windows directory in a new label `Label2`:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim lngSectorsPerCluster As Long
    Dim lngBytesPerSector As Long
    Dim lngNumberOfFreeClusters As Long
    Dim lngTotalNumberOfClusters As Long
    Dim strBuffer As String * 1024

    retVal = GetDiskFreeSpace("c:\", lngSectorsPerCluster, _
        lngBytesPerSector, lngNumberOfFreeClusters,     lngTotalNumberOfClusters)

    Label1.Caption = "Free space on drive c: " & Str(lngSectorsPerCluster_ _
        * lngBytesPerSector * lngNumberOfFreeClusters) & "bytes"

    retVal = GetWindowsDirectory(strBuffer, 1024)
    Label2.Caption = "Windows directory: " & strBuffer

End Sub
```

That's it—the result appears in Figure 23.13. As you can see, we're now able to find the directory in which Windows itself is installed.



Figure 23.13 Determining the Windows directory.

The code for this example is located in the `windisk` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

TIP: If you just want to find the current, default directory, use the Visual Basic command `CurDir`. To set the current drive, use `ChDrive`, and to change directories, use `ChDir`.

Connecting To Visual C++

The Testing Department is calling again. Another company programmer has written a great routine for alphabetizing spreadsheets that would be great in your program `DuperDataCrunchTerrific`, you say. They

say, the only problem is that those routines are written in Visual C++, and you'll have to interface them to Basic. Visual C++. You say, what's that?

Chapter 24

Databases: Using DAO, RDO, And ADO

If you need an immediate solution to:

- Creating And Managing Databases With The Visual Data Manager
- Creating A Table With The Visual Data Manager
- Creating A Field With The Visual Data Manager
- Entering Data In A Database With The Visual Data Manager
- Adding A Data Control To A Program
- Opening A Database With The Data Control
- Connecting A Data Control To A Bound Control
- Registering An ODBC Source
- Opening A Database With A Remote Data Control
- Connecting A Remote Data Control To A Bound Control
- Opening A Database With An ADO Data Control
- Connecting An ADO Data Control To A Bound Control
- The Data Form Wizard: Creating A Data Form
- Using Database Control Methods: Adding, Deleting, And Modifying Records
- Adding Records To Databases
- Deleting Records In Databases
- Refreshing A Data Control
- Updating A Database With Changes
- Moving To The Next Record
- Moving To The Previous Record
- Moving To The First Record
- Moving To The Last Record
- The Data-Bound Controls: From Text Boxes To Flex Grids
- The ADO Data-Bound Controls

In Depth

This is our first chapter on databases. In this chapter, we're going to see what databases are, e; the difference between the Microsoft database programming object sets: Data Access Objects (DAO), Remote Data Objects (RDO), and ActiveX Data Objects (ADO).

You may wonder why there are three different sets of database objects in Visual Basic. As it turns out, the reason is historical. At first, Visual Basic only supported DAO, which connected to the Microsoft Jet database engine (the database engine in Microsoft Access). Then, recognizing that there are

database types available, Microsoft created the open database connectivity (ODBC) standard a supported ODBC with Remote Data Objects in Visual Basic. Finally, Microsoft saw that the Web available too and created Active Data Objects, which make up a flexible standard that allows connections on the same computer, over networks, and through the Web, and is intended to sup ODBC. ADO is also called OLE DB, and in fact, it's based on COM programming techniques (w we'll see a lot more of in Chapter 26). We'll see how to work with all three of these object sets ir and the next chapter.

There are two ways to work with the DAO, RDO, and ADO object sets in Visual Basic. The first is working with the special controls that support them: the data control (supports DAO), the remote data control (supports ODBC), and the ADO data control (supports ADO). You use those contro connect to and move through databases, but they don't actually display datand then them to other Visual Basic controls, and those bound controls handle the display. The second way is working the three database object sets directly in code, without controls like the data control or the ADO control, and that's what we'll do in the next chapter.

In this chapter, then, we'll see what databases are all about and how to create and edit them wi Visual Basic Visual Data Manager tool. Next, we'll examine the data control, the remote data co and the ADO data control to see how to connect to databases, and we'll use the bound controls handle those databases in depth. In the next chapter, we'll see how to access the data object lik directly and put them to work in code for additional power.

What Are Databases?

We'll begin our discussion of databases by asking just what they are. Like many other programr concepts, databases have become more complex over the years, but the fundamental concept i simple one. Say you were in charge of teaching a class and were supposed to hand a grade in 1 student. You might make up a table much like the one in Figure 24.1 to record the grade for each student.



Figure 24.1 A table of data.

In fact, you've already created a database—or more specifically, a ~~table~~. The transition from a table on paper to one in a computer is natural: with a computer, you can sort, index, update, and organize large tables of data in an easy way (and without a great waste of paper). You can even tables together, creating relational databases.

Each individual data entry in a table, such as a student's name, goes ~~field~~ on the table. A collection of fields together, such as the Name and Grade fields in our table, makes ~~up~~ a record. Each record gets its own row in a table, and each column in that row represents a different field.

A collection of records—that is, rows of records where each column is a field—becomes a table then, is a ~~database~~. A database is just a collection of one or more tables. In fact, you can go farther than that in Visual Basic—you can have collections of databases. In DAO, those collections are the workspace and in RDO and ADO, they are referred to as ~~the~~ environment. You can also have

indices in databases, and those are pointers to specific fields, either in the current database or a one.

Now that you've set up a database, how do you work with the data in that database? One popular is to use Structured Query Language (SQL), which we'll see more about in the next chapter. You can use SQL to set up a query, which when applied to a database gives you a record set. This record set is made up of the records from the database that matched your query—for example, you may have asked your students that got a grade of B or better. We'll see more about working with databases in code later in the next chapter.

Flat And Relational Databases

So far, we've defined a certain type of database, ~~flat~~^{relational} or flat-file database. There is a second type of database as well, relational databases. Relational databases are ~~relational~~^{called} relational because they are set up to relate the data in multiple tables together. To make a table relational, you choose certain field primary keys and foreign keys.

The primary key in a table is usually the most important one—the one you might use to sort on, for instance. The foreign key usually represents the primary key in another table, giving you access to the table in an organized way. For example, we might add a field for student IDs to our student grade table. That same field, student ID, may be the primary key in the school registrar's database table, which contains information about all students. In our table, then, the student ID field is a foreign key, allowing us to specify individual records in the registrar's table.

We've gotten an overview of databases at this point; the next step is to look into the three different ways of working with them in Visual Basic, and we'll do that now.

DAO

When Visual Basic first started working with databases, it used the Microsoft Jet database engine, which is what Microsoft Access uses. Using the Jet engine represented a considerable advance over Visual Basic, because now you could work with all kinds of data formats in the fields of a database table, including text, numbers, integers, longs, singles, doubles, dates, binary values, OLE objects, currency values, Boolean values, and even memo objects (up to 1.2GB of text). The Jet engine also supports SQL, which database programmers found attractive.

To support the Jet database engine, Microsoft added the Data control to Visual Basic, and you can use that control to open Jet database (.mdb) files. Microsoft also added a set of Data Access Objects to Visual Basic:

- DBEngine—The Jet database engine
- Workspace—An area can hold one or more databases
- Database—A collection of tables
- TableDef—The definition of a table
- QueryDef—The definition of a query
- Recordset—The set of records that make up the result of a query
- Field—A column in a table
- Index—An ordered list of records
- Relation—Stored information about the specific relationship between tables

We'll work with these Data Access Objects in the next chapter; in this chapter, we'll work with the Data control.

The Data Control

The data control enables you to move around in a database from record to record and to display

manipulate data from the records in bound controls. This control displays a set of arrow buttons user can manipulate to move through a database, and the records from that database are displayed in bound controls. You can see a data control operating with bound controls in Figure 24.2, where we have placed our students table into a database and opened it with a data control.



Figure 24.2 Using a data control.

In fact, you can perform most data access operations using the data control—without writing any code. Data-bound controls automatically display data from one or more fields for the current record, and the data control performs all operations on the current record. If the data control is made to move to a different record, all bound controls automatically pass any changes to the data control to be saved back to the database. The data control then moves to the requested record and passes back data from the database to the bound controls where it's displayed.

When an application begins, Visual Basic uses data control properties to open a selected database, create a DAO Database object, and create a Recordset object. The data control's ~~Database~~ and ~~Recordset~~ properties refer to those Database and Recordset objects, and you can manipulate them using those properties. For example, if you have an SQL statement to execute, you place that statement in the data control's ~~RecordSource~~ property, and the result appears in the ~~Recordset~~ property.

RDO

Remote Data Objects (RDO) connect to databases using ODBC. You set up ODBC connections to databases using the ODBC item in the Windows Control Panel, and then use one of those connections with the RDO objects. The Remote Data Objects are designed in parallel with the Data Access Objects; for example, the database engine is rdoEngine instead of DBEngine, Recordsets have become rdoResultsets, TableDefs became rdoTables, Workspaces became rdoEnvironments, Field objects became rdoColumn objects, and so on. Although the names have changed, the command set is similar to DAO.

Although Microsoft intends ADO to supercede RDO, many programmers will use RDO for some time to come. In this chapter, we'll take a look at RDO with the remote data control.

The Remote Data Control

Like the data control, the remote data control gives you access to a database and displays data controls. Unlike the data control, however, you use the remote data control to access ODBC data sources (which can include databases built with all the popular commercial database programs).

As with the data control, if the remote data control is instructed to move to a different row, all bound controls automatically pass any changes to the remote data control to be saved to the ODBC data source. The remote data control then moves to the requested row and passes back data from the database to the bound controls where it's displayed.

In fact, the remote data control behaves like the data control in most respects, with some differences. For example, you can treat the remote data control's ~~SQL~~ property like the data control's

RecordSourceproperty, but it cannot accept the name of a table by itself unless you populate the rdoTables collection first.

ADO

Microsoft's latest set of data access objects are the ActiveX Data Objects (ADO). These objects access data in a database server through any OLE DB provider. ADO is intended to give you a consistent interface for working with a wide variety of data sources, from text files to ODBC relational databases to complex groups of databases.

The way Microsoft implements connections to all those data sources is with the OLE DB set of COM interfaces, but that standard is a very complex one. Our interface to that interface, so to speak, is a set of objects with properties, events, and methods. Here are the ADOs:

- Connection—Access from your application to a data source is through a connection, the environment necessary for exchanging data. The Connection object is used to specify a provider and any parameters.
- Command—A command issued across an established connection manipulates the data source in some way. The Command object lets ADO make it easy to issue commands.
- Parameter—Commands can require parameters that can be set before you issue the command. For example, if you require a debit from a charge account, you would specify the amount of money to be debited as a parameter in a Parameter object.
- Recordset—if your command is a query that returns data as rows of information in a table, then those rows are placed in local storage in a Recordset object.
- Field—A row of a Recordset consists of one or more fields, which are stored in Field objects.
- Error—Errors can occur when your program is not able to establish a connection, execute a command, or perform an operation, and ADO supports an Error object to hold the resulting error information.
- Collection—ADO provides collections—an object that contains other objects of a particular type. ADO provides four types of collections: the Connection object has ~~Events~~ collection, the Command object has ~~Parameters~~ collection, the Recordset object has ~~Fields~~ collection, and the Connection, Command, Recordset, and Field objects all have ~~Properties~~ collection, which contains all the Property objects that apply to them.
- Events—ADO uses the concept of events, just like other interface objects in Visual Basic. You use event handling procedures with events. There are two types of ~~ConnectionEvents~~ (issued when transactions occur, when commands are executed, and when connections are closed) and ~~RecordsetEvents~~ (events used to report the progress of data changes).

ADO also includes the Remote Data Service (RDS), with which you can move data from a server to a client application or Web page, manipulate the data on the client, and return updates to the server in one round-trip.

In this chapter, we're going to use the ADO data control to handle our ADO work.

The ADO Data Control

The ADO data control is similar to the data control and the remote data control. The ADO data control is designed to create a connection to a database using Microsoft ActiveX Data Objects (ADO). At design time, you create a connection by setting the ~~ConnectionString~~ property to a valid connection string, then set the ~~RecordSource~~ property to a statement appropriate to the database manager.

You can also set the `ConnectionString` property to the name of a file that defines a connection (the is generated by a Data Link dialog box, which appears when you click `ConnectionString` on the Properties window and then click either Build or Select). You then connect the ADO data contro data-bound control such as the data grid, data combo, or data list control by setting `DataSource` properties to the ADO data control.

At runtime, you can set the `Provider`, `ConnectionString`, and `RecordSource` properties to change the database.

We'll see how to work with the ADO control in this chapter. We'll use controls like the data contr the remote data control, and the ADO data control with bound controls.

The Data-Bound Controls

You can bind certain controls to the data control, the remote data control, and the ADO data cor and those controls are called **bound controls**. To bind a control to a database control, you use prope like `DataSource` to specify the database control, and then use properties `DataMember` or `BoundColumn` to specify what field to display in the bound control, as we'll see. Here are the co that can function as bound controls:

- Picture boxes
- Labels
- Text boxes
- Checkboxes
- Image controls
- OLE controls
- List boxes
- Masked edit controls
- Rich text boxes
- Combo boxes

In addition, there are special controls that are designed to be used as bound controls:

- DBList
- DBCombo
- FlexGrid
- MSFlexGrid

Finally, a number of bound controls are specially built to be used with the ADO control only:

- `ListBox`
- `ComboBox`
- `DataGridView`

We'll see these controls at work in this chapter.

That's it, then, for the overview of databases. We've seen how the process works in overview; now it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Creating And Managing Databases With The Visual Data Manager

You can create and manage databases with the Visual Data Manager. Open this tool from the Visual Basic Add-Ins menu, as shown in Figure 24.3.



Figure 24.3 The Visual Data Manager.

You can use this tool to create and modify databases. You create a new database with the File New item and open an existing database with the Open item. Let's see an example. Here, we'll create a new database with the Visual Data Manager. Click the Table Type Recordset button, which is the first button at the extreme left in the toolbar, and the Use Data Control On New Form button, which is the fourth button from the left.

Next, select the New item in the File menu. The Visual Data Manager lets you design databases in several different formats; for this example, choose Microsoft Access Version 7 MDB or later. The Visual Data Manager asks you for a name and path for this new database; we'll call it "db.mdb", enter that name now and click on OK.

That's it—now we've created a new database, db.mdb. We'll add a table to it in the next topic.

Creating A Table With The Visual Data Manager

To add a table named “students” to the db.mdb database we created in the previous topic, right-click the Properties item in the Visual Data Manager’s Database window and select the New Table item, opening the Table Structure window you see in Figure 24.4.



Figure 24.4 The Visual Data Manager’s Table Structure window.

Give this new table the name “students” by typing that into the Table Name field, as shown in Figure 24.4. That’s it—it was as quick as that to create a new table.

Now that we’ve created a new table, we’ll add the new fields in this table (Name and Grade) in the next topic.

Creating A Field With The Visual Data Manager

To add fields to the database table named “students” we created in the previous topic, click the Field button in the Visual Data Manager’s Table Structure window, opening the Add Field dialog box you see in Figure 24.5.



Figure 24.5 The Visual Data Manager’s Add Field dialog box.

Give this new field the name “Name” by typing that into the box labeled Name and clicking on the OK button. The Add Field dialog box stays open, and the new field is added to the students table. Add another field named “Grade” in the same way. Click on OK to add the field, then click Close to close the Add Field dialog box.

Now in the Table Structure window, click the Build The Table item to build the new table with our new fields. This creates the students table with two fields: Name and Grade, and opens that tab in the Visual Data Manager’s Database window, as you can see in Figure 24.6.



Figure 24.6 Our newly created database.

In the next topic, we’ll enter data into our new table.

Entering Data In A Database With The Visual Data Manager

To enter data into a table in the Visual Data Manager, right-click the table’s entry in the Visual Data Manager’s Database window and select the Open item in the menu that opens. In our case, doing so opens the Table: students dialog box you see in Figure 24.7. We’ll use this dialog box to enter the data in our database’s records. We’ll use the data you saw in Figure 24.1, but you can also use it to enter your own data.

data.



Figure 24.7 Editing a record in a database.

Using the data in Figure 24.1, enter the name “Ann” and the grade “C” for the first student in the labeled boxes in the Table: students dialog box, as shown in Figure 24.7. Then click Update to add a new record to the database; when the Visual Data manager displays a message box asking if you want to add the new record to the database, click Yes.

To add a new record, click the Add button and add the name “Mark” and the grade “B”, and click Update. Click Yes when the Visual Data Manager asks you if you want to add the new record to the database.

When you’re done entering your records, click the Close button in the Table: students dialog box to close the database with the Close item in the Visual Data manager’s File menu.

Congratulations—you’ve created a new database.

Adding A Data Control To A Program

The Testing Department is calling again. Now that you’ve created a new database file, how about it in a program? Okay, you say, I’ll look into it.

The database we’ve created in the previous few topics is in Microsoft Access (Jet) format, which is the format you can use with all three data access object sets: DAO, RDO, and ADO. We’ll see how to use the simplest method first: connecting that database to a data control in a Visual Basic program and then using that data control with data-bound controls.

The data control is the only intrinsic database control—it’s already in the toolbox. This control’s icon appears as the tenth tool down on the right in the toolbox in Figure 24.8. Double-click that tool now to add a data control to your form.



Figure 24.8 The Data Control tool.

Stretch the data control as you want it. When you stretch the control beyond its original size, you’ll have a space for text in the center of the control; set the `Caption` property to the name of the database table we’ll be working with—students.

That’s all it takes to add a data control to your program. In the next topic, we’ll see how to connect a data control to a database.

Opening A Database With The Data Control

To connect a data control to a database, you just set the data control’s `DatabaseName` property to the path and name of the Access/Jet database file you want to open. Here, we’ll use the db.mdb file.

created at the beginning of this chapter. In addition, you select the table you want to work with in the file with the data control's **RecordSource** property. After connecting the control to the db.mdb database, select the students table in the drop-down list box **RecordSource** in the Properties window.

You've connected the data control to a table in a database. But how do you actually see or modify data in the database? You do that with bound controls, and we'll get an introduction to that in the next topic.

Connecting A Data Control To A Bound Control

In the previous few topics, we connected a database to a data control. To see that data, we'll use a data-bound control—a text box. We'll investigate all the data-bound controls later in this chapter—after we've gone through the ways of connecting to databases—so this is just to get you started.

To connect a text box to a data control, set the text box's `DataSource` property to the name of the data control (or remote data control or ADO control). To display a particular field in the text box, place the field's name in the text box's `DataField` property.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll use the database, db.mdb, and the data control we've developed in the previous few topics. Add a text box, `Text1`, to the program now and set its `DataSource` property to `Data1`. When you move through the database with the data control, the data control will hold the current record to display a field in the current record, place that field's name in the text box's `DataField` property; here, we'll place the `Name` field in that property.

TIP: Set the text box's `DataSource` and `DataField` properties after adding and connecting the data control. When you do, you'll find the text box's `DataSource` and `DataField` properties can be set with drop-down list boxes in the Properties window, making that process easier.

When we run the program, we get the result in Figure 24.9. Using the data control, you can move to the beginning or end of the database, and step through record by record as well. Congratulations—you're working with databases. The code for this example is located in the dao folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.9 Using a data control to move through a database.

Registering An ODBC Source

The Testing Department is calling again. Your program with the data control is super terrific, but what if you want to work with an ODBC database? Hmm, you think, is that possible?

It is, with the remote data control. You can use an ODBC data source with a remote data control. First you have to configure a new connection for the ODBC source. You configure an ODBC connection with the 32-bit ODBC item in your computer's control panel. Open that item now, click the System DSN tab (DSN stands for data source name) and click the Add button to open the Create New Data Source dialog box you see in Figure 24.10.



Figure 24.10 The Create New Data Source dialog box.

You can see the ODBC drivers installed on your system in this dialog box. Select the one you want to use and click Finish; to install the db.mdb file we've developed in the previous few topics, we'll s

the Microsoft Access Driver entry here.

This opens the ODBC Microsoft Access dialog box you see in Figure 24.11. Use the Select button to select the database file, db.mdb in our example, and click on the OK button in the ODBC Microsoft Access dialog box. We give the name to this source.



Figure 24.11 The ODBC Microsoft Access dialog box.

This creates a new ODBC connection for our file, and that connection appears in the ODBC Data Source Administrator, as shown in Figure 24.12.



Figure 24.12 The ODBC Data Source Administrator.

Click on the OK button to close the ODBC Data Source Administrator. Now you've added a new ODBC source to your computer's data environment. We'll use this data source in the next topic.

Opening A Database With A Remote Data Control

To add a new remote data control to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Microsoft Remote Data Control entry in the Controls list box.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. This adds the Remote Data Control tool to the toolbox; draw that control as you want it on your form.
6. Connect the remote data control to an ODBC data source with the `DataSource` property.
7. Create a result set (unlike data controls and ADO data controls, which use record sets, data controls use result sets) that you can work with by supplying an SQL statement in the `SQL` property.

Let's see an example. Add a remote data control, RDC1, to a form now. We'll connect it to the ODBC data source we've created in the previous few topics, and you do that by setting the remote control's `DataSourceName` property to "db".

Unlike the data control or the ADO data control, you need to create a result set to work with in the remote data control, and we create a result set by selecting the entire students table with the SQL statement `SELECT * FROM students`. Place that string in the control's `SQL` property.

Now we've connected our database to the remote data control—but how do we connect the remote control to bound controls? We'll look at that in the next topic.

Connecting A Remote Data Control To A Bound Control

In the previous topic, we connected a database to a remote data control. To see that data, we'll data-bound control—a text box. We'll investigate all the data-bound controls later in this chapter—after we've gone through the ways of connecting to databases—so this is just to get you started.

To connect a text box to a remote data control, set the text box's `DataSource` property to the name of the remote data control. To display a particular field in the text box, place that field's name in the box's `DataField` property.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll use the database, db.mdb, and the remote data control we've used in the previous topic. Add a text box, `Text1`, to the program now, and set its `DataSource` property to the remote data control `MSRDC1`.

When you move through the database with the remote data control, the remote data control will move to the current record to display a field in the current record, place that field's name in the text box's `DataField` property; here, we'll place the `Name` field in that property.

TIP: Set the text box's `DataSource` and `DataField` properties after adding and connecting the remote data control. When you do, you'll find the text box's `DataSource` and `DataField` properties can be set with drop-down list boxes in the Properties window, making that process easier.

When we run the program, we get the result in Figure 24.13. Using the remote data control, you can move to the beginning or end of an ODBC database and step through record by record as well. Congratulations—you're working with ODBC databases. The code for this example is located in the rdo folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.13 Opening a database with the remote data control.

Opening A Database With An ADO Data Control

To add a new ADO data control to a form, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select the Microsoft ADO Data Control entry in the Controls list box.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. This adds the ADO data control tool to the toolbox; draw that control as you want it on your form.
6. Connect the ADO data control's `ConnectionString` property to a data source with the `ConnectionString` property, separating items in that string with semicolons. At the least, you should specify the `Provider` (the type of OLE DB) and `Data Source` (database name) values in the `ConnectionString`. See the following material for more information.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll connect an ADO data control to the database we've constructed in the early parts of this chapter, db.mdb. To do that, add an ADO data control, Adodc1, to a form, and set its ConnectionString property to specify the data provider type and the data source for that database like this:

```
"PROVIDER=Microsoft.Jet.OLEDB.3.51;Data Source=c:\vbbb\ado\db.mdb;"
```

TIP: One way of connecting an ADO control to a database easily is with the Data Form Wizard, which generates the connection string for you automatically. We'll see more of this wizard later in this chapter.

Next, set the ADO data control's RecordSource property to the table to work with, which is students in our example database, db.mdb.

Now you've connected a database to the ADO data control. To connect the ADO data control to controls, see the next topic.

Connecting An ADO Data Control To A Bound Control

In the previous topic, we connected a database to an ADO data control. To see that data, we'll use a data-bound control—a text box. We'll investigate all the data-bound controls later in this chapter—after we've gone through the ways of connecting to databases—so this is just to get you started.

To connect a text box to an ADO data control, set the text box's DataSource property to the name of the remote data control. To display a particular field in the text box, place that field's name in the box's DataField property.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll use the database, db.mdb, and the ADO data control we developed over the previous few topics. Add a text box, Text1, to the program now, and set its DataSource property to the ADO data control, Adodc1. When you move through the database with the ADO data control, the ADO data control will hold the current record to display a field in the current record, place that field's name in the text box's DataField property; here, we'll place the Name field in that property.

TIP: Set the text box's DataSource and DataField properties after adding and connecting the remote data control. When you do, you'll find the text box's DataSource and DataField properties can be set with drop-down list boxes in the Properties window, making that process easier.

When we run the program, we get the result in Figure 24.14. Using the ADO data control, you can move to the beginning or end of databases, and step through record by record as well. Congratulations—now you're working with ADO databases. The code for this example is located in the ado folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.14 Opening a database with the ADO data control.

The Data Form Wizard: Creating A Data Form

You can use the Visual Basic Data Form Wizard to create a form using an ADO control or ADO that lets you open and edit a database. To use the Data Form Wizard, select it in the Visual Basic Add-Ins menu (if it's not there, add it with the Add-Ins Manager in the Add-Ins menu) and follow steps in the Data Form Wizard, one step for each successive window that appears in the Wizard.

1. Introduction window. This window asks if you want to load a profile to create the data form. Click Next.
2. Database Type. This window lets you select the database format, like Microsoft Access ODBC. For the example database we've developed in this chapter, db.mdb, select the Access type. Click Next.
3. Database. This window lets you select the database to work with. Use the Name box and Browse button to select your database or data source. The Data Form Wizard will create the correct connection string for the ADO data control. Click Next.
4. Form. This window lets you specify the name for the form you're creating, as well as the form layout (how the data will be displayed): single record, grid, and so on, as shown in Figure 24.15. You can also specify how to bind the database to the form: with an ADO control or code, or with a class (we'll see more about classes when we discuss code components in Chapter 27). For our example database, we will use an ADO control for the binding. Click Next to go to the next window.



Figure 24.15 Setting up a data entry form.

5. Record Source. In this window, select the table name and the fields you want displayed, as shown in Figure 24.16. Click Next to go to the next window.



Figure 24.16 Selecting the record source.

6. Control Selection. Specify the buttons you want in the data entry form: Add, Delete, Refresh, and so on. For the example we'll create later in this topic, leave all options selected and click Next.
7. Finished!. Click Finish in this window to create the new data form.

Let's see an example to make this clearer.

Create a new project, and remove Form1. Next, follow the preceding steps to create a new data form named Form1 using our db.mdb database, and set the project's startup object (using the Visual Basic Project|Properties menu item) to Form1.

When you run this example, the records of our database appear in the data form, as shown in Figure 24.17. You can move through the database, editing the records as you like. When you change a record, click the Update button to change the actual record in the database file itself. Now we're editing

databases with our own programs in Visual Basic. The code for this example is located in the da folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.17 The ADO data entry form.

Using Database Control Methods: Adding, Deleting, And Modifying Records

The Testing Department is calling again: your SuperDuperDataBas program is terrific, but instead of restricting users to simply moving through a database, how about letting them edit the data in the box, adding new records and so on? Hmm, you think, how would that work?

Like most controls, the DAO, RDO, and ADO controls have methods, events, and properties. To make these controls consistent, Microsoft has given them the same core methods, and we'll take a look at those methods in this chapter. Using these methods, users can add records to a database, change records, delete them, and move around in the database.

In the next few topics, we'll develop the program you see in Figure 24.18, where we're editing the db.mdb database we developed in the beginning of the chapter. Because all data controls have core methods, we'll use a data control, Data1, in this example to keep this example easy. We also use two text boxes, Text1 and Text2, connected to Data1 and the Name and Grade fields in our database respectively. Now all we have to do is to make all the buttons in the program active, and we'll do that in the following few topics. The code for this example is located in the dbmethods folder on this accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.18 Using data control methods to add, edit, and delete records.

Adding Records To Databases

You can add a new record to a database with the AddNew method of the Recordset property of a data or ADO data control, or of the Resultset property of a remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Add button in the dbmethods example we're developing in this and the previous topics, we can add a new record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdAdd_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.AddNew
End Sub
```

This adds a new, blank record. You can enter the data you want in the record's fields, and to update the database, you click the Update button.

Deleting Records In Databases

You can delete a record in a database with the Delete method of the Recordset property of a data or an

ADO data control, or of the `Resultset` property of a remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Delete button in the dbmethods example we're developing in this and the previous few topics, we can delete a record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdDelete_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.Delete
    ...
End Sub
```

To avoid displaying a blank record, we also move to the next record this way:

```
Private Sub cmdDelete_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.Delete
    Data1.Recordset.MoveNext
End Sub
```

Refreshing A Data Control

When working with multiple databases, you can refresh the data in the current database control Refresh method of the data, ADO data control, or the remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Refresh button in the dbmethods example we're developing in this and the previous few topics, we can refresh the control like this:

```
Private Sub cmdRefresh_Click()
    Data1.Refresh
End Sub
```

Updating A Database With Changes

After changing the fields in a record, you can update a database with `UpdateRecord` method of the data, ADO data control, or remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the button in the dbmethods example we're developing in this and the previous few topics, we can update the database with the new record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdUpdate_Click()
    Data1.UpdateRecord
End Sub
```

Moving To The Next Record

You can move to the next record of a database with `MoveNext` method of the `Recordset` property of a data or ADO data control, or of `Resultset` property of a remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Next button in the dbmethods example we're developing in the previous few topics, we can move to the next record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdNext_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.MoveNext
End Sub
```

TIP: You can use the `RecordCount` property of a `Recordset` or `Resultset` to determine how many records you have to work with, and so make sure you don't go past the end of the database.

Moving To The Previous Record

You can move to the previous record of a database with `MovePrevious` method of the `Recordset` property of a data or ADO data control, or of `Resultset` property of a remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Previous button in the dbmethods example we're developing in this and the previous few topics, we can move to the previous record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdPrevious_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.MovePrevious
End Sub
```

TIP: When you use `MovePrevious` make sure you don't try to move back before the first record of the database.

Moving To The First Record

You can move to the first record of a database with `MoveFirst` method of the `Recordset` property of a data or ADO data control, or of `Resultset` property of a remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the First button in the dbmethods example we're developing in the previous few topics, we can move to the first record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdFirst_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.MoveFirst
End Sub
```

Moving To The Last Record

You can move to the last record of a database with the `MoveLast` method of the `Recordset` property of a data or ADO data control, or of the `Resultset` property of a remote data control. Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Last button in the `dbmethods` example we're developing in this and the previous few topics, we can move to the last record like this:

```
Private Sub cmdLast_Click()
    Data1.Recordset.MoveLast
End Sub
```

The Data-Bound Controls: From Text Boxes To Flex Grids

After installing a data, remote data, or ADO data control, you can connect that control to other controls through a process called data binding. You bind controls to a data control using the data properties of the bound control. The standard bound controls and their data properties appear in Table 24.1. In the information in that table, you can connect the listed Visual Basic controls to data controls, remote data controls, and ADO data controls.

Table 24.1 The bound controls.

Control	Properties To Set
Checkbox	DataField = Desired Boolean field; DataSource= Data control's name
Combo box	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
DBCombo box	BoundColumn = Desired field; DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name; ListField = Desired field to display in the combo's list; RowSource= Data control's name
DBList box	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name; RowSource= Data control's name
FlexGrid	DataSource= Data control's name
Image control	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
Label	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
List box	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
MaskedEdit	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
MSFlexGrid	DataSource= Data control's name
Picture box	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
Text box	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name
Rich text box	DataField = Desired field; DataSource= Data control's name

Note that Visual Basic also supports some additional data-bound controls to work with the ADO control specifically, and those controls are covered in the following topic.

Let's see an example. In the program in Figure 24.19, we've added a number of controls that we connected to a data control Data1. The data control, in turn, is connected to the db.mdb database we created at the beginning of the chapter. When you move through the database with the data control, the data in each bound control is updated. The code for this example is located in the dbcontrols folder on the book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.19 An example program showing the use of bound controls.

The ADO Data-Bound Controls

There are three data-bound controls that are specially optimized for use with the ADO data control: DataGrid controls, DataCombo controls, and DataList controls (don't confuse these controls with non-ADO optimized data-bound controls like the DBCombo and DBList controls). These controls are specifically designed to work with ADO data controls and won't work with standard controls like the Data control.

To add these controls to a program, follow these steps:

1. Select the Project|Components menu item.
2. Click the Controls tab in the Components dialog box that opens.
3. Select both the Microsoft DataGrid Control entry and the Microsoft DataList Controls entry in the Controls list box.
4. Click on OK to close the Components dialog box.
5. This adds the DataGrid, DataCombo, and DataList control tools to the toolbox; draw the controls as you want them on your form.

Here are the principal data properties you use with these three controls:

- DataGrid—DataSource= ADO data control's name. You can also set AllowAddNew, AllowDelete, AllowUpdate properties to True or False to enable or disable those operations.
- DataCombo—DataSource= ADO data control's name; DataField = Name of the field to display in the combo's text box; ListField = Name of field to display in the list; RowSource= ADO data control's name; and BoundColumn = Name of the source field with which you can provide data to another control.
- DataList—DataSource= ADO data control's name; DataField = Name of the field to display in the current selection; ListField = Name of field to display in the list; RowSource= ADO data control's name; and BoundColumn = Name of the source field with which you can provide data to another control.

Let's see an example. In this case, we've added an ADO data control and the three ADO data-bound controls to a program, as shown in Figure 24.20, and connected them to the ADO data control via their various properties. That's all it takes, and we're in business. The code for this example is located in the dbcontrols folder on the book's accompanying CD-ROM.

in the dbcontrols2 folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 24.20 Using the ADO bound controls.

Chapter 25

Working With Database Objects In Code

If you need an immediate solution to:

A Full-Scale DAO Example

Using The Daocode Example To Create And Edit A Database

DAO: Creating A Database

DAO: Creating A Table With A TableDef Object

DAO: Adding Fields To A TableDef Object

DAO: Adding An Index To A TableDef Object

DAO: Creating A Record Set

DAO: Opening A Database

DAO: Adding A Record To A Record Set

DAO: Editing A Record In A Record Set

DAO: Updating A Record In A Record Set

DAO: Moving To The First Record In A Record Set

DAO: Moving To The Last Record In A Record Set

DAO: Moving To The Next Record In A Record Set

DAO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Record Set

DAO: Deleting A Record In A Record Set

DAO: Sorting A Record Set

DAO: Searching A Record Set

DAO: Executing SQL

A Full-Scale RDO Example

RDO: Opening A Connection

RDO: Creating A Result Set

RDO: Moving To The First Record In A Result Set

RDO: Moving To The Last Record In A Result Set

RDO: Moving To The Next Record In A Result Set

RDO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Result Set

RDO: Executing SQL

A Full-Scale ADO Example

ADO: Opening A Connection

ADO: Creating A Record Set From A Connection

ADO: Binding Controls To Record Sets

ADO: Adding A Record To A Record Set

ADO: Refreshing The Record Set

ADO: Updating A Record In A Record Set

ADO: Moving To The First Record In A Record Set

ADO: Moving To The Last Record In A Record Set

ADO: Moving To The Next Record In A Record Set

ADO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Record Set

ADO: Deleting A Record In A Record Set

ADO: Executing SQL In A Record Set

In Depth

Programming database objects is an enormously complex topic that in itself can take up a dozen volumes. There is a career's worth of work here, so we'll have our hands full in this chapter.

Here, we're going to perform many of the tasks we first saw in the previous chapter, but while working with the data, remote data, and ADO data controls in that chapter, we'll execute those tasks in code in this chapter, using the Visual Basic data object libraries. Working with the data object libraries provides more flexibility, more power—and a great deal more complexity.

DAO

We'll use Data Access Object (DAO) methods to do what we did in the beginning of the last chapter: build a database and allow users to move through that database, editing it as they like. To construct a database, we'll create it, create a table with fields and add it to that database, and also construct an index for the database that will let us sort it.

Working with DAO, you can use the Database and Recordset Data Access Objects in your procedures. The Database and Recordset objects each have properties and methods of their own, and you can use them in your own procedures that use these properties and methods to manipulate your data.

TIP: Note that in the Learning Edition of Visual Basic, you can't declare (`Dim`) variables as Data Access Objects in code. This means that only the data control can create Database and Recordset objects, not your code.

To open a database in DAO, you just open a Database object or create a new one. This object can represent a Microsoft Jet database (.mdb) file, an ISAM database (for example, Paradox), or an ODBC database connected through the Microsoft Jet database engine. When the Database object is a connection, you create a Recordset object and use that object's methods, `MoveFirst` and `MoveNext`, to work with the database.

DAO also supports a client/server connection mode called ODBC Direct. ODBC Direct establishes a connection directly to an ODBC data source, without loading the Microsoft Jet database engine into memory, and is a good solution when you need ODBC features in your program.

In the ODBC Direct object model, the Connection object contains information about a connection to an ODBC data source, such as the server name, the data source name, and so on. It is similar to a

object; in fact, a Connection object and a Database object represent different references to the same object. (In this chapter, we'll stick with the Database/Recordset model.)

RDO

With the Remote Data Objects (RDO) library of data objects, you establish an rdoConnection to an ODBC data source, then create an rdoResultset (please note, it is not an rdoRecordset). The Remote Data Objects behave like the DAO objects in many ways, because there is a core set of methods for working with both record sets and result sets.

The big difference between DAO and RDO objects is that the RDO objects are largely SQL-driven. For example, although you can move through a database using methods like MoveFirst, MoveNext, and MoveLast, just as you would with the DAO objects, programmers often update and modify RDO data sources using SQL statements directly with the rdoConnection object's Execute method. (In this book, we'll stick to what you can do with Visual Basic.)

ADO

As we saw in the last chapter, ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) access data from OLE DB providers. The Connection object is used to specify a particular provider and any parameters. To connect to a data source, you use a Connection object. Using that connection, you can create a new record set, a cursor, or a command. By using the Recordset object's methods and properties, you can work with your data.

An ADO transaction marks the beginning and end of a series of data operations that are executed across a connection. ADO makes sure that changes to a data source resulting from operations in a transaction either all occur successfully, or not at all. If you cancel the transaction or one of its operations fails, then the result will be as if none of the operations in the transaction had occurred.

In this chapter, we'll see how to create connections using the ADO Connection object and how to work with data providers, creating an ADO Recordset object. We'll read data from the data provider and save it to display and modify it. In fact, we'll see how to support data-bound controls directly in code.

Although the ADO model is a complex one, and OLE DB is even more complex, we'll see that most of the core ADO Resultset methods are the same as the DAO Resultset methods.

TIP: Note that in DAO and ADO you work with record sets, and in RDO with result sets; it's very easy to confuse the terminology here.

That's it, then, for the overview of databases. We've seen how the process works in overview; now it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

A Full-Scale DAO Example

To illustrate DAO data handling in code, we'll build a fully functional DAO project—the daocode project. This program has a File menu with the following items:

- New Database—Creates a new database.
- Open Database—Opens a database.
- Close Database—Closes the current database.
- New Table—Creates a new table.
- Search—Searches the database.
- Sort—Sorts the database.
- Exit—Exits the application.

Using The Daocode Example To Create And Edit A Database

To create a database file, select the New Database menu item. Next, add a table to that database by selecting the New Table menu item, then add records to that table. When you're ready to store the database to disk, use the Close Database item.

WARNING! If you don't create a table in a database before trying to add data to a table in that database with the Add or Edit buttons, the daocode program generates an error.

In addition, the program has buttons that let users add, edit, update, and delete records, as well letting them move through a database, as shown in Figure 25.1. Each time you want to add a record (including when you enter the first record of a new database), click the Add New Record button, edit the data for the record's fields, and click the Update Database button to update the database.



Figure 25.1 Our DAO database-building application, the daocode project.

To edit a record, open the record, click the Edit button, edit the data in the record's fields, and click the Update Database button to update the database. For simplicity, this program only creates tables with two fields, although you can place as many records as you like in each table.

We'll develop the code for this example program in the next several topics of this chapter. For reference, the main form of this example program is located in the daocode folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM; the form the user uses to specify the names of the fields in a new table is located in the TableForm folder on CD-ROM; and the code for the form in which the user can enter a text string to search for is located in the SearchForm folder on the CD-ROM.

DAO: Creating A Database

The Testing Department is calling again. How about creating a DAO database—in code? Hmm, think, is that possible?

It is, with the objects in the Microsoft DAO Object Library. To add a reference to that library, select Project|References menu item, select the Microsoft DAO Object Library, and click on OK to close the References dialog box. Now we can make use of the data objects in that library to create a new database using `CreateDatabase`. `CreateDatabase` is a method of the DAO Workspace object (there are a collection of Workspace objects in the DAO DBEngine object's `Workspaces` collection). Here's how you use `CreateDatabase`:

```
Set database = workspace.CreateDatabase (name, locale [, options])
```

Here are the arguments to `CreateDatabase`:

- name—A string up to 255 characters long that is the name of the database file that you're creating. It can be the full path and file name, such as C:\vbbb\db.mdb. If you don't supply a name extension, .mdb is added.
- locale—A string that specifies a collating order for creating the database, like dbLangGeneral (which includes English) or dbLangGreek, and so on.

TIP: You can create a password for a new Database object by concatenating the password (starting with ";pwd=") with a constant in the `locale` argument, like this: dbLangGreek & ";pwd=NewPassword". If you want to use the default locale, but specify a password, simply enter a password string for the `locale` argument: ";pwd=NewPassword".

Here are the possible settings for the `options` argument:

- dbEncrypt—Creates an encrypted database.
- dbVersion10—Creates a database that uses the Jet engine version 1 file format.
- dbVersion11—Creates a database that uses the Jet database engine version 1.1 file format.
- dbVersion20—Creates a database that uses the Jet database engine version 2 file format.
- dbVersion30—The default. Creates a database that uses the Jet database engine version 3 file format (compatible with version 3.5).

Let's see an example to make this clearer. When the user selects the New database item in our DAO program, daocode (see the first topic in this chapter), we will create a new database. First, declare that database, as a form-wide variable:

```
Dim db As Database
```

Next, we add a Common Dialog control, `CommonDialog1`, to the program and show it to get the name of the database file the user wants to create:

```
Private Sub NewDatabase_Click()
    CommonDialog1.ShowSave
```

```
If CommonDialog1.FileName <> "" Then
```

...

Finally, we create the new database, passing `CreateDatabase` method the name of the database file and indicating that we want to use the default collating order by passing the `dbLangGeneral`:

```
Private Sub NewDatabase_Click()
    CommonDialog1.ShowSave
    If CommonDialog1.FileName <> "" Then
        Set db = DBEngine.Workspaces(0).CreateDatabase_
            (CommonDialog1.FileName, dbLangGeneral)
    End If
End Sub
```

And that's it—we've created a new, empty database. The next step is to add a table to that database and we'll take a look at that in the next topic.

DAO: Creating A Table With A TableDef Object

How do you create a table in a DAO database? You define it with a `TableDef` object. After you create the `TableDef` object, you can append fields to the table, and then you can append the new table definition to a database's `TableDefs` collection.

Let's see an example. After the users create a new database with our DAO code example, the code creates a new database. They can then open the project (see the first topic in this chapter), they can create a new table using the New Table item in the File menu. That item opens the New Table dialog box you see in Figure 25.2.



Figure 25.2 The New Table dialog box.

Users can enter the name of the new table to create in the text boxes in the New Table dialog box. In the code, we can use that information to create a new `TableDef` object, which we declare as a form-wide variable:

```
Dim td As TableDef
```

We create a new `TableDef` for the `Database` object we created in the previous topic, using the name for the table the user has placed `Text1` in the New Table dialog box:

```
Sub CreateTable()
    Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableForm.Text1.Text)
    ...

```

This code creates a new, empty `TableDef` object named `Table1`. An empty table isn't much use, though—we'll see about adding fields to this object in the next topic.

DAO: Adding Fields To A TableDef Object

How do you add fields to a DAO TableDef object? You can use that object's `CreateField` method to do that, passing that method the name of the new field and a constant indicating that field's type:

```
TableDef.CreateField( FieldName, FieldType )
```

Here are the constants specifying the possible field types:

- dbBigInt
- dbBinary
- dbBoolean
- dbByte
- dbChar
- dbCurrency
- dbDate
- dbDecimal
- dbDouble
- dbFloat
- dbGUID
- dbInteger
- dbLong
- dbLongBinary (OLE object)
- dbMemo
- dbNumeric
- dbSingle
- dbText
- dbTime
- dbTimeStamp
- dbVarBinary

Let's see an example to make this clearer. In the previous topic, we created a TableDef object named `tbl` for the daocode example project (see the first topic in this chapter), and now we can add two fields to that object, which we declare in an array named `fields` of type `Field` (which is defined in the DAO library):

```
Dim fields(2) As Field
```

The users have specified what names they want to give to those two new fields in the New Table dialog box's text boxes, so we create the new fields this way:

```
Sub CreateTable()
```

```

Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableName.Text1.Text)

Set fields(0) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text, dbText)
Set fields(1) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text3.Text, dbText)
...

```

Now that the new fields are created, we can append them to the actual TableDef object

```

Sub CreateTable()
    Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableName.Text1.Text)

    Set fields(0) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text, dbText)
    Set fields(1) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text3.Text, dbText)
    td.fields.Append fields(0)
    td.fields.Append fields(1)
...
End Sub

```

That's it—we've defined two new fields, named them, and appended them to a TableDef object. We'll add an index to our table to allow the user to sort the data in that object.

DAO: Adding An Index To A TableDef Object

You use an index to sort a table, and you create an index with the ~~DAO~~ CreateIndex method. The CreateIndex method creates an Index object, and you can make one of the fields in a table that index with that Index object's CreateField method.

Let's see an example to make this clearer. We'll create an index for our DAO example, the daoc project (see the first topic in this chapter) named ~~db~~ dbindex, which we declare as a form-wide variable:

```
Dim dbindex As Index
```

We name the index when we create it; here, we'll just use the first field that the user has placed table as the table's index so all sort operations will sort using that field. In this example, we name index by adding the word "index" to the name of that field this way:

```

Sub CreateTable()
    Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableName.Text1.Text)

    Set fields(0) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text, dbText)
    Set fields(1) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text3.Text, dbText)
    td.fields.Append fields(0)
    td.fields.Append fields(1)

    Set dbindex = td.CreateIndex(TableName.Text2.Text & "index")
...

```

Next, we create a new field indexfield, in the index, using the name of the first field in the table:

```
Sub CreateTable()
    Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableName.Text1.Text)

    Set fields(0) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text, dbText)
    Set fields(1) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text3.Text, dbText)
    td.fields.Append fields(0)
    td.fields.Append fields(1)

    Set dbindex = td.CreateIndex(TableName.Text2.Text & "index")
    Set indexfield = dbindex.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text)
    ...

Finally, we append indexfield to our Index object dbindex, and append that object to the TableDef
object's Indexes collection:
```

```
Sub CreateTable()
    Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableName.Text1.Text)

    Set fields(0) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text, dbText)
    Set fields(1) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text3.Text, dbText)
    td.fields.Append fields(0)
    td.fields.Append fields(1)

    Set dbindex = td.CreateIndex(TableName.Text2.Text & "index")
    Set indexfield = dbindex.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text)
    dbindex.fields.Append indexfield
    td.Indexes.Append dbindex
    ...

End Sub
```

And that's it—we've created a new index for our table. In fact, we've set up the whole TableDef td now, so we can create a record set to start working with data, and we'll do that in the next top

DAO: Creating A Record Set

After you've finished defining a database table with a DAO TableDef object, you can append that object to a Database object, which adds that table to that database. After you've installed the new table, you can use the OpenRecordset method to open a record set and start working with data:

```
Set recordset = Database.OpenRecordset (source, type, options, lockdets)
```

Here are the arguments for OpenRecordset:

- source—A string specifying the source of the records for the new Recordset object. The source can be a table name, a query name, or an SQL statement that returns records. (For table-type Recordset objects in Jet-type databases, the source can only be a table name.)
- type—Indicates the type of Recordset to open.
- options—Combination of constants that specify characteristics of the new Recordset.
- lockdets—Constant that determines the locking for Recordset.

Here are the possible settings for type:

- dbOpenTable—Opens a table-type Recordset object.
- dbOpenDynamic—Opens a dynamic-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC dynamic cursor.
- dbOpenDynaset—Opens a dynaset-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC keyset cursor.
- dbOpenSnapshot—Opens a snapshot-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC static cursor.
- dbOpenForwardOnly—Opens a forward-only-type Recordset object (where you can only use the MoveNext method to move through the database).

Here are the possible settings for options:

- dbAppendOnly—Allows users to append new records to the Recordset but prevents them from editing or deleting existing records (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type Recordset only).
- dbSQLPassThrough—Passes an SQL statement to a Microsoft Jet-connected ODBC data source for processing (Jet snapshot-type Recordset only).
- dbSeeChanges—Generates a runtime error if one user is changing data that another user is reading (Jet dynaset-type Recordset only).
- dbDenyWrite—Prevents other users from modifying or adding records (Jet Recordset object only).
- dbDenyRead—Prevents other users from reading data in a table (Jet table-type Recordset only).
- dbForwardOnly—Creates a forward-only Recordset (Jet snapshot-type Recordset only). It is provided only for backward compatibility, and you should use the dbOpenForwardOnly constant in the type argument instead of using this option.
- dbReadOnly—Prevents users from making changes to the Recordset (Microsoft Jet only). The dbReadOnly constant in the lockdets argument replaces this option, which is provided only for backward compatibility.
- dbRunAsync—Runs an asynchronous query (ODBC Direct workspaces only).
- dbExecDirect—Runs a query by skipping SQLPrepare and directly calling SQLExecDirect (ODBC Direct workspaces only).

- dbInconsistent—Allows inconsistent updates (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type and snapshot-type Recordset objects only).
- dbConsistent—Allows only consistent updates (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type and snapshot-type Recordset objects only).

Here are the possible settings for the `LockEdits` argument:

- dbReadOnly—Prevents users from making changes to the Recordset (default for ODBC Direct workspaces).
- dbPessimistic—Uses pessimistic locking to determine how changes are made to the Recordset in a multiuser environment.
- dbOptimistic—Uses optimistic locking to determine how changes are made to the Recordset in a multiuser environment.
- dbOptimisticValue—Uses optimistic concurrency based on row values (ODBC Direct workspaces only).
- dbOptimisticBatch—Enables batch optimistic updating (ODBC Direct workspaces only).

Let's see an example to make this clearer. In the previous few topics, we've developed a `TableDef` object in our DAO code example, the daocode project. To append that object to the Database object we used the `Append` method of the database object's `TableDefs` collection. After installing the table, we open it for use with the Database object's `OpenRecordset` method this way, creating a new DAO Recordset, which we named `dbrecordset`

```
Sub CreateTable()
    Set td = db.CreateTableDef(TableName.Text1.Text)

    Set fields(0) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text, dbText)
    Set fields(1) = td.CreateField(TableName.Text3.Text, dbText)
    td.fields.Append fields(0)
    td.fields.Append fields(1)

    Set dbindex = td.CreateIndex(TableName.Text2.Text + "index")
    Set IxFlds = dbindex.CreateField(TableName.Text2.Text)
    dbindex.fields.Append IxFlds
    td.Indexes.Append dbindex
    db.TableDefs.Append td

    Set dbrecordset = db.OpenRecordset(TableName.Text1.Text, dbOpenTable)
End Sub
```

In this case, we're opening the new record set as a standard DAO table by passing the constant `dbOpenTable`. We also declared `dbrecordset` as a form-wide variable:

```
Dim dbrecordset As Recordset
```

At this point in the daocode project, then, we've created a new database with a table in it that has two fields using the names that the user supplied for the fields and the table itself. And we've opened that table's record set, so we're ready to work with it and add data to it, which we'll do in later topics in this chapter.

Besides creating a new database as we've done, however, the user may want to ~~existing~~ database, and we'll see how to do that in the next topic.

DAO: Opening A Database

To open an existing DAO database, you use the `OpenDatabase` method, passing it the name of the database to open, and these arguments:

```
Set database = workspace.OpenDatabase (dbname, [options [, read-only [, connect]]])
```

Here are the arguments for `OpenDatabase`:

- `dbname`—The name of an existing database file, or the data source name (DSN) of an ODBC data source.
- `options`—Setting options to True opens the DAO database in exclusive mode; setting it to False (the default) opens the database in shared mode.
- `read-only`—True if you want to open the database with read-only access, or False (the default) if you want to open the database with read/write access.
- `connect`—Optional. A Variant (String subtype) that specifies various connection information, including passwords.

Let's see an example to make this clearer. In our DAO code example, the `daocode` project (see the topic in this chapter), the user can click the Open Database menu item to open a database. In the we get the name of the database the user wants to open with a Common Dialog control, and open the database like this:

```
Private Sub OpenDatabase_Click()
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    If CommonDialog1.FileName <> "" Then
        Set db = _
            DBEngine.Workspaces(0).OpenDatabase(CommonDialog1.FileName)
    ...
End Sub
```

Next, if you know the name of the table you want to open in the database, you can open that table's name immediately with the `OpenRecordset` method. However, because we let the user set the names of tables in the databases we create in the `daocode` project, we don't know the names of the tables in the database we've opened. Instead, we'll open the first user-defined table in this database.

When you open a DAO database, there are a number of system tables already in it, so to open the user-defined table, we find the index of that table in the `TableDefs` collection by first skipping the system tables (which have the `IsSystemObject` flag set in their `Attributes` properties):

```
Private Sub OpenDatabase_Click()
    Dim table1index As Integer
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    If CommonDialog1.FileName <> "" Then
        Set db = _
            DBEngine.Workspaces(0).OpenDatabase(CommonDialog1.FileName)
```

```

    table1index = 0
    While (db.TableDefs(table1index).Attributes And dbSystemObject)
        table1index = table1index + 1
    Wend
...

```

We'll open the first table after the system tables. We open a new record set for that table with the OpenRecordset method and fill the text boxes `Text1` and `Text2` in the program's main window with the fields of the first record in that table (note that in this example program, we are assuming the table opening has at least one record):

```

Private Sub OpenDatabase_Click()
    Dim table1index As Integer
    CommonDialog1.ShowOpen
    If CommonDialog1.FileName <> "" Then
        Set db = _
            DBEngine.Workspaces(0).OpenDatabase(CommonDialog1.FileName)

        table1index = 0
        While (db.TableDefs(table1index).Attributes And dbSystemObject)
            table1index = table1index + 1
        Wend

        Set dbrecordset = db.OpenRecordset_
            (db.TableDefs(table1index).Name, dbOpenTable)
        Set td = db.TableDefs(table1index)

        Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
        Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
    End If
End Sub

```

And that's it—now we've opened a database file.

DAO: Adding A Record To A Record Set

To add a new record to a DAO record set, you use the `AddNew` method (this method takes no parameters). After you've updated the fields of the current record, you save that record to the database with the `Update` method.

Here's an example using `AddNew`. When the user clicks the Add button in our DAO code example, daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter), we execute the `AddNew` method on the program's record set and clear the two data field text boxes:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    dbrecordset.AddNew
    Text1.Text = ""

```

```
Text2.Text = ""
End Sub
```

Now users can enter data for the new record's fields and click the program's Update button. When you click the Update Database button, the new data is written to the database.

DAO: Editing A Record In A Record Set

Besides adding new records to the record set, users might want to edit the existing records. To do this, you use the ~~Edit~~ method like this in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter):

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    dbrecordset.Edit
End Sub
```

After users edit the data in the record's fields (by entering new data in the text fields in the daocode project's main window), they must update the database with the new data, and they do that in the project by clicking the Update Database button. That button executes ~~Update~~ method, as we'll see in the next topic.

DAO: Updating A Record In A Record Set

When the user changes the data in a record or adds a new record, we must update the database with that change, and you use the recordset ~~Update~~ method to do that:

```
recordset.Update ([type [, force]])
```

Here are the arguments in this function:

- type—Constant indicating the type of update, as specified in Settings (ODBCDirect works only).
- force—Boolean value indicating whether or not to force the changes into the database, regardless of whether the data has been changed by another user (ODBCDirect workspaces only).

Let's see an example. When the user clicks the Update button in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter), we will update the database with the new data for the current record. We get the new data for the current record from the text ~~Text1~~ and ~~Text2~~, where the user has entered that data, and load the data into the record set's fields using the ~~fields~~ collection:

```
Private Sub Command3_Click()
    dbrecordset.fields(0) = Text1.Text
    dbrecordset.fields(1) = Text2.Text
    ...
End Sub
```

After loading the data into the current record's fields, we save that record to the database using the Update method:

```
Private Sub Command3_Click()
    dbrecordset.fields(0) = Text1.Text
    dbrecordset.fields(1) = Text2.Text
    dbrecordset.Update
End Sub
```

DAO: Moving To The First Record In A Record Set

To make the first record in a record set the current record, you use the `MoveFirst` method. For example, here's how we move to the first record when the user clicks the appropriate button in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter):

```
Private Sub Command4_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveFirst
    ...
End Sub
```

After moving to the first record, we display that record's fields in the two text boxes in the program Text1 and Text2:

```
Private Sub Command4_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveFirst
    Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
    Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
End Sub
```

DAO: Moving To The Last Record In A Record Set

To make the last record in a record set the current record, you use the `MoveLast` method. For example, here's how we move to the last record when the user clicks the appropriate button in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter):

```
Private Sub Command7_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveLast
    ...
End Sub
```

After moving to the last record, we display that record's fields in the two text boxes in the program Text1 and Text2:

```
Private Sub Command7_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveLast
    Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
    Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
End Sub
```

DAO: Moving To The Next Record In A Record Set

To move to the next record in a record set, making that record the current record, you use the `MoveNext` method. For example, in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter), we move to the next record when the user clicks the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub Command6_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveNext
    ...

```

We can check if we've gone past the end of the record set with `EOF` property; if this property is True, we should move back one record:

```
Private Sub Command6_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveNext
    If dbrecordset.EOF Then
        dbrecordset.MovePrevious
    ...

```

On the other hand, if the record we've moved to is a valid record, we display its fields in the program's two text boxes `Text1` and `Text2`:

```
Private Sub Command6_Click()
    dbrecordset.MoveNext
    If dbrecordset.EOF Then
        dbrecordset.MovePrevious
    Else
        Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
        Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
    End If
End Sub
```

DAO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Record Set

To move to the previous record in a record set, making that record the current record, you use the `MovePrevious` method. For example, in our DAO code example, the `daocode` project (see the first topic in this chapter), we move to the previous record when the user clicks the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub Command5_Click()
    dbrecordset.MovePrevious
    ...

```

We can check if we've gone past the beginning of the record set with `BOF` property; if this property is True, we should move forward one record:

```
Private Sub Command5_Click()
    dbrecordset.MovePrevious
    If dbrecordset.BOF Then
        dbrecordset.MoveNext
    ...

```

On the other hand, if the record we've moved to is a valid record, we display its fields in the program's

two text boxesText1 andText2:

```
Private Sub Command5_Click()
    dbrecordset.MovePrevious
    If dbrecordset.BOF Then
        dbrecordset.MoveNext
    Else
        Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
        Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
    End If
End Sub
```

DAO: Deleting A Record In A Record Set

To delete a record in a DAO record set, you use the `Delete` method, and then you update the record set. For example, when the user clicks the Delete button in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic in this chapter), we clear the two text boxes, Text1 andText2, that display the data for the current record and delete that record:

```
Private Sub Command8_Click()
    Text1.Text = ""
    Text2.Text = ""
    dbrecordset.Delete
End Sub
```

DAO: Sorting A Record Set

To sort a record set, you can install the index you want to sort with in the record set's `Index` property. For example, we can sort the record set in our DAO code example, the daocode project, with the code we've created this way:

```
Sub Sort_Click()
    Set dbindex = td.Indexes(0)
    dbrecordset.Index = dbindex.Name
    ...

```

After the record set is sorted, we display the first record in the two main text boxes, Text1 andText2:

```
Sub Sort_Click()
    Set dbindex = td.Indexes(0)
    dbrecordset.Index = dbindex.Name
    Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
    Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
End Sub
```

DAO: Searching A Record Set

You can search a record set with an index; we just ~~set its~~ property to the index we want to search and then set its Seekproperty to the string we want to search for. Let's see an example. When the selects the Search menu item in our DAO code example, the daocode project (see the first topic chapter), we install the index based on the first field in the record set and show the dialog box n: Search..., which appears in Figure 25.3:

```
Private Sub Search_Click()
    Set dbindex = td.Indexes(0)
    dbrecordset.Index = dbindex.Name
    SearchForm.Show
End Sub
```



Figure 25.3 The DAO code example's Search... dialog box.

After the user dismisses the Search... dialog box, we retrieve the text to search for from that dia box's text box and place that text in the record ~~Set~~ Seekproperty, along with the command “=”, which indicates we want to find exact matches to the search text:

```
Sub SearchTable()
    dbrecordset.Seek "=", SearchForm.Text1.Text
    ...

```

Besides =, you can also search using <, <=, >=, and >. When the search is complete, we display found record in the daocode project's main text boxes Text1 and Text2:

```
Sub SearchTable()
    dbrecordset.Seek "=", SearchForm.Text1.Text
    Text1.Text = dbrecordset.fields(0)
    Text2.Text = dbrecordset.fields(1)
End Sub
```

DAO: Executing SQL

You can execute an SQL statement when you create a DAO record set using the `OpenRecordset` method by placing that SQL statement in the `source` argument:

```
Set recordset = Database.OpenRecordset ( source, type, options, lockeds )
```

Here are the arguments for `OpenRecordset`

- `source`—A string specifying the source of the records for the new Recordset. The source can be a table name, a query name, or an SQL statement that returns records. (For table-type Recordsets in Microsoft Jet-type databases, the source can only be a table name.)
- `type`—Indicates the type of Recordset to open.
- `options`—Combination of constants that specify characteristics of the new Recordset.
- `lockeds`—Constant that determines the locking for Recordset.

Here are the possible settings for `type`

- `dbOpenTable`—Opens a table-type Recordset object.
- `dbOpenDynamic`—Opens a dynamic-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC dynamic cursor.
- `dbOpenDynaset`—Opens a dynaset-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC keyset cursor.
- `dbOpenSnapshot`—Opens a snapshot-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC static cursor.
- `dbOpenForwardOnly`—Opens a forward-only-type Recordset object.

Here are the possible settings for `options`

- `dbAppendOnly`—Allows users to append new records to the Recordset but prevents them from editing or deleting existing records (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type Recordset only).
- `dbSQLPassThrough`—Passes an SQL statement to a Microsoft Jet-connected ODBC data source for processing (Microsoft Jet snapshot-type Recordset only).
- `dbSeeChanges`—Generates a runtime error if one user is changing data that another user is editing (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type Recordset only).
- `dbDenyWrite`—Prevents other users from modifying or adding records (Microsoft Jet Records objects only).
- `dbDenyRead`—Prevents other users from reading data in a table (Microsoft Jet table-type Recordset only).
- `dbForwardOnly`—Creates a forward-only Recordset (Microsoft Jet snapshot-type Recordset only). This option is provided only for backward compatibility, and you should use the `dbOpenForwardOnly` constant in the `type` argument instead of using this option.
- `dbReadOnly`—Prevents users from making changes to the Recordset (Microsoft Jet only). The `dbReadOnly` constant in the `lockeds` argument replaces this option, which is provided only for backward compatibility.
- `dbRunAsync`—Runs an asynchronous query (ODBC Direct workspaces only).
- `dbExecDirect`—Runs a query by skipping `SQLPrepare` and directly calling `SQLExecDirect` (ODBC Direct workspaces only).
- `dbInconsistent`—Allows inconsistent updates (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type and snapshot-type Recordset objects only).

- dbConsistent—Allows only consistent updates (Microsoft Jet dynaset-type and snapshot-type Recordset objects only).

Here are the possible settings for the `LockEdits` argument:

- dbReadOnly—Prevents users from making changes to the Recordset (default for ODBC Direct workspaces).
- dbPessimistic—Uses pessimistic locking to determine how changes are made to the Recordset in a multiuser environment.
- dbOptimistic—Uses optimistic locking to determine how changes are made to the Recordset in a multiuser environment.
- dbOptimisticValue—Uses optimistic concurrency based on row values (ODBC Direct workspaces only).
- dbOptimisticBatch—Enables batch optimistic updating (ODBC Direct workspaces only).

A Full-Scale RDO Example

To illustrate RDO data handling in code, we'll build a fully functional RDO project—the rdocode project—over the next few examples. You can see that project at work in Figure 25.4. This program is designed to open the ODBC data source we set up in the previous chapter (where we created a data file db.mdb, and registered it as an ODBC data source) and let the user move around in it record by record.



Figure 25.4 The rdocode project opening an ODBC database.

Using the buttons in the rdocode project, you can move through the database, and we'll see how to write the code for the rdocode project in the following few topics. For reference, the code for this example is located in the rdocode folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

RDO: Opening A Connection

To open an RDO connection to a database, you can use the `OpenConnection` method. `OpenConnection` is a method of the `rdoEnvironment` object, and you'll find a collection of those objects in the `rdoEngine` object's `rdoEnvironments` collection. To add the RDO objects to a program, select Project|References menu item in Visual Basic, select the Microsoft Remote Data Object entry in the References dialog box, and click on OK. Now we're free to use `rdoEnvironment` methods like `OpenConnection`

```
workspace.OpenConnection(datasource, [prompt, [read-only, [connect, _  
[options]]]])
```

Here are the arguments to `OpenConnection`

- `datasource`—The name of the data source.
- `prompt`—ODBC prompting characteristic. `rdDriverPrompt` asks the user for a driver/database, `rdDriverNoPrompt` uses specified driver/database, `rdDriverComplete` specifies the connection string itself, and `rdDriverCompleteRequired` is the same as `rdDriverComplete`, with the additional requirement that the driver should disable the controls for information not needed for the connection.
- `read-only`—True if you want to open the data source as read-only.
- `connect`—The connect string.
- `options`—Set to `rdAsyncEnable` if you want to execute commands asynchronously (that is, without waiting for the command to be completed).

Let's see an example. In our RDO code example, the `rdocode` project (see "A Full-Scale RDO Example" earlier in this chapter), we create an `rdoEnvironment` object named `re` this way when the form loads:

```
Dim re As Object  
  
Private Sub Form_Load()  
  
    Set re = rdoEngine.rdoEnvironments(0)  
    ...  
End Sub
```

Now we open a connection named `db` to the ODBC source (we set up this ODBC source in the previous chapter) this way:

```
Dim re As Object  
Dim db As rdoConnection  
  
Private Sub Form_Load()  
  
    Set re = rdoEngine.rdoEnvironments(0)  
    Set db = re.OpenConnection("db")
```

```
End Sub
```

That's it—now we have a connection to our ODBC data source in the rdoConnection object db. How do we access the records in that source? We'll look into that next.

RDO: Creating A Result Set

After opening an ODBC data source and creating an rdoConnection object, we can create an RDO set to start working with the records in that data source. To create a result set, we can use the rdoConnection method OpenResultset

```
Set resultset = rdoConnection.OpenResultset ( name, [ type, [ locktype,_
[ options ] ] ] )
```

Here are the arguments for OpenResultset:

- name—Source for the result set; can be an rdoTable object, an rdoQuery object, or an SQL statement.
- type—Specifies the result set type (see the following list).
- locktype—Can be one of these values: rdConcurReadOnly (read-only), rdConcurLock (pessimistic concurrency), rdConcurRowVer (optimistic row-based concurrency), rdConcurValues (optimistic value-based concurrency), rdConcurBatch (optimistic concurrency using batch updates).
- options—Set to rdAsyncEnable if you want to execute commands asynchronously (that is, without waiting for the command to be completed).

Here are the possible values for type argument:

- rdOpenKeyset—Opens a dynaset-type rdoResultset object, which is like an ODBC keyset cursor.
- rdOpenDynamic—Opens a dynamic-type rdoResultset object, which lets the application see changes made by other users.
- rdOpenStatic—Opens a static-type rdoResultset object.
- rdOpenForwardOnly—Opens a forward-only-type rdoResultset object, where you can only use MoveNext to move.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll create an SQL-based result set in our RDO code example, the project (see "A Full-Scale RDO Example" earlier in this chapter), when the form loads, using the rdoConnection object we've created db. In this case, we'll set up an SQL statement SQLSel, to place all the fields from the data source's table named students in the result set:

```
Dim re As Object
Dim db As rdoConnection
Dim SQLSel As String

Private Sub Form_Load()
```

```

SQLSel = "Select * from students"
Set re = rdoEngine.rdoEnvironments(0)
Set db = re.OpenConnection("db")
...

```

Now we use `OpenResultset` to create an `rdoResultset` object.

```

Dim re As Object
Dim db As rdoConnection
Dim resultset As rdoResultset
Dim SQLSel As String

Private Sub Form_Load()
    SQLSel = "Select * from students"
    Set re = rdoEngine.rdoEnvironments(0)
    Set db = re.OpenConnection("db")

    Set resultset = db.OpenResultset(SQLSel, rdOpenKeyset)
...

```

Now that we've opened a result set, we can use `rdoResultset` method `MoveFirst` to move to the first record and display the data in that record's Name and Grade fields with the rdocode project's text boxes `Text1` and `Text2`:

```

Dim re As Object
Dim db As rdoConnection
Dim resultset As rdoResultset
Dim SQLSel As String

Private Sub Form_Load()
    SQLSel = "Select * from students"
    Set re = rdoEngine.rdoEnvironments(0)
    Set db = re.OpenConnection("db")

    Set resultset = db.OpenResultset(SQLSel, rdOpenKeyset)
    resultset.MoveFirst

    Text1.Text = resultset("Name")
    Text2.Text = resultset("Grade")

End Sub

```

And that's it—we've opened an RDO result set and displayed some of the data in that result set.

RDO: Moving To The First Record In A Result Set

To move to the first record in an RDO result set, you can use the rdoResultset ~~MoveFirst~~^{Method}. Let's see an example. In this case, we'll move to the first record in the result set ~~resultset~~^{that} that we've opened in our RDO code example, the rdocode project (see "A Full-Scale RDO Example" earlier in this chapter), when the user clicks the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub cmdFirst_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel
    resultset.MoveFirst
    ...
    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

After moving to the new record, we display the data in that record's fields in the program's text boxes Text1 and Text2:

```
Private Sub cmdFirst_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    resultset.MoveFirst
    Text1.Text = resultset("Name")
    Text2.Text = resultset("Grade")

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

RDO: Moving To The Last Record In A Result Set

To move to the last record in an RDO result set, you can use the rdoResultset ~~MoveLast~~^{Method}. Let's see an example. In this case, we'll move to the last record in the result set ~~resultset~~^{that} that we've opened in our RDO code example, the rdocode project (see "A Full-Scale RDO Example" earlier in this chapter), when the user clicks the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub cmdLast_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    resultset.MoveLast
    ...

```

```
Exit Sub
```

```
ErrLabel:
```

```
    MsgBox Err.Description
```

```
End Sub
```

After moving to the new record, we display the data in that record's fields in the program's text boxes Text1 and Text2:

```
Private Sub cmdLast_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel
```

```
    resultset.MoveLast
```

```
    Text1.Text = resultset("Name")
```

```
    Text2.Text = resultset("Grade")
```

```
Exit Sub
```

```
ErrLabel:
```

```
    MsgBox Err.Description
```

```
End Sub
```

RDO: Moving To The Next Record In A Result Set

To move to the next record in an RDO result set, you can use the rdoResultset.MoveNext method. Let's see an example. In this case, we'll move to the next record in the result set *resultset* that we've opened in our RDO code example, the rdocode project (see "A Full-Scale RDO Example" earlier in this chapter), when the user clicks the appropriate button. We check to make sure we're not trying to move past the end of the record set with the EOF property, and if so, we make sure to move to the last record instead:

```
Private Sub cmdNext_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel
```

```
    If Not resultset.EOF Then resultset.MoveNext
```

```
    If resultset.EOF And resultset.RowCount > 0 Then
```

```
        resultset.MoveLast
```

```
    End If
```

```
...
```

```
    Exit Sub
```

```
ErrLabel:
```

```
    MsgBox Err.Description
```

```
End Sub
```

After moving to the new record, we display the data in that record's fields in the program's text boxes, Text1 and Text2:

```

Private Sub cmdNext_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    If Not resultset.EOF Then resultset.MoveNext
    If resultset.EOF And resultset.RowCount > 0 Then
        resultset.MoveLast
    End If

    Text1.Text = resultset("Name")
    Text2.Text = resultset("Grade")

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub

```

RDO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Result Set

To move to the previous record in an RDO result set, you can use the rdoResultset method MovePrevious. Let's see an example. In this case, we'll move to the previous record in the resultset named `resultset` that we've opened in our RDO code example, the `rdocode` project (see "A Full-Scale RDO Example" earlier in this chapter), when the user clicks the appropriate button. We check to make sure we're not trying to move past the beginning of the record set with the `BOF` property, and if so, we make sure to move to the first record instead:

```

Private Sub cmdPrevious_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    If Not resultset.BOF Then resultset.MovePrevious
    If resultset.BOF And resultset.RowCount > 0 Then
        resultset.MoveFirst
    End If

    Text1.Text = resultset("Name")
    Text2.Text = resultset("Grade")

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub

```

After moving to the new record, we display the data in that record's fields in the program's text boxes Text1 and Text2:

```

Private Sub cmdPrevious_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    If Not resultset.BOF Then resultset.MovePrevious
    If resultset.BOF And resultset.RowCount > 0 Then
        resultset.MoveFirst
    End If

    Text1.Text = resultset("Name")
    Text2.Text = resultset("Grade")

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub

```

RDO: Executing SQL

You can execute SQL statements with RDO objects when you open a result set, as we saw in “Creating A Result Set” in this chapter. You can also execute an SQL statement with the rdoCon object's Execute statements like this:

```

SQLSel = "Select * from students"
rdoConnection.Execute SQLSel

```

A Full-Scale ADO Example

To illustrate ADO data handling in code, we'll build an ADO project—the adocode project. This application lets you open the db.mdb file we built in the previous chapter using ADO objects to edit records, add records, and even delete records. You can also move through the database using buttons you see in Figure 25.5.



Figure 25.5 The adocode project at work.

To edit a record, just type the new value(s) into the text box(es) and click the Update button. To add a record, use the Add button, type the new value(s) into the text box(es), and click the Update button. That's all there is to it—your changes will be reflected in the original database. For reference, the source code for this example is located in the adocode folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

ADO: Opening A Connection

The Testing Department is calling again. The company is switching to using ActiveX Data Objects—about setting up an ADO database-editing program? Already on it, you say.

The first step in editing an ADO database is to open that database, which is ~~called a source~~ in ADO terminology, by setting up a Connection object. To use that and other ADO objects in code, you use Project|References item, select the Microsoft ActiveX Data Objects Library item, and click on OK, adding the ADO Object Library to your program.

Now we're free to create a new ADO Connection object with the Connection object's `Open` method:

```
connection.Open ConnectionString [, UserID [, Password [, OpenOptions]]]
```

Here are the arguments for this method:

- `ConnectionString`—String containing connection information.
- `UserID`—String containing a username to use when establishing the connection.
- `Password`—String containing a password to use when establishing the connection.
- `OpenOptions`—If set to `adConnectAsynch` the connection will be opened asynchronously.

Let's see an example. When we start our ADO code example, the `adocode` example (see "A Full-Stack Example" in this chapter), we'll establish a connection to the database we built in the previous chapter, `db.mdb`:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim db As Connection
    Set db = New Connection

    db.Open "PROVIDER=Microsoft.Jet.OLEDB.3.51;Data _"
            Source=C:\vbbb\adocode\db.mdb; "
    ...
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we have a connection to the data source. To actually work with the data in that data source, we'll create an ADO record set in the next topic.

ADO: Creating A Record Set From A Connection

Now that you've created an ADO connection, you can open a record set from that connection using Recordset object's `Open` method:

```
recordset.Open [Source, [ActiveConnection, [Type, [LockType, [Options]]]]]
```

Here are the arguments for this method:

- `Source`—A valid Command object variable name, an SQL statement, a table name, a stored procedure call, or the file name of a Recordset.
- `ActiveConnection`—A valid Connection object variable name or a string containing `ConnectionString` parameters.

- Type—Sets the Recordset type (see the following list).
- LockType—A value that determines what type of locking (concurrency) the provider should use when opening the Recordset (see the following list).
- Options—A Long value that indicates how the provider should evaluate the argument if it represents something other than a Command object, or that the Recordset should be restored from a file where it was previously saved (see the following list).

Here are the possible values for the `Type` argument:

- `dbOpenKeyset`—Opens a dynaset-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC keyset cursor.
- `dbOpenDynamic`—Opens a dynamic-type Recordset object, which lets the application see changes made by other users.
- `dbOpenStatic`—Opens a static-type Recordset object.
- `dbOpenForwardOnly`—Opens a forward-only-type Recordset object, where you can only use `MoveFirst` and `MoveNext` to move.

Here are the possible values for the `LockType` argument:

- `adLockReadOnly`—The default; read-only.
- `adLockPessimistic`—Pessimistic locking, record by record.
- `adLockOptimistic`—Optimistic locking, record by record.
- `adLockBatchOptimistic`—Optimistic batch updates.

Here are the possible values for the `Options` argument:

- `adCmdText`—Provider should evaluate the `Source` as a definition of a command.
- `adCmdTable`—ADO should generate an SQL query to return all rows from the table named in the `Source`.
- `adCmdTableDirect`—Provider should return all rows from the table named in the `Source`.
- `adCmdStoredProc`—Provider should evaluate the `Source` as a stored procedure.
- `adCmdUnknown`—Type of command in the `Source` argument is not known.
- `adCommandFile`—Record set should be restored from the file named in the `Source`.
- `adExecuteAsync`—Source should be executed asynchronously.
- `adFetchAsync`—After the initial quantity specified in the `CacheSize` property is fetched, any remaining rows should be fetched asynchronously.

Let's see an example. In our ADO code example, the `adoCode` example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), we create a record `adoRecordset` by first declaring it as a form-wide variable:

```
Dim adoRecordset As Recordset
```

Next, we select all the records in the students table this way when the form loads, using the `Open` method:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim db As Connection
    Set db = New Connection
```

```
db.Open "PROVIDER=Microsoft.Jet.OLEDB.3.51;Data _  
Source=C:\vbbb\adocode\db.mdb;"  
Set adoRecordset = New Recordset  
adoRecordset.Open "select Grade, Name from students", _  
db, adOpenStatic, adLockOptimistic  
...  
End Sub
```

Now that we've opened our result set, we can bind that result set to various controls, like text boxes do in the next topic.

ADO: Binding Controls To Record Sets

To bind a control to an ADO Recordset object, you just set that control's `DataSource` property to that object, and then set whatever other data properties that control needs to have set (see, for example, Table 24.1 in the previous chapter, which lists the data properties of various controls).

Let's see an example. In our ADO code example, the `adocode` example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), we create a recordset, open the db.mdb database we created in the last chapter in it. We can bind the fields in that database to the `Text1` and `Text2` this way when the `adocode` main form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim db As Connection
    Set db = New Connection

    db.Open "PROVIDER=Microsoft.Jet.OLEDB.3.51;Data _ 
        Source=C:\vbbb\adocode\db.mdb;"

    Set adoRecordset = New Recordset
    adoRecordset.Open "select Grade, Name from students", _
        db, adOpenStatic, adLockOptimistic

    Set Text1.DataSource = adoRecordset
    Text1.DataField = "Name"
    Set Text2.DataSource = adoRecordset
    Text2.DataField = "Grade"

End Sub
```

That's all it takes—now we've bound two text boxes to an ADO record set.

ADO: Adding A Record To A Record Set

To add a new record to an ADO record set, you use the `AddNew` method. After you've updated the fields of the current record, you save that record to the database with the `Update` method. Here's how you use `AddNew`:

```
recordset.AddNew [ Fields [, Values] ]
```

Here are the arguments for this method:

- Fields—A single name or an array of names or ordinal positions of the fields in the new record.
- Values—A single value or an array of values for the fields in the new record. `Fields` is an array, `Values` must also be an array with the same number of members. The order of field values must match the order of field values in each array.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add a new record to the recordset in our ADO code example, the adocode example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), when the user clicks the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub cmdAdd_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel
    adoRecordset.AddNew

    Text1.Text = " "
    Text2.Text = " "

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

Note that we also clear the two text boxes that display the fieldText1, andText2, so users can enter the data they want in the new record. When done, they press the Update button to update source.

ADO: Refreshing The Record Set

Sometimes you want to refresh the data in a record set—you might be dealing with multiply-connected databases, for instance, where other users are making changes as well—and you can use the Refresh method for that. Let's see an example. Here, we'll refresh the recordset in our ADO code example, the adocode example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), when the user clicks the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub cmdRefresh_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    adoRecordset.Requery

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes to refresh the record set.

ADO: Updating A Record In A Record Set

After changing the data in a record's fields or adding a new record, you update the data source record the change, using the Update method:

`recordset.Update Fields, Values`

Here are the arguments for this method:

- Fields—A single name or an array of names or ordinal positions of the fields in the new record.
- Values—A single value or an array of values for the fields in the new record. Fields is an array, Values must also be an array with the same number of members. The order of field r must match the order of field values in each array.

Let's see an example. When users want to update records in our ADO code example, the ado code example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), they click the appropriate button, and we'll update the data source this way:

```
Private Sub cmdUpdate_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    adoRecordset.Update

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

That's all we need—now we're ready to update records in an ADO record set.

ADO: Moving To The First Record In A Record Set

To move to the first record in an ADO record set, you use the Recordset ~~MoveFirst~~ MoveFirst method (this method takes no parameters). Let's see an example. When the user clicks the appropriate button in our ADO code example, the ado code example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), we'll move to the first record in our record set.

```
Private Sub cmdFirst_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    adoRecordset.MoveFirst

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

And that's all the code we need to move to the first record.

ADO: Moving To The Last Record In A Record Set

To move to the last record in an ADO record set, you use the Recordset ~~MoveLast~~ method (this method takes no parameters). Let's see an example. When the user clicks the appropriate our ADO code example, the adocode example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter move to the last record in our record ~~set~~Recordset

```
Private Sub cmdLast_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    adoRecordset.MoveLast

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

And that's all the code we need to move to the last record.

ADO: Moving To The Next Record In A Record Set

To move to the next record in an ADO record set, you use the Recordset ~~Object~~**MoveNext** method (this method takes no parameters). Let's see an example. When the user clicks the appropriate button in our code example, the adoCode example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), we'll move to the next record in our record set ~~adoRecordset~~.Note that we make sure we don't move past the end of the record set by checking the record set ~~EOF~~ property:

```
Private Sub cmdNext_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    If Not adoRecordset.EOF Then
        adoRecordset.MoveNext
    End If

    If adoRecordset.EOF And adoRecordset.RecordCount > 0 Then
        adoRecordset.MoveLast
    End If

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

ADO: Moving To The Previous Record In A Record Set

To move to the previous record in an ADO record set, you use the Recordset ~~Object~~**MovePrevious** method (this method takes no parameters). Let's see an example. When the user clicks the appropriate button in our code example, the adoCode example (see "A Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), we'll move to the previous record in our record set ~~adoRecordset~~.Note that we make sure we don't move past the end of the record set by checking the record set ~~BOF~~ property:

```
Private Sub cmdPrevious_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    If Not adoRecordset.BOF Then adoRecordset.MovePrevious
    If adoRecordset.BOF And adoRecordset.RecordCount > 0 Then
        adoRecordset.MoveFirst
    End If

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

ADO: Deleting A Record In A Record Set

To delete a record in an ADO record set, you use the `Delete` method:

```
recordset.Delete AffectRecords
```

Here, `AffectRecords` is a value that determines how many records the `Delete` method will affect. It can be one of the following constants:

- `adAffectCurrent`—The default; deletes only the current record.
- `adAffectGroup`—Deletes the records that satisfy the current filter property setting.

Let's see an example. Here, we delete a record in our ADO code example, the `adocode` example (see "Full-Scale ADO Example" in this chapter), when the user presses the appropriate button:

```
Private Sub cmdDelete_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    adoRecordset.Delete
    ...

```

In addition, we move to the next record this way:

```
Private Sub cmdDelete_Click()
    On Error GoTo ErrLabel

    adoRecordset.Delete

    adoRecordset.MoveNext
    If adoRecordset.EOF Then
        adoRecordset.MoveLast
    End If

    Exit Sub

ErrLabel:
    MsgBox Err.Description
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we've deleted a record.

ADO: Executing SQL In A Record Set

You can execute an SQL statement when you open a record set using the `Open` method by passing that statement as the `Source` argument:

```
recordset.Open [ Source, [ActiveConnection, [Type, [LockType, [Options]]]]]
```

Here are the arguments for this method:

- `Source`—A valid Command object variable name, an SQL statement, a table name, a stored procedure name, or the file name of a Recordset.

- ActiveConnection—A valid Connection object variable name or a string containing ConnectionString parameters.
- Type—Sets the Recordset type (see the following list).
- LockType—A value that determines what type of locking (concurrency) the provider should use when opening the Recordset object (see the following list).
- Options—A Long value that indicates how the provider should evaluate the argument if it represents something other than a Command object, or that the Recordset object should be restored from a file where it was previously saved (see the following list).

Here are the possible values for the **Type** argument:

- dbOpenKeyset—Opens a dynaset-type Recordset object, which is like an ODBC keyset cursor.
- dbOpenDynamic—Opens a dynamic-type Recordset object, which lets the application see changes made by other users.
- dbOpenStatic—Opens a static-type Recordset object.
- dbOpenForwardOnly—Opens a forward-only-type Recordset object, where you can only use MoveNext to move.

Here are the possible values for the **LockType** argument:

- adLockReadOnly—The default; read-only.
- adLockPessimistic—Pessimistic locking, record by record.
- adLockOptimistic—Optimistic locking, record by record.
- adLockBatchOptimistic—Optimistic batch updates.

Here are the possible values for the **Options** argument:

- adCmdText—Provider should evaluate Source as a definition of a command.
- adCmdTable—ADO should generate an SQL query to return all rows from the table named in Source
- adCmdTableDirect—Provider should return all rows from the table named Source
- adCmdStoredProc—Provider should evaluate Source as a stored procedure.
- adCmdUnknown—Type of command in the Source argument is not known.
- adCommandFile—Record set should be restored from the file named Source
- adExecuteAsync—Source should be executed asynchronously.
- adFetchAsync—After the initial quantity specified in the CacheSize property is fetched, any remaining rows should be fetched asynchronously.

Here's an example where we open a record set with the SQL statement* from students":

```
adoRecordset.Open "select * from students", db, adOpenStatic,
adLockOptimistic
```

Chapter 26

OLE

If you need an immediate solution to:

Adding An OLE Control To A Form

Creating And Embedding An OLE Object At Design Time

Linking Or Embedding An Existing Document At Design Time

Autosizing An OLE Control

Determining How An Object Is Displayed In An OLE Container Control

Using The OLE Control's Pop-Up Menus At Design Time

Inserting An OLE Object Into An OLE Control At Runtime

Deactivating OLE Objects

Using Paste Special To Insert A Selected Part Of A Document Into An OLE Control

How To Activate The OLE Objects In Your Program

Activating OLE Objects With A Pop-Up Menu That Lists All OLE Verbs

Activating OLE Objects From Code

Is An Object Linked Or Embedded?

Handling Multiple OLE Objects

Using OLE Control Arrays To Handle Multiple OLE Objects

Loading New OLE Controls At Runtime

Dragging OLE Objects In A Form

Deleting OLE Objects

Copying And Pasting OLE Objects With The Clipboard

Zooming OLE Objects

Saving And Retrieving Embedded Object's Data

Handling OLE Object Updated Events

Disabling In-Place Editing

In Depth

For obvious reasons, Object Linking and Embedding (OLE) is a very popular programming topic. Using OLE you can give the users of your program direct access to OLE server programs like Microsoft Word or Excel. In fact, you can integrate all kinds of programs together using OLE, giving your program the power of database, spreadsheet, word processor, and even graphics program wrapped into one.

Visual Basic lets you do this with the OLE control. This control can display OLE objects, and the objects appear as mini-versions of the programs connected to them. For example, if you display an Excel spreadsheet in an OLE control, the control displays what looks like a small version of Excel.

there in your program. The program that creates the object displayed in the OLE control is an OLE server and your program, which displays the OLE object, is called an ~~Container~~ In fact, the proper name for the OLE control is the OLE container control.

You can use the OLE object in the OLE control just as you would in the program that created it; for example, you can work with an Excel spreadsheet in an OLE control just as if it was open in Excel itself. How does that work? There are two primary ways of working with the OLE objects in an OLE control: opening them and editing them in place.

When you open them, the OLE server application is launched in its own window and the OLE object appears in that application. When you want to save your changes to the OLE object in the OLE control, you use the server's Update item in the File menu.

When you edit an OLE object in place, the server application is not launched in its own window; instead, the object becomes active in the OLE control itself and may be edited directly. The OLE container program's menu system is taken over by the OLE server—and you may be startled to see Microsoft Word's or Excel's menu system in your program's menu bar. To close an OLE object that is open for in-place editing, you click the form outside the object.

As an example, the Microsoft Excel spreadsheet in Figure 26.1 is open for in-place editing.



Figure 26.1 Opening an Excel spreadsheet in an OLE control for in-place editing.

When the OLE object in an OLE control is closed, it appears in its inactive state, as shown in Figure 26.2.



Figure 26.2 An inactive OLE object.

OLE actions are called verbs for example, opening an OLE object is accomplished with the VbOLEOpen verb, and editing it in place is accomplished with VbOLEInPlaceActivate verb. We'll see how to handle OLE verbs in this chapter when we use the OLE control's `DoVerb` method.

What other methods does the OLE control support? Those methods and what they do appear in Table 26.1. You can also use the OLE control's `Action` method to invoke the methods in Table 26.1, and the values for this property also appear in Table 26.1. When you use the `Action` property, the control often uses other properties of the control, such as `SourceDoc` property, to find the data it needs to perform the requested operation. Note, however, that the `Action` property is considered obsolete, and we'll use the OLE methods instead.

Table 26.1 OLE methods.

Method	Action Value	Meaning
CreateEmbed	0	Creates embedded object
CreateLink	1	Creates linked object from the contents of a file

Copy	4	Copies the object to the system Clipboard
Paste	5	Copies data from the system Clipboard to an OLE container control
Update	6	Retrieves the current data from the application that supplied the object and displays that data as a picture in the OLE container control
DoVerb	7	Opens an object for an operation, such as editing
Close	9	Closes an object and terminates the connection to the application that provided the object
Delete	10	Deletes the specified object and frees the memory associated with it
SaveToFile	11	Saves an object to a data file
ReadFromFile	12	Loads an object that was saved to a data file
InsertObjDlg	14	Displays the Insert Object dialog box
PasteSpecialDlg	15	Displays the Paste Special dialog box
FetchVerbs	17	Updates the list of verbs an object supports
SaveToOle1File	18	Saves an object to the OLE version 1 file format

The term **Object Linking and Embedding** implies two ways of inserting objects into an OLE control—through linking and embedding such objects. How do those operations differ?

Linking Vs. Embedding

What's the difference between linking and embedding OLE objects in the OLE control? The main difference has to do with where the object's data (such as the data in a spreadsheet) is stored. Data associated with a linked object is manipulated by the OLE server application that created it and stored outside an OLE container control. Data associated with an embedded object is contained in the OLE container control, and that data can be saved with your Visual Basic application.

When you embed an object into an OLE control, that control stores the name of the application that supplied the object, along with its data. The `OLEType` property of the control is set `Embedded(1)`. When you link an object to an OLE control, that control stores the name of the application that supplied the object and a reference to the data. The `OLEType` property of the control is set `Linked (0)`.

Note that because an embedded object's data is stored in your program, you're responsible for saving and reading that data if it changes. To do that, we'll use the `SaveToFile` and `ReadFromFile` methods in this chapter.

You can also specify the types of objects that an OLE control can take by setting the `OLETypeAllowed` property to `Linked (0)`, `Embedded(1)`, or `Either (2)`.

To embed objects into an OLE control at runtime, you usually use the `Insert Object` object of the container program's Object menu. To link objects to an OLE control, you usually copy the object from the server application and use the `Paste` special menu object in the OLE container.

TIP: To place an object in an OLE container control, the component that provides the object must be registered in your system Registry as an OLE server.

That's it, then, for the overview of OLE. We've seen how the process works in overview; now it's time to turn to this chapter's Immediate Solutions.

Immediate Solutions

Adding An OLE Control To A Form

The Testing Department is on the phone again. How about providing all the functionality that Microsoft Excel has in your new program? Um...you say. It would be really great, they say, if we could let users work with spreadsheets using all the Excel commands they're used to. Can you have it done by next week?

Using the OLE control, you can embed or link objects from OLE server programs like Excel into your own program. In this way, you can present your program's users with a spreadsheet that's not just Excel—it is Excel.

The OLE control is an intrinsic Visual Basic control, and it appears in the toolbox when Visual Basic first starts. The OLE Control tool is the eleventh tool down on the left in the toolbox in Figure 26.3—you can't miss it; it's the one with the letters "OLE" in it.



Figure 26.3 The OLE Control tool.

Add an OLE control to a form now by double-clicking the OLE Control tool. When you do, the OLE control appears in the form, and a moment later, the Insert Object dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 26.4.



Figure 26.4 The Insert Object dialog box.

Now that you've created an OLE control, you can use the Insert Object dialog box to embed or link an OLE object into that control, and we'll see how that works in the next two topics in this chapter.

Creating And Embedding An OLE Object At Design Time

When you add an OLE control to a Visual Basic program, the Insert Object dialog box appears, shown in Figure 26.4, and you can use this dialog box to create and embed a new OLE object in the OLE control. Make sure the Create New option is selected, find the name of the OLE server application you want to use, and click on OK.

For example, we've embedded a new Microsoft Excel spreadsheet in the OLE control we've added to a form at design time in Figure 26.5. This spreadsheet is activated for in-place editing by default; to edit the object, click the form itself outside the OLE control.



Figure 26.5 Embedding an Excel spreadsheet at design time.

Linking Or Embedding An Existing Document At Design Time

When you add an OLE control to a form, the Insert Object dialog box appears in order to allow you to insert an OLE object into the new control. As we saw in the previous topic, you can create a new OLE object with the Insert Object dialog box. However, you can also embed or link to an existing file. To do so, click the Create From File option button in the Insert Object dialog box.

When you select a file by typing its path and name into the File text box or by using the Browse... button and then click on OK, that file is embedded as an OLE object in the OLE control. Embedding an existing file this way is handy if you've already got a file you want to display and work with in your program, and it saves you the time of creating the file over again from scratch in a new OLE object.

You can also link an OLE object to an OLE control using the Insert Object dialog box. To do that, check the box labeled Link In The Insert Object Dialog, then select the file as we did before to embed the object.

Autosizing An OLE Control

After you've added an OLE control to a form, you can specify how you want that control to handle OLE object insertions: for example, should the control resize itself when an OLE object is inserted into it or not? You can specify how the control should handle object insertions with the `SizeMode` property.

Here are the possible values for `SizeMode`:

- `vbOLESizeClip`—0 (the default); Clip. The object is displayed in actual size. If the object is larger than the OLE control, its image is clipped by the control's borders.

- vbOLESizeStretch—1; Stretch. The object's image is sized to fill the OLE control. (Note the image may not maintain the original proportions of the object.)
- vbOLESizeAutoSize—2; Autosize. The OLE control is resized to display the entire object.
- vbOLESizeZoom—3; Zoom. The object is resized to fill the OLE container control as much as possible while still maintaining the original proportions of the object.

TIP: While we're on the subject of customizing the appearance of OLE controls, we might add that you can remove the border of an OLE control by setting its `Border` property to `None` (0).

Determining How An Object Is Displayed In An OLE Container Control

There are two ways of displaying an OLE object in an OLE control: displaying that object's content and displaying it as an icon. Throughout this chapter, we'll use the content display, which is the default, but you can also display it in icon form using the OLE control's `DisplayType` property. Here are the possible settings for `DisplayType`:

- vbOLEDisplayContent—0 (the default); Content. When the OLE container control contains an object, the object's data is displayed in the control.
- vbOLEDisplayIcon—1; Icon. When the OLE container control contains an object, the object's icon is displayed in the control.

For example, we've set the `DisplayType` property of the OLE control in Figure 26.6 to `vbOLEDisplayIcon` so it displays the icon of its OLE object, which in this case is an Excel object. Note that you cannot open an iconic OLE object for in-place editing, but you can open it for editing in the OLE server program (in other words, when you double-click the object, the OLE server application opens in its own window).



Figure 26.6 Displaying an OLE object in iconic form.

TIP: Note that you must set the `DisplayType` property before you insert an OLE object into the OLE control because you cannot set `DisplayType` property while the OLE control contains an object.

Using The OLE Control's Pop-Up Menus At Design Time

When you add an OLE control to a form, the Insert Object dialog box appears, and you can insert an object into the control at that time. However, if you don't want to insert an object right away, you can use the control's pop-up menu later. To open the OLE control's pop-up menu, just right-click the control at design time. Here are the primary items in the menu that appears:

- Insert Object—Open the Insert Object dialog box.
- Paste Special—Link to Clipboard object.
- Delete—Delete embedded object.
- Create Link—Create a link to the document in the `SourceDoc` property.
- Create Embedded Object—Creates an embedded object using `Class` or `SourceDoc` property.

Note that you can link to or embed a document in the OLE control if you've set the control's `SourceDoc` property. You can also create a new embedded object if you've set the `Class` property; classes specify what code components (formerly called OLE automation servers) are available. (We'll see how classes work in the next chapter.)

TIP: You can get a list of the class names available to your application by selecting `Class` property in the Properties window and clicking the arrow button in that property's entry.

Inserting An OLE Object Into An OLE Control At Runtime

The Testing Department is on the phone again. It's fine that you've been able to embed an OLE object in an OLE control at design time, but don't you think it would be great if you could let users embed their own OLE objects? Maybe, you say.

To let users insert their own OLE objects into an OLE control, you can display the same Insert Object dialog box that appears at design time when you created the OLE control, and you use the control's `InsertObjDlg` method to do that (this method takes no parameters).

Let's see an example. Add an OLE control `OLE1` to a form now, and click Cancel when the Insert

Object dialog box appears. Set the OLE control's `SizeMode` property to `vbOLESizeAutoSize` (note that when you set an OLE control's `SizeMode` property to `vbOLESizeAutoSize`, the OLE server sets the size of the OLE object, so the size of the OLE control, `OLE1`, will probably change when the object is inserted). Finally, add an Insert menu to the form with one item in it: Insert Object.

When users click the Insert Object menu item, they want to insert an OLE object and we can let them create and embed a new object, embed an existing file, or embed a link to an existing file. In the `InsertObjDlg` method. We do so like this:

```
Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    OLE1.InsertObjDlg
    ...
End Sub
```

When we execute this method, `InsertObjDlg`, the program displays the Insert Object dialog box, which appears in Figure 26.4. Using this dialog box, the user can embed new objects, existing files, or existing files. In fact, that's all the code we need—when `InsertObjDlg` method finishes, it inserts the new OLE object in the OLE control.

We can do one more thing here—we can check to make sure the OLE insertion operation was completed successfully. To do that, we'll use the OLE control's `OLEType` property to check if there's an OLE object in `OLE1`. This property can take the values `vbOLELinked`, `vbOLEEmbedded`, or `vbOLENone`. Here, we check that property, and if it's set to `vbOLENone`, we indicate to the user that there was an error:

```
Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    OLE1.InsertObjDlg
    If OLE1.OLETyPE = vbOLENone Then
        MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
    End If
End Sub
```

Using this code allows us to insert OLE objects like the Excel spreadsheet you see in our OLE control in Figure 26.7. Here, when the object is first inserted, it's opened for in-place editing by default.



Figure 26.7 Inserting an OLE object into a program.

TIP: The Insert Object dialog box only lets the user perform the actions you've allowed with the `OLETypeAllowed` property; this property can be `Linked` (0), `Embedded`(1), or `Either` (2).

There's a problem here, however. Now that we've inserted a new OLE object and activated it, how do we deactivate it? There are no Exit items in the Excel menu system that's taken over our program's menu system. Usually you deactivate an OLE object by clicking the form around the OLE control; we'll see how that works in the next topic.

The code for this example so far, insertole.frm version 1, appears in Listing 26.1 (version 2 will also support a Paste Special menu item). (The final version of this code, version 3, is located in the *ch26* folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.)

Listing 26.1 insertole.frm version 1

```

VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption          =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight    =   2115
    ClientLeft      =   165
    ClientTop       =   735
    ClientWidth     =   4680
    LinkTopic       =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight     =   2115
    ScaleWidth      =   4680
    StartUpPosition =   3  'Windows Default
    Begin VB.OLE OLE1
        Height         =   1095
        Left           =   840
        SizeMode       =   2  'AutoSize
        TabIndex       =   0
        Top            =   360
        Width          =   3015
    End
    Begin VB.Menu File
        Caption         =   "File"
    End
    Begin VB.Menu Insert
        Caption         =   "Insert"
        Begin VB.Menu InsertObject
            Caption       =   "Insert object"
        End
    End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False

Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    OLE1.InsertObjDlg
    If OLE1.OLEType = vbOLENone Then
        MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
    End If

```

End Sub

Deactivating OLE Objects

You've inserted and activated a new OLE object in an OLE control. However, there doesn't seem any way to deactivate the object now—the OLE server's menus have taken over your program's system, and there's no Exit item. How do you close the OLE object?

Usually you click the form around an OLE object to deactivate that object. Deactivating an OLE is easy: you just set its ~~IsRunning~~ property to False. You can also use the OLE control's ~~Close~~ method to do the same thing.

As an example, we add this code to the oleinsert program we developed in the previous topic, a the user to deactivate OLE objects by clicking the form around the OLE control:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    OLE1.AppIsRunning = False
End Sub
```

Now the user can close an open OLE object just by clicking the form around the object.

Using Paste Special To Insert A Selected Part Of A Document Into An OLE Control

Besides using the ~~InsertObjDlg~~ method we saw two topics ago, you can also insert OLE objects u the Paste Special menu item in most OLE container programs. Besides embedding or linking to entire document, Paste Special allows you to link or embed just the part of that document you w

Users select the part of the document they want to embed or link to in the OLE server applicatio select the Copy item in that application's Edit menu, and then select Paste Special in your conta program to paste the part of the document they've selected into an OLE control. You support Pa Special with the OLE control's ~~PasteSpecialDlg~~ method (this method takes no parameters).

Let's see an example. Here, we add a Paste Special menu item to the Insert menu in the oleins example we developed two topics ago (see Listing 26.1). When users click that menu item, they made a selection in an OLE server program, and we should paste that selection into our OLE c OLE1. For this example, we select (using the mouse) a range of cells in an Excel spreadsheet, shown in Figure 26.8, and copy them using Excel's Copy menu item. (You must also have save Excel document you're working with to disk so there is an actual document to which to link.)



Figure 26.8 Selecting and copying a range of cells in Microsoft Excel.

In the Paste Special event handler in our oleinsert example, then, we first check to make sure t something to paste with the OLE control's ~~PasteOK~~ property; if True, we can paste an OLE object:

```
Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
    If OLE1.PasteOK Then
        ...
    End If
```

To get the object to paste, we use PasteSpecialDlg

```
Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
    If OLE1.PasteOK Then
        OLE1.PasteSpecialDlg
    End If
    ...

```

The Paste Special dialog box appears at this point, indicating that we can paste an Excel object (Figure 26.9). We can paste this object as an embedded object if we click the Paste option button or link if we click the Paste Link option button. Here, we click Paste Link and click on OK. This pastes the new OLE link in our OLE control OLE1, as shown in Figure 26.10.



Figure 26.9 The Paste Special dialog box.



Figure 26.10 Inserting a link to part of a document.

We can do one more thing here—we can check to make sure the OLE paste operation was successful. To do that, we'll use the OLE control's OLEType property to check if there's an OLE object in OLE1. This property can take the values vbOLELinked, vbOLEEmbedded, or vbOLENone. Here, we check that property, and if it's set to vbOLENone, we indicate to the user that there was an error:

```
Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
    If OLE1.PasteOK Then
        OLE1.PasteSpecialDlg
    End If
    If OLE1.OLEType = vbOLENone Then
        MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
    End If
End Sub
```

That's it—the new version of this program, oleinsert.frm version 2, appears in Listing 26.2. (The version, Version 3—which is located in the insertole folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM—will let the user activate OLE objects from a menu.)

Listing 26.2 insertole.frm version 2

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption      =   "Form1"
```

```
ClientHeight      = 2115
ClientLeft       = 165
ClientTop        = 735
ClientWidth      = 4680
LinkTopic         = "Form1"
ScaleHeight       = 2115
ScaleWidth        = 4680
StartUpPosition  = 3 'Windows Default
Begin VB.OLE OLE1
    Height          = 1095
    Left             = 840
    SizeMode         = 2 'AutoSize
    TabIndex         = 0
    Top              = 360
    Width            = 3015
End
Begin VB.Menu File
    Caption          = "File"
End
Begin VB.Menu Insert
    Caption          = "Insert"
    Begin VB.Menu InsertObject
        Caption          = "Insert object"
    End
    Begin VB.Menu PasteSpecial
        Caption          = "Paste special"
    End
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Private Sub Form_Click()
    OLE1.AppIsRunning = False
End Sub

Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    OLE1.InsertObjDlg
    If OLE1.OLETyPe = vbOLENone Then
        MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
```

```
If OLE1.PasteOK Then
    OLE1.PasteSpecialDlg
End If
If OLE1.OLEType = vbOLENone Then
    MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
End If

End Sub
```

How To Activate The OLE Objects In Your Program

You can set the conditions under which an OLE object is activated using the `AutoActivate` property. Here are the possible values for that property (we'll stick with `vbOLEActivateDoubleClick`, the default, in this chapter):

- `vbOLEActivateManual`—0; Manual. The object isn't automatically activated. You can activate an object in code using the `DoVerb` method.
- `vbOLEActivateGetFocus`—1; Focus. If the OLE container control contains an object that supports single-click activation, the application that provides the object is activated when the OLE container control receives the focus.
- `vbOLEActivateDoubleClick`—2 (the default); Double-click. If the OLE container control contains an object, the application that provides the object is activated when the user double-clicks the OLE container control or presses Enter when the control has the focus.
- `vbOLEActivateAuto`—3; Automatic. If the OLE container control contains an object, the application that provides the object is activated based on the object's normal method of activation either when the control receives the focus or when the user double-clicks the control.

For example, if you leave the OLE control's `AutoActivate` property set to `vbOLEActivateDoubleClick`, the object is activated when the user double-clicks it. In fact, what really happens is that the OLE object's primary verb is executed, and that verb is almost always a command to open the object for in-place editing. (For a list of the OLE verbs, see "Activating OLE Objects From Code" later in this chapter.) What that means in practice is that when you double-click an OLE control in a Visual Basic OLE control, the usual response is that the OLE object is opened for in-place editing.

What if you don't want to edit the control in place? What if you prefer to launch the OLE server application in a separate window and work with the object there? In that case, you want to execute the object's `Open` verb, not its `Edit` verb. To let the user use all the OLE verbs the object supports, you enable its OLE verb pop-up menu, and we'll see how to do that in the next topic.

Activating OLE Objects With A Pop-Up Menu That Lists All OLE Verbs

To let the user select from among all the OLE verbs an object is capable of supporting, you set the `AutoVerbMenu` property to True. When this property is True (the default), and the user right-clicks an inactive OLE object, a pop-up menu appears listing the OLE verbs the object supports.

For example, when you right-click an inactive Excel object in the OLE container example we've developed in the last few topics, a pop-up menu appears, displaying the possible OLE verbs you can choose (see Figure 26.11). Selecting a verb in the pop-up menu executes that verb; `Edit` verb opens the OLE object for in-place editing, and `Open` verb launches Excel and opens the OLE object in Excel.



Figure 26.11 Pop-up menu listing the OLE verbs an Excel OLE object supports.

WARNING! When the `AutoVerbMenu` property is True, `Click` events and `MouseDown` events don't

occur when the OLE container control is clicked with the right mouse button.

Activating OLE Objects From Code

In the previous few topics, we've seen how to add an OLE object to an OLE control and how to deactivate it. In fact, we've even seen how the object is activated when the user double-clicks it. how can we activate an OLE object in code? To do that, you use the OLE control's `DoVerb` method:

```
OLEControl1.DoVerb ([ verb ])
```

Here are the possible values for the `verb` argument—an OLE object's primary verb is considered its default verb, and it usually opens the object for in-place editing:

- `vbOLEPrimary`—0; the default action for the object.
- `vbOLEShow`—1; activates the object for editing. If the application that created the object supports in-place activation, the object is activated within the OLE container control.
- `vbOLEOpen`—2; opens the object in a separate application window. If the application that created the object supports in-place activation, the object is activated in its own window.
- `vbOLEHide`—3; for embedded objects, hides the application that created the object.
- `vbOLEUIActivate`—4; if the object supports in-place activation, activates the object for in-place activation and shows any user interface tools. If the object doesn't support in-place activation, the object doesn't activate and an error occurs.
- `vbOLEInPlaceActivate`—5; if the user moves the focus to the OLE container control, creates a window for the object and prepares the object to be edited. An error occurs if the object supports activation on a single mouse click.
- `vbOLEDiscardUndoState`—6; used when the object is activated for editing to discard all record of changes that the object's application can undo.

Let's see an example. Here, we add a new item, Activate Object, to the File menu in the `oleinse` example we've developed over the previous few topics. If the user clicks this item, we want to activate the OLE object in the `OLE1` control, and we'll do that by executing its primary verb:

```
Private Sub ActivateObject_Click()
    OLE1.DoVerb 0
End Sub
```

For example, if there's an inactive Excel spreadsheet in the OLE control, selecting the Activate Object menu item will open it for in-place editing. The final code for this example is located in the `oleins` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Is An Object Linked Or Embedded?

You can use an OLE control's `OLEType` property to determine how if an OLE object is linked or embedded. If the object is linked, `OLEType` will be set to `Linked` (0). If the object is embedded, `OLEType` will be set to `Embedded`(1).

Handling Multiple OLE Objects

So far, we've only dealt with a single OLE object in our example program, oleinsert. However, when you start working with multiple OLE controls in a program, there are some issues that you might think of at first. For example, if you have two OLE controls in a form, and the user selects your program's Insert Object menu item, which control do you insert the new OLE object into?

You usually handle this problem by checking to see which control is the active control—that is, the control with the focus—in the program. In this way, the user clicks a control to give it the focus and uses the Insert Object menu item. Then you can use the Visual Basic ActiveControl property to see which control to use.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll create a new program, olemultiple, with two OLE controls, andOLE2. We'll develop this program over the next few topics to handle multiple OLE objects and even load new OLE controls in if the user wants to work with more than two objects at once.

For now, add two OLE controls OLE1 and OLE2 (setting theirSizeMode properties to VbOLEAutoSize), to a new program, olemultiple. When the Insert Object dialog box comes up for each control, just click Cancel to make sure we don't insert any OLE objects before runtime. There are two menus as well: a File menu with the item Activate Object and an Insert menu with two items Insert Object and Paste Special.

When users select the Activate Object menu item, they want to activate the OLE object with the focus and we can do that with the OLE control's DoVerb method. To determine which control to activate, use the form's ActiveControl property. In fact, we can even make sure that the active control is really an OLE control by checking its type using the TypeOf keyword:

```
Private Sub ActivateObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
    ...
End Sub
```

If the control with the focus is an OLE control, we activate the object in that control, executing its primary verb:

```
Private Sub ActivateObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.DoVerb 0
    End If
End Sub
```

In the same way, we can insert a new OLE object into the OLE control with the focus using the InsertObjDlg method when the user clicks the Insert Object menu item:

```
Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.InsertObjDlg
        If ActiveControl.OLEType = None Then
            MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
        End If
    End If
End Sub
```

And we can perform Paste Special operations on the OLE control with the focus when the user

the Paste Special menu item:

```
Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        If ActiveControl.PasteOK Then
            ActiveControl.PasteSpecialDlg
        End If
        If ActiveControl.OLEType = None Then
            MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
        End If
    End If
End Sub
```

In fact, we can even deactivate our OLE objects when the user clicks the form outside any OLE with the AppIsRunning property:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    OLE1.AppIsRunning = False
    OLE2.AppIsRunning = False
End Sub
```

Note that this last subroutine contains some awkward code: we need to address each OLE control name (what if we had 50 OLE controls?), and addressing each control by name precludes the possibility of loading in new OLE controls at runtime (you need a control array for that). We'll look at these two issues in the next topic.

Using OLE Control Arrays To Handle Multiple OLE Objects

When you've got a number of OLE objects to work with in a program, it helps to store them in an array because you can address those objects using an array index instead of by name; this allows you to loop over them. Let's see an example. Here, we will modify the olemultiple example started in the previous topic to use an array of OLE controls instead of individual OLE controls. In this program stands, we have to address each OLE control by name like this, where we deactivate each active object when the user clicks the form:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    OLE1.AppIsRunning = False
    OLE2.AppIsRunning = False
End Sub
```

To install the OLE control array in the olemultiple example, delete the two OLE controls already named OLE1 and OLE2. Add two OLE controls named OLEControls now, answering Yes when Visual Basic asks if you want to create a control array. Set these new controls' **AutoSize** properties to **AutoSize**. Because we'll load new OLE controls into this program under user control in the next topic, we keep track of the total number of OLE controls in an integer named **TotalOLEControls**:

```
Dim intTotalOLEControls As Integer
```

And we set intTotalOLEControls to 2 when we start the program:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    intTotalOLEControls = 2
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks the form to deactivate any running OLE objects, we can simply loop on the OLEControls array:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 0 To intTotalOLEControls - 1
        OLEControls(intLoopIndex).AppIsRunning = False
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub
```

Now we're able to insert two OLE objects into the olemultiple program, as shown in Figure 26.1. However, standard OLE container programs should be able to load new OLE controls on demand to handle additional objects as the user requires, and we'll see how to do that in the next topic.

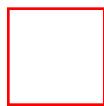


Figure 26.12 Inserting multiple OLE objects into a program.

The code for this example, olemultiple.frm version 1, appears in Listing 26.3 (version 2 will let the user load additional OLE controls as required). (Version 3, the final version of this example, is located in the olemultiple folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.)

Listing 26.3 olemultiple.frm version 1

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption          =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight    =   3015
    ClientLeft      =   165
    ClientTop       =   735
    ClientWidth     =   4680
    LinkTopic       =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight     =   3015
    ScaleWidth      =   4680
    StartUpPosition =   3  'Windows Default
Begin VB.OLE OLEControls
    Height          =   1215
    Index           =   1
    Left            =   840
    SizeMode        =   2  'AutoSize
    TabIndex        =   1
    Top             =   1680
    Width           =   3015
End
Begin VB.OLE OLEControls
    Height          =   1215
    Index           =   0
    Left            =   840
    SizeMode        =   2  'AutoSize
    TabIndex        =   0
    Top             =   240
    Width           =   3015
End
Begin VB.Menu File
    Caption          =   "File"
    Begin VB.Menu ActivateObject
        Caption          =   "Activate object"
    End
    Begin VB.Menu CreateNewOLEControl
        Caption          =   "Create new OLE control"
    End
End
Begin VB.Menu Insert
    Caption          =   "Insert"
    Begin VB.Menu InsertObject
        Caption          =   "Insert object"
    End
End
```

```
Begin VB.Menu PasteSpecial
    Caption          =   "Paste special"
End
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Dim intTotalOLEControls As Integer
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer

Private Sub ActivateObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.DoVerb 0
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Load()
    intTotalOLEControls = 2
End Sub

Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.InsertObjDlg
        If ActiveControl.OLETyPe = None Then
            MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
        End If
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        If ActiveControl.PasteOK Then
            ActiveControl.PasteSpecialDlg
        End If
        If ActiveControl.OLETyPe = None Then
            MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
        End If
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer
```

```

For intLoopIndex = 0 To intTotalOLEControls - 1
    OLEControls(intLoopIndex).AppIsRunning = False
    OLEControls(intLoopIndex).Visible = True
Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

Loading New OLE Controls At Runtime

The olemultiple example we've developed in the previous two topics is designed to handle multiple OLE objects, but so far we only can handle two such objects because there are only two OLE controls in the program. OLE container programs, however, may be expected to handle more than two OLE objects, so we'll take a look at how to load additional OLE controls as required at runtime.

Let's see an example. We'll modify the olemultiple example now to let the user load in multiple OLE controls as required. To do that, add a new menu item, Create New OLE Control, to that program's menu. When the user selects this item, we start by incrementing the total number of OLE controls which we've stored in the variable `intTotalOLEControls`:

```

Private Sub CreateNewOLEControl_Click()
    intTotalOLEControls = intTotalOLEControls + 1
    ...

```

Next, we load a new OLE control, adding it to our array of OLE controls:

```

Private Sub CreateNewOLEControl_Click()
    intTotalOLEControls = intTotalOLEControls + 1
    Load OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1)
    ...

```

Now we position the new OLE control at upper left in the program, make it visible, and let the user insert an OLE object into it with the `InsertObjDlg` method:

```

Private Sub CreateNewOLEControl_Click()
    intTotalOLEControls = intTotalOLEControls + 1

    Load OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1)
    OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).Move 0, 0
    OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).Visible = True
    OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).InsertObjDlg
    ...

```

Finally, we can check if the object insertion operation was completed successfully and inform the user if not:

```

Private Sub CreateNewOLEControl_Click()
    intTotalOLEControls = intTotalOLEControls + 1

```

```
Load OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1)
OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).Move 0, 0
OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).Visible = True
OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).InsertObjDlg

If OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).OLEType = None Then
    MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
End If
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we let the user add OLE controls as needed, using the Create New OLE Cor menu item, as you can see in Figure 26.13. As you can also see in Figure 26.13, however, the placement of our new OLE object is less than optimal. Ideally, of course, the user can specify w a container program the new OLE object should go, and we'll take a look at that in the next topic where we let the user drag OLE controls in a form.

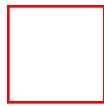


Figure 26.13 Loading a new OLE control at runtime.

The code for this example, olemultiple.frm version 2, appears in Listing 26.4. (The final version, version 3—which is located in the olemultiple folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM—wi the user drag and position OLE controls.)

Listing 26.4 olemultiple.frm version 2

```
VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption          =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight     =   3015
    ClientLeft       =   165
    ClientTop        =   735
    ClientWidth      =   4680
    LinkTopic        =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight      =   3015
    ScaleWidth       =   4680
    StartUpPosition =   3  'Windows Default
Begin VB.OLE OLEControls
    Height          =   1215
    Index           =   1
    Left            =   840
    SizeMode         =   2  'AutoSize
    TabIndex         =   1
    Top             =   1680
    Width           =   3015
End
Begin VB.OLE OLEControls
    Height          =   1215
    Index           =   0
    Left            =   840
    SizeMode         =   2  'AutoSize
    TabIndex         =   0
    Top             =   240
    Width           =   3015
End
Begin VB.Menu File
    Caption          =   "File"
    Begin VB.Menu ActivateObject
        Caption          =   "Activate object"
    End
    Begin VB.Menu CreateNewOLEControl
        Caption          =   "Create new OLE control"
    End
End
Begin VB.Menu Insert
    Caption          =   "Insert"
    Begin VB.Menu InsertObject
        Caption          =   "Insert object"
    End
    Begin VB.Menu PasteSpecial
```

```
    Caption      =      "Paste special"
End
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Dim intTotalOLEControls As Integer
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer

Private Sub ActivateObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.DoVerb 0
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub CreateNewOLEControl_Click()
    intTotalOLEControls = intTotalOLEControls + 1

    Load OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1)
    OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).Move 0, 0
    OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).Visible = True
    OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).InsertObjDlg

    If OLEControls(intTotalOLEControls - 1).OLEType = None Then
        MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Load()
    intTotalOLEControls = 2
End Sub

Private Sub InsertObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.InsertObjDlg
        If ActiveControl.OLETyoe = None Then
            MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
        End If
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub PasteSpecial_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
```

```

        If ActiveControl.PasteOK Then
            ActiveControl.PasteSpecialDlg
        End If
        If ActiveControl.OLEType = None Then
            MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
        End If
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intLoopIndex As Integer

    For intLoopIndex = 0 To intTotalOLEControls - 1
        OLEControls(intLoopIndex).AppIsRunning = False
    Next intLoopIndex
End Sub

```

Dragging OLE Objects In A Form

In most OLE container programs, such as Microsoft Word, users can position OLE objects as they order to create a composite document. To let users position OLE objects in a form as they would like, you can support dragging those controls using the `Drag` method:

`OLEControl.Drag action`

Here are the possible values for the `action` argument:

- `vbCancel`—Cancels the drag operation.
- `vbBeginDrag`—Starts the drag operation
- `vbEndDrag`—Ends the drag operation.

Let's see an example. We'll modify the `olemultiple` example program that we've developed in the previous few topics to let the user drag OLE controls. When the user presses the mouse in an OLE control, start the drag operation, and we do that by recording the location of the mouse in two new form-wide variables, `intXOffset` and `intYOffset`:

`Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer`

Here's how we set those variables and begin the drag operation when the user presses the mouse:

```

Private Sub OLEControls_MouseDown(Index As Integer, Button As Integer, _
    Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    intXOffset = X
    intYOffset = Y
    OLEControls(Index).Drag vbBeginDrag
End Sub

```

Now when the user drags the control to a new location in the form, we will move the control to that

location using the form's DragDrop event handler:

```
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Source.Move X - intXOffset, Y - intYOffset
End Sub
```

If the user doesn't move the control far enough, however, the control itself fires its DragDrop event when the user drops it, because Visual Basic is assuming the user is dropping the control on top of its handle. In that case, we set up a DragDrop event handler for the OLE control itself, convert the coordinates we are passed in that event handler from coordinates local to the OLE control to coordinates based on the form's client area, and move the control to its new location:

```
Private Sub OLEControls_DragDrop(Index As Integer, Source As Control, _
    X As Single, Y As Single)
    Source.Move X + OLEControls(Index).Left - intXOffset, Y + _
        OLEControls(Index).Top - intYOffset
End Sub
```

And that's it—now the user can drag and drop the OLE controls in our olemultiple example, as shown in Figure 26.14. The final code for this example is located in the olemultiple folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 26.14 Letting the user drag OLE controls to position them.

Deleting OLE Objects

Besides adding OLE objects, OLE container programs should also allow the user to delete those objects. You can delete an OLE object in an OLE control with the control's Delete method (this method takes no parameters). Let's see an example. Here, we add code to a menu item, Delete Object, to delete an object in the currently active OLE control. First, we check to see if the type of control that's currently active (that is, has the focus) is an OLE control:

```
Private Sub DeleteObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
    ...
    End If
End Sub
```

If the active control is an OLE control, we delete the OLE object in that control with the control's Delete method:

```
Private Sub DeleteObject_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is OLE Then
        ActiveControl.Delete
    End If
```

End Sub

This method deletes the OLE object in the control and does not, as the name of this method might you think, delete the control itself.

Copying And Pasting OLE Objects With The Clipboard

You can copy an OLE object to the Clipboard with an OLE control's `Copy` method, and you can paste an OLE object in the Clipboard to an OLE control with that control's `Paste` method. Neither of these methods takes any parameters. Let's see an example. Here, we can copy the OLE object in the control `OLE1` when the user clicks a command button `Command1`, and paste that object into another OLE control, `OLE2`, when the user clicks a second command button `Command2`.

When the user click `Command1`, then, we just copy the OLE object `OLE1` to the Clipboard (note that an OLE object should be running when you copy it to the Clipboard):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    OLE1.Copy
End Sub
```

When the user click `Command2`, we should paste the OLE object from the Clipboard into `OLE2`. First, we check to make sure there is an object in the Clipboard that `OLE2` control will accept, using that control's `PasteOK` method:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    If OLE2.PasteOK Then
    ...
    End If
```

If it's okay to paste into `OLE2`, we use that control's `Paste` method to paste the OLE object in the Clipboard into `OLE2`:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    If OLE2.PasteOK Then
        OLE2.Paste
    End If
    ...
End Sub
```

Finally, we check to make sure the paste operation was completed successfully:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    If OLE2.PasteOK Then
        OLE2.Paste
    End If
    If OLE2.OLEType = None Then
        MsgBox "OLE operation failed."
    End If
End Sub
```

Zooming OLE Objects

The Testing Department is on the phone again. The OLE control you're using to show a picture company's glorious founder is great, but can't it be larger?

You can zoom (that is, enlarge or shrink) OLE objects using the `SizeMode` property of OLE controls. Here are the possible values for `SizeMode`:

- `vbOLESizeClip`—0 (the default); Clip. The object is displayed in actual size. If the object is larger than the OLE control, its image is clipped by the control's borders.
- `vbOLESizeStretch`—1; Stretch. The object's image is sized to fill the OLE control. (Note: the image may not maintain the original proportions of the object.)
- `vbOLESizeAutoSize`—2; Autosize. The OLE control is resized to display the entire object.
- `vbOLESizeZoom`—3; Zoom. The object is resized to fill the OLE container control as much as possible while still maintaining the original proportions of the object.

Let's see an example. Add a new OLE control to a form, setting `SizeMode` to `VbOLESizeZoom`. Next, we add a button `Command1`, with the caption `Zoom` and add this code to `enlargeOLE1` when the user clicks that button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    OLE1.Width = 3 * OLE1.Width
    OLE1.Height = 3 * OLE1.Height
End Sub
```

That's all it takes. As an example, we're zooming the Excel spreadsheet you see in Figure 26.1!



Figure 26.15 Zooming an OLE object.

Saving And Retrieving Embedded Object's Data

Because an embedded OLE object's data is stored in your program, you are responsible for storing and retrieving that data if it's changed. Otherwise, when a form containing an OLE container control is closed, any changes to the data associated with that control are lost.

To save updated data from an object to a file, you use the OLE container control's `SaveToFile` method. Once the data has been saved to a file, you can open the file and restore the object with the `ReadFromFile` method. Let's see an example. When the user clicks a button `Command1`, we can open a new file, `data.ole`, for binary output:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()
    Dim intFileNumber as Integer
    intFileNumber = FreeFile
```

```
Open "data.ole" For Binary As #intFileName
```

...

Now we can save the OLE object in an OLE control OLE1, to that file this way using SaveToFile

```
Private Sub Command1_Click ()
    Dim intFileName as Integer

    intFileName = FreeFile
    Open "data.ole" For Binary As #intFileName
    OLE1.SaveToFile intFileName

    Close #intFileName
End Sub
```

WARNING! If you save multiple OLE objects to a file, you should read them from the file in the same order you wrote them.

Later, we can read the stored OLE object back in OLE1 with the ReadFromFile method when the user clicks another button Command2 First, we open the data.ole file:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click ()
    Dim intFileName as Integer

    intFileName = FreeFile
    Open "data.ole" For Binary As #intFileName
    ...
```

Then we read the OLE object back in OLE1 with the ReadFromFile method:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click ()
    Dim intFileName as Integer

    intFileName = FreeFile
    Open "data.ole" For Binary As #intFileName
    OLE1.ReadFromFile intFileName

    Close #intFileName
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we've stored and retrieved an OLE file to and from disk (which is ~~editing~~ updating the object).

Handling OLE Object Updated Events

You can determine when an OLE object has been updated with the OLE control's ~~update~~ Update event.

Your program is passed a variable named `code` in the `Updated` event handler to indicate what operation updated the OLE object's data:

```
Sub OLEobject_Updated (code As Integer)
```

Here are the possible settings `code`:

- `vbOLEChanged`—0; the object's data was changed.
- `vbOLESaved`—1; the object's data was saved by the application that created the object.
- `vbOLEClosed`—2; the file containing the linked object's data was closed by the server application that created the object.
- `vbOLERenamed`—3; the file containing the linked object's data was renamed by the server application that created the object.

Disabling In-Place Editing

If you don't want an OLE control to allow its OLE object to open for in-place editing, you can set control's `MiscFlags` property. Here are the possible values for that property:

- `vbOLEMiscFlagMemStorage`—1; causes the control to use memory to store the object when it's loaded.
- `vbOLEMiscFlagDisableInPlace`—2; overrides the control's default behavior of allowing in-place activation for objects that support it.

Using `vbOLEMiscFlagMemStorage` makes data storage operations faster than the default operation (which store data on disk as a temporary file). This setting can, however, use a lot of memory. If an object supports in-place activation, you can use `vbOLEMiscFlagDisableInPlace` setting to make the object launch its server in a separate window.

Chapter 27

Creating Code Components (OLE Automation)

If you need an immediate solution to:

Using A Code Component From A Client Application

Creating An Object From A Class

Using A Code Component's Properties And Methods

Creating A Code Component

Setting A Code Component's Project Type: In-Process Or Out-Of-Process

Adding A Property To A Code Component

Adding A Get/Let Property To A Code Component

Adding A Method To A Code Component

Passing Arguments To A Code Component Method

Passing Optional Arguments To A Code Component Method

Testing A Code Component With A Second Instance Of Visual Basic

Creating And Registering An In-Process Code Component

Creating And Registering An Out-Of-Process Code Component

Using The ClassInitialize Event

Using The ClassTerminate Event

Global Objects: Using Code Components Without Creating An Object

Destroying A Code Component Object

Using Forms From Code Components

Creating Dialog Box Libraries In Code Components

Designing Multithreaded In-Process Components

Designing Multithreaded Out-Of-Process Components

In Depth

You can think of a code component—formerly called OLE automation servers—as a library of objects, ready to be used by other applications (called client applications). For example, you might have terrific routine to sort records that you want to use in a dozen different programs. You can put the routine in a code component, register it with Windows, and then you're free to use the routine in code component in other programs—just as with an ActiveX control, the other programs can call code components methods and properties.

A code component is like an ActiveX control or document that doesn't create a visual display in application. Code components provide access to methods and properties through code, not a graphical user interface (although code components themselves can support a user interface—for example, you might have a library of dialog boxes that form a code component).

In fact, code components are the third part of the standard ActiveX object set (collectively called ActiveX components) that Visual Basic supports: ActiveX controls, ActiveX documents, and code components. You build code components as ActiveX EXEs or ActiveX DLLs, much as you do with ActiveX controls or documents (the difference is that the DLLs are in-process code components—the EXEs are out-of-process code components).

Code Components: Classes And Objects

When you create a code component, you add `codclass` module(s) and when you register the code component with Windows, you make the class(es) available to client applications. Those applications, in turn, can add a reference to your code component and create an object of the class they want to use with the `New`, `CreateObject`, or other Visual Basic instruction (we'll see in detail how to create objects later in this chapter). When the client application has an object corresponding to one of your classes, it can use that class's properties and methods.

That's how it works—it's all about reusing your code. You get an object corresponding to a class in a code component like this, where we're creating an object, `objCalendar`, of the class `CalendarClass` from the hypothetical code component named `PlannerCodeComponent`:

```
Dim objCalendar As Object
Set objCalendar = CreateObject("PlannerCodeComponent.CalendarClass")
...
```

Then you can use that object's properties and methods to give you access to the code in the class, something like this:

```
Dim objCalendar As Object
Set objCalendar = CreateObject("PlannerCodeComponent.CalendarClass")

objCalendar.Days = 365                                ' Use a property
intWorkDays = objCalendar.CalculateWorkDays           ' Use a method
...
```

TIP: In fact, code component objects can themselves contain other objects (called dependent objects), and you create object variables of those types using the code component object's methods.

If you've created your code component as an ActiveX EXE, that code component is an out-of-process server and runs separately from the client application; if you've created your code component as an ActiveX DLL, that code component is an in-process server, which means it'll run as part of the client application's process.

There's even a way to use code components without creating an object. To make it easy to create code components that can be used with desktop tools like the Microsoft Office Suite, Visual Basic allows you to label objects in a code component `global`, which means they're part of a global object. In practice, this means that you don't have to create an object to use the methods and properties of a code component—you just add a reference to the code component in the client application, and

use the component's properties and methods as though they were part of the client application.

A client application and an in-process component share the same memory space, so calls to the methods of an in-process code component can use the client's stack to pass arguments. That's possible for an out-of-process component; there, method arguments must be moved across the boundary between the two processes, which is called **marshaling**.

Code Components And Threads

When you start working with another application, as code components do, you share threads of execution with that application in a joint process. As a default, the Microsoft Component Object (COM) deals with this situation by serializing thread operations. That is, the operations are queued and processed, one at a time, until they all have been completed.

That process is safe, and you don't have to think about it except for performance issues. In a multithreading operating environment, serialization protects single-threaded objects from overlapping client operations. However, serializing single-threaded components also means that operations can be blocked, and can stay blocked for some time, which can be frustrating (especially when short operations are blocked by long ones).

Visual Basic has two ways to avoid blocked calls: multithreading and **SingleUseobjects**.

Multithreading Code Components

You make in-process and out-of-process code components multithreaded by changing the threading model Visual Basic uses. In apartment-model threading, each thread is like an apartment—all objects created thread work in an apartment, and they are not “aware” of the objects in other apartments. This threading model also eliminates conflicts when accessing global data from multiple threads by giving each apartment its own copy of that global data. You can use apartment-model threading without having to eliminate elements such as forms and controls, because all such Visual Basic objects are thread-safe.

You can specify the apartment threading model (instead of the single-threaded model) for in-process components to make them multithreaded. To make out-of-process code components multithreaded, you have two options (both use the apartment thread model): thread pooling and the thread-per-object model. With thread pooling, you can specify how many threads you want available for your code component; those threads are used in a round-robin way (that is, the first object is created on the first thread in the pool, and thread allocation keeps going thread by thread, starting over with the first thread when the other threads in the pool are used). If you specify the thread-per-object model, each new object is created with its own thread.

SingleUse Code Components

You can also handle serialization conflicts by creating **SingleUse** code components, in which every new object of your code component class creates a new instance of the component. You do this by setting the class's **Instancing** property. The **Instancing** property indicates how you want your class to interact with client applications, if at all. Here are the possible values of that property:

- **Private**—Other applications aren't allowed access to type library information about the class, so they cannot create instances of it. Private objects are only for use within your component.
- **PublicNotCreatable**—Other applications can use objects of this class only if your component creates the objects first. Other applications cannot use the **CreateObject** function or the **New** operator to create objects from the class.
- **MultiUse**—Other applications are allowed to create objects from the class. One instance of the component can provide any number of objects created in this fashion. An out-of-process component can supply multiple objects to multiple clients; an in-process component can supply multiple objects to the client and to any other components in its process.
- **GlobalMultiUse**—Similar to **MultiUse**, with one addition: properties and methods of the class can be invoked as if they were simply global functions. It's not necessary to explicitly create an instance of the class first, because one will automatically be created.
- **SingleUse**—Other applications are allowed to create objects from the class, but every object of the class that a client creates starts a new instance of your component. Not allowed in ActiveX DLL projects.
- **GlobalSingleUse**—Similar to **SingleUse** except that properties and methods of the class can be invoked as if they were simply global functions. Not allowed in ActiveX DLL projects.

Overall, then, the reason you use code components is to make it easy to reuse your code in other applications, and we'll see how that works now in the Immediate Solutions section.

Immediate Solutions

Using A Code Component From A Client Application

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Wouldn't it be great to use Microsoft Excel as part new program? Maybe, you say. It's easy, they say, just treat Excel as a code component.

You can treat OLE automation servers like Excel as code components, adding them to your program using them as you like. To do that, you add a reference to the code component to your program, creating an object from that code component, then use the properties and methods of that object.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll use Microsoft Excel 7 in a Visual Basic program to add 2 and 2 and display the result in a text box. Start by adding a reference to Excel with the Project|References menu, selecting the item labeled Microsoft Excel Object Library, and clicking on OK.

After you've added a reference to a code component, you can use the Object browser to take a look at the properties and methods in that component, as in Figure 27.1, where we are examining the Excel component library.



Figure 27.1 Using the Object browser to examine the Microsoft Excel code library.

Add a button Command1, with the caption "Add 2 + 2 using Microsoft Excel" to the program now, as well as a text box Text1, where we can display the results of the addition. When the user clicks the button, we start by creating an object objExcel, from the Excel library (Excel will stay hidden throughout the program) using the Visual Basic CreateObject function (for other ways to create an object, see the next topic):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim objExcel As Object
    Set objExcel = CreateObject("Excel.Sheet")
    ...

```

Now that we have our new object, we can use its properties like this, where we place 2 in both cell A1 and (2,1):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim objExcel As Object
    Set objExcel = CreateObject("Excel.Sheet")

    objExcel.Cells(1, 1).Value = "2"
    objExcel.Cells(2, 1).Value = "2"
    ...

```

To add these values together, we place an Excel formula in the cell beneath these two, cell (3,1) to those values:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim objExcel As Object
    Set objExcel = CreateObject("Excel.Sheet")

    objExcel.Cells(1, 1).Value = "2"
    objExcel.Cells(2, 1).Value = "2"

    objExcel.Cells(3, 1).Formula = "=R1C1 + R2C1"
...

```

Finally, we display the resulting sum in the text box in our program `Text1`, and quit Excel like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim objExcel As Object
    Set objExcel = CreateObject("Excel.Sheet")

    objExcel.Cells(1, 1).Value = "2"
    objExcel.Cells(2, 1).Value = "2"
    objExcel.Cells(3, 1).Formula = "=R1C1 + R2C1"
    Text1.Text = "Microsoft Excel says: 2 + 2 = " & objExcel.Cells(3, 1)

    objExcel.Application.Quit
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 27.2, where we learn that 2 plus 2 equals 4. Congratulations, you've created your first code component client application. The code for this example is located in the codeclient folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 27.2 Using Microsoft Excel as a code component.

Creating An Object From A Class

When you want to create an object from a code component, you first add a reference to that code component using the Visual Basic Project|References menu item (note that the code component will be registered with Windows, which most applications will do automatically when installed). Next you create that object in code, and there are three ways to create objects from code components in Visual Basic (we'll use the CreateObject technique in this chapter):

- Declaring the variable using the New keyword (in statements like Dim, Public, or Private), which means Visual Basic automatically assigns a new object reference the first time you refer to the variable (for example, when you refer to one of its methods or properties). This technique works with code components that supply type libraries (as the code components created with Visual Basic do). These type libraries specify what's in the code component.
- Assigning a reference to a new object Set statement by using the New keyword or CreateObject function.
- Assigning a reference to a new or existing object Set statement by using the GetObject function.

Let's see some examples. Here, we'll assume we've already added a reference to the code component containing the classes we'll work with. If the code component you're using supplies a type library, like the ones built with Visual Basic do, you can use the New keyword when you declare the object to create it. As an example, here we're creating an object named objSorter of the Sorter class:

```
Dim objSorter As New Sorter
objSorter.Sort
```

The object is actually only created when you refer to it for the first time.

Whether or not a code component supplies a type library, you can use the CreateObject function in a Set statement to create a new object and assign an object reference to an object variable. To use CreateObject, you pass it the name of the class you want to create an object of. For example, here's how we created a new object named objExcel from the Microsoft Excel code component library in the previous topic, using CreateObject:

```
Dim objExcel As Object
Set objExcel = CreateObject( "Excel.Sheet" )
```

Note the way we specify the class name to create the object from ExcelSheet (that is, as CodeComponentClass\$. Because the code components you create with CreateObject don't need a

type library, you must refer to the class you want to use ~~a~~CodeComponentClass instead of just by class, as you can with New.

You can also use the GetObject function to assign a reference to a new class, although it's usually to assign a reference to an existing object. Here's how you GetObject:

```
Set objectvariable = GetObject([ pathname ] [, class])
```

Here's what the arguments of this function mean:

- pathname—The path to an existing file or an empty string. This argument can be omitted
- class—The name of the class you want to create an object of. If pathname is omitted, then class is required.

Passing an empty string for the first argument makes GetObject work like CreateObject, creating a new object of the class whose name is class. For example, here's how we create an object of the class ExampleClass in the code component NewClass using GetObject (once again, we refer to the class we're using as ~~a~~CodeComponentClass):

```
Set objNewClass = GetObject( " ", "NewClass.ExampleClass" )
```

Using A Code Component's Properties And Methods

Now that you've created an object from a code component, how do you use its properties and methods? You access them in the same way you would the properties and methods of intrinsic Visual Basic objects. For example, we created a client application at the beginning of this chapter that creates an object, objExcel, from the Microsoft Excel library, and then we used that object's properties as you would any Visual Basic property—with the dot operator:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim objExcel As Object
    Set objExcel = CreateObject("Excel.Sheet")

    objExcel.Cells(1, 1).Value = "2"
    objExcel.Cells(2, 1).Value = "2"

    objExcel.Cells(3, 1).Formula = "=R1C1 + R2C1"
    MsgBox "Microsoft Excel says: 2 + 2 = " & objExcel.Cells(3, 1)

    objExcel.Application.Quit
End Sub
```

Creating A Code Component

The Testing Department is on the phone again. The sorting routine you've written is great, but how about making it available to the rest of the company's programmers? Sure, you say, I'll print it out now. Not that way, they say, create a code component.

How do you create a code component? There are two types of code components: in-process components and out-of-process components:

- When you create a code component as an ActiveX DLL, it will run as an in-process component, in the same process as the client application.
- When you create a code component as an ActiveX EXE, it will run as an out-of-process component, in a different process as the client application.

And, as it turns out, there are two ways to create each type of code component in Visual Basic. In the New Project window, you can create an ActiveX DLL or ActiveX EXE by selecting the appropriate icon and clicking on OK, which creates the files you'll need. Or you can set the project type using the Project|Properties menu item in a standard project to convert it to an ActiveX DLL or ActiveX EXE project.

We'll take a look at the second way here, because that will give us some insight into how code components are constructed (to use the shorter method, all you have to do is to click the ActiveX DLL or ActiveX EXE icon in the New Project window). Create a new standard Visual Basic project and select the Project|Properties menu item, opening the Project Properties dialog box you see in Figure 27.3.



Figure 27.3 The Project Properties dialog box.

In this case, we'll name the new project NewClass, so just enter that name in the Project Name now. In addition, you can't use a form as a startup object in a code component, so select (None) Startup Object box, as shown in Figure 27.3. We'll make this example an ActiveX EXE project, so select that type in the Project Type box, as shown in the figure. Now click on OK to close the Project Properties window.

TIP: You can use `Sub Main` as the startup object in a code component, adding code to that procedure if you wish. For example, you may want to display a form when your code component first loads, in which case you could do that from `Sub Main` (although doing so is not recommended for ActiveX DLLs).

Even though we don't have a startup object now, we still have a form, Form1, in our project (which you won't have if you create an ActiveX DLL or EXE project directly from the New Project window) and you can remove that form in your code component projects as you like. We'll leave it in the NewClass project to show how to use forms in code components later in this chapter.

At this point, then, we've created a new code component. However, this new code component doesn't have any classes in it, so we'll add one now. To add a class to our code component, we add a class module. To do that, select the Project|Add Class Module menu item, select the Class Module icon in the Add Class Module dialog box that appears, and click Open.

This creates a new class module and brings us up to exactly where we'd be if we had used the ActiveX EXE icon in the New Project window instead of creating this project ourselves. When you save the class module in a file, the file will have the extension .cls, for class.

Now set the class module's `Name` property to the name you want to use for your new class—we'll use ExampleClass here. That's it—we've created a new class. However, there's not much going on in this class, so we'll add a property `NewValue` to the class ExampleClass here. To do that, just add this code to the class module:

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Public NewValue As Single
```

```
...
```

Declaring a variable as `Public` in a class module makes it available as a property to client applications as we'll see when we discuss properties later in this chapter. To set the value of our new property, say, 1, we add code to the class's `Initialize` event, which occurs when the code component is first loaded:

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Public NewValue As Single
```

```
Private Sub Class_Initialize()
    NewValue = 1
End Sub
```

And that's it—we've created a new code component and a new class that supports a property. To make this component available to client applications, just create its EXE file using the Make NewClass item in the File menu, and run that EXE file to register the code component with Windows. We'll show how to put this new code component to work in the following topics in this chapter.

The code for this example, ExampleClass.cls version 1, appears in Listing 27.1. (The final version, version 4, is located in the ExampleClass folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.)

Listing 27.1 ExampleClass.cls version 1

```
VERSION 1.0 CLASS
BEGIN
    MultiUse = -1  'True
    Persistable = 0  'NotPersistable
    DataBindingBehavior = 0  'vbNone
    DataSourceBehavior = 0  'vbNone
    MTSTransactionMode = 0  'NotAnMTSObject
END
Attribute VB_Name = "ExampleClass"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Option Explicit

Public NewValue As Single

Private Sub Class_Initialize()
    NewValue = 1
End Sub
```

Setting A Code Component's Project Type: In-Process Or Out-Of-Process

There are two types of code components: in-process components and out-of-process components.

- When you create a code component as an ActiveX DLL, it will run as an in-process component, in the same process as the client application.
- When you create a code component as an ActiveX EXE, it will run as an out-of-process component, in a different process as the client application.

There are advantages to both types. For example, an in-process component can run faster, but an out-of-process component can be self-registering (just run the EXE file to register the component with Windows).

Adding A Property To A Code Component

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Your new code component's class is great, by the way.

doesn't it do anything? How about adding a property to it? Hmm, you think, how does that work?

You can add properties to a class in a code component in two ways: by declaring ~~Public~~ variables or by using ~~get~~ and ~~Get~~ functions. We'll take a look at the first technique here and the second technique in the next topic in this chapter.

The first way of creating properties in a class module is very easy: you just declare the property you want as a ~~Public~~ variable in the class module's (General) declarations area. Making a variable public in a class module makes it a property of that module. Besides declaring variables in a class module, you can also declare them ~~Private~~, which means they are not available outside the module and as ~~Friend~~. When you declare variables as ~~Friend~~ variables, they are available to the other objects in your code component, but not to client applications (in other words, ~~Friend~~ works as a sort of local Public declaration).

Let's see an example. In "Creating An Object From A Class" earlier in this chapter, we created a class named ~~ExampleClass~~ and added a property to that class, ~~NewValue~~—by simply declaring that property as a public variable:

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Public NewValue As Single  
...
```

In addition, we initialized the value of that property when the class was first loaded with the ~~Initialize~~ event:

```
Option Explicit
```



```
Public NewValue As Single
```



```
Private Sub Class_Initialize()  
    NewValue = 1  
End Sub
```

That's one way of adding a property to a class, but note that client applications have full access property—they can read it and set it anytime and any way they wish. If you want to restrict the values a property can be set to (for example, making ~~Date~~ property only holds legal dates), use the property ~~Get~~ and ~~Let~~ methods covered in the next topic.

TIP: Setting properties for an out-of-process component can be slow. If your client application sets many properties and then calls a method, it's probably better to pass those values to the method directly rather than setting them as properties.

Adding A Get/Let Property To A Code Component

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Why isn't your new code component safe? Programmers are setting ~~your~~ DayOfTheMonth property and then having all kinds of trouble. Well, you say, they shouldn't set it to values greater than 31. It's your job to watch for that, they say.

If you want to have control when client applications set or get the properties in your class's properties, you use ~~Get~~ and ~~Let~~ methods to let the client application get or set the property. To set up a property with ~~Get/Let~~ methods in a class module, open the class module's code window and select the Add Procedure item in the Tools menu, opening the Add Procedure dialog box you see in Figure 27.4. Select the Property option button in the Type box and the Public option button in the Scope box and click on OK to close the Add Procedure dialog box. This adds ~~Get~~ and ~~Let~~ procedures for this property and it's up to you to customize them.



Figure 27.4 The Visual Basic Add Procedure dialog box.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll add a new property ~~Safe~~.Value to the class named ExampleClass that we've developed in the previous few topics in this chapter. This new property will be a Single that can only be set to values greater than 0. To add this new property to ExampleClass, open that class module's code window and select the Add Procedure item in the Tools menu. Set the property's name to ~~Safe~~.Value as you see in Figure 27.4, select the Property and Public option buttons as also shown in that figure, and click on OK. When you click on OK, Visual Basic adds two new procedures to the class module for this property:

```
Public Property Get SafeValue() As Variant
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let SafeValue(ByVal vnewValue As Variant)
```

```
End Property
```

When client applications want to get the value in ~~Safe~~.Value property, the ~~Safe~~.Value Get procedure is called; when they want to set the value in ~~Safe~~.Value property, the ~~Safe~~.Value Let procedure is called.

TIP: In addition to Get/Let procedures, you can even have Set procedures, which you use if your property is itself an object. This is a relatively advanced topic, worth looking into only if you want to set up properties that are themselves objects with data members and methods.

Visual Basic has given this new property the default type Variant, which you can change to the appropriate type for your property. In this case, we'll make SafeValue a Single value this way:

```
Public Property Get SafeValue() As Single
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let SafeValue(ByVal vnewValue As Single)
```

```
End Property
```

At this point, we're ready to add code to support the SafeValue property. For example, we can store the actual value in this property in an internal variable named sngInternalSafeValue:

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Public newValue As Single
```

```
Private sngInternalSafeValue As Single
```

```
...
```

Now when client applications ask for the value in the SafeValue property, we pass back the value in sngInternalSafeValue:

```
Public Property Get SafeValue() As Single
    SafeValue = sngInternalSafeValue
End Property
```

On the other hand, if client applications try to set the value in the SafeValue we'll check first to make sure that value is greater than 0 before storing it in sngInternalSafeValue:

```
Public Property Let SafeValue(ByVal vnewValue As Single)
    If vnewValue > 0 Then
        sngInternalSafeValue = vnewValue
    End If
End Property
```

In this way, we can control what values are stored in the properties in code components. The code for this example, ExampleClass.cls version 2, appears in Listing 27.2. (The final version, version 4, code is located in the ExampleClass folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.)

TIP: Setting properties for an out-of-process component can be slow. If your client application sets many properties and then calls a method, it's probably better to pass those values to the method directly

rather than setting them as properties.

Listing 27.2 ExampleClass.cls version 2

```

VERSION 1.0 CLASS
BEGIN
    MultiUse = -1  'True
    Persistable = 0  'NotPersistable
    DataBindingBehavior = 0  'vbNone
    DataSourceBehavior = 0  'vbNone
    MTSTransactionMode = 0  'NotAnMTSObject
END
Attribute VB_Name = "ExampleClass"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Option Explicit

Public NewValue As Single
Private sngInternalSafeValue As Single

Private Sub Class_Initialize()
    NewValue = 1
End Sub

Public Property Get SafeValue() As Single
    SafeValue = sngInternalSafeValue
End Property

Public Property Let SafeValue(ByVal vnewValue As Single)
    If vnewValue > 0 Then
        sngInternalSafeValue = vnewValue
    End If
End Property

```

Adding A Method To A Code Component

You can add a method to a class in a code component as easily as you add a property. Method either public subroutines or functions, and you can add them to a class module with the Tools menu Add Procedure item.

Besides declaring procedures **Public** in a class module, you can also declare them **Private**, which means they are not available outside the module, **Friend**. When you declare procedures as Friend procedures, they are available to the other objects in your code component, but not to client applications (that is, Friend works as a sort of local Public declaration).

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add a method to the class ~~ExampleClass~~ that we've been developing in the previous few topics. This new method ~~ReturnSafeValue~~ will return the value currently in the class' SafeValue property. To add this method, open ~~ExampleClass~~'s code window and select the Tools menu Add Procedure dialog box. Using that dialog box, add a new public function ~~ReturnSafeValue~~. When you close the dialog box by clicking on OK, Visual Basic adds this code to the class module:

```
Public Function ReturnSafeValue()  
End Function
```

As it stands, this function returns a Variant, so we change that to make it return a value of the same type as the SafeValue property, which is Single:

```
Public Function ReturnSafeValue() As Single  
End Function
```

Now we're ready to write the code for this method, which just returns the value ~~SafeValue~~, and that value is stored in the ~~sngInternalSafeValue~~ variable:

```
Public Function ReturnSafeValue() As Single  
    ReturnSafeValue = sngInternalSafeValue  
End Function
```

And that's all it takes—now we've added a new method to the class ~~ExampleClass~~.

Passing Arguments To A Code Component Method

You can pass arguments to class methods just as you can to other procedures—just specify an argument in the method's declaration.

Because of marshaling, certain method arguments should be ~~ByVal~~ for out-of-process components and ~~ByRef~~ for in-process components. When you're declaring methods for objects provided by an out-of-process component, ~~ByVal~~ to declare arguments that will contain object references. In addition, if you expect client applications to pass large strings or variant arrays to a method, and the method does not modify the data, declare the parameter ~~ByVal~~ for an out-of-process component, ~~ByRef~~ for an in-process component.

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll add a method named ~~Addem~~ to the class named ~~ExampleClass~~ that we've developed over the previous few topics. This function will take two integer arguments, add them, and return their sum.

To add this new function, open ~~ExampleClass~~'s code window, and select Add Procedure in the Tools menu adding a public function named ~~Addem~~:

```
Public Function Addem()  
End Function
```

Here, we modify the declaration of the function to indicate that it takes two integers and returns another integer:

integer:

```
Public Function Addem(Operand1 As Integer, Operand2 As Integer) As _
    Integer
End Function
```

Finally, we add the two arguments passed to `Addem` and return the sum:

```
Public Function Addem(Operand1 As Integer, Operand2 As Integer) As _
    Integer
    Addem = Operand1 + Operand2
End Function
```

And that's all it takes—now we've added a new method `ExampleClass` which takes two arguments, add them, and returns the result. Our arguments example is a success.

The code for this example, `ExampleClass.cls` version 3, appears in Listing 27.3. (The final version, `ve` is located in the `ExampleClass` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.)

Listing 27.3 ExampleClass.cls version 3

```
VERSION 1.0 CLASS
BEGIN
    MultiUse = -1  'True
    Persistable = 0  'NotPersistable
    DataBindingBehavior = 0  'vbNone
    DataSourceBehavior = 0  'vbNone
    MTSTransactionMode = 0  'NotAnMTSObject
END
Attribute VB_Name = "ExampleClass"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = True
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = False
Attribute VB_Exposed = True
Option Explicit

Public NewValue As Single
Private sngInternalSafeValue As Single

Private Sub Class_Initialize()
    NewValue = 1
End Sub

Public Property Get SafeValue() As Single
    SafeValue = sngInternalSafeValue
End Property

Public Property Let SafeValue(ByVal vnewValue As Single)
```

```

If vNewValue > 0 Then
    sngInternalSafeValue = vNewValue
End If
End Property

Public Function ReturnSafeValue() As Single
    ReturnSafeValue = sngInternalSafeValue
End Function

Public Function Addem(Operand1 As Integer, Operand2 As Integer) As Integer
    Addem = Operand1 + Operand2
End Function

```

Passing Optional Arguments To A Code Component Method

You can set up code component methods to accept optional arguments, just as the Windows calls in Chapter 23 did. To make an argument in an argument list optional, you use the Visual Basic `Optional` keyword when declaring a subroutine or function (note that if you declare an argument in an argument list `Optional`, all following arguments must be `Optional` as well).

Let's see an example. Here, we create a hypothetical code component method, a subroutine `DrawRect`, to draw a rectangle. We pass the width and height to that subroutine, as well as an optional argument for the rectangle's color. If the programmer using `DrawRect` does not specify a color for the rectangle, we'll make it black.

To start, we declare the subroutine, making the color argument optional:

```

Public Sub DrawRect(intWidth As Integer, intHeight as Integer, Optional_
    lngColor As Long)
...

```

Now we declare a rectangle from some hypothetical type named `RectangleType` and set its width and height from the arguments passed to us:

```

Public Sub DrawRect(intWidth As Integer, intHeight as Integer, Optional_
    lngColor As Long)
    Dim rectangle as New RectangleType

    rectangle.width = intWidth
    rectangle.height = intHeight
...

```

We can also make use of the optional color argument if it was passed to us. You can test if an argument was passed with the `IsMissing` function, allowing us to set the rectangle's color this way if we were passed a

```

Public Sub DrawRect(intWidth As Integer, intHeight as Integer, Optional_
    lngColor As Long)
    Dim rectangle as New RectangleType

```

```
rectangle.width = intWidth  
rectangle.height = intHeight  
  
If Not IsMissing(lngColor) Then  
    rectangle.color = lngColor  
  
...
```

On the other hand, if we were not passed a color value for the rectangle, we use black like this for the color:

```
Public Sub DrawRect(intWidth As Integer, intHeight as Integer, Optional_  
    lngColor As Long)  
Dim rectangle as New RectangleType  
  
rectangle.width = intWidth  
rectangle.height = intHeight  
  
If Not IsMissing(lngColor) Then  
    rectangle.color = lngColor  
Else  
    rectangle.color = vbBlack  
End If  
  
End Sub
```

In fact, there's an easier way to specify a default value—you just append ~~Default~~Value to the argument in the argument list as in this case, where we ~~make~~ have the default for the ~~Color~~ Color argument:

```
Public Sub DrawRect(intWidth As Integer, intHeight As Integer, Optional_
    lngColor As Single = vbBlack)
    Dim rectangle As New RectangleType
    ...
End Sub
```

That's it—now we've made use of optional arguments in our class methods.

Testing A Code Component With A Second Instance Of Visual Basic

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Didn't you test your code component before release? You say, test it?

You can test a code component while developing it by registering it with Windows temporarily and Visual Basic handle all the details. All you have to do is to open the Project|Properties menu item, Debugging tab, make sure the option button labeled Wait For components To Be Created is selected, click OK to close the Properties dialog box, and run the program. This registers your code component with Windows temporarily and makes it available to client applications until you stop the code component's execution.

How do you make use of the code component you're testing in a client application? One easy way is to start a second copy of Visual Basic and run the client program there after adding a reference to the component you're testing. Let's see an example. Here, we'll test the ~~NewClass~~ ExampleClass component that we've developed in the previous few topics in a client application. That project supports ~~ExampleClass~~ ExampleClass which has properties and methods, and we'll put them to use in the client application. Load that component into Visual Basic, as well as the client application, after setting the debugging options as indicated in the previous paragraph.

Now start a second instance of Visual Basic and begin the new client application (a standard EXE) which we'll call ExampleClassApp by adding a reference to our code component ~~NewClass~~ ExampleClass using the Project|References menu item.

Next, we'll create an object of the ~~ExampleClass~~ class named, say `objExample` (make this object a form-wide variable by declaring it in the (General) area):

```
Dim objExample As ExampleClass
```

When the form loads, we create that object using `CreateObject` this way; note the way we specify the class name to create the object from—~~NewClass.ExampleClass~~ that is, as `CodeComponentClass`—when we use `CreateObject`.

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Set objExample = CreateObject("NewClass.ExampleClass")
    ...
End Sub
```

You can also take care of any needed initialization in the Load event handler, as in this case, where we set the new object's SafeValue property to 3:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Set objExample = CreateObject("NewClass.ExampleClass")
    objExample.SafeValue = 3
End Sub
```

There are two properties and two methods in ExampleClass so we add four command buttons to the client application, as well as a text box Text1, to show the results of testing these properties and methods. When the user clicks Command1, we can read and display the value in objExample's NewValue property:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Text1.Text = "The NewValue property = " & objExample.NewValue
End Sub
```

When the user clicks Command2, we set the objExample's SafeValue (which is supported with Get and Let methods) to 5 and then display the new value:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()
    objExample.SafeValue = 5
    Text1.Text = "The SafeValue property was set to 5 and returns: " & _
                 objExample.SafeValue
End Sub
```

We'll test the ReturnSafeValue method when the user clicks Command3. That method takes no parameters and returns the value in SafeValue property:

```
Private Sub Command3_Click()
    Text1.Text = "The ReturnSafeValue method returns: " & _
                 objExample.ReturnSafeValue
End Sub
```

Finally, when the user clicks Command4, we test the Addem method, which adds two numbers, by adding 2 and 2:

```
Private Sub Command4_Click()
    Text1.Text = "Adding 2 + 2 with Addem yields: " & _
                 objExample.Addem(2, 2)
End Sub
```

That's all it takes. Now run the client application we've just developed, as shown in Figure 27.5. You can see the client application running in that figure and testing ExampleClass's properties and methods; behind it is the copy of Visual Basic in which we've developed the client application, and behind that is the copy of Visual Basic in which the code component NewClass (which contains the ExampleClass class), is running. Our test is a success. The code for the client application is located in the exampleclassapp on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

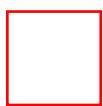


Figure 27.5 Testing a code component by running a second copy of Visual Basic.

Creating And Registering An In-Process Code Component

In the previous topic, we showed how to test code components using two copies of Visual Basic—do you create and register the real code component for use in actual client applications? There are two ways to create the actual code component: one if you're creating an in-process code component (an ActiveX DLL), and one if you're creating an out-of-process code component (an ActiveX EXE). We'll take a look at in-process code components here and out-of-process code components in the next topic.

To create the in-process server's DLL file, select the **M**enu item in the Visual Basic File menu. To register that DLL file with Windows, you use a Windows utility like regsvr32.exe like this:

```
c:\>c:\windows\system\regsvr32      ProjectName.dll
```

You can also let the Package and Deployment Wizard (see Chapter 30) register the DLL file when installed.

Creating And Registering An Out-Of-Process Code Component

How do you create and register the real code component for use in actual client applications? There are two ways to create the actual code component: one if you're creating an in-process code component (an ActiveX DLL), and one if you're creating an out-of-process code component (an ActiveX EXE). I took a look at in-process code components in the previous topic, and we'll look at out-of-process components here.

To create the out-of-process code component's EXE file, select the ~~MakeName~~exe item in the Visual Basic File menu. How do you register that out-of-process code component with Windows? Just run the EXE file—that's all it takes. Your code component is now ready to use.

Using The Class Initialize Event

The Initialize event occurs when a client application creates an instance of a class, and you can handle this event to initialize the object that's being created. No arguments are passed to this event's handler. Here's an example. When we created the ~~ExampleClass~~ in the NewClass code component earlier in this chapter, we set up a property named ~~NewValue~~ and initialized it to 1 in the Initialize event handler like this:

```
Option Explicit

Public NewValue As Single

Private Sub Class_Initialize()
    NewValue = 1
End Sub
```

Using The Class Terminate Event

An object's Terminate event occurs when the object goes out of scope, or when you set it to the Nothing keyword (see "Destroying A Code Component Object" later in this chapter). You can use this event to clean up after the object, such as releasing allocated memory or resources.

Here's an example that you can add to the ~~ExampleClass~~ in the NewClass code component developed earlier in this chapter. In this case, we'll use the Terminate event to display a message box to the users indicating that the ~~ExampleClass~~ object they've created is being terminated:

```
Private Sub Class_Terminate()
    MsgBox "Terminating now!"
End Sub
```

WARNING! If you use the Visual Basic End statement in a program, the program is stopped immediately and you won't get a Terminate event for any of the program's objects.

Global Objects: Using Code Components Without Creating An Object

Sometimes it's difficult to create objects from code components in client applications, because the client application doesn't support coding to let you do so. To handle such cases, Visual Basic includes GlobalMultiUse code components. After adding one of these code components to a client application, you don't need to create an object before using its properties and methods.

Properties and methods of a GlobalMultiUse object (or global object) are added to the global name space of any project that uses the object. In the client application, then, you can add a reference to the component, and the names of the global object's properties and methods will be recognized globally. You make a code component a GlobalMultiUse object with the Instancing property.

The Instancing property indicates how you want your class to interact with client applications, if any. Here are the possible values of that property:

- Private—Other applications aren't allowed access to type library information about the class and cannot create instances of it. Private objects are only for use within your component.
- PublicNotCreatable—Other applications can use objects of this class only if your component creates the objects first. Other applications cannot use the CreateObject function or the New operator to create objects from the class.
- MultiUse—Other applications are allowed to create objects from the class. One instance of your component can provide any number of objects created in this fashion. An out-of-process component can supply multiple objects to multiple clients; an in-process component can supply multiple objects to the client and to any other components in its process.
- GlobalMultiUse—Similar to MultiUse, with one addition: properties and methods of the class can be invoked as if they were simply global functions. It's not necessary to explicitly create an instance of the class first, because one will automatically be created.
- SingleUse—Other applications are allowed to create objects from the class, but every object of this class that a client creates starts a new instance of your component. Not allowed in ActiveX DLL projects.
- GlobalSingleUse—Similar to SingleUse except that properties and methods of the class can be invoked as if they were simply global functions. Not allowed in ActiveX DLL projects.

WARNING! The properties and methods of a global object only become part of the global name space when the component is used in other projects. Inside the project where you've created the GlobalMultiUse class, objects created from the class are not automatically added to the global name space.

Here's an example using a hypothetical nonglobal component named Calendar. When you add a reference to that class, you usually have to create an object from it and then can use the class's properties and methods this way:

```
Dim objCalendar As New Calendar
```

```
Private Sub cmdCalculateResult_Click()
    Text1.Text = objCalendar.GetDate
End Sub
```

On the other hand, **Calendar** is a **GlobalMultiUse** component, you just need to add a reference to it and then you can use its properties and methods without creating an object

```
Private Sub cmdCalculateResult_Click()
    Text1.Text = GetDate
End Sub
```

Destroying A Code Component Object

The Testing Department is on the phone again. The objects created with your new code component are great, but they seem to use up a lot of memory. How can you free that memory?

There are two ways to destroy an object. It's destroyed automatically when it goes out of scope. If you don't want to wait for that to happen, you can just set its variable using the Visual Basic `Nothing` keyword, which destroys the object and releases its memory:

```
Set objBigObject = Nothing
```

Using Forms From Code Components

You can show forms from code component classes just as you would in a standard Visual Basic project—you use the `Show` method:

```
FormName.Show [ style [, ownerform] ]
```

Here are the arguments for `Show`:

- `style`—Integer that determines if the form is modal (`Modal = 1`) or modeless (`Modal = 0`). (For more on using modeless forms in in-process code components, see the next topic.)
- `ownerform`—String that specifies the component that owns the form you want to show (for instance, you can use the keyword `Md` here).

Forms that you show from code components can support controls in the normal Visual Basic way. Let's see an example. When we created the `NewClass` component in the beginning of this chapter, we left the default form, `Form1`, in the project. To show that form, we just add a new method, `ShowForm`, to the `ExampleClass` class in `NewClass` and we show `Form1` in that method:

```
Public Sub ShowForm()
    Form1.Show
End Sub
```

In addition, we'll add a label with the caption "Code Component Form" in `Form1`. Now in the client application, we can make use of this new method to show `Form1` this way:

```
Private Sub Command5_Click()
    objExample.ShowForm
End Sub
```

The result appears in Figure 27.6. Now we're displaying forms from classes in code components. The final code for this example is located in the `ExampleClass` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 27.6 Displaying a form from a code component.

Creating Dialog Box Libraries In Code Components

You can use code components to provide libraries of modal and modeless dialog boxes (for more creating dialog boxes, see Chapter 4). There is one consideration, however, that we should add turns out that modeless dialog boxes (that is, dialog boxes that can be open at the same time the working in another form) displayed by in-process code components (ActiveX DLLs) cannot work unless they can communicate with the client application's internal message loop. This means the in-process components can only display modeless dialog boxes in client processes that support communication. You can test if the client application supports this communication by checking the Visual Basic App object's `NonModalAllowed` property.

Let's see an example. Here's some code that might appear in an in-process code component that displays a dialog box. If the application supports access to its message loop, we can show the `Form1`, as modeless by passing the constant `vbModeless` to the `Show` method:

```
Public Sub ShowForm()
    If App.NonModalAllowed Then
        Form1.Show vbModeless
    ...

```

Otherwise, you should display the dialog box as modal:

```
Public Sub ShowForm()
    If App.NonModalAllowed Then
        Form1.Show vbModeless
    Else
        Form1.Show vbModal
    End If
End Sub
```

Designing Multithreaded In-Process Components

At the beginning of this chapter, we discussed some thread serialization concerns for code components. In particular, we saw that to avoid blocked threads, you can use multithreaded code components: see how that works for in-process components in this topic and take a look at out-of-process components in the next topic.

To make an in-process code component multithreaded, select the `Project|Properties` menu item and click the General tab. For ActiveX DLLs, you can select two options in the Threading Model box: Single Threaded or Apartment Threaded. Selecting Apartment Threaded makes the in-process component multithreaded.

TIP: Set the threading model before you add controls to your project. When you change the threading model for an existing project, errors will occur if the project uses single-threaded ActiveX controls. Visual Basic doesn't allow the use of single-threaded controls in apartment-threaded projects.

Designing Multithreaded Out-Of-Process Components

At the beginning of this chapter, we discussed some thread serialization concerns for code components. In particular, we saw that to avoid blocked threads, you can use multithreaded code components. We also saw how that worked for in-process components in the previous topic. In this topic, we'll take a look at how to design multithreaded out-of-process components.

To make an out-of-process code component multithreaded, select the Project|Properties menu item, click the General tab. For ActiveX EXEs, you can select two options in the Threading Model box: Thread Per Object or Thread Pool.

To make the project multithreaded, you can specify that each new object is created on a new thread by selecting Thread Pool from the Threading Model dropdown. With the Thread Per Object option, or you can limit your component to a fixed pool of threads by setting up a thread pool. A thread pool size of 1 makes the out-of-process code component single-threaded, whereas a larger thread pool makes the project apartment-threaded.

TIP: Set the threading model before you add controls to your project. When you change the threading model for an existing project, errors will occur if the project uses single-threaded ActiveX controls. Visual Basic doesn't allow the use of single-threaded controls in apartment-threaded projects.

Chapter 28

Advanced Form, Control, And Windows Registry Handling

If you need an immediate solution to:

Passing Controls To Procedures

Passing Control Arrays To Procedures

Determining The Active Control

Determining Control Type At Runtime

Creating/Loading New Controls At Runtime

Changing Control Tab Order

Changing Control Stacking Position With Z-Order

Drag/Drop: Dragging Controls

Drag/Drop: Dropping Controls

Handling "Self-Drops" When Dragging And Dropping

Drag/Drop: HandlingDragOver Events

OLE Drag/Drop: Dragging Data

OLE Drag/Drop: Dropping Data

OLE Drag/Drop: Reporting The Drag/Drop Outcome

Using The Lightweight Controls

Passing Forms To Procedures

Determining The Active Form

Using The Form Object'sControls Collection

Using theForms Collection

Setting A Form's Startup Position

Keeping A Form's Icon Out Of The Windows 95 Taskbar

Handling Keystrokes In A Form Before Controls Read Them

Making A Form Immovable

Showing Modal Forms

Saving Values In The Windows Registry

Getting Values From The Windows Registry

Getting All Registry Settings

Deleting A Registry Setting

In Depth

This is our chapter on advanced form and control techniques—and working with the Windows Registry. We'll see many new techniques here, including dragging and dropping controls (and e how to drag and drop the data in controls, using OLE drag and drop). Programmers are often su when an advanced technique doesn't work in the same way that a basic technique does in Visu For example, a programmer might want to pass a control array to a procedure—and immediatel into problems because that process doesn't work the same way as passing a normal array to a procedure. Here's how you pass a normal array to a procedure; first, you set up the array this w where we set up an integer array named `intArray`:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intArray(4) As Integer
    intArray(0) = 0
    intArray(1) = 1
    intArray(2) = 2
    intArray(3) = 3
    intArray(4) = 4
    ...

```

Then you pass the array to a procedure named `ShowValues` by specifying the name of the array with empty parentheses:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim intArray(4) As Integer
    intArray(0) = 0
    intArray(1) = 1
    intArray(2) = 2
    intArray(3) = 3
    intArray(4) = 4
    ShowValues intArray()
End Sub
```

In the procedure, you can work with the passed array as a normal array like this:

```
Private Sub ShowValues(TargetArray() As Integer)
    For Each intValue In TargetArray
        MsgBox intValue
    Next
End Sub
```

TIP: You can even pass variable-length arrays of parameters to procedures using the `VBArray` keyword.

Extrapolating the preceding technique to control arrays, you might think that you'd pass a contrc

to a procedure in the same way. For example, if you had an array of command buttons named `CommandArray`, you might think you can pass it to a procedure like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    SetCaption CommandArray()
End Sub
```

In the `SetCaption` procedure, you'd want to work with the control array as with a normal array, as in this case where we change the caption of each button to "Button":

```
Private Sub SetCaption(TargetControl() As Control)
    For Each ButtonObject In TargetControl
        ButtonObject.Caption = "Button"
    Next
End Sub
```

However, it doesn't work like that—in many ways, control arrays are really treated in Visual Basic as objects, not normal arrays. What that means here is that you have to pass the control array as a (without the parentheses), like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    SetCaption CommandArray
End Sub
```

Then in the procedure, you declare the control array `Object`, not as an array of type `Control`. However, you can treat it as an array like this:

```
Private Sub SetCaption(TargetControl As Object)
    For Each ButtonObject In TargetControl
        ButtonObject.Caption = "Button"
    Next
End Sub
```

This is the kind of technique we'll take a look at in this chapter—programming topics that might cause trouble unless you know the ins and outs of the situation. In addition, we'll take a look at two other broad programming areas: dragging and dropping controls, and working with the Windows Registry.

Drag And Drop And OLE Drag And Drop

One of the techniques we'll take a look at is dragging and dropping controls. We've seen this technique in a few places in the book already, but we'll make our examination of this topic system-wide in this chapter. We'll see how to let the user drag and drop controls using the mouse. Users have to press the mouse button over a control to start the process, and they can drag and drop controls between applications as they like. This ability allows them to customize those applications.

Besides dragging and dropping controls in an application, it's recently become popular to be able to drag data between applications. We'll see how to do that here with `OLE` drag operations, which will let

us drag data between the controls in our application, or to another application entirely; for example we'll see how to let the user drag text directly from a text box in our program to another text box in a word processor like Microsoft Word.

The Windows Registry

Another popular aspect of Windows programming these days is the Windows Registry, a built-in part of Windows that provides long-term storage for program settings. For example, you can save the names the user has most recently opened in a Most Recently Used (MRU) list at the bottom of the menu. You can also store other settings for the program, such as window size and location, and them when the program starts again.

That's it for the overview of what's in this chapter—now it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions section for advanced form, control, and Windows Registry handling.

Immediate Solutions

Passing Controls To Procedures

One easy way to handle a large number of controls is to set up a procedure that handles the controls in a generic way and pass the controls to that procedure. How do you pass a control to a procedure? Just declare it as type Control in the argument list of the procedure you're passing it to.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll pass a command button, Command1, to a procedure, SetCaption, to set that button's caption to "Button" when the form containing the button first loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    SetCaption Command1
End Sub
```

In the SetCaption procedure, you declare the passed button as Control:

```
Private Sub SetCaption(TargetControl As Control)
    TargetControl.Caption = "Button"
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we're passing controls to procedures.

Passing Control Arrays To Procedures

It's reasonable to think that control arrays are really arrays, but in fact, you sometimes have to treat them as objects, not arrays (which is why you can create event handlers for control arrays—something you certainly couldn't do if they were just Visual Basic arrays). For example, when you want to pass a control array to a procedure, you pass it as Object, not an array of type Control.

Let's see an example. Here, we pass a control array of buttons, CommandArray, to a procedure, SetCaption (note that you omit the empty parentheses after CommandArray, which you would include if that array were a normal array and not a control array):

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    SetCaption CommandArray
End Sub
```

Now in SetCaption, we declare the passed array as Object:

```
Private Sub SetCaption(TargetControl As Object)
End Sub
```

Then we can use the passed control array as we would any control array; here we set the caption of each command button in the array to "Button":

```
Private Sub SetCaption(TargetControl As Object)
    For Each ButtonObject In TargetControl
        ButtonObject.Caption = "Button"
    Next
End Sub
```

That's it—now we can pass control arrays to procedures.

Determining The Active Control

The Testing Department is on the phone again. How about letting the user customize your program by clicking a control and then selecting a menu item to, say, set the control's background color? What do they say, how do I know which control the user has clicked before using the menu item? Use the ActiveControl property, they say.

The ActiveControl property of forms indicates which control on the form is currently active. Using this property, you can determine which control currently has the focus.

TIP: Besides forms, the Screen object also has an ActiveControl property, so if you have a number of forms, you can determine the active control with the Screen object's ActiveControl property.

Let's see an example. In this case, when the user clicks the form, we'll set the active control's ~~Caption~~ property to "Active Control":

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 28.1, where we indicate the active control when the user clicks the form.



Figure 28.1 Indicating the active control in a form.

There's a problem with this code, however—the form might contain all kinds of controls, some of which (like text boxes) don't even have a Caption property. If the user clicks the form when one of those controls is the active control, an error will result. To fix this potential problem, we can check the type of the active control before working with it, and we'll see how to do that in the next topic.

Determining Control Type At Runtime

In the previous topic, we set the caption of the currently active control (that is, the control with the focus) to "Active Control" when the user clicked the form, but realized there was a problem if the active control was one that didn't have a Caption property.

To determine what type of control you're working with at runtime, you can use the `TypeOf` keyword, which you can use to determine the type of any object. At first, it seems odd that you might not know what kind of control you're working with, but cases like the current one—where we're using the control now stored in the form's ActiveControl property—are very common in Visual Basic programming.

In the previous topic, we set the caption of the active control when the user clicked the form like this:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
```

```
ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
End Sub
```

Now we can add code to check the active control's type (possible types for Visual Basic controls includeCommandButton, CheckBox, ListBox, OptionButton, HScrollBar, VScrollBar, ComboBox, Frame, PictureBox, Label, TextBox, and so on) this way, making sure the active control is a command button before changing its caption:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    If TypeOf ActiveControl Is CommandButton Then
        ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
    End If
End Sub
```

Creating/Loading New Controls At Runtime

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Your program just doesn't have enough buttons to please some users. You ask, how's that again? Let's add some way to let user create new buttons at runtime, they say.

To load new controls at runtime, you must have a control array. This makes a lot of sense, actually because you can set up event handlers for the controls in a control array, and a new control just represents a new index in such an event handler. If you didn't have a control array, you'd need to add an event handler for the new control that named the new control by name—before it existed—which the Visual Basic compiler couldn't do.

When you have a control array, you just use the `Load` statement:

```
Load object
```

In this case `object` is the new control in the control array. Let's see an example. Here, we'll place buttons in a form and add a fifth when the user clicks the form. When the user does click the form, we should add a new button, and we start that process by calculating the index for the new control in the control array. That new control's index, which we'll call `intNextIndex`, is the index after the current end of the control array, and we determine that with the `UBound` property:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intNextIndex As Integer

    intNextIndex = CommandArray.UBound + 1
    ...

```

Then we use the `Load` statement to create this new control:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intNextIndex As Integer
```

```
intNextIndex = CommandArray.UBound + 1  
Load CommandArray(intNextIndex)
```

...

Controls are originally loaded as invisible (in case you want to work with it off screen first), so we make a button visible by setting its `Visible` property to True:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intNextIndex As Integer

    intNextIndex = CommandArray.UBound + 1
    Load CommandArray(intNextIndex)
    CommandArray(intNextIndex).Visible = True
    ...

```

Now we can treat this new button as any other button; here, we set its caption to "New button" and place it in the center of the form this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Dim intNextIndex As Integer

    intNextIndex = CommandArray.UBound + 1
    Load CommandArray(intNextIndex)
    CommandArray(intNextIndex).Visible = True
    CommandArray(intNextIndex).Caption = "New button"
    CommandArray(intNextIndex).Move ScaleWidth / 2 - _
        CommandArray(intNextIndex).Width / 2, ScaleHeight / 2 - _
        CommandArray(intNextIndex).Height / 2
End Sub
```

In addition, we can handle events from the new button in the event handler for the whole button array, because the index of the control that caused the event is passed to us in that event handler:

```
Private Sub CommandArray_Click(Index As Integer)
    MsgBox "You clicked button " & Index
End Sub
```

The result of this code appears in Figure 28.2, where we've added a new button by just clicking the form. The code for this example is located in the loadcontrols folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 28.2 Adding a new control to a form at runtime.

Changing Control Tab Order

The Testing Department is calling again. About the keyboard interface you've set up for your program, SuperDuperDataCrunch can't you let the user customize the tab order for the controls? Sure, you say, what's tab order? They explain, that's the order in which the focus moves from control to control when the user presses the Tab button.

Each control that can accept the focus has a `TabIndex` property, and when the user presses the Tab key, the focus moves from control to control, following the tab order as set by the controls' `TabIndex` properties. (The first control in the tab order has `TabIndex = 0`.) You can change the tab order at runtime by changing the value

your controls'TabIndex properties.

Let's see an example. Here, we add three buttons to a form, Command1, Command2, and Command3, which, by default, have theTabIndex properties 0, 1, and 2, respectively. To change that tab order when the user uses the form, we can use buttons'TabIndex properties like this, where we reverse the tab order:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Command1.TabIndex = 2
    Command2.TabIndex = 1
    Command3.TabIndex = 0
End Sub
```

Changing Control Stacking Position With Z-Order

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone. It takes an awfully long time to load and change pictures of the company's founders in that large picture box you have in your program: isn't there a better way?

There is. Instead of loading the images into a picture box when needed, you can place a number of picture boxes on top of each other and display them one at a time by setting the picture boxes' Z-order. Z-order is the stacking order for controls, and you can set controls' Z-orders with the ZOrder method:

Control.ZOrder position

The position argument is an integer that indicates the position of the control relative to other controls of the same type. If position is 0 or omitted, Control is placed at the front of the Z-order, on top of the other controls. If position is 1, Control is placed at the back of the Z-order.

Let's see an example. Here, we place two picture boxes, Picture1 and Picture2, in a form, with Picture2 on top of Picture1. When the user clicks the form, we can move Picture1 to the top with the ZOrder method:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    Picture1.ZOrder 0
End Sub
```

Drag/Drop: Dragging Controls

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone again. There are still some customization issues with the program, SuperDuperDataCrunch. Can't you let the users drag all the controls and place them where they want? Hmm, you say, how does that work?

To enable a control for drag operations, make sure the DragMode property is set to Manual (= 0, the default), not Automatic (= 1); when DragMode is manual, we can handle drag operations from code. When the user presses the mouse in a control, you can start a drag operation with the Drag method:

Control.Drag action

Here, the action argument can take these values:

- vbCancel—0; cancels the drag operation.
- vbBeginDrag—1; begins dragging the control.
- vbEndDrag—2; ends the drag operation.

The user can then drag the control to a new position on the form and release it, causing the `DragDrop` event in the form, and you can move the control in that event. Here, the control that's been dropped is passed as the argument, and the position of the mouse is passed as:

```
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)
```

```
End Sub
```

Let's see an example. In this case, we'll add six text boxes to a form in a control array and when the form first loads, we display the text "Drag me" in each text box:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    For Each objText In Textboxes
        objText.Text = "Drag me"
    Next
End Sub
```

We also add a `MouseDown` event handler to the text box control array so we can start the dragging operation when the user presses the mouse button in the control:

```
Private Sub Textboxes_MouseDown(Index As Integer, Button As Integer, Shift _
```

```
As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
```

```
End Sub
```

When the user drops the control, we'll be given the location of the mouse in the form, but to position the control correctly, we also need the original position of the mouse in the control. That is, if the user pressed the right button in the middle of the control, we need to move the middle of the control (not the control's origin, the upper-left corner) to the new mouse location. Therefore, we need to save the mouse's original location in two integers: `intXOffset` and `intYOffset`, making these form-wide variables:

```
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer
```

Here's how we save those integers and start the drag operation with the `Drag` method:

```
Private Sub Textboxes_MouseDown(Index As Integer, Button As Integer, Shift _  
As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)  
    intXOffset = X  
    intYOffset = Y  
    Textboxes(Index).Drag vbBeginDrag  
End Sub
```

Now the user is dragging the control—and we'll see how to let the user drop it in the next topic.

Drag/Drop: Dropping Controls

When the user drops a control on a form, you `DragDrop` event:

```
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)  
End Sub
```

Here, the control that's been dropped is passed in the `Source` argument, and the position of the mouse is passed as (X, Y). You can use the control's `Move` method to move the control to the new position.

Let's see an example. In the previous topic, we let users drag a text box in a form. When they drop it, we use the `DragDrop` event in the form and can move the text box to the new location—after taking into account the original mouse position in the control with the x and y offsets `intXOffset` and `intYOffset`:

```
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer
```

```
Private Sub Form_Load()  
    For Each objText In Textboxes  
        objText.Text = "Drag me"  
    Next  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Textboxes_MouseDown(Index As Integer, Button As Integer, Shift _  
As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)  
    intXOffset = X  
    intYOffset = Y  
    Textboxes(Index).Drag vbBeginDrag  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)  
    Source.Move X - intXOffset, Y - intYOffset  
End Sub
```

And that's all it takes—now you can drag and drop controls in a form, as shown in Figure 28.3.



Figure 28.3 Dragging and dropping controls in a form.

However, there's a problem here. When you move a text box to an entirely new location in the form, the drag/drop operation goes smoothly. However, if you drag the text box just a short distance, that text box back to its original position when you release it—what's going on?

Here's what's happening: if you drag the text box just a short distance and drop it, Visual Basic thinks you're dropping it on itself, and instead of triggering a ~~form~~ DragDrop event, it triggers DragDrop event for the text box itself. To complete our drag/drop example, we'll take care of this "self-drop" problem in the next topic.

The code for this example, dragcontrols.frm version 1, appears in Listing 28.1. (Version 2, which is located in the dragcontrols folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM, will take care of the "self-drop" problem.)

Listing 28.1 dragcontrols.frm version 1

VERSION 6.00

Begin VB.Form Form1

```
Caption          =      "Form1"
ClientHeight    =      3195
ClientLeft      =      60
ClientTop       =      345
ClientWidth     =      4680
LinkTopic        =      "Form1"
ScaleHeight     =      3195
ScaleWidth      =      4680
StartUpPosition =      3  'Windows Default
```

Begin VB.TextBox Textboxes

```
Height          =      495
Index           =      5
Left            =      1920
TabIndex        =      5
Top             =      1920
Width           =      1215
```

End

Begin VB.TextBox Textboxes

```
Height          =      495
Index           =      4
Left            =      1920
TabIndex        =      4
Top             =      1200
Width           =      1215
```

End

Begin VB.TextBox Textboxes

```
Height          =      495
Index           =      3
Left            =      1920
TabIndex        =      3
Top             =      240
Width           =      1215
```

End

Begin VB.TextBox Textboxes

```
Height          =      495
```

```

Index          =    2
Left           =   360
TabIndex       =    2
Top            = 1920
Width          = 1215
End
Begin VB.TextBox Textboxes
    Height        =   495
    Index         =    1
    Left          =   360
    TabIndex      =    1
    Top           = 1080
    Width         = 1215
End
Begin VB.TextBox Textboxes
    Height        =   495
    Index         =    0
    Left          =   360
    TabIndex      =    0
    Top           =   240
    Width         = 1215
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer

Private Sub Form_Load()
    For Each objText In Textboxes
        objText.Text = "Drag me"
    Next
End Sub

Private Sub Textboxes_MouseDown(Index As Integer, Button As Integer,_
Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    intXOffset = X
    intYOffset = Y
    Textboxes(Index).Drag vbBeginDrag
End Sub

Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Source.Move X - intXOffset, Y - intYOffset
End Sub

```

Handling “Self-Drops” When Dragging And Dropping

In the previous two topics, we handled drag/drop operations for controls in a form, but there was a prob

user doesn't move a control very far, we get DragDrop event for the control itself, because Visual Basic acts though the user is dropping the control on itself, not on the form. We can handle this case by adding DragDrop event handler to the control itself.

Let's see how this works in an example. We'll add DragDrop event handler for the text boxes in the previous example, the dragcontrols project:

```
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer  
...  
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)  
    Source.Move X - intXOffset, Y - intYOffset  
End Sub  
  
Private Sub TextBoxes_DragDrop(Index As Integer, Source As Control, X As_  
    Single, Y As Single)  
...  
End Sub
```

Now when the user drags a control a little way and drops it on top of itself, we can move the control to its position. Note that we are passed mouse coordinates local to the control DragDrop event and have to translate them to form-based coordinates to use Move method:

```
Dim intXOffset, intYOffset As Integer  
...  
Private Sub Form_DragDrop(Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single)  
    Source.Move X - intXOffset, Y - intYOffset  
End Sub  
  
Private Sub TextBoxes_DragDrop(Index As Integer, Source As Control, X As_  
    Single, Y As Single)  
    Source.Move X + TextBoxes(Index).Left - intXOffset, Y + _  
        TextBoxes(Index).Top - intYOffset  
End Sub
```

That's all it takes—now users can move the text boxes in the dragcontrols example around as they like. The code for this example is located in the dragcontrols folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Drag/Drop: Handling DragOver Events

When the user drags a control over a form or control, the DragOver event is triggered like this:

```
Sub Form_DragOver(source As Control, x As Single, y As Single, state As Integer)
```

Here are the arguments this event handler is passed:

- source—The control being dragged.
- x, y—Position of the mouse in the target form or control. These coordinates are set in terms of the target's coordinate system (as set by ScaleHeight, ScaleWidth, ScaleLeft, and ScaleTop properties).
- state—The transition state of the control being dragged in relation to a target form or control:
Control=0, source control is being dragged into the target; 1, source control is being dragged out of the target; Over = 2, source control has moved in the target.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll turn the text boxes in the dragcontrols example that we've developed in previous few topics blue as the user drags a control over them. To do that, we add the DragOver event to the text boxes in the Textboxescontrol array:

```
Private Sub Textboxes_DragOver(Index As Integer, Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single, State As Integer)
```

```
End Sub
```

Here, we simply add code to turn the text box blue when we drag another control over it:

```
Private Sub Textboxes_DragOver(Index As Integer, Source As Control, X As Single, Y As Single, State As Integer)
    Textboxes(Index).BackColor = RGB(0, 0, 255)
End Sub
```

And that's it—now we're handling DragOver events, as shown in Figure 28.4.



Figure 28.4 Handling DragOver events.

OLE Drag/Drop: Dragging Data

The Testing Department is on the phone again. A lot of new word processors are allowing users to drag data from application to application—how about your SuperDuperTextProcessor? It's not possible, you say. Yes it is, they say, use OLE drag/drop.

In OLE drag/drop operations, you can let the user drag data between controls, and even between programs. Here's how it works: when the user presses the mouse button, you start the OLE drag operation with

OLEDrag method (this method has no parameters). This causes the OLEStartDrag event, and you are passed an object of type DataObject in that event's handler. You use that object's SetData method to set the data you want the user to drag:

```
DataObject.SetData [ data ], [ format ]
```

Here, data is a variant that holds the data you want the user to drag, and format indicates the data format, which can be one of these values:

- vbCFTText—1; text (TXT) files
- vbCFBitmap—2; bitmap (BMP) files
- vbCFMetafile—3; Windows metafile (WMF) files
- vbCFEMetafile—14; enhanced metafile (EMF) files
- vbCFDIB—8; device-independent bitmap (DIB)
- vbCFPalette—9; color palette
- vbCFFiles—15; list of files
- vbCFRTF—16639; Rich Text Format (RTF) files

You're also passed a parameter named AllowedEffects in the OLEStartDrag event's handler, and you need to set that parameter to one of the following values:

- vbDropEffectNone—0; drop target cannot accept the data.
- vbDropEffectCopy—1; drop results in a copy of data from the source to the target. (Note that original data is unaltered by the drag operation.)
- vbDropEffectMove—2; drop results in data being moved from drag source to drop source. (Note the drag source should remove the data from itself after the move.)

When the user drops the data onto an appropriate target, which is a form or control whose DropMode property is set to Manual (= 1), an OLEDragDrop event occurs, and you are passed a DataObject in that event's handler. To get the dragged data, you use the DataObject.GetData method:

```
DataObject.GetData ( format )
```

The format parameter here may be set to the same values for the format parameter for SetData. Let's see an example. In this case, we'll add two text boxes, Text1 and Text2, to a form, and let the user drag the text from Text1 to Text2. We start at design time by placing the text "OLE Drag!" in Text1 so the user will have something to drag when the program runs.

TIP: The user will also be able to drag the text from Text1 to any OLE-drag-enabled word processor, like Microsoft Word.

When the user presses the mouse button over Text1, then, we start the OLE drag/drop operation with the OLEDrag method:

```
Private Sub Text1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As _  
Single, Y As Single)  
  
    Text1.OLEDrag  
  
End Sub
```

```
End Sub
```

This triggers an OLEStartDrag event for Text1:

```
Private Sub Text1_OLEStartDrag(Data As DataObject, AllowedEffects As Long)  
End Sub
```

Here, we'll let the user drag the text from the text ~~Text1~~, and we do that by placing that text into the data object passed to us in the OLEStartDrag event handler:

```
Private Sub Text1_OLEStartDrag(Data As DataObject, AllowedEffects As Long)  
  
    Data.SetData Text1.Text, vbCFText  
    ...  
End Sub
```

We also must set the AllowedEffects parameter to the OLE drag/drop operations we'll allow:

```
Private Sub Text1_OLEStartDrag(Data As DataObject, AllowedEffects As Long)  
  
    Data.SetData Text1.Text, vbCFText  
    AllowedEffects = vbDropEffectMove  
  
End Sub
```

And that's it—now users can drag the text from the text box. To let them drop that text in the other text box, Text2, we'll enable that text box for OLE drops in the next topic.

OLE Drag/Drop: Dropping Data

The testing department is on the phone again. It's fine that you've allowed users to drag data from your program, but how about letting them drop that data as well? Coming right up, you say.

To let users drop OLE data, you use the `OLEDragDrop` event (this event occurs only if the object's `OLEDropMode` property is set to `tManual = 1`):

```
Sub object_OLEDragDrop( data As DataObject, effect As Long, _
    button As Integer, shift As Integer, x As Single, y As Single)
```

Here are the parameters passed to this event handler:

- `data`—A `DataObject` object containing data in formats that the source will provide.
- `effect`—A `Long` integer set by the target component identifying the action that has been performed. This allows the source to take appropriate action if the component was moved. See the next section for the possible settings.
- `button`—An integer that gives the mouse button state. If the left mouse button is down, `button` will be 1; if the right button is down, `button` will be 2; and if the middle button is down, `button` will be 4. These values add if more than one button is down.
- `shift`—An integer that gives the state of the Shift, Ctrl, and Alt keys when they are depressed. If the Shift key is pressed, `shift` will be 1; for the Ctrl key, `shift` will be 2; and for the Alt key, `shift` will be 4. These values add if more than one key is down.
- `x, y`—The current location of the mouse pointer. These values are in terms of the coordinate system set by the object (in other words, using `ScaleHeight`, `ScaleWidth`, `ScaleLeft`, and `ScaleTop` properties).

Here are the possible values for the `effect` parameter:

- `vbDropEffectNone`—0; drop target cannot accept the data.
- `vbDropEffectCopy`—1; drop results in a copy of data from the source to the target. (Note that the original data is unaltered by the drag operation.)
- `vbDropEffectMove`—2; drop results in data being moved from drag source to drop source. (Note that the drag source should remove the data from itself after the move.)

To get the dragged data in the `OLEDragDrop` event, you use the `DataObject.GetData` method, which returns the data stored in the format you've selected, if there is any:

```
DataObject.GetData ( format )
```

The `format` parameter here indicates the data format and may be set to one of these values:

- `vbCFTText`—1; text (TXT) files
- `vbCFBitmap`—2; bitmap (BMP) files
- `vbCFMetafile`—3; Windows metafile (WMF) files
- `vbCFEMetafile`—14; enhanced metafile (EMF) files
- `vbCFDIB`—8; device-independent bitmap (DIB)
- `vbCFPalette`—9; color palette
- `vbCFFiles`—15; list of files
- `vbCFRTF`—16639; Rich Text Format (RTF) files

Let's see an example. In the previous topic, we've allowed the user to drag the text from a `Text1` to another text box `Text2`, whose `OLEDropMode` property is set to `tManual = 1`. To place the dropped data in

Text2, we just add a call to `GetData` to that text box's `OLEDragDrop` event handler:

```

Private Sub Text1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As _
    Single, Y As Single)
    Text1.OLEDrag
End Sub

Private Sub Text1_OLECompleteDrag(Effect As Long)
    MsgBox "Returned OLE effect: " & Effect
End Sub

Private Sub Text1_OLEStartDrag(Data As DataObject, AllowedEffects As Long)
    Data.SetData Text1.Text, vbCFText
    AllowedEffects = vbDropEffectMove
End Sub

Private Sub Text2_OLEDragDrop(Data As DataObject, Effect As Long, _
    Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Text2.Text = Data.GetData(vbCFText)
End Sub

```

And that's it—now run the program, as shown in Figure 28.5. When you do, you can drag the text from text box on the left `Text1`, to the text box on the right `Text2`, as shown in that figure. Our OLE drag/drop example is a success.



Figure 28.5 Dragging text data from one text box to another using OLE drag/drop.

The code for this example, `oledrag.frm` version 1, appears in Listing 28.2 (version 2, which is located in the `oledrag` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM, will report back to `Text1` what happened when `Text2` accepted the data).

Listing 28.2 `oledrag.frm` version 1

```

VERSION 6.00
Begin VB.Form Form1
    Caption         =   "Form1"
    ClientHeight   =   3195
    ClientLeft     =   60
    ClientTop      =   345
    ClientWidth    =   4680
    LinkTopic      =   "Form1"
    ScaleHeight    =   3195

```

```

ScaleWidth      = 4680
StartUpPosition = 3  'Windows Default
Begin VB.TextBox Text2
    Height        = 495
    Left          = 2760
    OLEDropMode   = 1  'Manual
    TabIndex      = 1
    Top           = 1200
    Width         = 1215
End
Begin VB.TextBox Text1
    Height        = 495
    Left          = 480
    OLEDropMode   = 1  'Manual
    TabIndex      = 0
    Text          = "OLE Drag! "
    Top           = 1200
    Width         = 1215
End
End
Attribute VB_Name = "Form1"
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
Attribute VB_Exposed = False

Private Sub Text1_MouseDown(Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As _
Single, Y As Single)
    Text1.OLEDrag
End Sub

```

```

Private Sub Text1_OLEStartDrag(Data As DataObject, AllowedEffects As Long)
    Data.SetData Text1.Text, vbCFText
    AllowedEffects = vbDropEffectMove
End Sub

Private Sub Text2_OLEDragDrop(Data As DataObject, Effect As Long, _
Button As Integer, Shift As Integer, X As Single, Y As Single)
    Text2.Text = Data.GetData(vbCFText)
End Sub

```

OLE Drag/Drop: Reporting The Drag/Drop Outcome

When the user drops data into a target component during an OLE drag/drop operation, you can make the source component informed of that fact with the `OLECompleteDrag` event:

```
Sub object_CompleteDrag( [ effect As Long ] )
```

Here, the effect parameter can take these values:

- vbDropEffectNone—0; drop target cannot accept the data.
- vbDropEffectCopy—1; drop results in a copy of data from the source to the target. (Note that original data is unaltered by the drag operation.)
- vbDropEffectMove—2; drop results in data being moved from drag source to drop source. (The drag source should remove the data from itself after the move.)

Let's see an example. Here, we'll add code to our oledrag example that we've developed in the previous few examples to report what happened when users drop the data they've dragged from Text1 into Text2 using Text1's OLECompleteDrag event:

```
Private Sub Text1_OLECompleteDrag(Effect As Long)
    MsgBox "Returned OLE effect: " & Effect
End Sub
```

Now the program displays the OLE effect value when the user drops the OLE data, as shown in Figure 28.6. The code for this example is located in the oledrag folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 28.6 Reporting the results of an OLE drag/drop operation.

Using The Lightweight Controls

The Testing Department is on the phone again. Your program, SuperDataCrunch, is using up a lot of memory. Can't you do something about it? You ask, any suggestions? They say, how about using lightweight controls to replace the 200 command buttons in the program?

To save memory, you can use the Microsoft LightControls, also called the Windowless Controls because they don't include all the internal machinery needed to support a window and window procedure. The lightweight controls come in the ActiveX control group named MSWLess.ocx.

You add them to a project with the Project[vbbar]Components menu item, clicking the Controls tab, selecting the Microsoft Windowless Controls entry in the Component's dialog box.

TIP: If that entry does not appear in the Components dialog box, you must register MSWLess.ocx with Windows using the utility regsvr32.exe that comes with Windows and Visual Basic.

You can add the lightweight controls to a program, as shown in Figure 28.7, where you see the complete set of lightweight controls.



Figure 28.7 The windowless lightweight controls.

From the Visual Basic programmer's point of view, there are really only two differences between standard Visual Basic controls and the lightweight controls: the lightweight controls do not have hWnd property, and they do not support Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE). Besides those two differences, using a lightweight control is just like using a standard control; for example, you can add items to the NList1 list box this way when the form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
```

```
WLLlist1.AddItem "WLlist1"
End Sub
```

Or you can have the computer beep using the Visual Basic `Beep` statement when the user clicks the command button `WLCommand1`:

```
Private Sub WLCommand1_Click()
    Beep
End Sub
```

Passing Forms To Procedures

Can you pass forms to procedures in Visual Basic? You certainly can—just declare them with the `As Form` keyword in the argument list.

Let's see an example. Here, we set up a subroutine `SetColor` that will set the background color of forms you pass to that subroutine, and we pass the current form `SetColor` when that form loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    SetColor Me
End Sub
```

In the `SetColor` subroutine, we declare the passed form this way, giving it the `TargetForm`:

```
Public Sub SetColor(TargetForm As Form)
End Sub
```

Now we're free to use the passed form as we would any form:

```
Public Sub SetColor(TargetForm As Form)
    TargetForm.BackColor = RGB(0, 0, 255)
End Sub
```

Determining The Active Form

You've got a multiform program and need to work with the controls on the currently active form (i.e., the form with the focus)—but how do you determine which form is the active form?

You can use the Visual Basic Screen object's `ActiveForm` property to determine which form is active. For example, say we had a clock program with two forms, `Form1` and `Form2`, each with a label `Label1`, in which we can display the current time using a timer `Timer1`. However, we'll only update the time in the active form, which the user can switch simply by clicking the forms with the mouse.

To display the time, we add the timer `Timer1` to `Form1`, and set its `Interval` property to 1000 (as measured in milliseconds). Now we can use the `Label1` control in the currently active form in the timer's `Timer` event this way:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()
    Screen.ActiveForm.Label1.Caption = Format(Now, "hh:mm:ss")
End Sub
```

We also make sure the second form, Form2, is shown when the program loads with Form1's event:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Form2.Show
End Sub
```

You can see the result of this code in Figure 28.8. When you click one of the two forms, that form displays and updates the time, until you click the other form, which makes that other form take control.



Figure 28.8 Determining the active form.

The code for this example is located in the twoclocks folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM. (This is the form with the name Form1 in our example; Form2 in this program is just a standard form with a label control, Label1, in it.)

Using The Form Object's Controls Collection

If you want to work with all the controls in a form indexed in an array, use the `Controls` collection. You can loop over all controls in a form using this collection. Let's see an example. Here we fill a form with command buttons and then set the caption of each control to "Button" when the user clicks the form:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    For Each ButtonControl In Form1.Controls
        ButtonControl.Caption = "Button"
    Next
End Sub
```

That's all the code we need. Now the user can click the form to set the captions of all the button controls once, as shown in Figure 28.9.



Figure 28.9 Using the `Controls` collection to set captions

Using the Forms Collection

In the previous topic, we saw that you can loop over all the controls in a form using the form's `Controls` collection. You can also loop over all the forms in an application using the Visual Basic

Global object'sForms collection.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll display three forms, Form1, Form2, and Form3, displaying Form2 and Form3 when Form1 loads:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Form2.Show
    Form3.Show
End Sub
```

Now when the user clicks a button in Form1 named, CloseAll, we can hide all open forms this way using theForms collection:

```
Private Sub CloseAll_Click()
    For Each Form In Forms
        Form.Hide
    Next Form
End Sub
```

Setting A Form's Startup Position

You can set the position of a form when it is first displayed by positioning it in the Visual Basic II forms window, or by setting the ~~StartUpPosition~~ property at design time (this property is not available at runtime):

- vbStartUpManual—0; no initial setting specified
- vbStartUpOwner—1; center on the item to which the form belongs
- vbStartUpScreen—2; center form in the whole screen
- vbStartUpWindowsDefault—3 (the default); position in the upper-left corner of the screen

Note, of course, that you can also position a form in the ~~Load~~ event handler by setting ~~Left~~ and ~~Top~~ properties.

Keeping A Form's Icon Out Of The Windows 95 Taskbar

The Aesthetic Design Department is on the phone again. The dialog boxes in your program, SuperDuperTextPro are fine, but there's one little problem: when you display a dialog box, its icon appears in the Windows 95 taskbar, and according to company specs, dialog boxes should not icon to the taskbar, even when they're displayed. Oh, you say.

It's easy to keep a dialog box's icon—or other form's icon—out of the Windows 95 taskbar; just set that form's `ShowInTaskbar` property to False at design time (this property is read-only at runtime). In fact, that's the most common use for this property—to keep dialog box icons out of the taskbar.

Handling Keystrokes In A Form Before Controls Read Them

There's a subtle war for possession of the focus between forms and controls in Visual Basic. If you click a form, giving the focus to that form, what really happens is that a control in that form (if there are any) gets the focus. But what if you really wanted to give the focus to the form as a whole to use the form's keystroke events?

It turns out that you can indeed make sure the form gets keystrokes even before the control with focus gets them by setting the `Form1.KeyPreview` property to True (the default is False). You can set this property at runtime or design time.

Let's see an example. Here, we add a text `TextBox1`, to a form. When the users click the form, we'll start intercepting keystrokes before they go to the text box. Following the Christmas example developed earlier in this book, we'll remove all occurrences of the letter "L" when the user types the letter (making the text box a No-"L" text box).

Here's how we start intercepting keystrokes when the user clicks the form:

```
Private Sub Form_Click()
    KeyPreview = True
End Sub
```

Now we'll get the keystrokes first, as the user presses them, no matter what control has the focus.

can remove the letter "L" before it's passed on to the text box in our example this way:

```
Private Sub Form_KeyPress(KeyAscii As Integer)
    If KeyAscii = Asc("L") Then
        KeyAscii = 0
    End If
End Sub
```

Making A Form Immovable

The Aesthetic Design Department is calling. They like the screen position they've set for the window in your program—is there any way to make sure the user can't move them?

There is. You can set the form's `Moveable` property to False. Note, however, that you can only set this property at design time.

Showing Modal Forms

The Testing Department is on the phone again. When you show that form full of options, you should let users go back to the main form until they've chosen the options they want. Hmm, you think, I wonder if that works?

You can make a form modal which means that the user has to dismiss it from the screen before working with the other forms in your application. You usually make only dialog boxes modal, but you can make any form modal if you wish. To make a form modal, pass the `vbModal` constant to the `Show` method:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Form2.Show vbModal
End Sub
```

Saving Values In The Windows Registry

Placing data in the Windows Registry saves that data for the next time your program runs, and the data you save there usually represents settings for your program, such as window size and location. You can use the Windows Registry directly from Visual Basic. To save a setting in the Windows Registry, you use the `SaveSetting` statement:

`SaveSetting appname, section, key, setting`

Here are the arguments for `SaveSetting`:

- `appname`—String containing the name of the application to which the setting applies.
- `section`—String containing the name of the section where the key setting should be saved.
- `key`—String containing the name of the key setting being saved.
- `setting`—Expression containing the value to set the key to.

Here's how it works: to save a setting in the Windows Registry, you pass your application's name, section name, a key name, and the setting for that key. Using section names allows you to break your application's set of keys into different groups, which can be handy in terms of organization. Those are the actual variables that you save settings to. We'll see an example showing how to get and set settings with the Windows Registry in the next topic.

Getting Values From The Windows Registry

You can get settings that you've placed in the Windows Registry with the `GetSetting` function, which returns the value of that setting, or the default value as specified in the list that follows:

```
GetSetting( appname, section, key[, default] )
```

Here are the arguments passed to this function:

- *appname*—String containing the name of the application or project whose key setting is requested.
- *section*—String containing the name of the section where the key setting is found.
- *key*—String containing the name of the key setting to return.
- *default*—Expression containing the value to return if no value is set in the key setting. (If omitted, default is assumed to be a null string, "").

Let's see an example. In Chapter 5, we developed the MRU application, which supports a Most Recently Used (MRU) menu item in the File menu. This item displayed the most recently opened file name using data stored in the Registry.

We stored the MRU file name in a Registry section named "Settings" and gave that file name the "Doc1". When the program's form first loads, then, we got the file name last stored there, if there one, withGetSetting this way:

```
Private Sub Form_Load()
    Dim FileName As String
    FileName = GetSetting(App.Title, "Settings", "Doc1")

    If FileName <> "" Then
        Load mnuMRU(1)
        mnuMRU(1).Caption = FileName
        mnuMRU(1).Visible = True
    End If
End Sub
```

On the other hand, when the user opens a file, we store that file's name in the Windows Registry way so we can add it to the MRU menu item later:

```
Private Sub mnuOpen_Click()
    With dlgCommonDialog
        .DialogTitle = "Open"
        .CancelError = False
        .Filter = "All Files (*.*)[vbar]*.*"
        .ShowOpen
        If Len(.FileName) = 0 Then
            Exit Sub
        End If

        If GetSetting(App.Title, "Settings", "Doc1") = "" Then
            Load mnuMRU(1)
        End If
        mnuMRU(1).Caption = .FileName
        mnuMRU(1).Visible = True
        SaveSetting App.Title, "Settings", "Doc1", .FileName
    End With
End Sub
```

And that's all there is to it—usingSaveSettingandGetSetting you can access the Windows Registry directly in a simple way.

Getting All Registry Settings

You can use theGetAllSettings to get a list of key settings and their values from a section in the Windows Registry. Here's how you useGetAllSettings:

```
GetAllSettings( appname, section)
```

Here are the arguments for GetAllSettings:

- appname—String containing the name of the application whose key settings you want.
- section—String containing the name of the section whose key settings you want.

The GetAllSettings function returns a variant whose content is a two-dimensional array of strings these strings contain all the key settings in the indicated section and their values.

Deleting A Registry Setting

You can delete Registry settings with DeleteSetting statement:

DeleteSetting *appname, section[, key]*

Here are the arguments for DeleteSetting

- appname—String expression containing the name of the application you want to work with.
- section—String expression containing the name of the section where the key you are deleting is stored. (If only appname and section are provided, the specified section is deleted along with all related key settings.)
- key—String expression containing the name of the key setting being deleted.

Chapter 29

Error Handling And Debugging

If you need an immediate solution to:

Writing Error Handlers

UsingOn Error GoTo *Label*

UsingOn Error GoTo *line#*

UsingOn Error Resume Next

UsingOn Error GoTo 0

UsingResumeln Error Handlers

UsingResume*Label* In Error Handlers

UsingResume*line#* In Error Handlers

UsingResume NextIn Error Handlers

Getting An Error's Error Code

Getting An Error's Description

Determining An Error's Source Object

Handling Errors In DLLs: The *lastDLLError* Property

Creating An Intentional (User-Defined) Error

Nested Error Handling

Creating An Error Object Directly In Visual Basic

Trappable Cancel Errors In Common Dialogs

Debugging In Visual Basic

Setting Debugging Breakpoints

Single-Stepping While Debugging

Examining Variables And Expressions

Adding Debug Watch Windows

Using The Immediate Window While Debugging

Clearing All Debugging Breakpoints

Executing Code Up To The Cursor While Debugging

Skipping Over Statements While Debugging

In Depth

This is our chapter on runtime errors and bugs. With a process trapping, Visual Basic lets you catch many runtime errors, and we'll see how to do that here. And when we catch a runtime error, see how to recover from that error without crashing the program. Just about every Visual Basic programmer is familiar with bugs—they're those annoying logic errors that occur when what the computer does doesn't appear to be the same as what you asked it to do. We'll ferret out bugs i

chapter with the Visual Basic debugger.

We'll also see how to get and interpret error codes—including translating them to English, how to write error handlers, how to use the `Resume` statement to continue program execution, and quite a few other powerful topics. Handling runtime errors is usually a part of any commercially released Visual Basic program because Visual Basic handles runtime errors by displaying information only useful to the programmer. Visual Basic lets you handle runtime errors by trapping them with special code; these errors are referred to as `trappable errors`. You'll find a list of the Visual Basic trappable errors in Table 29.1.

Table 29.1 The Visual Basic trappable error codes and messages.

Code	Message
3	Return without GoSub
5	Invalid procedure call
6	Overflow
7	Out of memory
9	Subscript out of range
10	This array is fixed or temporarily locked
11	Division by zero
13	Type mismatch
14	Out of string space
16	Expression too complex
17	Can't perform requested operation
18	User interrupt occurred
20	Resume without error
28	Out of stack space
35	Sub, Function, or Property not defined
47	Too many code resource or DLL application clients
48	Error in loading code resource or DLL
49	Bad code resource or DLL calling convention
51	Internal error
52	Bad file name or number
53	File not found
54	Bad file mode
55	File already open
57	Device I/O error
58	File already exists
59	Bad record length

61	Disk full
62	Input past end of file
63	Bad record number
67	Too many files
68	Device unavailable
70	Permission denied
71	Disk not ready
74	Can't rename with different drive
75	Path/File access error
76	Path not found
91	Object variable or With block variable not set
92	For loop not initialized
93	Invalid pattern string
94	Invalid use of Null
97	Can't call Friend procedure on an object that is not an instance of the defining class
98	A property or method call cannot include a reference to a private object, either as an argument or as a return value
298	System resource or DLL could not be loaded
320	Can't use character device names in specified file names
321	Invalid file format
322	Can't create necessary temporary file
325	Invalid format in resource file
327	Data value named not found
328	Illegal parameter; can't write arrays
335	Could not access system registry
336	ActiveX Component not correctly registered
337	ActiveX Component not found
338	ActiveX Component did not run correctly
360	Object already loaded
361	Can't load or unload this object
363	ActiveX Control specified not found
364	Object was unloaded
365	Unable to unload within this context
368	The specified file is out of date. This program requires a later version
371	The specified object can't be used as an owner form for Show

380	Invalid property value
381	Invalid property-array index
382	Property Set can't be executed at runtime
383	Property Set can't be used with a read-only property
385	Need property-array index
387	Property Set not permitted
393	Property Get can't be executed at runtime
394	Property Get can't be executed on write-only property
400	Form already displayed; can't show modally
402	Code must close topmost modal form first
419	Permission to use object denied
422	Property not found
423	Property or method not found
424	Object required
425	Invalid object use
429	ActiveX Component can't create object or return reference to this object
430	Class doesn't support Automation
432	File name or class name not found during Automation operation
438	Object doesn't support this property or method
440	Automation error
442	Connection to type library or object library for remote process has been lost
443	Automation object doesn't have a default value
445	Object doesn't support this action
446	Object doesn't support named arguments
447	Object doesn't support current locale setting
448	Named argument not found
449	Argument not optional or invalid property assignment
450	Wrong number of arguments or invalid property assignment
451	Object not a collection
452	Invalid ordinal
453	Specified DLL function code resource not found
454	Code resource not found
455	Code resource lock error
457	This key is already associated with an element of this collection
458	Variable uses a type not supported in Visual Basic

459	This component doesn't support the set of events
460	Invalid Clipboard format
461	Specified format doesn't match format of data
480	Can't create AutoRedraw image
481	Invalid picture
482	Printer error
483	Printer driver does not support specified property
484	Problem getting printer information from the system. Make sure the printer is set correctly
485	Invalid picture type
486	Can't print form image to this type of printer
520	Can't empty Clipboard
521	Can't open Clipboard
735	Can't save file to TEMP directory
744	Search text not found
746	Replacements too long
31001	Out of memory
31004	No object
31018	Class is not set
31027	Unable to activate object
31032	Unable to create embedded object
31036	Error saving to file
31037	Error loading from file

TIP: Getting “out of memory” errors has driven more than one programmer to distraction. How can I be out of memory? I have 512MB of RAM! In fact, Microsoft sometimes treats this error as a generic error, and programs can issue this error when the actual error cause is unknown.

With regard to debugging, Visual Basic provides programmers with a set of tools that is hard to You can debug your programs interactively, working through your code line by line as the program runs. This powerful technique lets you work behind the scenes in a way that is invaluable to find what's going wrong. You can also specify where to begin debugging a program ~~breakpoints~~ which are lines of code that you tag to make the program halt and debugging start.

In this chapter, we'll see how to set and use breakpoints, execute code line by line, execute a specified line, watch variables as they're changing, and more. Taking care of your program's bugs before you release it is important—the user might be able to handle runtime errors with the aid of error handlers, but not errors in program logic.

Testing Your Programs

Before you release your programs for others to use, you'll probably want to test them first. This involves a large investment of time—one that programmers are reluctant to make. It helps if you're smart in the way you go about testing your programs. For example, if your program operates on numeric data, you should test the bounds of variable ranges—it's easy to forget that the limits of Basic integers, which are only 2-byte variables, are –32,768 to 32,767. Entering values like those outside that range, can help test possible danger points. There is a bounds check you can perform for every crucial variable in your program. (Of course, you should check mid-range values well, because a certain combination of values might give you unexpected errors.)

In addition, file operations are notorious for generating errors. What if the disk is full and you try to write to it? What if the file the user wants to read in doesn't exist? What if the output file turns out to be read-only? You should address and check all these considerations.

Besides the inherent programming checks, determining the logic danger-points of a program is very important. For example, if your program has an array of data and you let the user average one of that data by entering the number of cells to average over, what would happen if the user entered a value of 0? Or –100? Besides testing the software yourself, releasing beta versions of the software tested by other programmers or potential users is often a good idea.

If you do a lot of programming, you'll start to feel, sooner or later, that inevitably some user is going to come up with exactly the bad data set or operation that will crash your program. You might even be dreading the letters forwarded on to you from the Customer Relations Department. It's far better to catch all that before the program goes out the door, which is what beta testing your software is all about. The longer you test your program under usual—and unusual—operating circumstances, the more confidence you'll have that things are going as they should.

That's it for the overview of what's in this chapter—now it's time to turn to the Immediate Solutions section.

Immediate Solutions

Writing Error Handlers

Visual Basic has specific built-in ways to handle runtime errors, called **error handlers**. When such an error occurs, you can direct the execution of your program to an **error handler**, which is a section of code written specifically to deal with errors.

Let's see an example to make this clearer. One area of programming very susceptible to runtime errors is file handling; we'll write our example here to open a file and display its contents in a text box—well as to handle file errors. When the user clicks a button **Command1**, we can show an Open dialog box using a Common Dialog control **CommonDialog1**:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    With CommonDialog1
```

```
.ShowOpen
```

```
...
```

```
End With
```

```
End Sub
```

The user enters the name of the file to open in that dialog box. We open the file, read the text in and display it a multiline text box with scroll bar `Text1` (with its `Multiline` property set to True and its `Scrollbars` property set to Both); then we close the file:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    With CommonDialog1

        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)

        Close #1

    End With
End Sub
```

Errors can occur here for a number of reasons—for example, the user may have typed in the name of a nonexistent file. To handle errors like that, we add `On Error GoTo` statement like this, where we indicate that our error handler code will start at the `labelFileError`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError

    With CommonDialog1

        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)

        Close #1

    End With

```

Next, we add that `labelFileError`, and indicate with a message box that a file error occurred:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError

    With CommonDialog1
```

```

    .ShowOpen
    Open .FileName For Input As #1
    Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)

    Close #1

End With

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error"
End Sub

```

We also have to prevent execution of the normal code continuing into the error handler, so we add an Exit Sub statement to the code before that error handler:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()

On Error GoTo FileError

With CommonDialog1

    .ShowOpen
    Open .FileName For Input As #1
    Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)

    Close #1

End With

Exit Sub

FileError:
    MsgBox "File Error"
End Sub

```

So far, we've used very rudimentary code in our error handler, but error handlers get much more complex. As we'll see in this chapter, you can get the actual error code of the trappable error (as in Table 29.1) using the Visual Basic Err object's Number property. You can make that number the basis of a Select Case statement to take the appropriate action depending on which error occurred.

For example, here we handle two types of errors specifically—the case where the user clicked the Cancel button in the Common Dialog (you must set the Common Dialog control's CancelError property to True for the Common Dialog control to generate an error when the user clicks the Cancel button) and the File Not Found error:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()

    On Error GoTo FileError

    With CommonDialog1

        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)

        Close #1

    End With

    Exit Sub

FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox "File Error"
    End Select

End Sub
```

We'll see how to write error handlers like this one—and see what statement ~~Resumeno~~—in this chapter. The code for this example is located in the errors folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Using On Error GoTo Label

The Visual Basic `On Error GoTo` statement is the foundation of handling trappable errors. When you execute an `On Error GoTo Label` statement in your code, execution is transferred to the code starting at `Label` if a trappable error has occurred. The code following that label is your error handler.

Let's see an example to make this clear. In the previous topic, we executed a statement indicating our error handler code starts at the `label` `Error` this way:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    ...
End Sub
```

Now if an error occurs, we'll transfer program execution to the code that follows the `Error`. That means that for all this code, error trapping is enabled:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
    Exit Sub
    ...
End Sub
```

The actual error-handling code itself follows the `Error` like this:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
    Exit Sub
    ...
End Sub
```

```

End With

Exit Sub

FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox "File Error"
    End Select

End Sub

```

TIP: Note that if you want to turn off error trapping at some point in your code, you can execute the statement `On Error GoTo 0` (see “Using `On Error GoTo 0`” coming up later in this chapter). You can also redirect error trapping to a new error handler by executing `On Error GoTo Label` statement.

Using `On Error GoTo line#`

Besides using a label to start an error handler (see the previous topic), you can refer to an error by line number in Visual Basic, using the `On Error GoTo line#` statement. Numbering code lines is part of Visual Basic history all the way back to the original days of the Basic language, and, in fact, many programmers don't know that you can number the lines of code in Visual Basic. For example, here's how we set up an error handler that starts at line 16 in our code (you can enter the line number directly in the code as shown in the following code), using the `On Error GoTo line#` statement:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
1
2     On Error GoTo 16
3
4     With CommonDialog1
5
6         .ShowOpen
7         Open .FileName For Input As #1
8         Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
9
10        Close #1
11
12    End With
13

```

```

14     Exit Sub
15
16
17     Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox "File Error"
    End Select
End Sub

```

Now when there's a trappable error, program execution jumps to line 16 to execute our error handling code. Note that numbering lines has long been obsolete in Visual Basic; for most purposes, it's better to use the `On Error GoTo Label`.

Using On Error Resume Next

The `On Error Resume Next` statement provides an easy way to disregard errors, if you want to do so. Once you execute this statement, execution continues with the next line of code if the current line generates an error, and the error is disregarded.

Let's see an example. Here we set the `Text`, `Caption`, `Min`, and `Max` properties of the currently active control on a form when the user clicks that form. Because no one control has all those properties, the code would generate an error in a message box to the user:

```

Private Sub Form_Click()
    ActiveControl.Text = "Active control"
    ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
    ActiveControl.Min = 0
    ActiveControl.Max = 100
End Sub

```

However, we can place an `On Error Resume Next` statement in the code to suppress all the trapping errors:

```

Private Sub Form_Click()
    On Error Resume Next
    ActiveControl.Text = "Active control"
    ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
    ActiveControl.Min = 0
    ActiveControl.Max = 100
End Sub

```

The result here is that whichever of these four properties the active control does have is set, with errors.

WARNING! Note, however, that code like this is not good programming form, of course; it's better to check what the type of the active control is before setting its properties instead of simply disregarding errors.

Using On Error GoTo 0

To turn off error trapping, you can use the Error GoTo 0 statement. For example, here we turn off error trapping to catch the case where the user clicks the Cancel button in a Common Dialog Font dialog box, but we then turn error trapping off if the user did not press Cancel (to make the button generate a trappable error, set the Common Dialog control's CancelError property to True; this is the standard way of catching the Cancel button when working with Common Dialogs):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo Cancel
    CommonDialog1.Flags = cdlCFBoth Or cdlCFEffects
    CommonDialog1.ShowFont
    On Error GoTo 0

    Text1.FontName = CommonDialog1.FontName
    Text1.FontBold = CommonDialog1.FontBold
    Text1.FontItalic = CommonDialog1.FontItalic
    Text1.FontUnderline = CommonDialog1.FontUnderline
    Text1.FontSize = CommonDialog1.FontSize
    Text1.FontName = CommonDialog1.FontName
Cancel:
End Sub
```

Using Resume In Error Handlers

When you're writing code for an error handler, you can return control to the main body of the procedure using the `Resume` statement. Program execution starts again with the line that caused the error, and this can be very valuable if you're able to fix the error in the error handler.

Let's see an example. In this example, we open a file that the user has selected with an Open C Dialog. If the user clicked the Cancel button instead, we can insist that the user select a file by displaying a message box with the text "Please select a file" and use the `Resume` statement to display the Open dialog box once again. We do that by trapping the error generated when the user clicks the Cancel button in the Open dialog box (set the Common Dialog control's `CancelError` property to True to make sure a trappable error is generated when the user clicks the Cancel button):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
    Exit Sub
FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox "File Error"
    End Select
End Sub
```

Using Resume Label In Error Handlers

When you're writing code for an error handler, you can return control to a particular line in the main body of the procedure using the `Resume Label` statement. This allows you to resume execution at a specific point in the main body of the procedure, which can be useful for handling errors that occur in loops or other complex code structures.

body of the procedure using the **ResumeLabel** statement. To label a line, you just place the label's directly into the code, followed by a colon.

Let's see an example. Here, we use the **ResumeLabel** statement to retry a File Open operation if the user clicked the Cancel button in the Open dialog box. We do this by using the **TryAgain** (to make the Open Common Dialog return a trappable error if the user clicks the Cancel button, set Common Dialog control's **CancelError** property to True):

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()

    On Error GoTo FileError

    With CommonDialog1
        TryAgain:
            .ShowOpen
            Open .FileName For Input As #1
            Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
            Close #1

        End With

        Exit Sub

    FileError:

        Select Case Err.Number
            Case cdlCancel
                MsgBox "Please select a file."
                Resume TryAgain
            Case 53
                MsgBox "File not found"
            Case Default
                MsgBox "File Error"
        End Select

    End Sub
```

Using **ResumeLabel** is useful if you're able to fix a trappable error in an error handler and want to resume execution at some specific line in the code (not necessarily the next line in the code).

Using **Resume line#** In Error Handlers

You can use the **Resume** statement (see the previous two topics) with an actual line number in Visual Basic. For example, here's how we'd write the example from the previous topic using line numbers instead of a **ResumeLabel** statement:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
1      On Error GoTo 16
2
3      With CommonDialog1
4          .ShowOpen
5          Open .FileName For Input As #1
6          Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
7
8          Close #1
9
10     End With
11
12     Exit Sub
13
14
15
16
17
18     Select Case Err.Number
19         Case cdlCancel
20             MsgBox "Please select a file."
21             Resume 6
22         Case 53
23             MsgBox "File not found"
24         Case Default
25             MsgBox "File Error"
26     End Select
27
28 End Sub

```

In this case, we're specifying that execution should continue starting at line 6 after we've indicated to the user that they should select a file to open instead of just clicking the Cancel button.

Using Resume Next In Error Handlers

Besides `ResumeLabel`, and `Resumeline#`, you can also use the `Resume Next` statement in an error handler. This statement resumes program execution in the line after the one that caused the error.

Let's see an example. Here we set the `Text`, `Caption`, `Min`, and `Max` properties of the currently active control on a form when the user clicks that form. Because no one control has all those properties, the code would generate an error in a message box to the user:

```

Private Sub Form_Click()
    ActiveControl.Text = "Active control"

```

```

ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
ActiveControl.Min = 0
ActiveControl.Max = 100
End Sub

```

We can handle and suppress these errors with an error handler, which we start at ~~SetHandler~~

```

Private Sub Form_Click()
    On Error GoTo SetError
    ActiveControl.Text = "Active control"
    ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
    ActiveControl.Min = 0
    ActiveControl.Max = 100

    Exit Sub

```

SetError:

...

In this case, we handle the error by moving on to the next line of code like this ~~Resume Next~~

```

Private Sub Form_Click()
    On Error GoTo SetError
    ActiveControl.Text = "Active control"
    ActiveControl.Caption = "Active Control"
    ActiveControl.Min = 0
    ActiveControl.Max = 100

    Exit Sub

```

SetError:

Resume Next

End Sub

The result here is that whichever of these four properties the active control does have is set, without errors.

WARNING! Note, however, that code like this is not good programming form, of course; it's better to check what the type of the active control is before setting its properties instead of simply disregarding errors.

Getting An Error's Error Code

To determine what trappable error has occurred, you can use the Visual Basic Err ~~Object~~
property, which holds the error code; see Table 29.1 at the beginning of this chapter for a list of errors and their numeric codes.

Let's see an example. Here, we use the Err object's ~~Number~~
property to set up a Select Case statement, handling trappable errors in different ways. If the error occurred because the users clicked the Cancel button in the Open dialog box, we indicate to the users that they should select a file and retry the operation. If the error occurred because the users entered the name of a file that was subsequently found (trappable error 53), we indicate that to them. Otherwise, we just display the generic message "File Error" in a message box:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
    Exit Sub
FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox "File Error"
    End Select
End Sub
```

TIP: These days, it's considered bad programming practice to simply display an error number to the user—the user might not know, for example, that error 31001 means “out of memory.” To translate an error code into an error description, you can pass that code to the Visual Basic ~~Error~~
function, which returns the text error message for that error, and you can display that. You can also use the Err ~~Description~~
property, as we'll see in the next topic.

Getting An Error's Description

To let the user know what kind of trappable error has occurred, you can use the Visual Basic Err Description property. Let's see an example. In this code, we'll trap errors and handle two of them expressly: the case where the user has clicked the Cancel button in the Open Common Dialog, a case where a "File Not Found" error occurs. Otherwise, we'll just display the Visual Basic error message in the Default case of a Select Case statement:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
    Exit Sub
FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox Err.Description
    End Select
End Sub

```

Using Err.Description, you can inform the user that an error occurred—and indicate what error occurred with readable text.

Determining An Error's Source Object

You can determine the object that caused the error using the Visual Basic Err Source property. This property holds the name of the object or application that caused the error. For example, if you connect to Microsoft Excel and it generates an error, Excel Err.Number to its error code for that error, and it sets Err.Source to Excel.Application.

Handling Errors In DLLs: The LastDLLError Property

Errors during calls to Windows dynamic link libraries (DLLs) do not create trappable errors and so can't be trapped with Visual Basic error trapping. In practice, this means that when you call a DLL procedure, you should check each return value for success or failure. In the event of a failure, check the value of the Err object's LastDLLError property.

Creating An Intentional (User-Defined) Error

There are cases in programs where you might want to create an error; although no Visual Basic trapable error has occurred, some situation may have occurred that's incompatible with your program's logic. You can create an error intentionally, called raising an error, with the Visual Basic Err object's Raise method:

```
Err.Raise number, [source [, description [, helpfile [, helpcontext]]]]
```

Here are the arguments for the Raise method:

- **number**—Long integer that identifies the nature of the error (see the paragraphs that follow for more details).
- **source**—String expression naming the object or application that generated the error; use the project.class. (If the source is not specified, the name of the current Visual Basic project is used.)
- **description**—String expression describing the error.
- **helpfile**—The path to the Help file in which help on this error can be found.
- **helpcontext**—The context ID identifying a topic within helpfile that provides help for the error.

When setting the error number for the error, bear in mind that Visual Basic errors are in the range 0 to 65535. The range 0 to 512 is reserved for system errors, but the range 513 to 65535 is available for user-defined errors.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll generate an error, error number 2000, when the user clicks a command button, Command1, and then indicate the error has occurred with a message box. First, we raise an error number 2000:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo CaptionError

    Err.Raise 2000
    ...

```

Then we display the error in a message box in an error handler:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo CaptionError

    Err.Raise 2000

```

Exit Sub

CaptionError:

```
    MsgBox "Error number " & Err.Number
```

End Sub

The result appears in Figure 29.1. Now we're raising errors intentionally in Visual Basic.



Figure 29.1 Generating an error on purpose.

TIP: You can also use the Visual Basic `Error` statement to raise an error like `Error errnumber`. However, the `Error` function is considered obsolete now, replaced by the `Raise` method of the `Err` object.

Nested Error Handling

If a trappable error occurs in a procedure, you can handle that error in an error handler. But what happens if you call another procedure, and an error occurs before control returns from that procedure? If the called procedure has an error handler, the code in that error handler will be executed. However, if the called procedure does not have an error handler, control will return to the error handler in the calling procedure. In this way, control moves back up the calling chain to the closest error handler.

Let's see an example. Here, we set up an error handler in a subroutine and then call another subroutine, LoadText, to load text from a file the user specifies into a text `Text1`:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    LoadText
    Exit Sub
FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case 53
            MsgBox "File not found"
        Case Default
            MsgBox Err.Description
    End Select
End Sub
```

Here's the `LoadText` subroutine, which uses an Open Common Dialog to get the name of the file to open, opens the file, and loads the file's text `Text1`:

```
Public Sub LoadText()
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
End Sub
```

If an error occurs in `LoadText`, which has no error handler itself, control returns back to the calling subroutine, and the code in the error handler there is executed. In this way, you don't have to worry about calling procedures without error handlers when you're trying to trap errors.

Creating An Error Object Directly In Visual Basic

You can create an error object directly and use it as a return value from your procedures. To create an error object, you use the Visual Basic `Err` function, passing it the error code for the error you want to create.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll set up a function `MakePositiveNumber`, which takes a string representing an integer (for example, 25) and returns the integer represented by that string (for example, 25). If you pass `MakePositiveNumber` a string representing a negative integer (for example, -25), the function will return an error object (actually a `Variant` of subtype `Error`).

We start by declaring `MakePositiveNumber`, indicating that it will accept a string and return a variant (that variant can be either a number or an error object):

```
Public Function MakePositiveNumber(strData As String) As Variant
...
```

Next, we use the Visual Basic `Val` function to create an integer from the string passed to us (to keep this example short, we're assuming the string passed to `MakePositiveNumber` does indeed represent a valid positive or negative integer):

```
Public Function MakePositiveNumber(strData As String) As Variant
    Dim intValue As Integer

    intValue = Val(strData)
...
```

If the integer is less than 0, we return an error with the error code 5 (which in Visual Basic means "Invalid procedure call") using `CVErr` this way:

```
Public Function MakePositiveNumber(strData As String) As Variant
    Dim intValue As Integer

    intValue = Val(strData)
    If intValue < 0 Then
        MakePositiveNumber = CVErr(5)
...
```

Otherwise, we return the positive integer this way:

```
Public Function MakePositiveNumber(strData As String) As Variant
    Dim intValue As Integer
```

```

intValue = Val(strData)
If intValue < 0 Then
    MakePositiveNumber = CVErr( 5 )
Else
    MakePositiveNumber = intValue
End If
End Function

```

Now we'll put MakePositiveNumber to work. When the user clicks a command button **Command1**, we can take the string in a text box **Text1**, use MakePositiveNumber to convert it to a number, and display the result in another text box **Text2**:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim varNumber As Variant

    varNumber = MakePositiveNumber(Text1.Text)

    Text2.Text = Str(varNumber)
End Sub

```

We can check for error return values with the Visual Basic **IsError** function, which returns True if you pass it an error object. MakePositiveNumber did return an error, we convert that error into a number with the Visual Basic **CInt** function, and if that error is 5, indicating that the passed string represented a negative number, we display a message box informing the user that the number to convert must be positive:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim varNumber As Variant

    varNumber = MakePositiveNumber(Text1.Text)

    If IsError(varNumber) Then
        If CInt(varNumber) = 5 Then
            MsgBox "Number must be positive"
        End If
    Else
        Text2.Text = Str(varNumber)
    End If
End Sub

```

And that's it—we've created and used our own error objects. When you run the program and try to convert a negative value, as shown in Figure 29.2, the program displays an error. The code for this example is located in the **errobj** folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

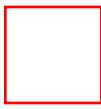


Figure 29.2 Using a user-defined error object in Visual Basic.

Trappable Cancel Errors In Common Dialogs

The usual way to work with the Cancel button in Common Dialogs is to use trappable errors. You set the Common Dialog control's CancelError property to True, and the Common Dialog control will generate an error when the user clicks the Cancel button.

Let's see an example. Here, we'll use a Common Dialog to open a text file the user has selected, display it in a text box Text1. If the user has clicked the Cancel button, the trappable error cdlCancel is generated, and we display a message box asking the user to select a file and try the operation again by showing the Open dialog box again:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    On Error GoTo FileError
    With CommonDialog1
        .ShowOpen
        Open .FileName For Input As #1
        Text1.Text = Input$(LOF(1), #1)
        Close #1
    End With
    Exit Sub
FileError:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case cdlCancel
            MsgBox "Please select a file."
            Resume
        Case Default
            MsgBox "File Error"
    End Select
End Sub
```

Debugging In Visual Basic

Visual Basic offers a powerful suite of debugging options—notably the ability to single-step through your code as it's executing. The standard way to debug is to place a breakpoint at a particular line in your code, and when execution reaches that line, it will halt and Visual Basic will enter the Debug state, giving you access to your code and variables. You can examine the contents of those variables and work through your code line by line, watching program execution behind the scenes.

For example, we might write the following code, which is meant to increment the value in a text box Text1, each time you click a button:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intCounter As Integer

    intCounter = intCounter + 1
    Text1.Text = intCounter

End Sub
```

What actually happens is that the value 1 appears in the text box each time you click the button—time to debug. To start that process, we place a breakpoint at this line in our code:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim intCounter As Integer

    intCounter = intCounter + 1
    Text1.Text = intCounter

End Sub
```

You place a breakpoint in code by moving the text insertion caret to that line and either selecting Toggle Breakpoint in the Debug menu or pressing F9. (Breakpoints toggle, so to remove the breakpoint, select Toggle Breakpoint in the Debug menu or press F9 again.)

Now when you run the program and press the button, execution halts at the breakpoint, and the Immediate window appears. You can examine the contents of variables by selecting them on the screen with the mouse and clicking the Quick Watch item in the Debug menu (besides individual variables, you can select an entire expression). This opens a window displaying the current value of the variable or expression you've selected.

To move through your program step-by-step, you can select these stepping options in the Debug menu:

- Step Into—Single-step through the code, entering called procedures if encountered.
- Step Over—Single-step through the code, stepping over procedure calls.
- Step Out—Step out of the current procedure.

Examining the contents of the intCounter variable shows that it's being reset to 0 each time the command button runs, and we realize that we should declare that variable as static this way:

```

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Static intCounter As Integer

    intCounter = intCounter + 1
    Text1.Text = intCounter

End Sub

```

That's the process in overview—we've debugged the code. For more details on the debugging process and to examine other debugging processes like selected code execution, see the following topic chapter.

TIP: Want to save a little time debugging? Often the crucial aspect of debugging is watching the values in your variables change as your program executes, and sometimes doing that without the debugger is easy enough: just add some temporary text boxes or message boxes to your program and use them to display the values you want to watch. This is an expedient shortcut for simple bugs—but if it doesn't fit the bill for you, turn to the debugger.

Setting Debugging Breakpoints

Breakpoints are the foundation of Visual Basic debugging. When you set breakpoints in a program and run that program, program execution continues until one of the breakpoints is encountered and execution stops, making Visual Basic enter the Debug state. You place a breakpoint in code by placing the text insertion caret to that line and either selecting Toggle Breakpoint in the Debug menu or pressing F9. (Breakpoints toggle, so to remove the breakpoint, select Toggle Breakpoint in the Debug menu or press F9 again.) When you place a breakpoint in code, it appears at design time in red, as shown in Figure 29.3.



Figure 29.3 Setting a breakpoint in code at design time.

When you run the program and reach the breakpoint, execution stops and Visual Basic appears in the Debug state, as shown in Figure 29.4. You can see the breakpoint highlighted in Visual Basic in the figure, and the arrow in the left margin of the code window points to the current line of execution.



Figure 29.4 A breakpoint in Visual Basic's Debug state.

You can execute the lines following a breakpoint by single stepping, and we'll take a look at that process in the next topic.

Single-Stepping While Debugging

When you've stopped a program at a breakpoint, you get an inside look at what's going on. What

code is stopped at a breakpoint, you can move through the code with the single-stepping option Debug menu:

- Step Into—Single-step through the code, entering the code in called procedures if procedure calls are encountered (shortcut: press F8).
- Step Over—Single-step through the code, stepping over procedure calls (shortcut: press Shift+F8).
- Step Out—Step out of the current procedure (shortcut: press Ctrl+Shift+F8).

For example, take a look at Figure 29.4. There, we are stopped at a breakpoint, but we can single-step to the next line, as shown in Figure 29.5. As you can see in that figure, the arrow at left in the code window has moved to the next line, and we've executed the previous line of code. Single stepping this way, you can move through your code to debug it.



Figure 29.5 Single-stepping in Debug mode.

Examining Variables And Expressions

Just single-stepping through a program when debugging it wouldn't be of that much use—we should also be able to examine the value in the various program variables as well. You can do that with a “quick watch” window.

To examine the value in a variable or expression in the code window when stopped at a breakpoint, select the variable or expression you want to examine with the mouse and select the Quick Watch command in the Debug menu, or press Shift+F9. This opens the Quick Watch window you see in Figure 29.6. You can see the value in the variable named Counter in that window.



Figure 29.6 Examining a variable with a Quick Watch window.

Besides quick watches, you can open a whole watch window, as we'll see in the next topic.

Adding Debug Watch Windows

You can add a watch window to your debugging session and display the values of selected variables or expressions in that window continuously as you execute your program line by line.

To add a watch window, select the variable or expression you want to watch with the mouse and the Add Watch item in the Debug menu. This opens the Add Watch dialog box; make sure the variable or expression you want to watch is entered in the Expression box and click on OK. When you do this, Visual Basic adds a watch window to the debug session, as you can see at bottom in Figure 29.7. In this figure, we're watching the value in the variable `intCounter`.



Figure 29.7 A debug watch window.

Being able to continuously watch the values in your program's variables as the program executes will be a great asset in debugging, because you can see unexpected values as they appear.

Using The Immediate Window While Debugging

When debugging, you can use the Immediate window to examine expressions or variables immediately by typing them in. The Immediate window appears at lower left when Visual Basic is in its Debug state, as shown in Figure 29.8.



Figure 29.8 The Immediate debugging window.

You can enter an expression to evaluate in the Immediate window if you precede it with a question mark and then press the Enter key. For example, here's how we check the value in a variable named `intCounter`:

```
?intCounter
```

And here's how we check the value of the expression `intCounter + 1`:

```
?intCounter + 1
```

Visual Basic displays the values of the expressions you're examining in the Immediate window (one line after your query), as shown in Figure 29.8, where we see `intCounter` holds a value of 1.

Clearing All Debugging Breakpoints

If you have a large number of breakpoints in a program, you might be relieved to learn that you can clear them all at once with the Clear All Breakpoints menu item in the Debug menu. The keyboard shortcut for this menu item is **Ctrl+Shift+F9**.

Executing Code Up To The Cursor While Debugging

It can be tedious to single-step through a great deal of code. There is another option, however—click a line of code to place the blinking text insertion caret at that line and select the Run To Cu item in the Debug menu, or press Ctrl+F8. When you do, execution continues to the line you've selected.

Skipping Over Statements While Debugging

You can skip over lines of code when debugging a program. To do that, just click the line of cod want execution to start with (after having skipped the lines you don't want to execute) and selec Set Next Statement item in the Debug menu, or press Ctrl+F9.

Chapter 30

Deploying Your Program: Creating Setup Programs, Help Files, And Online Registration

If you need an immediate solution to:

Creating Your Application's EXE File

Using The Package And Deployment Wizard

Step 1: Package Type

Step 2: Build Folder

Step 3: Files

Step 4: Distribution Type

Step 5: Installation Title

Step 6: Icons

Step 7: Install Locations

Step 8: Shared Files

Step 9: Finished!

Creating Help Files With The Microsoft Help Workshop

Creating A Help Project's RTF File

Entering Text In A Help File

Creating A Help Hotspot

Creating A Help Hotspot Target

Titling A Help Page

Adding Help Topics To The Help Index

Creating Help Pop-Up Links

Creating Help "Tool Tips" Targets

Compiling Help Files With The Help Workshop

Displaying A Help File From Visual Basic

Building Online Help Into Your Application

Creating Online User Registration

Uploading Online Registration Information To An FTP Server

Concluding The FTP Transfer Of The Online Registration Information

In Depth

You've created your application, and it's a doozy. It runs fine—on your computer. But what's next? How do you get your application out the door and onto other people's computers?

That's what this chapter is all about. Here, we're going to reap the benefits of all our work by deploying applications to users. We'll see how to create setup programs, Help files, and even online registration.

Application deployment is a topic many books skip, but it's of vital interest to many programmers. After all, the EXE files you create might run fine on your computer, which has a full installation of Visual Basic on it, but what about other computers? You can't just copy the EXE files to another computer and expect them to run: Visual Basic applications require a great deal of support in terms of dynamic link libraries and possibly other components like ActiveX controls you may have used. Do you install all that? We'll see how that works in this chapter.

Setup Programs

You use setup programs to install your application on other computers, and Visual Basic has a tool that will help us here: the Package And Deployment Wizard. Using this wizard, you can create setup files that you can distribute on CDs, multiple disks, or even across the Internet.

TIP: It's important to make sure that you don't distribute licensed material or components without permission, of course. Check with the manufacturer of the DLL or OCX files you want to distribute first, making sure its policy allows distribution.

In this chapter, we'll see how easy it is to create setup programs with the Package And Deployment Wizard. Once you've created your application's EXE file, you're all set—the Package And Deployment Wizard will analyze what files your application needs and include them in the data files of your setup program. The data itself is stored in a cabinet file, with the extension .cab, and the setup program will unpack and deploy the contents of that file as needed.

Help Files

Help files are an asset to any application, and just about all serious applications come with a Help system of some sort. In this chapter, we'll see how to create Windows Help files of the kind you display on the user's computer with standard Windows calls.

To create a Windows Help file, you use the Windows Help Workshop, which creates a project. You place the actual Help text in a rich text (RTF) file, and add that file to the Help project. Why RTF text? The Help Workshop uses RTF files so that you can embed jumps, hotspots that work like hyperlinks, and commands directly into your Help file, encoding those items with rich text footnotes, hidden text, and so forth. We'll see how this works in this chapter. When you're done with your Help file, you use the Help Workshop to compile it into an HLP file.

Now that you have an HLP file, how do you open it from Visual Basic? Here, we'll use the Windows API WinHelp function, which allows you a great deal of flexibility when opening Help files. You can even make the Package And Deployment Wizard include your Help files and data files in the setup program, as we'll see in this chapter.

Online Registration

Keeping in touch with an application's users is important for many programmers, which is why online registration is included in this chapter.

registration has become so popular. Using online registration, the user has only to select a menu to register the application with you.

In this chapter, we'll use the FTP protocol to let users connect and register their applications in a few easy steps. Using FTP is probably the most common method for handling online registration and provides us with a better and more robust alternative to using another alternative, email, because Visual Basic email support relies on the Microsoft MAPI system, which the user may not have enabled.

When users decide to register online, the program will display an information dialog box, asking them to enter their name and email address. When they click a button labeled Register, the program will establish an FTP connection to your server (connecting to the Internet, if necessary, first) and upload the information the users provided, along with the date and time. In this way, you can keep track of your application's users.

The “Designed For Microsoft Windows” Logo

If you’re serious about your application and want to release it commercially, you might want to fit the requirements for the Microsoft “Designed for Microsoft Windows” logo. To add this logo to your application, that application must pass a fairly rigorous set of tests (you submit the application off for testing).

Even if you are not trying to get the logo, it’s worth taking a look at some of the requirements an application must fill to get that logo, because they provide some insight into what Microsoft considers good programming practice. For example, your application must:

- Be a 32-bit multitasking program, stable and functional on all current versions of Windows and Windows NT.
- Digitally sign ActiveX controls that it provides and support Authenticode signing of all its downloadable code.
- Provide an OLE container or object server, and allow users to drag objects to any container. Object servers and OLE containers must pass tests of basic functionality, and an Object command must be placed on a container’s Insert menu.
- Use new Microsoft installer technology, which makes it easy to meet the other install/uninstall requirements.
- Provide a graphical 32-bit setup program that detects software versions, creates shortcuts, supports CD-ROM AutoPlay, supports Add/Remove Programs, and checks operations in advance.
- Support the Universal Naming Convention, long file names, and hard drives larger than 32 GB.
- Support users who upgrade their computers from one version of Windows to another by providing a migration DLL (when necessary).
- Provide keyboard access to all features and provide some kind of notification of the key focus location.
- Provide and register a fully automated uninstaller that appears in Add/Remove Programs that when run, removes all application files, references in the Start menu, and Registry entries.
- Not install executables or DLLs in the root directory, but must use the \Program Files directory instead.
- Separate user data from application code and query the Registry for the names of suitable directories in which to save user data.
- Not overwrite core components when installing, or decrement or remove core components when uninstalling. It must register all shared components during installation.
- Register native data types and support informational keys in the Registry. It must not add entries to the Win.ini or System.ini files.

That’s just a partial list—you can get more information directly from Microsoft.

That’s it for the overview of what’s in this chapter. Now it’s time to turn to the Immediate Solution section.

Immediate Solutions

Creating Your Application's EXE File

The first step in deploying your application is to create its EXE (or DLL or OCX) file. You probably already know how to create your project's EXE file, but for the record, you just select the Make projectname.exe (or .dll or .ocx) item in the File menu.

TIP: The Package And Deployment Wizard will actually create your application's executable file for you if that file doesn't exist (it first asks whether you want it to).

After your application's executable file is created, you're ready to create a setup program to deploy with.

Using The Package And Deployment Wizard

The Visual Basic Package And Deployment Wizard is an add-in that lets you deploy your application. If you don't see it in the Visual Basic Add-Ins menu, use the Add-In Manager (which appears in the Add-Ins menu) to insert it in that menu.

TIP: It's important to make sure that you don't distribute licensed material or components without permission, of course. Check with the manufacturer of the DLL or OCX files you want to distribute first, making sure their policy allows distribution.

Open the application you want to distribute in Visual Basic now, and open the Package And Deployment Wizard, as shown in Figure 30.1. As you can see in that figure, there are several options here: you can create a new setup program, deploy a setup package to a distribution site, or manage scripts you can use with this wizard.



Figure 30.1 The Package And Deployment Wizard.

We'll create a setup program for our alarm clock application, the alarm project, which we developed in Chapter 13, in the next few topics in this chapter, progressing step-by-step through the Package And Deployment Wizard. Select the top button in the Package And Deployment Wizard now to create a setup program for the Alarm application.

Step 1: Package Type

In the first step of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you select the package type you want to create. In this case, make sure the Standard Setup Package item is selected in the Package Type list.

Selecting this item means that we will create a deployment package that can be installed using a setup.exe file. After you've selected the Standard Setup Package item, click the Next button to move on to Step 2 in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 2: Build Folder

In Step 2 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you select the folder in which your deployment package will be created. By default, this folder is named Package and Package And Deployment Wizard to your Visual Basic project's folder. For example, in the alarm project, which is in the C:\vbbb\alarm folder, the deployment package will be created in the folder C:\vbbb\alarm\Package. If you want the deployment package in another folder, select that folder now.

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 3: Files

In Step 3 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you can select what files will be included for distribution. This includes your application's executable file and all the needed support files—the Package And Deployment Wizard determines what support files your application needs and adds them automatically.

The Package And Deployment Wizard presents a list of files it will include in your deployment package in this step, and you can deselect ones you don't want to include. You can also include additional files in your deployment package, such as Help or application-specific data files, by clicking the Add button and specifying those files.

TIP: If you're going to install your application on a computer that already has Visual Basic installed, you can deselect the standard DLL and OCX files that come with Visual Basic because you won't have to deploy them. Doing so will avoid annoying questions about replacing those files when you install your application.

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 4: Distribution Type

In Step 4 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you specify how you want to distribute your application—as one single cabinet (.cab) file, or over multiple disks—as shown in Figure 30.2. If you select deployment with multiple disks, you can specify the capacity of each disk, from 360K to 2GB, and the Package And Deployment Wizard will create a CAB file for each disk and let you know how many disks you need. Here, we'll select the single cab option for the alarm clock application we're working with.



Figure 30.2 Selecting the distribution type in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 5: Installation Title

In Step 5 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you enter the installation title for your application shown in Figure 30.3. This title will appear on the setup program's "wash" screen (which covers the whole screen) when the user installs the application.



Figure 30.3 Selecting a deployment package's installation title.

Here, we'll use the title "Alarm", as shown in Figure 30.3, while creating the deployment package for our alarm clock application, but you may also want to include your company's name in the title, if applicable.

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 6: Icons

In Step 6 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you indicate what new program group(s) you add to Windows and the icons to use. In this case, where we're building a deployment package for an alarm application, we're only going to add one program group, Alarm, and use the icon from the alarm.exe file, as shown in Figure 30.4 (these are the defaults the Package And Deployment Wizard selected for us).



Figure 30.4 Selecting program groups and icons to install in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 7: Install Locations

In Step 7 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you indicate where you want the parts of your application installed on the target computer. By default, your application is placed into the directory user specifies, which is represented in the Package And Deployment Wizard with the macro \$(AppPath) and the other files, like DLL files, are installed where your application expects to find them (such as windows\system directory).

You can change the default installation location of your application's files in this step; for example, if you want your Help files to go into the installation folder's Help subfolder, specify that they should be installed in the \$(AppPath)\Help folder.

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 8: Shared Files

In Step 8 of the Package And Deployment Wizard, you can indicate which files you want to register.

shared files. These files may be used by several applications in the target computer and will be uninstalled only if all applications that use them are uninstalled. If in doubt, it's better to register them shared—especially common DLLs and OCXs. (And if really in doubt, don't forget to test your application's setup program.)

When you're ready, click the Next button to move on to the next step in the Package And Deployment Wizard.

Step 9: Finished!

Step 9 in the Package And Deployment Wizard is the last step in creating your application's deployment package. Just click the Finish button to create the CAB file(s), the setup.exe program itself, and setup.lst file, which holds a list of the files to install and where they go (setup.exe reads setup.lst to know what to install where).

When you click Finish, the Package And Deployment Wizard also displays a packaging report indicating that the alarm.cab file has been created (click Close to close the packaging report dialog box and then click Close again to close the Package And Deployment Wizard).

And that's all it takes—now the user can run the setup.exe program to install your application, as shown in Figure 30.5. When the setup program runs, it handles all the details of checking for adequate space, asking the user where to install the application, and installs the necessary files for you, including the CAB file and the setup.lst file. It's that simple.



Figure 30.5 Installing the alarm application.

You've completed the process: using the Package And Deployment Wizard, you can now create programs to distribute your application.

Creating Help Files With The Microsoft Help Workshop

The Testing Department is calling again. Your new program SuperDuperGraphics4Us really fine, but no one seems to be able to use it. But, you say, it's so intuitive and simple: just use Alt+F8 to draw a line, Ctrl+Shift+Esc to draw a circle, and.... Add a Help file, they say.

You can create Help files with the Microsoft Help Workshop, hew.exe, which comes with Visual Basic, and appears in Figure 30.6. To see how the Help Workshop works, we'll create a basic Help file for an application named "Helper" over the next few topics in this chapter.



Figure 30.6 The Microsoft Help Workshop.

TIP: You can create more advanced Help files than the one we'll create in this chapter, complete with tabs and clickable tree views of Help topics, by creating a `Helpfile` (extension .cnt) with the Help Workshop, setting up a hierarchy of Help topics and headers as you want.

To create the Help file, helper.hlp, for the helper application, we will create a Help project, helper.hpj, in Help Workshop. This project keeps track of the files in our Help system, and in this example, we'll just have one such file: helper.rtf, which will hold the data for our Help file. In that RTF file, we'll set up the Help topics that display to the user, along with the hotspots in the Help file that will connect those topics.

After adding helper.rtf in the helper.prj file, you can compile that RTF file to create helper.hlp. And to open the helper.hlp Help file, you can use the Windows API function `WinHelp` as follows:

```
Private Declare Function WinHelp Lib "user32" Alias "WinHelpA" (ByVal hwnd _  
    As Long, ByVal lpHelpFile As String, ByVal wCommand As Long, ByVal _  
    dwData As Long) As Long
```

To create a new Help project, select the New item in the Help Workshop's File menu now, select the Help Project item in the New dialog box that opens, and click on OK. Using the Save As menu item in the Help Workshop, save the new Help project as helper.hpj. The new Help project appears in the Help Workshop in Figure 30.7.



Figure 30.7 Creating a Help project in the Microsoft Help Workshop.

Now that we've created a new Help project, we'll add the actual Help text to that project, and we do that by creating an RTF file, as we'll see in the next topic.

Creating A Help Project's RTF File

The real work of creating a Help file takes place in the Help file's RTF file. This rich text file holds not only text for your Help files but also holds the commands used in your Help file.

For example, you use Help file RTF commands to create `Hotspots` which work like hyperlinks, and `Popups`, which work like tool tips. As we'll see in the following topics, you use rich text format codes to support these and other Help features. For example, here are some rich text format codes and what they do as far as the Help workshop is concerned:

- \footnote—Footnote; handles special topic commands
- \page—Page break; ends the current topic
- \strike—Strikethrough; indicates a hotspot
- \ul—Underline; indicates a link to a pop-up topic
- \uldb—Double underline; indicates a hotspot
- \v—Hidden test; indicates the topic ID to jump to

We'll see how these format codes are used in the following topics. In fact, we'll build our Help file's RTF helper.rtf, with Microsoft Word, and we won't have to deal with these codes directly.

Using Microsoft Word, we create the file helper.rtf now (save the file in RTF format). Next, we add it to our project in the Help Workshop by clicking the Files button in the Help Workshop, clicking the Add button in the Topic Files dialog box that appears, selecting helper.rtf, and clicking on OK. This adds helper.rtf to our Help project, as you see in the Help Workshop in Figure 30.8.



Figure 30.8 Adding helper.rtf to the helper.hpj Help project.

In the following topics in this chapter, we'll see how to create the text in the helper.rtf file to build our Help file. The actual RTF file we create is located in the helper folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM (note that the RTF codes in that listing will not be visible in Microsoft Word, which interprets and formats the text with those codes).

Entering Text In A Help File

The text in a Help file is divided into pages, and only one page is displayed at a time. To divide your text into pages in Microsoft Word, you enter a page break with the Insert[vbar]Break menu item or by pressing Ctrl+Enter. The first page in the RTF file is the first page displayed when your Help file is opened.

Let's see an example. Here, we will make the first page of the helper.hlp file we're creating a welcome page by entering this text directly into helper.rtf and following it with a page break:

Contents

Welcome to helper example application. This help file gives you help on the menu items in helper.

Now this text will greet the user when the helper.hlp file is first opened, as shown in Figure 30.9.



Figure 30.9 The opening text in our Help file.

Actually, this text is not really enough by itself—we should allow users some way to jump to the Help pages they want to look at, and we'll do that in the next topic.

Creating A Help Hotspot

To let the user move around in a Help file, you ~~Help~~ hotspots which act much like hyperlinks. Help hotspots appear underlined in Help files, and when the user clicks a hotspot, the Help system jumps to that hotspot and opens the associated Help page.

To see how hotspots work, we'll add two hotspots to the opening Help page we developed in the last tip. Here, we'll let the user jump to two new pages, as shown in Figure 30.10—a Help page giving help about the application's File menu items, and another page giving help about the application's Help menu.



Figure 30.10 Adding two Help hotspots to a Help file.

To add those hotspots to the helper.rtf file, we add this text:

Contents

Welcome to helper example application. This help file gives you help on the menu items in helper.

To get help for the menu you are interested in, click a topic:

File Menu Items

Help Menu Items

To make the "File Menu Items" and "Help Menu Items" into Help hotspots, we give them a double underline using the Microsoft Word Format menu:

Contents

Welcome to helper example application. This help file gives you help on the menu items in helper.

To get help for the menu you are interested in, click a topic:

File Menu Items

=====

Help Menu Items

=====

Now that we've created two Help hotspots, we will connect a label, called `jmpatag` to the hotspots to indicate where we want to jump to when the user clicks the hotspots. In this case, we add the jump tags `FILE_MENU_ITEMS` and `HELP_MENU_ITEMS` to our hotspots this way, marking them as hidden text with the Word Format menu (hidden text appears in a Word document with a dotted underline):

Contents

Welcome to helper example application. This help file gives you help on

the menu items in helper.

To get help for the menu you are interested in, click a topic:

File Menu ItemsFILE_MENU_ITEMS
=====

Help Menu ItemsHELP_MENU_ITEMS
=====

The text for our helper.rtf file so far appears in Microsoft Word in Figure 30.11.



Figure 30.11 Creating help jumps and their targets in Microsoft Word.

Because we've made the new jump tags hidden text, they will not appear visually in the Help file; however when the user clicks a Help hotspot, the Help system will look for the page that has the same tag as the one that the user clicked. How do you give a Help page a tag? We'll look at that topic next.

Creating A Help Hotspot Target

To connect a Help hotspot with a page in a Help file, you place the blinking insertion caret in Word at the beginning of the target page in the Help file's RTF file, and select Word's Insert[vbar]Footnote menu item to insert a new footnote.

In the Footnote And Endnote dialog box that appears, click Custom Mark in the Numbering box, enter the special footnote character "#" (that is, type that character # into the Custom Mark box), and click on OK. This inserts a new footnote in the document and opens a window showing the document's footnotes at the bottom of the window. To connect a Help hotspot to the current page, you simply enter the hotspot's tag as the footnote text.

Let's see an example. In the previous topic, we created two Help hotspots, and in this topic, we'll create a target for them. When the user clicks the File Menu Items hotspot, the Help system will jump to the target page. The tag for this target is FILE_MENU_ITEMS .

To create the page to jump to when the user clicks the File Menu Items hotspot, we insert a page break, a new page and add the title "File Menu Items" to that page:

Contents

Welcome to helper example application. This help file gives you help on the menu items in helper.

To get help for the menu you are interested in, click a topic:

File Menu ItemsFILE_MENU_ITEMS
=====

Help Menu ItemsHELP_MENU_ITEMS
=====

-----Page Break-----

File Menu Items

...

On this new page, we can list the menu items in the application's File menu, each with a hotspot to a link like this:

Contents

Welcome to helper example application. This help file gives you help on the menu items in helper.

To get help for the menu you are interested in, click a topic:

File Menu ItemsFILE_MENU_ITEMS

=====.....

Help Menu ItemsHELP_MENU_ITEMS

=====.....

-----Page Break-----

File Menu Items

Select the menu item you want to get help on:

NewNEW

====...

OpenOPEN

=====.

CloseCLOSE

=====.

To connect the FILE_MENU_ITEMS jump tag with the new page, then, place the insertion caret at the beginning of that page, select the Insert[vbar]Footnote menu item, and give the footnote the custom macro textFILE_MENU_ITEMS , as shown in Figure 30.12.



Figure 30.12 Setting up a Help hotspot target.

Now we've connected the File Menu Items hotspot to the next Help page we've just created; when the user clicks the File Menu Items hotspot, shown in Figure 30.10, we'll jump to this new page, shown in Figure



Figure 30.13 Jumping to a Help target page.

Using footnotes, you can do more than just create Help hotspots; you can title a Help page, and we'll see how to do that in the next topic.

Titling A Help Page

You can add a title to a Help page. To do that, you add a footnote to a Help page, giving it the custom

and give the footnote the text you want to use as the page's title.

Let's see an example. In this case, we will add the title "File Menu Items" to the appropriate page in the helper.rtf file that we've been developing for the previous few topics. To do that, position the insertion c the beginning of the File Menu Items page, add a footnote with the custom mark "\$", and give that foot text "File Menu Items", as shown in Figure 30.12.

Adding Help Topics To The Help Index

You can add a Help topic to the Help index by inserting a footnote with the custom mark “K”, giving footnote the text you want to appear in the index. For example, we add the item File Menu Items to Help index in Figure 30.12, by adding a footnote, “K”, to the appropriate Help page in helper.rtf. Now when the user uses the Help file’s index, the items we’ve added, such as File Menu Items and Help Items, appear in that index, as shown in Figure 30.14. When the user clicks them, the Help system links to the matching page.



Figure 30.14 Adding items to the Help system’s index.

Creating Help Pop-Up Links

You can create Help pop-ups, which work much like tool tips in a Visual Basic program. As an example, we’ve added the pop-up you see in Figure 30.15, which explains the term “file” with a pop-up. Pop-ups appear in Help files with a dotted underline; when the user clicks that pop-up, the associated text is displayed in a tool-tip-like window.



Figure 30.15 Adding a Help pop-up.

Adding a pop-up is just like adding a Help hotspot, but instead of double-underlining the hotspot, you use a single underline. Let’s see an example. Here, we’ll create the pop-up you see at work in Figure 30.15. To do that, just underline the term you want to create a pop-up for, using the Visual Basic Format command and add the hidden text jump tag. We’ll use FILE_POPUP for the jump tag here, like this:

Open

Opens a fileFILE_POPUP.

Because we’ve used a single underline instead of a double one, the Help system will display the term “file” with the tagFILE_POPUP instead of actually jumping to that page. We’ll see how to create that page in the next topic.

Creating Help “Tool Tips” Targets

To create a target page for a Help pop-up, you use footnotes with the custom mark “#”, just as you do for any Help hotspot. To complete the example we started in the previous topic, we add a new page to the helper example’s RTF file with the footnote “#” and the footnoteFILE_POPUP, as shown in Figure 30.16.



Figure 30.16 Adding a Help pop-up to an RTF file.

Finally, we place the text we want to display when the pop-up appears into the new page, as also shown in Figure 30.16. Now when the user clicks the underlined item in the Help system, the pop-up will appear in Figure 30.15.

Compiling Help Files With The Help Workshop

Now that you've created your RTF file with the Help text and hotspots you want to use, along with a Help project in the Help Workshop, how do you create the actual HLP file? You use the Help Work Compile item in the File menu. That menu item brings up the Compile A Help File dialog box you see in Figure 30.17; click Compile to create the Help file, which in the case of the example we've developed in the previous few topics is helper.hlp.



Figure 30.17 The Compile A Help File dialog box in the Help Workshop.

Congratulations—you've created a new Help file. But how do you launch it from Visual Basic? We'll look at that next.

Displaying A Help File From Visual Basic

The Testing Department is calling. Your new Help file is very helpful, but now you've got to display it from your Visual Basic application. Makes sense, you think, but how do you do that?

To display a Help file from a Visual Basic program, you can use the Windows API function `WinHelp`:

```
Declare Function WinHelp Lib "user32" Alias "WinHelpA" (ByVal_
    hwnd As Long, ByVal lpHelpFile As String, ByVal wCommand As Long,_
    ByVal dwData As Long) As Long
```

Here's what the arguments to this function mean:

- `hwnd`—Handle of the window opening the Help file
- `lpHelpFile`—Name of the Help file to open
- `wCommand`—Open command; see the list that follows
- `dwData`—Additional data as required for the Help file opening operation

Here are the possible values you can use for the `wCommand` argument:

- `HELP_CONTEXT = &H1`
- `HELP_QUIT = &H2`
- `HELP_INDEX = &H3`
- `HELP_CONTENTS = &H3&`
- `HELP_HELPONHELP = &H4`
- `HELP_SETINDEX = &H5`
- `HELP_SetCONTENTS = &H5&`
- `HELP_CONTEXTPOPUP = &H8&`

- HELP_FORCEFILE = &H9&
- HELP_KEY = &H101
- HELP_COMMAND = &H102&
- HELP_PARTIALKEY = &H105&
- HELP_MULTIKEY = &H201&
- HELP_SETWINPOS = &H203&

Let's see an example. Here, we'll open the helper.hlp Help file in an application named "helper" when the user selects the Help item in the application's Help menu. To start, we declare WinHelp and the constants it can use:

```
Const HELP_CONTEXT = &H1
Const HELP_QUIT = &H2
Const HELP_INDEX = &H3
Const HELP_CONTENTS = &H3&
Const HELP_HELPPONHELP = &H4
Const HELP_SETINDEX = &H5
Const HELP_SETCOMENTS = &H5&
Const HELP_CONTEXTPOPUP = &H8&
Const HELP_FORCEFILE = &H9&
Const HELP_KEY = &H101
Const HELP_COMMAND = &H102&
Const HELP_PARTIALKEY = &H105&
Const HELP_MULTIKEY = &H201&
Const HELP_SETWINPOS = &H203&
```

```
Private Declare Function WinHelp Lib "user32" Alias "WinHelpA" (ByVal_
    hwnd As Long, ByVal lpHelpFile As String, ByVal wCommand As Long,_
    ByVal dwData As Long) As Long
```

Then, when the user selects the appropriate menu item, we display the helper.hlp WinHelp this way:

```
Private Sub mnuHelp_Click()
    retVal = WinHelp(Form1.hwnd, "c:\vbbb\helper\helper.hlp",_
        HELP_INDEX, CLng(0))
End Sub
```

And that's it—now the user can open the helper.hlp file from the Visual Basic helper application, as in Figure 30.18.

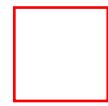


Figure 30.18 Opening a customized Windows Help file from a Visual Basic program.

Now we're supporting Help files in our Visual Basic applications. The code for this example is located

the helper folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Building Online Help Into Your Application

The Testing Department is calling again. The company's software is changing too fast to keep up with it. You're creating new Help files and sending them out to users all the time—what can we do? You suggest adding some online Help files?

You can build support for online Help files into Visual Basic applications easily by using the Web browser control. Using that control, you can connect the users directly to the company Web site so they can view Help files in HTML format.

Let's see an example. Using the Visual Basic Application Wizard, create a new project named "onlinehelp". When the Application Wizard asks about Internet connectivity, as shown in Figure 30.19, click the Yes option button and enter the Help Web page you want to display to the user as the starting page for the program's built-in Web browser, as also shown in that figure. Then complete building the application with the Application Wizard by clicking the Finish button.



Figure 30.19 Adding an online Help page to a Visual Basic application.

To make the application's Web browser look less like a browser and more like online Help, use the Visual Basic menu editor to move the Web Browser menu item from the View menu to the Help menu and change its caption to Online Help. In addition, remove all the controls from the `frmBrowser` form except for the Web browser control `brwWebBrowser`. Finally, take all code out of the `frmBrowser` form except for this code, which displays the starting page when the user opens the browser:

```
Public StartingAddress As String

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Me.Show

    If Len(StartingAddress) > 0 Then
        brwWebBrowser.Navigate StartingAddress
    End If

End Sub
```

And that's it—now when the user selects the Online Help item in the Help menu, the Web browser appears and connects to the Help page you've selected online, as shown in Figure 30.20. Congratulations—you're supporting online Help in your application. The code for this example is located in the `FrmBrowser` folder on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.



Figure 30.20 Supporting online Help in a Visual Basic application.

Creating Online User Registration

The Testing Department has sent an email. Isn't there some way to keep track of your application's users? How about adding online registration to your application? Hmm, you think, how does that work?

To let your application's users register their new purchase easily, you can add online registration to your program. When users click the Online Registration menu item in the Help menu, a dialog box appears asking them to enter their name and email address. When they do and click a button labeled Register, the application connects to the Internet and sends the recorded information to you.

We'll see how this works in the next few topics in this chapter, where we use the FTP protocol to upload user registrations directly to an FTP site. This example, the onlinereg application, lets the user select a menu item, Register Online, in the Help menu, and displays an online registration form, as shown in Figure 30.21. When users enter their name and email address in the registration form and click the button labeled Register, the program sends the data in that form to an FTP server.



Figure 30.21 The onlinereg application's online registration form.

We'll write the code for the registration form, Form2, now. When users enter their name and email address and click the Register button, we start by writing that information out to a temporary file with the name of the application the users are registering, as well as the time and date:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Open "c:\temp.dat" For Output As #1
    Print #1, "Registering SuperDuperDataCrunch" & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "Name: " & Text1.Text & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "email: " & Text2.Text & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "Time: " & Format(Now)
    Close #1
    ...
End Sub
```

This code stores the user information to the temp.dat file, like this:

```
Registering SuperDuperDataCrunch
```

```
Name: steve
```

```
email: steve@steveco.com
```

```
Time: 5/5/99 10:02:23 AM
```

This is the data that we will upload to the FTP server in the next topic.

TIP: Note that the file name here, temp.dat, may well conflict with an existing file. To make sure that does not happen, you can use the Visual Basic TempName method to get a name for the temporary file in which to store the user's registration data.

Uploading Online Registration Information To An FTP Server

In the previous topic, we've stored the registration information we want to upload to the FTP server in temp.dat. To upload the user registration data, we add an Internet transfer control to the onlinereg application's registration form, Form2 (see Chapter 21 for more details on the Internet transfer control).

After writing the registration form to disk, we connect to the FTP server to upload the data to by using Internet transfer control like this, where we set the control's URL property to the address of the FTP server and set the UserName and Password properties as required:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Open "c:\temp.dat" For Output As #1
    Print #1, "Registering SuperDuperDataCrunch" & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "Name: " & Text1.Text & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "email: " & Text2.Text & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "Time: " & Format(Now)
    Close #1

    Inet1.URL = "ftp://ftp.server.com"
    Inet1.UserName = "steve"
    Inet1.Password = "secret"
    ...

```

Here we are using the connection protocol used by many FTP servers, which sets the current FTP directory based on the username you log in with. If you need to set the current directory yourself, use the FTF command, using the Internet transfer control's Execute method.

TIP: You may want to encode any password that you embed in your code for security purposes.

To actually upload the file temp.dat, we use the Internet transfer control's Execute method to execute the FTP Put command like this, where we name the file reg.dat when uploaded to the server:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Open "c:\temp.dat" For Output As #1
    Print #1, "Registering SuperDuperDataCrunch" & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "Name: " & Text1.Text & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "email: " & Text2.Text & vbCrLf
    Print #1, "Time: " & Format(Now)
    Close #1

    Inet1.URL = "ftp://ftp.server.com"
    Inet1.UserName = "steve"
    Inet1.Password = "secret"
    Inet1.Execute , "PUT c:\temp.dat reg.dat"
End Sub
```

This uploads the file with the user registration information to the FTP site you've selected:

Registering SuperDuperDataCrunch

Name: steve

email: steve@steveco.com

Time: 5/5/99 10:02:23 AM

TIP: Note that we've uploaded the file and named it reg.dat on the FTP server; using that name for all upload will cause a conflict. You should use a unique file name for each separate file; for example, you can incorporate the date and time of day in the file name.

Now that we've uploaded the registration data, we need to terminate the FTP connection and delete temporary file, and we'll do that in the next topic.

Concluding The FTP Transfer Of The Online Registration Information

In the previous few topics, we've sent user registration data to an FTP site in the onlinereg application. Once that the upload operation is complete, we will close the FTP connection in the Internet transfer control's StateChanged event handler:

```
Private Sub Inet1_StateChanged(ByVal State As Integer)

    If State = icResponseCompleted Then
        Inet1.Execute , "Close"
    ...

```

In addition, we delete the temporary file we've created and hide the registration form this way:

```
Private Sub Inet1_StateChanged(ByVal State As Integer)

    If State = icResponseCompleted Then
        Inet1.Execute , "Close"

        Dim FileSystemObject As Object
        Set FileSystemObject = CreateObject( "Scripting.FileSystemObject" )
        FileSystemObject.DeleteFile "c:\temp.dat"

        Form2.Hide
    End If
End Sub
```

And that's it—we've uploaded the user registration data to the specified FTP site. Congratulations, reader! You're supporting online registration. The code for this example is located in the onlinereg folder, and the code that displays that form is located in the Form1 folder, both on this book's accompanying CD-ROM.

Index

Special Characters

& (ampersand)
& operator, use of, 37
access characters, 168 171, 235
* (asterisk), 101
\$(AppPath) macro, 1047
32-bit MAPI DLLs, installing, 718
+ operator, 37
| (pipe symbol), 356
2D, 3D area charts, 385 387
2D, 3D bar charts, 387
2D, 3D combination charts, 390 392
2D, 3D line charts, 384 385
2D, 3D step charts, 388 390
_ (underscore), 38

A

Abs function, 113
Access characters, 155, 168 171, 235, 447
Action property, 346, 720, 897
Activating OLE objects, 912 914
Active control, determining, 971 972
Active form, determining, 992 993
ActiveControl property, 608, 915, 971 972
ActiveForm property, 608, 992 993
ActiveX components, 650, 652. See also ActiveX controls; ActiveX documents; Code

components.

ActiveX Control Interface Wizard, 669, 675, 680

ActiveX controls, 650 651, 652

adding to DHTML pages, 713 715

adding to projects, 66 67

adding to toolbox, 664

constituent controls, 651, 659 661

creating, 653 658

embedding in Web pages, 657

event handlers, 659

events

adding, 678 680

Initialize event, 672

Paint event, 657

ReadProperties event, 671 672

Terminate event, 672

WriteProperties event, 671 672

files created for, 651

graphics, 655, 657

methods

adding, 674 678

Initialize method, 655

RaiseEventmethod, 679

properties

adding at design time, 666 670

Ambient property, 666

AutoRedraw property, 657

displaying, 47

Extender property, 666

Let and Get procedures, 667 668, 669

making properties persistent, 671 674

property pages, 680 681

PropertyBag objects, 671, 693 694

referenced in VBP files, 25

registering with Windows, 67, 656, 664

testing, 655 656, 661 664

ActiveX Data Objects See ADO (ActiveX Data Objects).

ActiveX Designers, 77

ActiveX DLLs, 935, 945

methods, passing arguments to, 951 953

registering, 957

threading models, 936, 963

ActiveX Document Migration Wizard, 683

ActiveX documents, 651, 652 See also DHTML pages; Web pages.

constituent controls, 684 689, 689

converting Visual Basic projects to, 683

creating, 682 683

DLLs vs. EXE files, 652, 684

DOB files, 686, 690 691

events

ReadProperties event, 693 694

WriteProperties event, 693 694

files created for, 651

integrating Web browsers into, 691 692

opening from Internet, 691 692

properties, 693 694

testing, 683, 690 691

VBD files, 686, 690 691

ActiveX EXEs, 935, 945

creating, 943 945

methods, passing arguments to, 951 953

properties, setting, 947

registering, 958

threading models, 936, 963

ActiveX MAPI controls, 697

Add Field dialog box, Visual Data Manager, 832

Add Form dialog box, 58 59, 178

Add-In Manager, 66

Add-Ins menu, IDE, 43, 66

Add method

Buttons collection, 482 484

collections, 110

ListImages collection, 507

ListItems collection, 520 521

ListSubItems collection, 527 528

Nodescollection, 512, 513

Panelscollection, 485

Tabs collection, 533

Add Procedure dialog box, 667, 674 680, 947 949, 950

AddItem method, 254 255, 265

AddNew method, 844, 867 868

AddressCaption property, 720

AddressEditFieldCount property, 720

AddressLabel property, 720

AddressModifiableproperty, 720

ADO (ActiveX Data Objects), 827 828, 851
See also ADO data control; DAO (Data Access Objects); RDO (Remote Data Objects).

adding records, 844, 888

adocode example project, 883 894

collections, 827

creating record sets, 885 887

data-bound controls, 840 841, 847 848, 887

data environment, 824

deleting records, 844 845, 892 893

navigating data, 845 847, 890 892

opening connections to databases, 884 885

opening databases, 839 840

refreshing data, 845, 888 889

Remote Data Service (RDS), 828

SQL commands, executing, 893 894

transactions, 854

updating data, 845, 889 890

ADO data-bound controls, 848 849

ADO data control, 828
See also ADO (ActiveX Data Objects).

methods

AddNew method, 844

Delete method, 844 845

MoveFirst method, 846

MoveLast method, 846 847

MoveNext method, 845 846

MovePrevious method, 846

Refresh method, 845

UpdateRecord method, 845

properties

ConnectionString property, 828, 840

DataSourceproperty, 840

Provider property, 828, 840

Recordsetproperty, 844, 845, 846

RecordSourceproperty, 828, 840

Adocode example project, 883 894

Advanced Optimizations dialog box, 64, ~~See also Compiler options; Optimization.~~

Advapi32.dll, 774

Alarm clock example program, 417 419

Alias clause, DLL procedure declarations, 776

Align item, Format menu, 52

Align property, 470, 494

Aligning controls, 51 52, 53 54, 442, 453

Aligning coolbars, 494

Aligning picture boxes, 317

Aligning status bars, 485

Aligning text, 200 201, 216 217, 446

Alignment property, 488

Allocating memory, 805 806, 807

AllowAddNew property, 849

AllowCustomize property, 482

AllowDelete property, 849

AllowUpdate property, 849

Ambient properties, 666

Ambient property, 666

Animation

Animation control, 742 743

arrays of Picture objects, 623, 634 635

Move method, 132

multimedia MCI control, 769

picture boxes, 320 321

in status bar panels, 489

timer control, 419 421

Animation control, 742 743

ANSI character set, limiting fonts to, 360

Apartment-model threading, 936

API Viewer add-in tool, Visual Basic, 779

App object, 962

AppActivate function, 112

Appearanceproperty, 439

ApplsRunning property, 908

Application deployment, 1044 1048

Application Wizard

adding status bars to forms, 484

adding toolbars to forms, 123 125

designing menus, 157

integrating Web browsers into projects, 691 692

online help system, 1063 1064

profiles, 23

projects, creating, 22 28

Applications (Windows applications)
See Windows applications.

Arcs, drawing, 460, 597 599

Area charts, 385 387

Arguments, passing, 679, 776, 951 953, 953 954

Arithmetic operators, precedence of, 103

Arrange method, 141

Arranging MDI child windows, 140 141

Array function, 95, 96

Arrays. See also Control arrays.animation sequences, 623, 634 635

array bounds checking, 63 65

Array function, 95

dynamic arrays, 94 95

looping over elements, 108

lower bound, 94

Option Basestatement, 94

passing to procedures, 967 968

standard arrays, 93 94

Arrows property, 295 296

As Form keywords, 992

As keyword, variable type, specifying, 11

Asc function, 90, 101

Atn function, 113

Attachment& properties, MAPIMessages control, 720

Auto List Members feature, IDE, 70, 72

AutoActivate property, 912

AutoPlay property, 743

AutoRedraw bitmap, 648

AutoRedraw property

ActiveX controls, 657

controls, 584

drawing graphics from load event, 588

forms, 129, 584

layering graphics, 611 612

picture boxes, 328

printing graphics, 610

AutoSize property, 317, 445, 488, 619

AutoVerbMenu property, 912 913

Available disk space, determining, 813 814

AVI files, playing, 742 743, 759 761

Axis titles in charts, 382

B

B argumentLine method, 593

Back button, Web browsers, 704

Back command, multimedia MCI control, 748, 769

BackColor property, 230, 585, 617

Background colorSeeBackColor property.

Bands, coolbar, 467, 494 495

Bang menus, 175 176

Bar charts, 2D and 3D, 387

BAS files (module files), 22

Best coding practices, 36 38

Bevelproperty, 488

Binary data, 425, 732 733

Binary files, 543, 554, 561 563

Binary raster operation mode (ROP2), 788 789

BitBlt Windows API function, 190, 793 794

Bitmaps, 190 192, 793 794

Blackness pen setting, 604

Blurring images, 646 647

BOF property, 871 872

Bold property, 590

Bolding text in RTF boxes, 209 211

Bookmarks, 78 79

Boolean variable type, 89

Border property, 903

BorderColor property, 585

Borders.SeeBorderStyle property;BorderWidth property.

BorderStyle property

flex grid control, 400

forms, 123

image controls, 618

line control, 456

picture boxes, 619

shape control, 452

BorderWidth property, 452, 456

Bound controlsSeeData-bound controls.

BoundColumn property, 849

Bounds (array bounds)

bounds checking, 63 65

lower bound, 94

Boxes, drawing, 593 594

Break state, entering, 116

Breakpoints, 1031, 1036

Browser forms, customizing, 69See alsoWeb browsers.

BuddyControl property, 307

Bulleted text, RTF boxes, 214 215

Button groups, toolbars, 478

ButtonClick event, toolbars, 471 472

Buttons.SeeCheckboxes; Command buttons; Option buttons; Toolbars.

Buttons collection, toolbars, 482 484

ByRef keyword, 97, 98, 776, 951 953

Byte variable type, 89

ByVal keyword, 97, 98, 776, 951 953

C

C/C++ code

C/C++ data types, 776 778

linking programs to, 816 818

CAB files, 1045 1046

Calculator (ActiveX control example), 660 661

Call keyword, 775

Cancel button, Common Dialog controls, 347 348, 1028 1029

Cancelproperty, 244 245

CancelError property, 347 348, 1028 1029

CanStepproperty, 769

Caption property

buttons, 229, 235

data control (DAO), 834

forms, 121

frame control, 439

label control, 443

menus, 166

tab strip tabs, 533

Capturing images from screen, 794 799

Case statement. See [Select Case statement](#).

Casting. See [Converting data between variable types](#).

CBool function, 90

CByte function, 90

CCur function, 90

CD (FTP command), 730

CDate function, 90

CDbl function, 90

CDecfunction, 90

CDs (music), playing, 753 755

CDUP (FTP command), 730

CellFont& properties, flex grid control, 401

Cells.SeeFlex grid control.

Changeevent

combo boxes, 253, 267

DateTimePicker control, 430

directory list box control, 568

drive list box control, 567 568

list boxes, 253

scroll bars, 289 290

slider controls, 301

text boxes, 145, 207

updown controls, 308 309

Characters

restricting input characters, 206 207

Windows or ANSI character sets, limiting fonts to, 360

Chart control, 372 373, 375

adding data to, 376 379

adding to forms, 375

area charts, 385 387

bar charts, 387

colors, setting, 382

combination charts, 390 392
data series, 379 381
line charts, 381, 384 385
pie charts, 382 383
properties
 ChartData property, 376 377
 ChartType property, 375
 Column property, 377 378
 ColumnCount property, 377 378
 Data property, 377 378
 DataGrid property, 379
 Row property, 377 378
 RowCount property, 377 378
 RowLabel property, 378
 SetDatamethods, 379
step charts, 381, 388 390
titles, 382
 ChartData property, 376 377
ChDir command, 816
ChDir statement, 572
ChDrive command, 816
Check buttons in toolbars, 477
Checkboxes, 227
 adding and removing at runtime, 242
background color, 229 230
binding to data controls, 847
button releases, 244
caption, 229

combining with option buttons, 249 250
in control arrays, 233 234, 242
disabling, 236 237
displaying images in, 237, 239 240, 241, 616
events
 Click event, 232 233
 GotFocusevent, 235
 Key& events, 244
 LostFocusevent, 235
 Mouse& events, 244
focus, 234, 236
graphical checkboxes, 248
keyboard access, 235
methods
 Move method, 239
 SetFocusmethod, 234
moving, 239
passing to procedures, 243
properties
 BackColor property, 230
 Caption property, 229, 235
 Default property, 234, 236
 DisabledPicture property, 237
 DownPicture property, 241, 248
 Enabled property, 237
 Font property, 231 232
 ForeColor property, 231
 Height property, 239

Index property, 233 234

Left property, 239

Name property, 233 234

Picture property, 239 240, 248

Style property, 230, 237, 239 240, 241, 616

TabIndex property, 236

TabStop property, 236

ToolTipText property, 238

Top property, 239

Value property, 245 246

Visible property, 237 238

Width property, 239

resizing, 239

responding to button clicks, 232 233

showing and hiding, 237 238

state of checkbox, 245 246

tab order, 236

text attributes, 230 232

tool tips, 238

Checkedproperty, 179

Checkmarks, 178 179, 264

Child property, 495 496

Choosefunction, 106

Chr function, 90, 101

CInt function, 90

Circle method

drawing arcs, 460, 597 599

drawing ellipses, 460, 596 597

forms and picture boxes, 324, 459, 594 595

printing graphics, 610 611

Circles, drawing, 324 325, 450, 459, 594 595

Class modules, 128, 934, 946
See also Classes, code components; Modules.

Classproperty, 904

Classes, code components, 934 935

adding to components, 944

creating objects, 940 942

Initialize event, 958

Instancing property, 936 937, 959 960

Terminate event, 958 959

Clear method, 264, 272

Clearing combo box items, 272

Clearing drawing area, 585

Clearing images, 621

Clearing list box items, 264 265

Clearing slider control selections, 306

ClearSelmethod, 306

Click event

buttons, 232 233

combo boxes, 253, 267 268

coolbar controls, 496 497

label control, 446

list boxes, 253, 256 257

multiselect list boxes, 261

picture boxes, 318

tab strips, 536

Web browser navigation, 701

Client area, 119

ClientToScreenWindows API function, 790, 800 802

Clip property, 626

Clipboard, 204 205, 332 333, 609, 610, 927

Clipboard object

methods

GetData method, 332

GetText method, 205

SetData method, 332

SetText method, 205

password controls, security of, 206

ClipControls property, 611 612

ClipHeight, ClipWidth properties, 626

ClipX, ClipY properties, 626

CLng function, 90

Clock example program, 415 416

Close command, multimedia MCI control, 748, 753

Close method, 578 579, 898, 908

Close statement, 564

ClIs method, 330, 585, 621, 648

Code components, 651, 652, 934

classes, 934 935, 944, 958 959

creating, 942 945

dialog box libraries, 962

forms, showing, 961

global objects, 935, 959 960

in-process servers (ActiveX DLLs), 935, 936, 945, 951 953, 957, 963

methods, 942, 950, 951 953

objects, 934 935, 940 942, 960 961
out-of-process servers (ActiveX EXEs), 935, 936, 943 945, 947, 951 953, 958, 963
properties, 942, 946, 947 949
references to, adding, 938
SingleUsecode components, 936 937
testing, 954 956
threading models, 936, 963
type libraries, 940, 941
using in projects, 938 940
Code windows, 6, 49
Col property, 393
Collapseevent, 517
Collection ADO object, 827
Collections, 110 See also names of specific collections.
looping over elements in, 108
methods
Add method, 110
Item method, 110
Removemethod, 110
Color constants, Visual Basic, 586 587
Color dialog box, 348 350
Color property, 358
Colors
Color dialog box, 348 350
color-related properties, 585
converting images to grayscale, 637 640
custom colors, allowing definition of, 350
drawing pen, 604 606

fill color, 453, 585, 601 602

four-byte integer color specifications, 588

IDE, customizing, 50 51

of points, retrieving, 604

propagating color values among pixels, 645

QBColor function, 586

RGB function, 586

system color constants, 587 588

Visual Basic color constants, 586 587

ColPosition property, 402

Cols property, 393

Column property, 377 378

ColumnClick event, 529

ColumnCount property, 377 378

Columns

flex grid control, 402 403

list views, 525 528

Columns property, 263, 629

Combination charts, 2D and 3D, 390 392

Combo boxes, 252 253

adding items, 266

adding to toolbars, 479 481

binding to data controls, 847

clearing items, 272

events

Changeevent, 253, 267

Click event, 253, 267 268

DblClick event, 253

DblClick events, 268

image combo boxes, 277 279

index of new items, 276 277

ItemData array, 275 276

locking, 272 273

methods

AddItem method, 265

Clear method, 272

RemoveItem method, 269

number of items, 273 274

numeric data, connecting to list items, 275 276

properties

Enabled property, 273

List property, 265

ListCount property, 273 274

ListIndex property, 267 268, 270

Locked property, 272

NewIndex property, 276 277

Sorted property, 271

Style property, 265, 273

Text property, 265, 267, 270 271

TopIndex property, 274 275

Visible property, 273

removing items, 269

restricting user input, 271, 272 273

selected items, 267 268, 270 271, 275

sorting, 271 272

topmost item, 274 275

types of, 265

Web browser navigation, 700 701

Comdlg32.dll, 774

ComEvent& errors, 426 427

Command ADO object, 827

Command buttons, 227

adding and removing at runtime, 242

background color, 229 230

button releases, 244

in control arrays, 233 234, 242

disabling, 236 237

displaying images, 237, 239 240, 241, 616

events

Click event, 232 233

GotFocusevent, 235

Key& events, 244

LostFocusevent, 235

Mouse& events, 244

focus, 234, 236

keyboard access, 235

methods

Move method, 239

SetFocusmethod, 234

moving, 239

passing to procedures, 243

properties

BackColor property, 230

Cancelproperty, 244 245

Caption property, 229, 235
Default property, 234, 236
DisabledPicture property, 237
DownPicture property, 241
Enabled property, 237
Font property, 231 232
ForeColor property, 231
Height property, 239
Index property, 233 234
Left property, 239
Name property, 233 234
Picture property, 239 240
Style property, 230, 237, 239 240, 241, 616
TabIndex property, 236
TabStop property, 236
ToolTipText property, 238
Top property, 239
Visible property, 237 238
Width property, 239
resizing, 239
responding to button clicks, 232 233
setting caption, 229
showing and hiding, 237 238
tab order, 236
text attributes, 230 232
tool tips, 238
using as Cancel buttons, 244 245
Command property, 741

Command strings, sending to modem, 423 424

Commands See also **Menu items**.

FTP commands, 730, 735

multimedia MCI control commands, 748 749

OLE primary verbs, executing, 914

SQL commands, executing, 874 875, 883, 893 894

in text boxes and RTF boxes, 198 199

Commenting conventions, 33 34

CommEvent property, 409, 422, 424, 426 427

Common Controls, Windows See **Windows Common Controls**.

Common Dialog controls, 342 343

adding to forms, 345

Cancel button, trapping button clicks, 347 348, 1028 1029

Color dialog box, 348 350

displaying dialog boxes, 345 346

displaying Windows Help, 368 370

File Open dialog box, 350 357, 544 545

File Save As dialog box, 350 357

Font dialog box, 358 362

methods

ShowColor method, 348 350

ShowFont method, 358

ShowHelp method, 368

ShowOpen method, 350 351

ShowSave method, 350 351

Print dialog box, 363 368

properties

Action property, 346

CancelError property, 347 348

Copiesproperty, 364

DefaultExt property, 355

FileName property, 350 351, 354

FileTitle property, 351, 354

Filter property, 356 357

Flagsproperty, 350, 352 353, 358, 360 361, 365 366

FromPageproperty, 364

hDC property, 364

HelpCommand property, 368

HelpFile property, 368

InitDir property, 355 356

MaxFileSizeproperty, 354

Min , Max properties, 361 362, 366

Orientation property, 367 368

PrinterDefault property, 363

ToPageproperty, 364

title bar text, 346 347

CommPort property, 408, 423

Communications control, 407 408

adding to forms, 421

buffers, 422

handshaking, 425

modem command strings, sending, 423 424

OnComm event, 409, 422, 424, 426 427

properties

CommEvent property, 409, 422, 424, 426 427

CommPort property, 408, 423

EOFEnable property, 409, 422
Handshaking property, 425
InBufferCount property, 409, 424
InBufferSize property, 408, 422
Input property, 409, 422, 423, 424
InputLen property, 409, 422, 424
OutBufferCount property, 409, 425
OutBufferSize property, 408, 422
Output property, 409, 423 424, 425
PortOpen property, 408, 423, 427
RThreshold property, 408, 422
Settingsproperty, 408, 423
SThresholdproperty, 408, 422
reading data, 409, 424
sending data, 409, 425
serial port, 408, 423, 427
Comparison operators, precedence of, 103
Compiler options
array bounds checking, 64
fast code, optimizing for, 75
listed in VBP files, 15
Pentium FDIV error check, 65
Pentium Pro processor, optimizing for, 76
small code, optimizing for, 75
Compiling Help files, 1060
Components, 58, 176 178See also ActiveX controls; Code components.
Components dialog box, 67, 77, 664
Compose buffer, MAPIMessages control, 719

Composemethod, 719, 721

Conditional statement See also Choosefunction; Switch function.

If&Else statement, 104

nesting, 37

Select Casestatement, 105

Connection object, ADO, 827, 884 885

Connection object, RDO, 854, 877 879, 883

ConnectionEvents ADO, 828

Connections, serial See Communications control.

ConnectionString property, 828, 840

Const statement, 85

Constants, 33, 36 37, 85 86, 778 779

Constituent controls, 651, 659 661, 684 689

Container controls, 322, 439 443

Containers, 611 612

Control arrays

buttons, 233 234, 242

controls, loading at runtime, 973 975

multiple OLE objects, 916 924

passing to procedures, 968, 970 971

Ubound property, 973

Control boxes, 122

Control buttons, 146

Control type, 970

Control variable type, 970

ControlBox property, 122

Controls. See also Data-bound controls; Keyboard interface.

active control, determining, 971 972

adding code to, 49

adding using toolbox, 48

aligning, 51 52, 53 54, 453

basing ActiveX controls on, 657 658

binding to ADO record sets, 887

clearing drawing area, 585

creating and loading at runtime, 973 975

determining type of, 972 973

device contexts, 780

drag and drop operations, 976 983

events

DragDrop event, 981 982

DragOver event, 982 983

Paint event, 584

grouping, 322, 442 443

lightweight (windowless) controls, 990 991

methods

Cls method, 585

Move method, 131 132

ZOrder method, 976

moving, 131

naming conventions (prefixes), 29 32

passing to procedures, 970

properties

ActiveControl property, 971 972

AutoRedraw property, 584, 610

BackColor property, 585

BorderColor property, 585

DataSourceproperty, 887

DragMode property, 976

FillColor property, 585

ForeColor property, 585

hDC property, 780

managing using Properties window, 46 47

OLEDropMode property, 984

Parent property, 136

TabIndex property, 130, 975

TabStop property, 19, 130

Visible property, 132

redrawing graphics, 584

showing and hiding, 132

sizing, 51 52, 131

tab order, 129 130, 236, 975

Z-order position, 976

Controls collection, 993 994

ConventionsSee**Programming conventions, Microsoft.**

Converting data between variable types, 90, 102

Coolbars, 466 467, 493 497

Coordinate systems, 133, 583, 606 607, 790

Copiesproperty, 364

Copy method, 573, 719, 898

Copy Pen pen setting, 605

Copying images, 609, 635 636

Copying OLE objects, 927

Copyright information, adding to projects, 59

Core Windows DLLs, 774

Cosfunction, 113

Cosecant function, 114

Cotangent function, 114

CPP files, in DLLs, 816

Create New Data Source dialog box, 836

CreateBrush Windows API function, 788

CreateCompatibleBitmap Windows API function, 190

CreateCompatibleDC Windows API function, 190

CreateDatabase method, 857 858

CreateDC function, 780 781

CreateEmbed method, 898

CreateField method, 861 863

CreateIndex method, 861 863

CreateLink method, 898

CreateObject function, 940 941

CreatePen Windows API function, 786

CSng function, 90

CStr function, 90

CTL files (ActiveX control class files), 651

Ctrl key, 112, 172 173

CurDir command, 816

Currency variable type, 89, 116

Current directory, 353

Current form, referencing, 128

Current time, displaying, 415

CurrentX , CurrentY properties, 588

Custom colors, 350

Customize dialog box, IDE, 68

Customize Toolbar dialog box, Application Wizard, 469

CVar function, 90

CVErr function, 90, 1026 1027

D

DAO (Data Access Objects), 824 825, 853 854 See also ADO (ActiveX Data Objects); Data control, DAO; RDO (Remote Data Objects).

adding records, 844, 867 868

creating databases, 857 859

creating record sets, 863 865

DAO Object Library, 857

daocode example project, 856 875

data-bound controls, 835, 847 848

deleting records, 844 845, 872

editing records, 868

indexes on tables, creating, 861 863

navigating data, 845 847, 869 872

OpenDatabase method, 865 867

opening databases, 865 867

refreshing data, 845

searching record sets, 873

sorting records, 872

SQL statements, executing, 874 875

tables, 859, 860 861

updating data, 845, 868 869

workspace, 824

DAO Object Library, 857

Daocode example project, 856 875

Darkening images, 641

Dashed lines, drawing using line control, 456

Data.See also Databases.

adding to charts, 376 379

dragging and dropping between applications, 983 990

entering in databases, 833

reading from memory, 808, 809

receiving and sending, 424, 425

sensitive data, protecting, 37

storing in memory, 806, 808

Data Access Object See DAO (Data Access Objects).

Data-bound controls, 828 829

with ADO data control, 840 841, 848 849

with data control (DAO), 826, 835

list of, 847 848

with remote data control, 826, 838 839

Data control, DAO, 825 826 See also ADO data control; Remote data control.

adding to programs, 834

connecting to bound controls, 835

methods

AddNew method, 844

Delete method, 844 845

MoveFirst method, 846

MoveLast method, 846 847

MoveNext method, 845 846

MovePrevious method, 846

Refresh method, 845

UpdateRecord method, 845

properties

Caption property, 834

Databaseproperty, 826

DatabaseNameproperty, 835

Recordsetproperty, 826, 844, 845, 846

RecordSourceproperty, 826, 835

Data conversion, 90, 102

Data forms, 841 843

Data property, 377 378

Data series, 379 381

Data Tips, 70, 72

Data typesSee Variable types.

Database access, 830, 836 837 See also ADO (ActiveX Data Objects); DAO (Data Access Objects); Data-bound controls; RDO (Remote Data Objects).

Database object, DAO, 825, 853, 857 859, 863 865, 874 875

Databaseproperty, 826

DatabaseNameproperty, 835

DatabasesSee also ADO (ActiveX Data Objects); DAO (Data Access Objects); RDO (Remote Data Objects).

adding records, 844, 867 868, 888

adocode example project, 883 894

components of, 823

connecting to flex grid controls, 403 404

creating, 830 833, 857 859

daocode example project, 856 875

deleting records, 844 845, 872, 892 893

moving between records, 845 847

navigating, 845 847, 869 872, 879 883, 890 892

opening, 835, 838, 839 840, 865 867

opening connections to, 876 877, 883 885

rdocode example project, 875 884

refreshing data, 845

relational databases, 776

updating, 845, 868 869, 889 890

DataCombo control, properties

BoundColumn property, 849

data properties, 849

DataField property, 849

DataSourceproperty, 849

ListField property, 849

RowSourceproperty, 849

DataField property, 835, 838 839, 840 841, 849

DataGridView control, 849

DataGridView property, 379

DownList control, 849

DataObject object, 984, 987

DataSourceproperty

ADO data control, 840

controls, 887

DataCombo control, 849

DataGridView control, 849

DownList control, 849

flex grid control, 393, 404

remote data control, 838

text boxes, 835, 838 839, 840 841

DataSourceNameproperty, 838

Date& methods, 574

Date function, 115

Date\$function, 413

Date values, 114 115, 413 415

Date variable type, 89

DateAdd function, 115

DateClick event, MonthView control, 428 429

DateDiff function, 115

DatePart function, 115

DateSerialfunction, 90, 115

DateTimePicker control, 410, 429 430

DateValue function, 90, 115

Day function, 90

DBCombo boxes, binding to data controls, 847

DBEngine DAO object, 825

DblClick event

combo boxes, 253, 268

label control, 446

list boxes, 253, 256 257

multiselect list boxes, 261

option buttons, 233

DBList boxes, binding to data controls, 847

DDB function, 116

Deactivating OLE objects, 916

Deallocating memory, 809, 810

Debug menu, IDE, 43

Debug toolbar, IDE, 61, 62

Debugging, 1007, 1029 1030

breakpoints, 1031, 1036

examining expressions and variables, 1033 1036

executing code to cursor, 1036

Immediate window, 1035 1036

Quick Watch window, 1033

single-stepping, 1032

skipping statements, 1036

using message boxes, 1030

Watch window, 1034

Decimal variable type, 89

Declaring arrays, 93 95

Declaring constants, 85 86

Declaring DLL procedures, 775 776

Declaring DLLs, 818

Declaring functions, 97 98

Declaring methods in code components, 950

Declaring properties in class modules, 946

Declaring subroutines, 96 97

Declaring variables, 11, 86 87

implicit declaration, 87

Option Explicit statement, 38, 88

Option Private Module statement, 91

variable scope, 90 91

variable types, 88 89

Declaring Windows API functions, 775 776

DEF files, in DLLs, 818

Default property, 234, 236

Default values, optional arguments, 954

DefaultExt property, 355

Defensive programming, 37

DELETE (FTP command), 730

Delete method

data controls, 844 845

FileObject, 574

MAPIMessages control, 719, 720

OLE control, 926

OLE objects, 898

Recordset objects, 872, 892 893

DeleteDC function, 782

DeleteFile method, 574

DeleteSetting Windows API function, 999

Deleting OLE objects, 926

Deployment package, 1044 1048

Description property, 1021 1022

Design standards, 155 156, 163 165, 172 173

Design time grid, 53 54, 453

Design time properties, 46

Designed for Microsoft Windows logo, 1041 1042

Device contexts

controls, 780

copying bitmaps between, 793 794

deleting, 782

drawing in, 782 788

for entire screen, 781 782

printers, 365

ROP2 (binary raster operation) mode, 788 789

windows, 780

Devices.See Media Control Interface (MCI) devices.

DeviceType property, 744 745

DHTML controls, 710

DHTML (Dynamic HTML), 696, 710, 715
See also DHTML Page Designer;
DHTML pages.

DHTML Page Designer

opening, 706

Table Operation drop-down box, 715 716

text, entering, 709 710

toolbar, inserting HTML tags, 710

toolbox, 710 711, 712 713, 716 717

DHTML pages

ActiveX controls, 713 715

HTML controls, 712 713

HTML tags, 710

hyperlinks, 716 717

images, 710 711

tables, 715 716

testing, 717

text, 709 710

Dialog boxes

Cancel buttons, 244 245

creating, 146 147

designing, 122

displaying icons in taskbar, 995

libraries of, 962

modal display of, 147, 962, 996 997

Dim statement, 11, 86, 93 94, 138

DIR (FTP command), 730

Directories

changing, 572, 816

creating and deleting, 572

current directory, 353, 816

default directory, 816

downloading from Web pages, 731, 732

Windows installation directory, 814 815

Directory list box control, 568, 569 571

DisabledPicture property, 237

Disabling buttons, 236 237

Disabling forms at runtime, 151

Disabling menu items, 180 181

Disk space available, determining, 813 814

Display screenSeeScreen; Screen object.

DisplayType property, 903 904

Distances, changing measurement scale, 17

<DIV> DHTML tag, 710

DLL files, 1043

DLL procedures, 775 776

DLLs (Dynamic Link Libraries)

ActiveX components, 652

ActiveX documents, 684

C++ DLLs, linking to, 816 818

code components (ActiveX DLLs), 935, 936, 945, 951 953, 957, 963

components of, 816 818

core Windows DLLs, 774

declaring, 818

DHTML pages, 706

error handling, 1023

vs. EXE files, 652, 684

Do loop, 107

DOB files (ActiveX document files), 651, 686

Dockable toolbars, 44

Document views, 144

DocumentPropertiesWindows API function, 780

Documents, 141, 144 145See also ActiveX documents; MDI child forms; MDI forms.

Done event, 741, 763 764, 768

Dotted lines, drawing, 456

Double-clicking.See DblClick event.

Double variable type, 89

DoVerb method, 898, 913 914

Down picture, adding to buttons, 241

DownClick event, 308 309

DownloadComplete event, 701

Downloading files, 728 736

DownLoadMail property, 721, 725

DownPicture property, 241, 248

Drag and drop operations

columns in flex grid controls, 402 403

controls, 976 983

frames, 440 442

OLE objects, 983 990

Drag method, 440 441, 924 925

DragDrop event, 925, 977, 978 982

DragMode property, 976

DragOver event, 982 983

Drawing area, clearing, 585

Drawing boxes, 593 594

Drawing circles, 324 325, 450, 459, 594 595

Drawing freehand lines, 599 600

Drawing images, 622 623

Drawing lines, 325 326, 455 458, 591, 782 783

Drawing mode, setting, 604 606, 788 789

Drawing ovals, 450

Drawing pen, setting, 604 606, 786 788

Drawing points, 326, 604

Drawing position, setting, 782 783

Drawing rectangles, 449

Drawing rounded rectangles, 451

Drawing rounded squares, 451

Drawing scales, setting, 606 607

Drawing squares, 449

Drawing style, setting, 602 603

Drawing width, setting, 602 603

DrawMode property, 604 606

DrawStyle property, 602 603

DrawWidth property, 602 603

Drive list box control, 567 568, 569 571

Drive property, 567 568

Drop-down combo boxes, 265

Drop-down list combo boxes, 265

Dynamic arrays, 94 95

Dynamic HTML. See DHTML (Dynamic HTML).

Dynamic HTML Application item, New Project dialog box, 706

Dynamic Link Libraries. See DLLs (Dynamic Link Libraries).

E

Edit menu, 43, 78 79, 164 165

Edit method, 868

Edit toolbar, 61, 62

Editing images, 623

Editing OLE objects, 896, 912

Eject command, multimedia MCI control, 748, 755

Ejecting CDs, 755

Elapsed time, displaying, 417, 752

Ellipse Windows API function, 784

Ellipses, drawing, 460, 596 597, 784

Ellipsis (&) in names of menu items, 155

Elseif statement, 104

Email functionality.See also MAPIMessages control; MAPISession control.

composing messages, 721 722

MAPI controls, adding to projects, 718

MAPI session, initiating, 721

reading messages, 725 726

sending messages, 722 723

Visual Basic support for, 697

Embedded OLE objects, 897 899, 902, 905 907, 908 911, 929 930

Embedding ActiveX controls in Web pages, 657

Embossing images, 642 644

Enabled property

buttons, 237

combo boxes, 273

forms, 151

menu items, 181

scroll bars, 292

text boxes, 202

timer control, 412

Encapsulation, 37

End Function keywords, 99

End statement, 116

End Sub keywords, 97

EndDoc method, 611

Ending programs, 116, 136

Engraving images, 644 645

Enlarging OLE objects, 928

Enterprise Edition, Visual Basic, 2

EOF function, 556

EOF property, 870 871

EOFEnable property, 409, 422

Erase statement, 96

Erasing images, 621

Err object

Description property, 1021 1022

LastDLLError property, 1023

Number property, 1020 1021

Raisemethod, 1023 1024

Sourceproperty, 1022

Error ADO object, 827

Error function, 1021

Error handlers

disabling error trapping, 1015 1016

disregarding errors, 1015

nested error handling, 1024 1025

resuming execution, 1016 1020

using labels, 1012 1013

using line numbers, 1014

writing, 1009 1012

Error objects, creating, 1026 1027

Error property, 764 768

Error strings, multimedia MCI control, 765 767

ErrorMessagesproperty, 764 768

Errors

comEvent& errors, 426 427

determining which error occurred, 1020 1021

in DLLs, 1023

error description, 1021 1022

list of trappable errors, 1003 1007

Pentium FDIV error, 65

source of error, 1022

trapping Cancel button in Common Dialogs, 347 348, 1028 1029

user-defined errors, 1023 1024

Errors collection, ADO, 827

Event handlers, 6, 659, 713

Events, 678 680 See also names of specific events.

Events ADO objects, 827

Exclamation point (!) in menu item names, 156, 176

Exclusive OR penSeeXor Pen pen setting.

EXE files

ActiveX components, 652

ActiveX documents, 684

code components (ActiveX EXEs), 935, 945

creating, 943 945

methods, passing arguments to, 951 953

properties, setting, 947

registering, 958

threading models, 936, 963

creating, 44, 1043

vs. DLLs, 652, 684

icon, specifying, 61

name, setting, 61

Executemethod, 697, 698, 727, 729 730, 735

Exit Function keywords, 98

Exit item, File menu, 164

Exit Sub keywords, 97

Exp function, 113

Expand event, tree views, 517

Expanded property, 518

Expressions

date and time format expressions, 115

examining values of (debugging), 1033 1036

operator precedence, 102 104

values of constants, 85

Extender objects, 666

Extender property, 666

F

F argumentLine method, 602

Fast code, optimizing for, 75

FDIV error, Pentium, 65

Fetch method, 719, 725

FetchMsgTypeproperty, 719

FetchSortedproperty, 719, 720

FetchUnreadOnly property, 719

FetchVerbs method, OLE objects, 898

Field ADO object, 827

Field DAO object, 825

Fields, database, 823, 831 832, 860 861

Fields collection, ADO, 827

Figures.SeeGraphics.

File list box control, 569

File menu, 43, 44, 164

File name extensions, 352, 355

File names

maximum length, setting, 354

retrieving in File Open, File Save As dialog boxes, 350 351, 354, 544 545

temporary, 1066

File Open dialog box, 350 357, 544 545

File Save As dialog box, 350 357

File statistics, 574 575

File Transfer Protocol.SeeFTP (File Transfer Protocol).

File types, specifying, 356 357

FileLen function, 548

FileName property

Common Dialog controls, 350 351, 354

file list box control, 569

multimedia MCI control, 745

FileObject, 573 574

Files

closing, 564

copying, 572 See also Clipboard object.

creating, 352, 546 548

deleting, 574

file numbers, 548

file statistics, 574 575

FileObject, 572 575

FileSystemObject, 543, 572 577

length of, 548 549

moving, 573 574

opening, 549 550, 565, 566, 74 See also File Open dialog box.

saving, 564 565, 566 See also File Save As dialog box.

temporary file names, 1066

TextStream objects, 575 579

transferring See FTP (File Transfer Protocol).

FileSystemObject, 543, 572 577

FileTitle property, 351, 354

Fill color, 601 602

Fill pattern, 602

FillColor property

controls, 585

forms, 585, 601 602

picture boxes, 601 602

shape control, 453

FillStyle property

forms and picture boxes, 602

shape control, 452

Filters, 356 357

Financial functions, 116

Fix function, 90, 113

Fixed-length strings, 101

FixedCols, FixedRowsproperties, 393, 400

Flags property, 350, 352 353, 358, 360 361, 365 366

Flat scroll bars, 283 284, 294 296 See also Scroll bars.

Flex grid control, 373 374

adding to forms, 392 393

borders, 400

columns, dragging, 402 403

connecting to databases, 393, 403 404, 847

data entry, 394, 395, 397 399

events

KeyPressevent, 395

LeaveCell event, 399

MouseDownevent, 402

formatting cells, 401

grid lines, 400

labeling rows and columns, 400

properties

BorderStyle property, 400

CellFont& properties, 401

Col, Cols properties, 393

ColPosition property, 402

DataSourceproperty, 393, 404

FixedCols, FixedRowsproperties, 393, 400

GridLines property, 400

GridLineWidth property, 400

MouseColproperty, 402

Row, Rows property, 393

Sort property, 401

Text property, 393, 394

TextArray property, 400

resetting focus on specific cells, 396

sorting data, 401

using as spreadsheet, 393 399

Flipping images, 333 334, 630 631

Focus

cells in flex grid control, 396

giving to Windows applications, 112

label controls, 447

resetting after button click, 218, 234

setting when form loads, 234

tab order of controls, 129 130, 975

Font& properties

buttons, 232

Color dialog box, 358 359

label control, 445

picture boxes, 329

Font dialog box, 358 361

Font object, 590

Font property, 231 232

FontCount property, 591, 608

Fonts

customizing in IDE, 50 51

determining fonts available, 590 591

setting attributes for buttons, 231 232
setting attributes in RTF boxes, 212 214
Fonts property, 590 591, 608
Footnotes, in Help files, 1065
For Each loop, 108
For loop, 108
ForeColor property
buttons, 231
forms and controls, 585
Foreign keys, 776
Form designers, 48
Form Editor toolbar, IDE, 61, 62 63
Form Layout window, IDE, 47 48
Form-level variables, 7, 8, 91
Form Load event, 8, 588See also initialize event.
Format function, 90, 101, 102
Format\$ function, 115, 414 415
Format menu, 43, 52 53
Formatting date and time values, 114 115, 413 415, 429
Formatting flex grid control cells, 401
Formatting string expressions, 102
Formatting text, 329 330, 445 446, 589, 730e also RTF boxes.
Forms, 10See also MDI forms.
active form, determining, 992 993
adding code to, 49
adding controls, 48
adding menus to, 165 168
arrays of forms, 142 143

background color, 617

browser forms, 692

clearing drawing area, 585

components of, 118 119

Controls collection, 993 994

coordinate systems, 133, 606 607

creating at runtime, 138

current form, referencing in code, 128

displaying in Web pages, 682 683 See also ActiveX documents.

drag and drop operations, 924 925, 982 990

drawing in forms, 459, 591 600, 602 607

enabling and disabling at runtime, 151

events

DragDrop event, 925, 977, 978 981

DragOver event, 982 983

MouseDown event, 186

Paint event, 584

Resize event, 608 609

form-level variables, 91

icons in Windows 95 taskbar, 995

keystrokes, intercepting, 995 996

layers, 611 612

loading, 136

LoadPicture function, 617

making immovable, 996

managing using Project Explorer, 45

maximizing and minimizing at runtime, 122, 151

methods

Arrange method, 141

Circle method, 459

Cls method, 585, 621

Hide method, 137

Line method, 458

Move method, 978

Point method, 604

PSetmethod, 604

Showmethod, 136, 147, 961, 962

moving controls, 131

multiple forms, 134 136

passing to procedures, 150 151, 992

positioning off screen, 69

predefined forms, 57, 58 59

printing graphics, 610 611

properties

AutoRedraw property, 129, 584, 610, 611 612

BackColor property, 585, 617

BorderColor property, 585

BorderStyle property, 123

Caption property, 121

ControlBox property, 122

CurrentX , CurrentY properties, 588

DrawMode property, 604 606

DrawStyle property, 602 603

DrawWidth property, 602 603

Enabled property, 151

FillColor property, 585, 601 602

FillStyle property, 602

Font& properties, 589

ForeColor property, 585

Height property, 133

Image property, 648

KeyPreview property, 995 996

Left property, 133

MDIChild property, 139

Moveable property, 996

Picture property, 617, 648

ScaleHeight property, 133

ScaleLeft property, 133

ScaleMode property, 17, 133, 606 607, 636

ScaleTop property, 133

ScaleWidth property, 133

ShowInTaskbar property, 995

StartUpPosition property, 995

Top property, 133

Width property, 133

WindowState property, 151

redrawing, 129, 584

resizing graphics, 608 609

showing and hiding controls, 132

showing and hiding forms, 136, 137

showing from code components, 961

startup forms, 55, 61, 69, 137

startup position, 995

title bar text, 121, 802 803

Z-order position, 810 812

Forward button, Web browsers, 704

Forward method, 719

Frame control, 435

adding to forms, 439

aligning controls, 442

dragging and dropping, 440 442

grouping controls, 246, 442 443

location and size, 440

methods

Drag method, 440 441

Move method, 440

properties

Appearanceproperty, 439

Caption property, 439

Height property, 440

Left property, 440

ToolTipText property, 439

Top property, 440

Width property, 440

Frames, 717, 76 See also Frame control.

Framesproperty, 769

Free disk space, determining, 813 814

FreeFile function, 548

Freehand line drawing, 599 600

Freeing memory, 647 648, 809

Friend keyword, 13, 96, 946, 950

FRM files (form files), 16 22, 26

From property, 770

FromPageproperty, 364

Front layer of forms, 611

FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 697, 727 734, 1066 1066
See also Internet transfer control.

Functions

calling, 98

declaring, 97 98

DLL functions, 775 776

variable values, preserving, 99 100

FV function, 116

G

Gdi32.dll, 774

GET (FTP command), 730

GET (HTTP command), 735

Get/Let properties, code components, 947 949

Get procedure, 667 668, 669, 947 949

Get statement, 558 564

GetAllSettings Windows API function, 999

GetCapture Windows API function, 790 793, 800 802

GetChunk method, 729

GetData method, 332, 610, 984, 987

GetDC method, 780

GetDiskFreeSpace Windows API function, 813 814

GetFile method, 573

GetNumTicks method, 299

GetObject function, 941 942

GetSetting Windows API function, 192 193, 997 998

GetTempName method, 1066

GetText method, 205

GetWindowsDirectory Windows API function, 814 815

GetWindowText Windows API function, 802 803

Global items, 10

Global object, Visual Basic, 994

Global objects, 935, 959 960

Global variables, 10, 37, 91

GlobalAlloc Windows API function, 805, 807

GlobalFree Windows API function, 809, 810

GlobalLock Windows API function, 805, 806, 807

GlobalMultiUse value, 937, 960

GlobalSingleUsevalue, 937, 960

GlobaUnlock Windows API function, 808 809

GoBack method, 704

GoForward method, 704

GoHome method, 701, 705

GoSearchmethod, 705

GotFocusevent, 235

Graphical buttons, 248

GraphicCell array, 629

Graphics

adding to ActiveX controls, 655, 657

bitmaps, 190 192, 793 794

copying to Clipboard, 609

drawing

boxes, 593 594

circles, 324 325, 450, 459, 594 595

clearing drawing area, 585

freehand lines, 599 600

images, 622 623

lines, 591 592, 782 783

in picture boxes, 323 326

points, 604

setting drawing mode, 604 606, 788 789

setting drawing pen, 604 606, 786 788

setting drawing position, 782 783

setting drawing scales, 606 607

setting drawing style, 602 603

setting drawing width, 602 603

text, 588 589

fill color and patterns, 601 602

freeing memory used by, 647 648

layering, 611 612

manipulating at pixel level, 635 647

pasting from Clipboard, 610

printing, 610 611

redrawing, 584

resizing, 608 609

Graphics controls, vs. graphics methods, 582 583

Graying out menu items, 180 181

Grayscale images, 637 640

Grid controls, 373 374 See also Flex grid control.

Grid lines, 53, 453

GridLines property, 400

GridLineWidth property, 400

Grippers, 467

Grouping buttons in toolbars, 478

Grouping controls in frame controls, 442 443

Grouping controls in picture boxes, 322

Grouping option buttons, 246

H

Handle property, 336

Handles

device context handles, 780

memory handles, 805, 806

picture box handles, 336

window handles, 800 802, 811

Handshaking property, 425

Hayes-type modem commands, 423 424

HDC property, 336, 364, 780

HEAD (HTTP command), 735

Header files, included in DLLs, 816 818

Height property

buttons, 239

forms, 133

frame control, 440

label control, 443

picture boxes, 338, 607

Screen object, 608

shape control, 454

Help button, displaying in Common Dialog controls, 353

Help files, 1040

compiling, 1060

displaying, 368 370, 1061 1062

Help projects, 1049 1050
index, 1058
online help, 1063
RTF files, creating, 1051 1060
Help menu, 44, 165
Help Workshop, 369, 1049 1050, 1060
HelpCommand property, 368
HelpFile property, 368
Hex function, 90
HideSelectionproperty, 204
Hiding and showing controls, 132
Hiding and showing menus and menu items, 184
Hiding and showing scroll bars, 292
Hiding and showing shapes, 455
Hiding and showing windows in IDE, 73
Highlighting, turning on and off, 204
Histograms, 387
Home button, Web browsers, 705
Horizontal scroll bars, 28 See also Scroll bars.
Horizontal Spacing item, Format menu, 52 53
Hotspot targets, Help files, 1055 1057
Hotspots, Help files, 1053 1055
Hour function, 90
HPJ files, 1049 1050
HTM files, 707
HTML controls, 712 713
HTML tags, 710
HTTP (Hypertext Transport Protocol), 697 698, 735 737

Hungarian prefix notation, 776 777

HWND property, 336, 759, 761, 991

HWNDDisplay property, 759, 761

Hyperbolic trigonometric functions, 114

Hyperlinks, in DHTML pages, 716 717

I

Icon mode, list views, 519

Icon property, 522 523

Icons

adding to list view items, 522 524

for applications, specifying, 1046

custom mouse icon, setting, 608

of forms, in Windows 95 taskbar, 995

of OLE objects, displaying, 903 904

IDE (Integrated Development Environment)

ActiveX Designers, 77

Add-Ins, 65 66

Auto List Members feature, 70, 72

bookmarks, 78 79

code windows, 49

components of, 42 43

customizing, 50 51, 67 69

Data Tips, 70, 72

design time grid, 53 54, 453

form designers, 48

Form Layout window, 47 48

hiding and displaying windows, 73

menu bar, 43 44

Object Browser, 79, 938

procedure definitions, viewing, 74

Project Explorer, 45

Project menu, 76 77

Properties window, 46 47

Quick Info feature, 70, 72

Syntax Checking, 71, 72

text, searching files for, 74

toolbars, 44, 61, 67 69

toolbox, 48

variable definitions, viewing, 74

VBW files (project files), 16

If&Else statement, 104

Illusion of motion in images, 645 646

Image combo boxes, 277 279

Image controls, 312, 617 618

adding to forms, 338 339

binding to data controls, 847

events supported by, 618

freeing memory used by graphics, 648

loading images at runtime, 619 620

vs. picture boxes, 614 615

properties

BorderStyle property, 618

Picture property, 339 340, 618, 648

Stretch property, 339 340, 618, 633

stretching images to fit control, 339 340, 633

Image element, DHTML, 710

Image list control, 501

adding images to list, 507

adding to forms, 507

animation using timer control, 419 421

image properties

Index property, 507

Key property, 507, 509 510

ListImages collection, 327, 507

size of images, 508

using with image combo boxes, 277 278

using with other controls, 508 509

using with picture boxes, 326 327

using with tab strips, 534

using with toolbar buttons, 475

using with tree views, 515 517

Image maps, 318 319

Image property, 316, 336, 515, 648

ImageList property, 476, 508, 534

Images

adding to ActiveX controls, 655

adding to controls, 616

adding to DHTML pages, 710 711

adding to forms, 617

adding to image list control, 507

adding to toolbar buttons, 475 476

adding to tree views, 515 517

capturing from screen, 794 799

Clipboard, copying and pasting, 609

dimensions of in picture boxes, 607
displaying in controls, 616
displaying in status bars, 489
displaying in Windows Common Controls, 616
editing using picture clip controls, 623
erasing, 621
filling, 601 602
flipping, 630 631
freeing memory used by graphics, 647 648
loading at runtime, 619 620
manipulating at pixel level, 635 647
printing, 610 611
saving to disk, 620
selecting in picture clip controls, 625 630
setting drawing mode, 604 606
setting drawing scales, 606 607
setting drawing style, 602 603
storing in memory, 621 622
stretching, 632 633
stretching and flipping in picture boxes, 333 334
** HTML tag**, 710
Immediate menus, 175 176 See also Toolbars.
Immediate window, 1035 1036
In-place editing, OLE objects, 896, 912, 931
In-process servers (ActiveX DLLs), 935, 945
methods, passing arguments to, 951 953
registering, 957
threading models, 936, 963

Inbox, Microsoft Exchange, 725

InBufferCount property, 409, 424

InBufferSize property, 408, 422

Indenting menu items, 168 169

Indenting program code, 38

Indenting text in RTF boxes, 211 212, 214 215

Index object, DAO, 825, 861 863

Index property, 233 234, 471, 475, 507, 872, 873

Indexes, Help files, 1058

Indices

combo box items, 269, 272, 276 277

database indices, 824, 861 863

list box items, 255 256, 258, 259, 276 277

loop indices, referencing, 108

Information hiding, 37

Initial directory, File Open and File Save As dialog boxes, 355 356

Initialize event, 655, 672, 95 See also Form Load event.

Initializing form-wide variables, 8

Initializing variables, 87

Input, InputLen properties, 409, 422, 423 424

Input # statement, 555

Input boxes, 149 150

Input\$ statement, 557

InputBox function, 149 150

Insert Object dialog box, 900, 902, 905 907, 920 924

Insertable objects, 66 67

Insertion point, moving in RTF boxes, 217 219

InsertObjDlg method, OLE control, 898, 905

Installation directory (Windows), 814 815

Installation location for applications, 1047

Instancing property, 935 937, 959 960

InStr function, 101

Int function, 90, 113

Integer variable type, 89

Integrated Development EnvironmentSee IDE (Integrated Development Environment).

Internet ExplorerSee Microsoft Internet Explorer.

Internet transfer control, 727 728

adding to programs, 728

FTP operations, 697, 727 734, 1066 1068

HTTP operations, 697 698, 734 736

methods

Executemethod, 697, 698, 727, 729 730, 735, 1067

GetChunk method, 729

OpenURL method, 697, 728 729, 730, 732 733, 734 736

properties

Passwordproperty, 727

StillExecuting property, 727

URL property, 1066

UserNameproperty, 727

StateChangedevent, 727, 729, 1068

Interval property, 412

Inverse trigonometric functions, calculating, 114

Invert pen setting, 604

IPmt function, 116

IRR function, 116

IsArray function, 93, 96

IsDate function, 93

IsEmpty function, 93

IsError function, 93, 1027

IsMissing function, 91, 93, 953 954

IsNull function, 93

IsNumeric function, 93

IsObject function, 93

Italic property, 590

Item method, 110

ItemClick event, 529

ItemData array, 275 276

J

Jet database engine, 824 825

Jump tags, Help files, 1054

K

Kernel32.dll, 774

Key property

image list images, 507, 509 510

status bar panels, 490

toolbar buttons, 125, 471

tree view nodes, 512

Keyboard interface, 155

access characters, 168 171, 235, 447

shortcut keys, 171 173

tab order of controls, 129 130, 975

KeyDown event, 204, 207

KeyPress event, 206, 395, 701

KeyPreview property, 995 996

Keystrokes

intercepting at form level, 995 996

sending to Windows applications, 110 112

KeyUp event, 207

L

Label control, 425 436

access keys, controls without captions, 447

adding to forms, 443 444

aligning text, 446

binding to data controls, 847

events

Click event, 446

DblClick event, 446

formatting text, 445 446

properties

AutoSize property, 445

Caption property, 443

Font& properties, 445

Height property, 443

Top property, 443

UseMnemonic property, 447

Width property, 443

WordWrap property, 445

text, displaying, 203

vs. text boxes, 444 445

Labels in error handlers, 1012

LargeChange property, 287, 298 299

LastDLLError property, 1023

Layers, 611 612, 810 812

LBound function, 96

LCASE function, 90, 101

Learning Edition, Visual Basic, 2

LeaveCell event, 399

Left function, 101

Left property

buttons, 239

forms, 133

frame control, 440

label control, 443

shape control, 454

Len function, 101, 204

Let procedure, 667 668, 669, 947 949

Libraries, 940, 941, 962 See also DLLs (Dynamic Link Libraries).

Lightening images, 640 642

Lightweight controls, 990 991

Line charts, 384 385

Line control, 437 438, 455 457, 459

Line Input statement, 556 557

Line method

B argument, 593

drawing boxes, 593 594

drawing freehand lines, 599 600

drawing lines, 591 592

F argument, 602

forms, 458

picture boxes, 325 326

Line numbers, in error handling, 1014

Lines. See also **Graphics**.

automatic alignment, turning off, 456 457

drawing freehand lines, 599 600

drawing in device contexts, 782 783

drawing in forms and picture boxes, 591

drawing in picture boxes, 325 326

drawing using line control, 437 438, 455 458

drawing using `Line` method, 458, 591 594, 599 600

grid lines, 53

`LineTo` Windows API function, 782 783

Linking OLE objects, 897 899, 902, 905 907, 908 911

List boxes, 252 253

binding to data controls, 847

checkmarks, 264

clearing list, 264 265

events

`Change` event, 253

`Click` event, 253, 256 257, 261

`DblClick` event, 253, 256 257, 261

indices of items, 255 256, 258, 259, 276 277

`ItemData` array, 275 276

methods

`AddItem` method, 254 255

`Clear` method, 264

`RemoveItem` method, 257 258

multiselect list boxes, 257, 261 262

number of items, 254, 259

numeric data, connecting to items, 275 276

properties

Columns property, 263

List property, 254 256, 257

ListCount property, 254 255, 259

ListIndex property, 255 256

MultiSelect property, 261 262

NewIndex property, 276 277

Selectedproperty, 257

Sorted property, 258

Style property, 264

TopIndex property, 274 275

removing items, 257 258

scrolling horizontally, 263

Selectedarray, 260

selected items, 255, 256 257, 259 260, 262, 275

sorting items, 258

topmost item, 274 275

List mode, list views, 519

List property, 254 256, 257, 265

List views, 504

adding to forms, 518

columns, 525 526, 527 528, 530

events

ColumnClick event, 529

ItemClick event, 529

items, 520 521, 522 523, 529

ListItem properties

Icon property, 522 523

Text property, 527 528

ListItems collection, 520 521

ListSubItems collection, 527 528

view modes, 504, 519, 524 525

View property, 524, 525

ListCount property, 254 255, 259, 273 274

ListField property, 849

ListImages array, 327

ListImages collection, 507

ListIndex property, 255 256, 267 268, 270

ListSubItems collection, 527 528

Literal suffix symbols, numeric values, 88

Load event, 588

Load statement, 136, 188, 242, 973 975

LoadFile method, 223, 565

LoadPicture function

adding down pictures to buttons, 241

controls, 616, 620

forms, 617

image controls, 620

picture boxes, 316, 566, 619, 620

Picture objects, 620, 621

settingPicture property at runtime, 240, 248

LoadResPicturefunction, 316

Localization, 316

LocationName property, 701, 705

Locked property, 202, 272

Locking memory, 805, 806, 807

LOF function, 549, 557

Log function, 113

Logarithm (to base N) function, calculating, 114

Logical operators, precedence of, 103

Long variable type, 89

Loop index, referencing, 108

Loop statements

Do loop, 107

For Each loop, 108

For loop, 108

nesting, 37

With statement, 109

While loop, 109

LostFocusEvent, 235

LS (FTP command), 730

LSet function, 101

LTrim function, 101

Lz32.dll, 774

M

Magic numbers, 36 37 See also Constants.

Main() procedure, 54, 55, 943

MakeProjectNameexe item, File menu, 44

Make Same Size item, Format menu, 52

MAPI controls, 697, 718 See also MAPIMessages control; MAPISession control.

MAPIMessages control, 697, 719 See also Email functionality.

compose buffer, 719

methods

Composemethod, 721

Copy method, 719

Fetch method, 719, 725

methods supported, 719

Sendmethod, 722 723

SignOff method, 722 723

properties

FetchMsgTypeproperty, 719

FetchSortedproperty, 719

FetchUnreadOnly property, 719

MsgCount property, 725

MsgIndex property, 719, 721, 726

MsgNoteTextproperty, 719, 726

properties supported, 720

SessionIDproperty, 721, 725

read buffer, 719

MAPI Session control, 697, 719 See also Email functionality.

DownLoadMail property, 721, 725

SessionIDproperty, 721, 725

SignOn method, 721, 725

Marshaling, 935, 951

Mask Not Pen pen setting, 604

Mask Pen Not pen setting, 604

Mask Pen pen setting, 605

MaskedEdit control, 847

Math functions, built-in, 113

Max property

Common Dialog controls, 361 362, 366

scroll bars, 286 287
slider controls, 298
updown controls, 308
MaxFileSize property, 354
Maximize buttons, on forms, 122
Maximizing forms at runtime, 151
MaxLength property, 201
MCI_& commands, 748 749
MdDir statement, 572
MDI child forms, 120 See also MDI forms.
 creating, 139
 loading, 137
 referenced in FRM files, 26
MDI forms, 119 120 See also MDI child forms.
 adding picture boxes, 322 323
 arranging child windows, 140 141
 arrays of child windows, 142 143
 coordinating data between child windows, 144 145
 displaying child windows, 139
 menus, 181, 182 183
 multiple documents, opening, 141 142
MDI (Multiple Document Interface) See MDI child forms; MDI forms.
MDIChild property, 139
Me keyword, 128
Measurement units, 17, 53, 133, 606 607
Media Control Interface (MCI) devices, 740 741, 744 See also Multimedia MCI control.
Memory
 allocating, 805 806, 807

deallocating, 809, 810

locking, 805, 806, 807

reading data from, 808, 809

retrieving pointers to, 806, 807

storing data in, 806, 808

unlocking, 808 809

used by code components, freeing, 960 961

used by graphics, freeing, 647 648

Menu bar, 43 44, 68, 11 See also Menu items; Menus.

Menu control prefixes, 33

Menu Editor. See also Menu items; Menus.

access characters, 168 171

checkmarks, 179

creating menus, 165 168

deleting menu items, 168

disabling (graying out) menu items, 180

inserting menu items, 168

menu separators, 168

rearranging menu items, 168 169

submenus, 173 175

Menu items. See also Menu Editor; Menus.

access characters, 155, 168 171

adding and deleting at runtime, 187 189

adding code to, 167 168

checkmarks, 178 179

connecting toolbar buttons to, 473

creating, 166 168

deleting, 168

design standards, 163 165
disabling (graying out), 180 181
ellipses in item names, 155
exclamation points in item names, 156, 176
hiding and showing, 184
indenting and outdenting, 168 169
inserting, 168
keyboard shortcuts, 155
moving to menu bar, 68
naming conventions, 155 156
properties
 Checkedproperty, 179
 Enabled property, 181
 Visible property, 184, 188
rearranging, 168 169
shortcut keys, 171 173
Menu separators, adding, 168
Menus
 access characters, 155, 168 171
 adding bitmaps to, 190 192
 bang menus, 175 176
 components of, 154 155
 creating, 166
 designing, 155 156, 157, 163 168
 hiding and showing, 184
 IDE menus, 67 69
 immediate menus, 175 176
 listing open windows, 182 183

in MDI forms, 181

menu control prefixes, 33

menu separators, 168

ModifyMenu Windows API function, 190

naming conventions, 155 156

pop-up menus, 184 185, 186 187

predefined menus, 56 57, 59, 176 178

properties

Caption property, 166

Name property, 166

Visible property, 184

WindowList property, 183

submenus, 173 175

Merge Not Pen pen setting, 605

Merge Pen Not pen setting, 605

Merge Pen pen setting, 605

Message boxes, 148 149, 1030

MessagesSeeEmail functionality.

Metafiles, drawing to, 623

Methods.See also names of specific methodsProcedures.

adding to ActiveX controls, 674 678

in code components, 942, 950, 951 954

viewing in Object Browser, 79

Microsoft DAO Object Library, 857

Microsoft Exchange utility, 697, 718, 721, 723, 725

Microsoft Help Workshop, 369, 1049 1050, 1060

Microsoft Internet ExplorerSee alsoWeb browser control.

testing ActiveX controls, 655 656, 661 662

testing ActiveX documents, 690

testing DHTML pages, 717

Web browsers, creating, 696

Microsoft Win32 Software Development Kit, 779

Microsoft XML parser, 698

MID files, playing, 757 759

Mid function, 101

Min/max buttons, 122

Min property

Common Dialog controls, 361 362, 366

scroll bars, 286 287

slider controls, 298

updown controls, 308

Minimize buttons, 122

Minimizing forms, 151

Minute function, 90

MIRR function, 116

MiscFlags property, 931

MKDIR (FTP command), 730

Modal display, 147, 996 997

Mode property, 741, 750

Modem command strings, 423 424

ModifyMenu Windows API function, 190

Modular program design, 37

Module-level variables, 91

Modules, 10 See also Class modules.

BAS files (module files), 22

DLL procedures, declaring, 775

managing using Project Explorer, 45

module-level variables, 91

Month function, 90

MonthView control, 410, 428 429

Motion, illusion of, adding to images, 645 646

Mouse events

button controls, 244

capturing outside program's window, 789 793

drawing freehand lines, 599 600

OLE controls, 913

right mouse button events, 186

Mouse location, reporting in pixels, 607

Mouse pointer, 220 221, 608

MouseColproperty, 402

MouseDownevent

buttons, 244

capturing outside program's window, 792

drag and drop operations, 977

flex grid control, 402

forms, 186

picture boxes, 318

Mouselconproperty, 608

MouseMoveevent

capturing outside program's window, 791 792

freehand lines, drawing, 599 600

MousePointerproperty, 608

MouseUp event

buttons, 244

capturing outside program's window, 793

Move method

buttons, 239

controls, 131 132

FileObject, 573

forms, 978

frame control, 440

shape control, 454 455

Moveable property, 996

MoveFile method, 573

MoveFirst method

data controls, 846

rdoResultset object, 879 880

Recordset object, ADO, 890

Recordset object, DAO, 869 870

MoveLast method

data controls, 846 847

rdoResultset object, 880 881

Recordset object, ADO, 890 891

Recordset object, DAO, 870

MoveMemory Windows API function, 805, 806, 808, 809

MoveNext method

data controls, 845 846

rdoResultset object, 881 882

Recordset object, ADO, 891

Recordset object, DAO, 870 871

MovePrevious method

data controls, 846

rdoResultset object, 882 883

Recordset object, ADO, 891 892

Recordset object, DAO, 871 872

MoveToEx Windows API function, 782 783

MPG files, playing, 761 763

Mpr.dll, 774

MSFlexGrid control, 847

MsgBox function, 148 149, 150

MsgConversationID property, 720

MsgCount property, 720, 725

MsgDateReceiveproperty, 720

MsgID property, 720

MsgIndex property, 719, 720, 721, 726

MsgNoteText property, 719, 720, 726

MsgOrigAddress property, 720

MsgReadproperty, 720

MsgReceiptRequesteφroperty, 720

MsgSentproperty, 720

MsgSubjectproperty, 720

MsgType property, 720

MSWLess.ocx ActiveX control group, 991

Multiline property, 200, 201

Multimedia, 740, 771 772 See also Multimedia MCI control.

Multimedia MCI control, 740 741

adding to forms, 743 744

animation, 769

AVI files, 759 761

CDs, playing from CD-ROM drive, 753 755

closing, 753

commands, 747 749

Back command, 769

Closecommand, 753

Eject command, 755

Open command, 741, 744 745

Pausecommand, 749 750

Step command, 769

Stop command, 749 750, 753

controlling at runtime, 741, 747 749

current operation, 750 752

device, opening, 744 745

elapsed time, 752

ending point in file, 770

error handling, 764 768

events

Done event, 741, 763 764, 768

StatusUpdateevent, 741, 750

files, opening, 745

MID files, 757 759

MPG files, 761 763

notification of command execution, 763 764

overhead, 771

vs. PlaySoundWindows API function, 771

properties

CanStepproperty, 769

Command property, 741, 744 745, 747 749

DeviceTypeproperty, 744 745

Error property, 764 768

ErrorMessagesproperty, 764 768

FileName property, 745

Frames property, 769

hWndDisplay property, 759, 761

Mode property, 741, 750

Notify property, 741, 763 764

Orientation property, 743

Position property, 752

properties using current time format, 746

From property, 770

To property, 770

TimeFormat property, 746, 770

UpdateInterval property, 750

Visible property, 749

Wait property, 771

recorded data, saving to disk, 753

resuming playback, 749 750

showing and hiding, 749

starting point in file, 770

stopping playback, 749

time formats, 746 747

trappable errors, 767 768

waiting until current operation is complete, 771

WAV files, 755 757

Multiple Document Interface See MDI child forms; MDI forms.

Multiple documents, opening, 141

Multiple forms, 134 136

Multiple OLE objects, 914 924

Multiselect list boxes, 257, 261 262, 264

MultiSelect property, 261 262, 429

MultiUse value, 937, 959

N

Name property, 166, 233 234, 590

Names of variables, misspelling, 38 See also Naming conventions.

Naming convention See also Programming conventions, Microsoft.

constant prefixes, 33

control prefixes, 29 32

Data Access Object prefixes, 32

menu control prefixes, 33

menus and menu items, 155 156

variable prefixes, 28 29

variable scope prefixes, 28

Navigate method, 700

Nested conditionals and loops, 37

Nested error handling, 1024 1025

Netapi32.dll, 774

New keyword, 87, 94, 138, 940 941

NewIndex property, 276 277

NewPage method, 611

Next command (multimedia MCI control), 748

NodeClick event, 518

Nodes, tree view, 511 518 See also Tree views.

Nodescollection, tree views, 511 512

NonModalAllowed property, 962

Nop pen setting, 605

Not Copy Pen pen setting, 604

Not Mask Pen pen setting, 604

Not Merge Pen pen setting, 604

Not Xor Pen pen setting, 605

Nothing keyword, 958 959, 961

Notification of multimedia control command execution, 763 764

Notify property, 741, 763 764

Now function, 115, 414

NPer function, 116

NPV function, 116

Number property, 1020 1021

Numeric values

connecting data to list box items, 275 276

converting between string and numeric values, 102

date and time values, 114 115

financial functions, 116

math functions, built-in, 113

trigonometric functions, calculated, 114

O

Object Browser, 79, 938

<OBJECT> HTML tag, 657

Object references, 951 953

Object type, 970 971

Object variable type, 89, 970 971

Objects

adding code to, 49

code components, 934 935, 940 942, 960 961

insertable objects, 66 67

predefined objects, Visual Basic, 56 59, 176 178

Oct function, 90

OCX files (ActiveX control files), 651, 1043

ODBC data sources, 836 837

ODBCDirect, 853 854

OLE automation serverSeeCode components.

OLE container controlSeeOLE control.

OLE containers, 896

OLE control, 896 897

adding to forms, 900

border, removing, 903

Classproperty, 904

display options, 903 904

events

OLECompleteDrag event, 989 990

OLEDragDrop event, 984, 986 989

OLEStartDrag event, 983

Updated event, 930 931

loading at runtime, 920 924

methods

Close method, 908

Delete method, 926

Drag method, 924 925

InsertObjDlg method, 905

OLEDrag method, 983 985

Paste method, 927

PasteOK method, 927

PasteSpecialDlg method, 908 911

ReadFromFile method, 898, 929 930

SaveToFile method, 898, 929 930

pop-up menu, 904

primary verbs, executing, 914

properties

Action property, 897

ActiveControl property, 915

ApplsRunning property, 908, 916

AutoActivate property, 912

AutoVerbMenu property, 912 913

Border property, 903

DisplayType property, 903 904

MiscFlags property, 931

OLEDropMode property, 986

OLEType property, 898, 906, 914

OLETypeAllowed property, 899, 906

PasteOK property, 908 909

SizeMode property, 903, 905, 928

SourceDoc property, 897, 904

resizing options, 903, 905

OLE DB. See ADO (ActiveX Data Objects).

OLE (Object Linking and Embedding), 896 897, 897 See also OLE control; OLE objects.

OLE objects

activating, 912 914

clipboard, copying and pasting, 927

deactivating, 907 908, 916

deleting, 926

determining if object has been updated, 930 931

determining whether linked or embedded, 914
displaying content or icons, 903 904
DoVerb method, 913 914
drag and drop operations, 924 925, 983 990
editing in place, 896, 912, 931
embedded objects, 897 899, 929 930
enlarging, 928
existing files, linking or embedding, 902, 904, 905 907, 908 911
linking, 897 899
methods supported, 898
multiple objects, 914 924
new objects, creating and embedding, 900, 905 907
opening, 896, 912
shrinking, 928
verifying insertion in OLE control, 905 906
OLE servers, 896
OLE verbs, 897, 912 914
OLECompleteDrag event, 989 990
OLEDrag method, 983 985
OLEDragDrop event, 984, 986 989
OLEDropMode property, 984, 986
OLEStartDrag event, 983
OLEType property, 898, 906, 914
OLETypeAllowed property, 899, 906
On Error GoTo 0 statement, 1015 1016
On Error GoTo *Label* statement, 1012 1013
On Error GoTo *line#* statement, 1013
On Error Resume Nextstatement, 1015

OnComm event, 409, 422, 424, 426 427

Online help system, 1063 1068
See also Help files.

Online user registration, 1040, 1065 1068

Open command, 741, 748

Open method, 742, 884 887, 893 894

Open statement, 546, 549 550

OpenConnectionmethod, 876 877

OpenDatabasemethod, 865 867

Opening OLE objects, 896, 912

OpenRecordsetmethod, 863 865, 866 867

OpenResultsetmethod, 877 879

OpenTextFile method, 576 577

OpenURL method, 697, 728 729, 730, 732 733, 734 736

Operator precedence, 102 104

Optimization, 64 65, 75 76

Option Basestatement, 94, 96

Option buttons, 227

adding and removing at runtime, 242

background color, 229 230

button releases, 244

combining with checkboxes, 249 250

in control arrays, 233 234, 242

disabling, 236 237

displaying images in, 237, 239 240, 241, 616

events

Click event, 232 233

DblClick event, 233

GotFocusevent, 235

Key& events, 244

LostFocusevent, 235

Mouse& events, 244

focus, 234, 236

graphical option buttons, 248

grouping, 246

keyboard access, 235

methods

Move method, 239

SetFocusmethod, 234

moving, 239

passing to procedures, 243

properties

BackColor property, 230

Caption property, 229, 235

Default property, 234, 236

DisabledPicture property, 237

DownPicture property, 241, 248

Enabled property, 237

Font property, 231 232

ForeColor property, 231

Height property, 239

Index property, 233 234

Left property, 239

Nameproperty, 233 234

Picture property, 239 240, 248

Style property, 230, 237, 239 240, 241, 616

TabIndex property, 236

TabStop property, 236

ToolTipText property, 238

Top property, 239

Value property, 247 248

Visible property, 237 238

Width property, 239

resizing, 239

responding to button clicks, 232 233

setting caption, 229

showing and hiding, 237 238

state of buttons, 247 248

tab order, 236

text color, 230 231

tool tips, 238

Option Compare statement, 101

Option Explicit statement, 38, 88

Option Private Module statement, 91

Optional arguments, 97, 98, 953 954

Optional keyword, 97, 98, 953 954

Orientation property, 295, 297, 367 368, 743

Origin of coordinate systems, 583

Out-of-process servers (ActiveX EXEs), 935, 945

creating, 943 945

methods, passing arguments to, 951 953

properties, setting, 947

registering, 958

threading models, 936, 963

Outbox, Microsoft Exchange, 723

OutBufferCount , OutBufferSize properties, 409, 425

Outdenting menu items, 169

Output property, 409, 423 424, 425

Ovals, drawing, 450

Overhead

image storage, 508

lightweight controls, 990 991

memory used by graphics, freeing, 647 648

multimedia MCI control, 771

optimizing, 75 76

picture boxes vs. image controls, 615

Variant variable type, 38, 89

P

Package And Deployment Wizard, 1039, 1043 1048

Page Designer, DHTMLSeeDHTML Page Designer.

Page orientation, setting, 367 368

Paint event, 584, 611 612, 657

PaintPicture method.See also Render method.

flipping images, 630 631

picture boxes, 333 334, 335, 619

printing graphics using Printer object, 610 611

stretching images, 632 633

Pairs of scroll bars, coordinating, 293

PanelClick, PanelDbClick events, 490

Panels, status bars, 127, 485 490

Paragraphs, indenting, 211 212

ParamArray keyword, 97, 98, 968

Parameter ADO object, 827

Parent property, 136

Parentheses, 104

Parsers, 698

Password control, 205 206

Passwordproperty, 727

PasswordCharproperty, 205 206

Passwords, 858

Pastemethod, OLE control, 898, 927

Paste Special menu item, OLE objects, 908 911

PasteOKproperty, 908 909, 927

PasteSpecialDlgnmethod, OLE control, 898, 908 911

Pasting OLE objects from Clipboard, 927

Pasting pictures from Clipboard, 610

Path property, 568, 569

Patterns (fill patterns), 602

Pausecommand, multimedia MCI control, 748, 749

PDL (program design language), 35 36

Pens, 604 606, 786 788

Pentium FDIV error, disabling checks for, 65

Pentium Pro processor, optimizing for, 76

Performance

DLLs vs. EXE files, 684

optimizing, 64 65, 75 76

properties for out-of-process servers, setting, 947

Variant variable type, 89

Persistent properties, 671 674, 693 694

Picture boxes, 313 314, 618 619 See also Picture objects.

accessing images, 316

adjusting size to fit image, 317
aligning, 317
animation, 320 321
AVI files, displaying, 759 761
binding to data controls, 847
clearing images, 330
Clipboard, copying and pasting, 332, 609, 610
dimensions of images, 607
drawing in, 324 326, 450, 459, 588 589, 591 600
events
 Click event, 318
 mouse events, 318 319
 Resizeevent, 608 609
filling images, 601 602
flipping images, 333, 630 631
freeing memory used by graphics, 647 648
grouping controls, 322
 vs. image controls, 614 615
image lists, 326 327
image maps, 318 319
loading images at runtime, 619 620
methods
 Circle method, 324
 Cls method, 330, 621
 Line method, 325 326
 LoadPicture function, 619, 620
 PaintPicture method, 333 334, 335, 619
 Point method, 331, 604

Print method, 327, 588 589

PSetmethod, 326, 604

SavePicturemethod, 620

MPG files, displaying, 761 763

opening files, 566

pixel-level image manipulation, 331, 635 647

printing images, 335 336

properties

Align property, 317

AutoRedraw property, 328

AutoSize property, 317, 619

BorderStyle property, 619

CurrentX , CurrentY properties, 327 328, 588

DrawMode property, 604 606

DrawStyle property, 602 603

DrawWidth property, 602 603

FillColor property, 601 602

FillStyle property, 602

Font& properties, 329, 589

Handle property, 336

hDC property, 336

Height property, 338, 607

hWnd property, 336, 759, 761

Image property, 316, 336, 648

Picture property, 316, 320, 619, 648

ScaleHeight ScaleWidth properties, 338, 607

ScaleMode property, 337 338, 606 607, 636

Width property, 338, 607

resizing graphics, 608 609

resizing to fit image, 619

saving files, 338, 566, 620

setting drawing mode, 604 606

setting drawing scales, 606 607

setting drawing style, 602 603

stretching images, 333, 632 633

text, 327, 329 330

units of measurement, 337 338

Windows handles, 336

Picture clip controls

adding to forms, 623 624

GraphicCell array, 629

properties

Clip property, 626

ClipHeight property, 626

ClipWidth property, 626

ClipX, ClipY properties, 626

Columns property, 629

Rows property, 629

selecting images in, 625 628, 629 630

Picture control, 190

Picture objects See also Picture boxes.

arrays of, for animation sequences, 623, 634 635

drawing images using, 622 623

images

loading into, 620, 621

storing in memory, 621 622

LoadPicture function, 620, 621

Render method, 622 623

Picture property

buttons, 239 240, 248

forms, 617

freeing memory used by graphics, 648

image controls, 339 340, 618

picture boxes, 316, 320, 619

status bar panels, 489

Pictures, adding to buttons, 239 240, 241

Pie charts, 382 383

Pixels

accessing in picture boxes, 331

binary raster operation mode (ROP2), 788 789

drawing, 604

mouse location, reporting, 607

pixel-level image manipulation, 635 647

retrieving color of, 604

Play command (multimedia MCI control), 748

Play method, 742

PlaySoundWindows API function, 770 805, 771, 776

Pmt function, 116

Point method, 331, 604

Pointers to memory, retrieving, 806, 807

Points, 326, 604

Pop-up links, Help files, 1058 1060

Pop-up menus, 184 185, 186 187, 904, 912 913

PortOpen property, 408, 423, 427 428

Position attribute, 710, 715

Position property, 752

Positioning startup forms, 69

Positioning windows in Z-order, 810 812

POST (HTTP command), 735

PPmt function, 116

Precedence (operator precedence), 102 104

Predefined dialog boxes, 146 147

Predefined elements, Visual Basic, 58, 176 See also Visual Component Manager.

Predefined forms, 57

Predefined menus, 59, 176 178

Prefixes

constant prefixes, 33

control prefixes, 29 32

Data Access Object prefixes, 32

Hungarian prefix notation, 776 777

menu control prefixes, 33, 156

variable prefixes, 28 29

variable scope prefixes, 28

Preservekeyword, 95

Prev command (multimedia MCI control), 748

Primary keys, 776

Primary verbs, executing for OLE objects, 914

Print # statement, 550 551

Print dialog box, 363 368

Print method, 588 589, 610 611

Print Setup dialog box, 365

Printer object

flipping images, 630 631

fonts available, 590 591

printing from Print dialog box, 363

printing graphics, 610 611

stretching images, 632 633

PrinterDefault property, 363

Printers, 365

Printers collection, 611

PrintForm method, 364, 610

Printing images, 335 336

Printing text, 223 224

Private keyword

declaring constants, 85

declaring DLL procedures, 775

declaring methods in code components, 950

declaring properties in class modules, 946

declaring subroutines, 96

declaring variables, 86

defined, 11

scope of procedures, restricting, 13

Private value, 937, 959

Private variables, 91

Procedure-level variables, 91

Procedure scope, 13

ProceduresSee also Methods.

arguments, passing by value or reference, 776, 951 953

arrays, passing as arguments, 967 968

buttons, passing as arguments, 243

commenting conventions, 33 34
control arrays, passing as arguments, 968, 970 971
declared as ~~Static~~, 13
design of, 37
DLL procedures, 775 776
forms, passing as arguments, 150 151, 992
functions, 97 98
global variables, passing as arguments, 37
procedure-level variables, 91
procedure scope, 13
subroutines, 96 97
variable values, preserving, 99 100
viewing definition in IDE, 74
in Windows API, 778 779
Product information, adding to projects, 59
Professional Edition, Visual Basic, 2
Profiles, Application Wizard, 23
Program design language (PDL), 35 36
Programming conventions, Microsoft
best coding practices, 36 38
commenting conventions, 33 34
constant prefixes, 33
control prefixes, 29 32
Data Access Object prefixes, 32
indentation of code, 38
menu control prefixes, 33
program design language (PDL), 35 36
software design process, 34 35

variable prefixes, 28 29

variable scope prefixes, 28

Programming defensively, 37

Programs, Visual Basic

entering break state, 116

linking to Visual C++ code, 816 818

online user registration, 1065 1068

terminating, 116, 136

using custom ActiveX controls, 664

windows, hiding, 136

Progress bars, 466 467, 491 493

Project Explorer window, 45, 77

Project groups, Visual Basic, 662 664

Project menu, IDE, 43, 76 77

Project Properties dialog box, 54, 55, 61, 137, 655 656, 683

Project types supported by Visual Basic, 2 3

Projects, Visual Basic See also IDE (Integrated Development Environment).

adding ActiveX controls, 66 67

adding ActiveX Designers, 77

adding OLE controls, 900

adding Web browsers, 696

BAS files (module files), 22

components of, 9 10

converting to ActiveX documents, 683

creating using Application Wizard, 22 28

custom ActiveX controls, 664

FRM files (form files), 16 22

GlobalMultiUse objects, 959 960

insertable objects, adding to projects, 66 67
integrating Web browsers into, 691 692
optimizing, 75 76
saving to disk, 13 14
scope, 11 13
software design process, 35 36
splash screens, 24
startup forms, 55, 61, 69, 137
startup procedure, 54
VBP files (project files), 15
VBW files (project files), 16
version information, 59
Prompts in message boxes, 148
PropertiesSee also names of specific properties.
ActiveX controls, 666 674
ActiveX documents, 693 694
code components, 942, 946, 947 949
design-time vs. runtime, 46
managing using Properties window, 46 47
out-of-process servers, 947
viewing in Object Browser, 79
Properties collection, ADO, 828
Properties window, IDE, 46 47
Property Page Wizard, 680 681
Property pages, 680 681
PropertyBag objects, ActiveX controls, 671, 693 694
PropertyChanged method, 671 672, 693 694
Provider property, 828, 840

PSetmethod, 326, 604, 610 611

Public keyword

declaring arrays, 93

declaring constants, 85

declaring global items, 10

declaring methods in code components, 950

declaring properties in class modules, 946

declaring subroutines, 96

declaring variables, 86

defined, 11

PublicNotCreatable value, 937, 959

PUT (FTP command), 730

PUT (HTTP command), 735

Put statement, 552 553, 554, 564

PV function, 116

PWD (FTP command), 730

Q

QBColor function, 586

QueryDef DAO object, 825

Quick Info feature, 70, 72

Quick Watch window, 1033

QUIT (FTP command), 730

R

Radio buttonsSee Option buttons.

Raisemethod, 1023 1024

RaiseEventmethod, 679

Random access files, 542, 552 553, 558 561, 563 564

Randomizestatement, 454

Raster operations, 788 789, 794

Rate function, 116

RDO (Remote Data Objects), 826, 854 e also Remote data control.

adding records, 844

creating result sets, 877 879

data-bound controls, 838 839, 847 848

data environment, 824

deleting records, 844 845

navigating databases, 845 847

navigating result set, 879 883

opening database connections, 876 877

opening databases, 838

rdocode example project, 875 884

refreshing data, 845

SQL statements, executing, 883

updating databases, 845

Rdocode example project, 875 884

RdoConnection object, 854, 877 879, 883

RdoEnvironment object, 876 877

RdoResultset object, 879 883

RdoTablesCollection, 827

Read buffer, MAPIMessages control, 719

Read method, 578

Read-only text boxes, 202

ReadFromFile method, OLE control, 898, 929 930

Reading from binary files, 561 563

Reading from random access files, 558 561

Reading from sequential files, 555 557

Reading RTF files into RTF boxes, 223

ReadLine method, 578

ReadPropertiesevent, 671 672, 693 694

Record command, multimedia MCI control, 748

Record sets, ADO

adding records to, 888

binding controls to, 887

creating, 885 887

deleting records, 892 893

navigating, 890 892

refreshing, 888 889

updating records, 889 890

Record sets, DAO

adding records, 867 868

creating, 863 865

deleting records, 872

editing records, 868

navigating, 869 872

searching, 873

sorting records, 872

updating records, 868 869

Records

database records, 823 824

adding, 844, 867 868, 888

deleting, 844 845, 872, 892 893

editing, 868

entering data using Visual Data Manager, 833

navigating, 845 847, 869 872, 879 883, 890 892

refreshing and updating data, 845

searching, 873

sorting, 872

updating, 868 869, 889 890

random access files, 563 564

Recordset object, ADO, 827

methods

AddNew method, 888

Delete method, 892 893

MoveFirst method, 890

MoveLast method, 890 891

MoveNext method, 891

MovePrevious method, 891 892

Open method, 885 887, 893 894

Refresh method, 888 889

Update method, 889 890

Recordset object, DAO

creating record set, 863 865

methods

AddNew method, 867 868

Delete method, 872

Edit method, 868

MoveFirst method, 869 870

MoveLast method, 870

MoveNext method, 870 871

MovePrevious method, 871 872

OpenRecordset method, 866 867

Update method, 868 869

properties

BOF property, 871 872
EOF property, 870 871
Index property, 872, 873
Seekproperty, 873
Recordsetproperty, 826, 844, 845, 846
RecordsetEvents ADO, 828
RecordSourceproperty, 826, 828, 835
RectangleWindows API function, 785 786
Rectangles, drawing, 449, 785 786
RECV (FTP command), 730
ReDim statement, 11, 86, 94, 96
Redrawing form contents, 129
Redrawing graphics, 584
Reference, passing arguments by, 776
References to code components, adding, 938
Refresh button, Web browsers, 705
Refresh method, 705, 845
Refreshing record sets, 888 889
Refreshing screenSee Redrawing graphics.
Registering ActiveX controls with Windows, 656, 664
Registering in-process servers, 957
Registering ODBC data sources, 836 837
Registering out-of-process servers, 958
Registering programs online, 1040, 1065 1068
Registry, WindowsSee Windows Registry.
Regsvr32.exe utility, 664
Relation DAO object, 825

Remote data control, 826 827 See also ADO data control; Data control; RDO (Remote Data Objects).

data-bound controls, 838 839

methods

AddNew method, 844

Delete method, 844 845

MoveFirst method, 846

MoveLast method, 846 847

MoveNext method, 845 846

MovePrevious method, 846

Refresh method, 845

UpdateRecord method, 845

properties

DataSource property, 838

DataSourceName property, 838

Resultset property, 844, 845, 846

SQL property, 827, 838

rdoTables collection, 827

Remote Data Object See RDO (Remote Data Objects).

Remote Data Service (RDS), 828

Remove method, 110

RemoveItem method, 257 258, 269

RENAME (FTP command), 730

Render method, 622 623 See also PaintPicture method.

Replacing text in RTF boxes, 221

ReplayAll method, 719

Reply method, 719

Report mode, list views, 519

Resize event, 608 609

Resizing buttons, 239

Resizing graphics, 608 609

ResolveName method, 720

Resource files, 316

RestoreToolbar method, 482

Result set (RDO), 877 883

Resultsetproperty, 844, 845, 846

ResumeLabel statement, 1017 1018

ResumeLine# statement, 1018 1019

Resume Next statement, 1019 1020

Resumestatement, 1016 1017

Return values, 98, 150, 775

RGB function, 216 217, 586

Rich text.SeeRTF boxes.

Right function, 101

Right mouse events, 186, 793

RightMargin property, 212

RMDIR (FTP command), 730

RmDir statement, 572

Rnd function, 113

ROP2 (binary raster operation) mode, 788 789

Rounded rectangles and squares, 451

Row property, 377 378, 393

RowCount property, 377 378

RowLabel property, 378

Rows property, 393, 629

RowSource property, 849

RSet function, 101

RTF boxes

binding to data controls, 847
creating, 198
inappropriate use of, 198 199
methods
Find method, 221
LoadFile method, 223, 565
SaveFilemethod, 222, 564 565
SelPrint method, 223 224
Spanmethod, 208
moving insertion point, 217 219
opening files, 223, 565
printing text, 223 224
properties
BulletIndent property, 214 215
RightMargin property, 212
SelAlignment property, 216 217
SelBoldproperty, 209 211
SelBullet property, 214 215
SelCharOffsetproperty, 219 220
SelColor property, 216 217
SelFontNameproperty, 213
SelFontSizeproperty, 213
SelHangingIndentproperty, 211 212
SelIndent property, 211 212
SelItalic property, 209 211
SelRightIndent property, 211 212
SelRTF property, 208

SelStrikethru property, 209 211

SelUnderline property, 209 211

Text property, 208 209

TextRTF property, 208 209

replacing text, 221

saving files, 222, 564 565

searching for text, 221

selecting text, 208 209

setting text attributes, 209 215, 216 217, 219 220

RTF files, 222, 223, 1051 1052

RTF text, 198

RThreshold property, 408, 422

RTrim function, 101

Run menu, IDE, 43

S

Savecommand (multimedia MCI control), 748

Savemethod, 719

SaveFilemethod, 222, 564 565

SavePicturefunction, 566, 620

SavePicturestatement, 338

SaveSettingWindows API function, 193 195, 997

SaveToFilemethod, 898, 929 930

SaveToolbarmethod, 482

SaveToOle1Filemethod, 898

Saving pictures to disk, 338

Saving RTF files, 222

ScaleHeightproperty, 133, 338, 607

ScaleLeftproperty, 133

ScaleModeproperty

forms, 17, 133, 606 607

picture boxes, 337 338, 606 607

pixel-level manipulation of images, 636

ScaleTopproperty, 133

ScaleWidth property, 133, 338, 607

Scope, 11, 13, 28, 37, 90 91

Screen

capturing images, 794 799

capturing mouse events outside program window, 789 793

coordinates, translating to window coordinates, 790

device context for entire screen, 781 782

refreshing, 584

Screen object, 590 591, 608, 971 972, 992 993

Scroll bars, 283 284 See also Flat scroll bars.

adding to forms, 286

adding to text boxes, 201 202, 293 294

current value, 289

events

Changeevent, 289 290

Scroll event, 291 292

large changes, 287

pairs, coordinating, 293

properties

Enabled property, 292

LargeChangeproperty, 287

Min , Max properties, 286 287

SmallChangeproperty, 288

Value property, 289
Visible property, 292
range of values, 286
showing and hiding, 292
small changes, 288
Scroll event, 291 292, 302 303
ScrollBars property, 201, 293 294
Scrolling list boxes horizontally, 263
Search and replace, in RTF boxes, 221
Search button, Web browsers, 705
Secant function, calculating, 114
Secondfunction, 90
Security: password controls, 206
Seekcommand (multimedia MCI control), 748
Seekproperty, 873
SelAlignment property, 216 217
SelBoldproperty, 209 211
SelBullet property, 214 215
SelCharOffsetproperty, 219 220
SelColor property, 216 217
Select Case I\$keyword, 105
Select Casestatement, 105
Selectedarray, 260
Selectedproperty, 257
SelectObjectWindows API function, 190, 786 787
SelectRangeproperty, 303
Self drops, handling, 981 982
SelFontNameproperty, 213

SelFontSize property, 213
SelHangingIndent property, 211 212
SelIndent property, 211 212
SelLength property, 204, 303
SelPrint method, 223 224
SelRightIndent property, 211 212
SelRTF property, 208
SelStart property, 204, 303
SelStrikethru property, 209 211
SelText property, 204
SelUnderline property, 209 211
SEND (FTP command), 730
Sendmethod, 719, 722 723
SendKeysfunction, 111 112
Sensitive data, protecting, 37
Sequential files, 541 542, 550 552, 554 558
Serial port access, 408, 423, 427
Serialized thread operations, 936
SessionIDproperty, 721, 725
Setprocedures, 948
Setstatement, 940 942
SetCapture Windows API function, 790 793, 800 802
SetDatamethod, 332, 379, 609, 984
SetFocusmethod, 234
SetROP2Windows API function, 789
SetTextmethod, 205
Settings, Windows Registry SeeWindows Registry.
Settingsproperty, 408, 423

SetWindowPosWindows API function, 810 812

Sgn function, 113

Shape control, 436 437

adding to forms, 448 449

automatic alignment, turning off, 453

borders, 452

drawing shapes, 449 451

filling shapes, 452 453

hiding and showing shapes, 455

Move method, 454 455

moving shapes at runtime, 454

properties

BorderStyle property, 452

BorderWidth property, 452

FillColor property, 453

FillStyle property, 452

Height property, 454

Left property, 454

Shapeproperty, 449, 450, 451

Top property, 454

Width property, 454

Shapeproperty, 449, 450, 451

Shared files, specifying, 1048

Shell32.dll, 774

Shift key, 112, 303 306, 304

Shortcut keys, 155, 171, 172 173

Show method

dialog box display, 962

forms, 136, 961

MAPIMessages control, 720

modal dialog box display, 147, 996 997

ShowHelp method, 368

Showing and hiding buttons, 237 238

Showing and hiding controls, 132

Showing and hiding IDE windows, 73

Showing and hiding menus and menu items, 184

Showing and hiding multimedia MCI control, 749

Showing and hiding scroll bars, 292

Showing and hiding shapes, 455

ShowInTaskbar property, 995

ShowOpen ShowSave methods, 350 351

Shrinking OLE objects, 928

SignOff method, 722 723

SignOn method, 721, 725

Simple combo boxes, 265

SimpleText property, 491

Sin function, 113

Single-stepping, 1032

Single-threaded objects, 936

Single variable type, 89

SingleUseValue,Instancing property, 937, 960

SIZE (FTP command), 730

Sizeproperty, 590

SizeModeproperty, 903, 905, 928

Sizing controls, 51 52, 131

Sizing handles on controls, 51

Slider control, 284

adding to forms, 296 297

clearing selection, 306

current value, 301 303

events

Changeevents, 301

handling, 301 303

KeyDown event, 204

Scroll event, 302 303

groove clicks, 298 299

methods

ClearSelmethod, 306

GetNumTicks method, 299

Move method, 297

orientation, 297

properties

LargeChangeproperty, 298 299

Min , Max properties, 298

Orientation property, 297

SelectRangeproperty, 303

SelLengthproperty, 303

SelStart property, 303

SmallChangeproperty, 299

TickFrequency property, 299 300

TickStyle property, 300

Value property, 301, 302

range of values, 298, 303 306

tick marks, 299 300

tick style, 300

SLN function, 116

Small changes, 288

Small code, optimizing for, 75

Small icons, adding to list views, 522 524

SmallChangeproperty, 288, 299

SmallIcon mode, list views, 519

SMPTE (Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers) time formats, 746

Software design process, 35 38

Sort property, 401

Sorted property, 258

Sorting combo boxes, 271 272

Sorting flex grid control, 401

Sorting list boxes, 258

Sound command, multimedia MCI control, 748

Sourceproperty, 1022

SourceDocproperty, 897, 904

Spacefunction, 101

Spacing controls, 51 53

DHTML tag, 710

Span method, 208

Splash screens, 24

Spreadsheet, creating, 393 399

SQL property, 827, 838

SQL statements, executing, 874 875, 883, 893 894

Sqr function, 113

Squares, drawing, 449 450

Src attribute, 710

Src property, 710

Standard arrays, 93 94

Startup forms, 55, 61, 69

Startup objects, 943

Startup position of forms, specifying, 995

Startup procedure, 54

StateChangedevent, 727 728, 729

Static keyword

declaring arrays, 93

declaring procedures, 13

declaring subroutines, 96

declaring variables, 86

defined, 11

preserving variable values, 99 100

Status bars, 465 466

adding panels, 485, 490

adding to forms, 126 127, 484

aligning, 485

appearance, customizing, 488

click events, 490

creating using picture boxes, 322

displaying images, 489

displaying status information, 487

displaying text, 486

panel properties

Alignment property, 488

AutoSize property, 488

Bevelproperty, 488

Key property, 490

Picture property, 489

SimpleText property, 491

Style property, 487

Text property, 486

PanelClick, PanelDbClick events, 490

Panelscollection, 485

properties

Align property, 485

Style property, 491

without panels, 491

StatusUpdateevent, 741, 750

Step charts, 2D and 3D, 388 390

Step command, multimedia MCI control, 748, 769

Step keyword, 591, 594, 604

SThresholdproperty, 408, 422

StillExecuting property, 727

Stop button, Web browsers, 705

Stop command, multimedia MCI control, 748, 749, 753

Stop method, 705

Stop statement, 116

Stopwatch example program, 416 417

Str function, 90, 102

StrComp function, 101

StrConv function, 101

Stretch property, 339 340, 618, 633

Stretching images, 333 334, 632 633

StrikeThrough property, 590

Strikethru text in RTF boxes, 209 211

String function, 101

String variable type, 89, 101

Strings

converting between string and numeric values, 102

formatting date and time values, 115

passing as arguments to code components, 951 953

string-handling functions, 101 102

variable-length vs. fixed-length, 101

Style property

buttons, 230, 237, 239 240, 241

combo boxes, 265, 273

images, displaying in controls, 616

list boxes, 264

status bar panels, 487

status bars, 491

toolbar buttons, 474 475, 477, 479

tree views, 511

Sub Main procedure, 54, 943

Sub procedures, 674 678

Submenus, 173 175

Submit button, 712 713

Subnodes, adding to tree views, 513 515

Subroutines, 96 97, 99 100, 775 776

Subscript characters, RTF boxes, 219 220

Suffix symbols, numeric values, 88

Superscript characters, RTF boxes, 219 220

Switch function, 106

SYD function, 116

SyncBuddy property, 307

Syntax Checking, IDE, 71, 72

T

Tab order in text-entry forms, 236

Tab order of controls, 129 130, 236, 975

Tab strips, 504 505

adding tabs, 532 533

adding to forms, 531 532

Click events, 536

connecting images to tabs, 534

displaying correct tab, 536

displaying other controls, 535 536

properties

Caption property, 533

ImageList property, 534

tab captions, 533

Tabs collection, 533

TabIndex property, 130, 236, 975

Table Operation drop-down box, DHTML Page Designer, 715 716

Table Structure window, Visual Data Manager, 831 832

TableDef object, DAO, 859, 860 863

Tables, DHTML pages, 715 716

Tables (database tables)
See also Fields.

adding fields to, 860 861

creating, 859

creating using Visual Data Manager, 830

defined, 823

indexes, 861 863

opening, 866 867

TabStop property, 19, 130, 236

Tan function, 113

Target URL, setting, 716 717

Taskbar, Windows 95, 995

Templates folder, Visual Component Manager, 56 57, 176 178

Temporary file names, 1066

Terminate event, 672, 958 959

Terminating programs, 116

Testing ActiveX controls, 655 656, 661 662, 662 664

Testing ActiveX documents, 683, 690 691

Testing code components, 954 956

Testing DHTML pages, 717

Testing programs, 1007 1008

Text

adding to DHTML pages, 709 710

aligning, 200 201, 216 217, 446

customizing IDE, 50 51

determining fonts available, 590 591

displaying in status bars, 486

drawing usingPrint method, 588 589

entering in flex grid control, 394

Font object, 590

font properties, 589

formatting, 329 330, 445 446, 589, 710

highlighting, turning off, 204

printing, from RTF boxes, 223 224

replacing in text boxes, 204
in RTF boxes, 208 209
searching for in IDE, 74
selecting, 204, 208 209
setting attributes, 209 211
setting color, 216 217
superscripts and subscripts, in RTF boxes, 219 220
in text boxes, 203
title bar text, 121, 802 803
Text boxes See also **Combo boxes**.
adding scroll bars, 201 202, 293 294
adding to forms, 198
aligning text, 200 201
binding to data controls, 835, 838 839, 840 841, 847
clipboard, copying and pasting, 204 205
data entry in flex grid control, 397 399
events
 Changeevent, 145, 207
 KeyDown event, 207
 KeyPress event, 206
 KeyUp event, 207
highlighting, turning on and off, 204
inappropriate use of, 198 199
vs. label controls, 444 445
limiting number of characters, 201
multiline text boxes, 200
password control, 205 206
properties

Alignment property, 200 201
DataField, DataSourceproperties, 835, 838 839, 840 841
Enabled property, 202
HideSelectionproperty, 204
Locked property, 202
MaxLength property, 201
Multiline property, 200, 201
PasswordCharproperty, 205 206
ScrollBars property, 201, 293 294
SelLengthproperty, 204
SelStartproperty, 204
SelTextproperty, 204
Text property, 203
read-only text boxes, 202
replacing text, 204
restricting input characters, 206 207
selecting text, 204
setting text, 203
word wrap, 200
Text data, sending, 425
Text property
combo boxes, 265, 267, 270 271
flex grid control, 393, 394
RTF boxes, 208 209
status bar panels, 486
text boxes, 203
TextArray property, 400
TextHeight method, 589

TextRTF property, 208 209

TextStream objects, 542, 575 579

TextWidth method, 589

Thread-per-object model, 936

Thread pooling, 936

Threading models, 936, 963

Thumb of scroll bars, 283

Tic-tac-toe game (ActiveX document example), 684 689

Tick marks, slider controls, 299 300, 300

TickFrequency property, 299 300

TickStyle property, 300

Time formats, 114 115, 413 415, 746 747

Time function, 115

Time\$ function, 413

TimeFormat property, 746, 770

Timer control, 406 407

accuracy of, 413

adding to forms, 412

animation using image list control, 419 421

current time, displaying, 415

elapsed time, displaying, 417

example programs, 415 419

formatting date and time values, 413 415

initializing, 412

properties

Enabled property, 412

Interval property, 412

Timer event, 412, 413

using with progress bar, 492 493
Timer event, 412, 413
TimeSerial function, 90, 115
TimeValue function, 90, 115
Title bar text, 121, 346 347, 802 803
Title bars, 118
Titles for Help pages, 1057 1058
To property, 770
Toggle buttons in toolbars, 477
Tool tips, 45, 238, 1058 1060
Toolbars, 465
adding buttons, 471, 482 484
adding combo boxes, 479 481
adding images to buttons, 475 476
adding to forms, 469
aligning, 470
button groups, 478
button properties
Index property, 471, 475
Key property, 125, 471
Style property, 474 475, 477, 479
ToolTipText property, 481
ButtonClick event, 471 472
Buttons collection, 482 484
check buttons, 477
connecting buttons to menu items, 473
creating using picture boxes, 322
in forms, 119, 123 125 126

handling button clicks, 472

in IDE, 44, 61, 67 69

methods

RestoreToolbar method, 482

SaveToolbar method, 482

properties

Align property, 470

AllowCustomize property, 482

ImageList property, 476

separators, 474 475

tool tips, 481

user customization, 482

Toolbox, DHTML Page Designer, 710 711, 712 713, 716 717

Toolbox, Visual Basic, 48, 664

Tools menu, IDE, 43

ToolTipText property, 238, 439, 481

Top property

buttons, 239

forms, 133

frame control, 440

label control, 443

shape control, 454

ToPage property, 364

TopIndex property, 274 275

Total disk space, determining, 813 814

Trademark information, adding to projects, 59

Transactions, ADO, 854

Transferring files See FTP (File Transfer Protocol).

Trappable errors

Cancel button, Common Dialogs, 1028 1029

creating error objects, 1026 1027

determining source of error, 1022

determining which error occurred, 1020 1021

disabling error trapping, 1015 1016

disregarding errors, 1015

in DLLs, 1023

list of, 1003 1007

multimedia MCI control, 767 768

nested error handling, 1024 1025

resuming execution, 1016 1020

retrieving error description, 1021 1022

user-defined errors, 1023 1024

using labels, 1012 1013

using line numbers, 1014

writing error handlers, 1009 1012

Tree views, 502

adding images, 515 517

adding to forms, 510 511

events

Collapseevent, 517

Expand event, 517

NodeClick event, 518

expanding and collapsing nodes, 517 518

node properties

Expandedproperty, 518

Image property, 515

Key property, 512

nodes, 511 512

propertiesStyle property, 511

style, selecting, 511

subnodes, 513 515

Trigonometric functions, 114

Trim function, 101

TwipsPerPixelX property, 608

TwipsPerPixelY property, 608

Type castingSeeConverting data between variable types.

Type keyword, 11, 86, 93

Type libraries, code components, 940, 941

Type of control, determining at runtime, 972 973

TypeOf keyword, 972 973

Types.SeeVariable types.

U

UBound function, 96

Ubound property, 973

UCasefunction, 90, 101

Underline property, 590

Underlining text in RTF boxes, 209 211

Units of measurement, 17, 53, 133, 328, 337 338, 606 607

Unload statement, 137, 189, 242

Unlocking memory, 808 809

UpClick event, 308 309

Update method, 868 869

Update method, OLE objects, 898

Updated event, 930 931

UpdateInterval property, 750

UpdateRecordmethod, 845

Updown controls, 284, 307 309

UpDown property, 410, 430

URL property, 1066

URLs, 700 703, 716 717

UseMnemonicproperty, 447

User controlsSeeActiveX controls.

User-defined coordinate systems, 133, 607

User-defined data types, 89

User-defined errors, 1023 1024

User registration, online, 1065 1068

User32.dll, 774

UserNameproperty, 727

V

Val function, 90, 102

Value, passing arguments by, 776

Value property

checkboxes, 245 246

DateTimePicker control, 430

MonthView control, 429

option buttons, 247 248

progress bars, 492

scroll bars, 289

slider controls, 301, 302

Variable-length arrays, 968

Variable-length strings, 101

Variable scope, 11, 37

Variable scope prefixes, 28

Variable type prefixes, 28 29

Variable types, 88 89

C/C++ data type correspondences, 776 778

converting between types, 90, 102

default type, 88

field types, DAO TableDef object, 860

Hungarian prefix notation, 776 777

list of, 7 8

specifying usingAs keyword, 11

used in Windows API, 778 779

variable prefixes, 28 29

verifying type, 91, 93

Windows-defined data types, 777 778

Variables

commenting conventions, 33 34

declaring, 11, 86 87

implicit declaration, 87

Option Explicit statement, 38, 88

Option Private Module statement, 91

variable scope, 90 91

variable types, 88 89

default initialization, 87

examining values of (debugging), 1033 1036

form-level variables, 91

form-wide variables, 7, 8

global variables, 10, 91

literal suffix symbols, 88

module-level variables, 91

names, misspelling, 38

preserving values, 99 100

procedure-level variables, 91

variable scope, 11, 37, 90 91

variable scope prefixes, 28

variable type, verifying, 91, 93

variable type prefixes, 28 29

variable types, 7 8

viewing definition in IDE, 74

Variant arrays, 951 953

Variant variable type, 38, 88 89, 89

VBD files (ActiveX document specification files), 651, 686, 690 691

VbOLEInPlaceActivate verb, 897

VbOLEOpen verb, 897

VBP files (project files), 15, 25

VBW files (project files), 16

Version control, 39

Version information, 59

Version.dll, 774

Vertical scroll bars, 286 See also Scroll bars.

Vertical Spacing item, Format menu, 52 53

View menu, 43, 73, 165

View modes, list views, 504, 519, 524 525

View property, 524, 525

Visible property

buttons, 237 238

combo boxes, 273

controls, 132
menu items, 184, 188
menus, 184
multimedia MCI control, 749
pop-up menus, 184
scroll bars, 292
Visual Basic
best coding practices, 36 38
commenting conventions, 33 34
editions of, 2
naming conventions, 28 33
project types supported by, 2 3
Visual Basic API Viewer, 779
Visual Basic Application Wizard
adding status bars to forms, 484
adding toolbars to forms, 123 125, 469
designing menus, 157
integrating Web browsers into projects, 691 692
online help system, 1063 1064
profiles, 23
projects, creating, 22 28
Visual Basic color constants, 586 587
Visual Basic Global object, 994
Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment (Integrated Development Environment).
Visual Basic Menu EditorSee **Menu Editor**.
Visual Basic project groups, 662 664
Visual C++ code, 816 818
Visual Component Manager, 56 57, 58, 65 66, 176 178

Visual Data Manager, 830 833

W

Wait property, 771

Watch window, 1034

WAV files, playing, 755 757

Web browser control, 69 See also Web browsers.

events, DownloadComplete event, 701

methods

GoBack method, 704

GoForward method, 704

GoHome method, 701, 705

GoSearch method, 705

Navigate method, 700

Refresh method, 705

Stop method, 705

online help system, 1063 1064

properties, LocationName property, 701, 705

Web browsers See also Web browser control.

allowing navigation to URLs, 700 703

creating, 696, 699 700

integrating into Visual Basic programs, 691 692

specifying home page, 701

standard buttons, 705

URLs, specifying, 700 703

Web pages See also ActiveX documents.

DHTML pages, testing, 707, 717

directories, downloading, 731, 732

embedding ActiveX controls in, 657

including Visual Basic code in, 706

Weekday function, 90

Weight property, 590

While loop, 109

Whiteness pen setting, 605

Width property

buttons, 239

forms, 133

frame control, 440

label control, 443

picture boxes, 338, 607

Screen object, 608

shape control, 454

Win32 Software Development Kit (Microsoft), 779

Win32api.txt, 778 779

Window coordinates, translating to screen coordinates, 790

Window handles, 800 802, 811

Window list, adding to menus, 182 183

Window menu, 44, 165, 182 183

WindowFromPoint Windows API function, 800 802

Windowless controls, 990 991

WindowList property, 183

Windows

capturing mouse events outside of, 789 793

device contexts, retrieving, 780

forcing to topmost position, 810 812

hiding, 136

specifying Z-order position, 810 812

title bar text, 121, 802 803

window handles, retrieving, 800 802

Windows, IDE, 73

Windows 95 taskbar, 995

Windows API

core Windows DLLs, 774

sounds, playing, 804 805

Visual Basic API Viewer add-in tool, 779

window handles, retrieving, 800 802

Windows API functions See also names of specific functions.

calling, 775

correspondences between data types and Visual Basic variable types, 776 778

declarations, adding to Visual Basic programs, 779

declaring, 775 776

Windows applications See also headings beginning with OLE.

Designed for Microsoft Windows logo, 1041 1042

dragging data between applications, 983 990

giving focus to, 112

sending keystrokes to, 110 112

Windows character set, limiting fonts to, 360

Windows Common Controls

coolbars, 466 467, 493 497

displaying images, 616

ImageList property, 508

progress bars, 466 467, 491 493

status bars, 126 127, 465 466, 484 491

toolbars, 125, 322, 465, 469 484

Windows Help, displaying from Common Dialog controls, 368 See also Help files.

Windows installation directory, 814 815

Windows Registry

deleting settings, 999

Most Recently Used (MRU) files list, 192 195

registering ActiveX controls, 664

retrieving settings, 192 193, 997 998, 999

storing settings, 193 195, 997

WindowState property, 151

WinHelp Windows API function, 1061 1062

Winmm.dll, 774

With statement, 109

WithEvents keyword, 86, 94

Wizards.See also Visual Basic Application Wizard.

ActiveX Control Interface Wizard, 669, 675, 680

ActiveX Document Migration Wizard, 683

Data Form Wizard, 840, 841 843

Package and Deployment Wizard, 1039, 1043 1048

Property Page Wizard, 680 681

Word wrap in text boxes, 200

WordWrap property, 445

Workspace object, DAO, 825, 857 858

Write # statement, 550 551

Write method, 577

WriteLine method, 577

WriteProperties event, 671 672, 693 694

Writing to binary files, 554

Writing to random access files, 552 553

Writing to sequential files, 550 551

X

X1, X2 properties, 455, 457

XML (Extended Markup Language), 697, 698

Xor Pen pen setting, 604, 605

Y

Y1, Y2 properties, 455, 457

Year function, 90

Z

Z-order position, 810 812, 976

Zooming OLE objects, 928

ZOrder method, 976